



CHARON-AXP V4.8 for Windows Users Guide



Contents

Introduction	3
Conventions	6
CHARON-AXP for Windows installation	7
Running and managing CHARON-AXP for Windows	33
CHARON-AXP for Windows configuration	50
Migration to CHARON-AXP for Windows	77
CHARON-AXP for Windows licensing	91
CHARON-AXP for Windows utilities	109
Host Device Check	110
Network Control Center	113
MkDisk	150
MkDskCmd	159
HASP View	162
License Update Service	164
License expiration check	167
mtd	178
CHARON Log Monitor and Dispatcher	179
HOSTPrint	182
CHARON Guest Utilities for OpenVMS	184
CHARON-AXP for Windows configuration details	188
General Settings	189
Core Devices	198
Console	216
Placement of peripheral devices on PCI bus	225
Disks and tapes	266
KZPBA PCI SCSI adapter	267
KGPSA-CA PCI Fibre Channel adapter	275
Acer Labs 1543C IDE/ATAPI CD-ROM adapter	295
PCI I/O Bypass controller	297
Networking	304
DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter	313
PBXDA-xx series PCI serial adapters	318
Sample configuration files	323
HP AlphaServer 800 configuration file	324
HP AlphaServer 4000 configuration file	329
HP AlphaServer DS20 configuration file	333
HP AlphaServer ES40 configuration file	338
HP AlphaServer GS80 configuration file	343
"configuration_name.icfg" configuration file	348
CHARON-AXP for Windows deinstallation	349
Appendixes	355
Log monitoring - logmond best practice	356
How to implement time synchronisation between CHARON-AXP Host OS and Guest OS	369

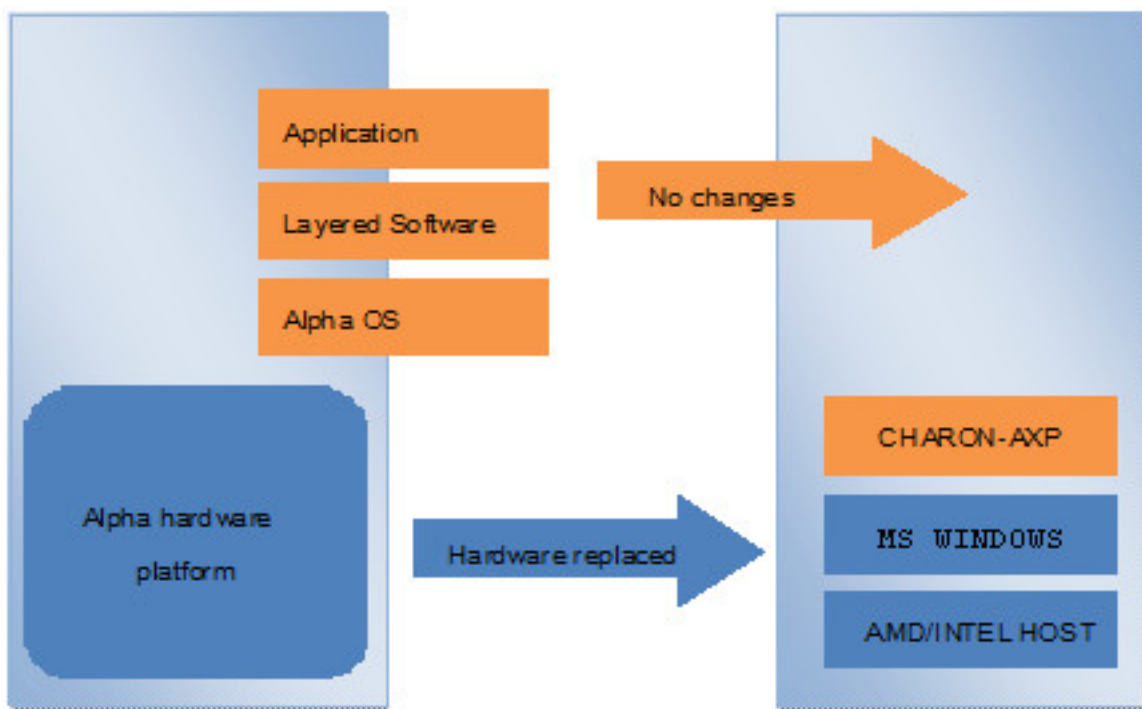
Introduction

Table of Contents

- General Description
- The principles of HP Alpha Hardware Virtualization
 - Virtualized hardware
 - Host platform

General Description

HP Alpha Hardware Virtualization allows users of HP Alpha (Previously known as DIGITAL Alpha) computers to move application software and user data to a modern Intel or AMD based x64 compatible platform without having to make changes to software and data. HP Alpha Hardware Virtualization is a software solution that replaces HP Alpha hardware.



This approach is best understood when the HP Alpha Hardware Virtualization Software is viewed as a special interface between the old HP Alpha software and a new hardware platform. Basically, the CHARON software presents a HP Alpha hardware interface to the original HP Alpha software, so that the existing software cannot detect a difference. This means no changes have to be made to the existing software. User programs and data can be copied to a new modern industry standard server (64-bit Intel or AMD) and continue to run for many more years.

The HP Alpha virtualization software is designed to replace single and multi-CPU HP Alpha computer systems, including:

- AlphaServer 400
- AlphaServer 800
- AlphaServer 1000
- AlphaServer 1000A
- AlphaServer 1200
- AlphaServer 2000
- AlphaServer 2100
- AlphaServer 4000
- AlphaServer 4100
- AlphaServer DS10
- AlphaServer DS10L
- AlphaServer DS15
- AlphaServer DS20
- AlphaServer DS25
- AlphaServer ES40
- AlphaServer ES45
- AlphaServer GS80

- AlphaServer GS160
- AlphaServer GS320

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

The principles of HP Alpha Hardware Virtualization

Virtualized hardware

CHARON-AXP virtualizes various HP Alpha architectures and meets or exceeds the performance level of these HP Alpha systems when run on the recommended hardware platform.

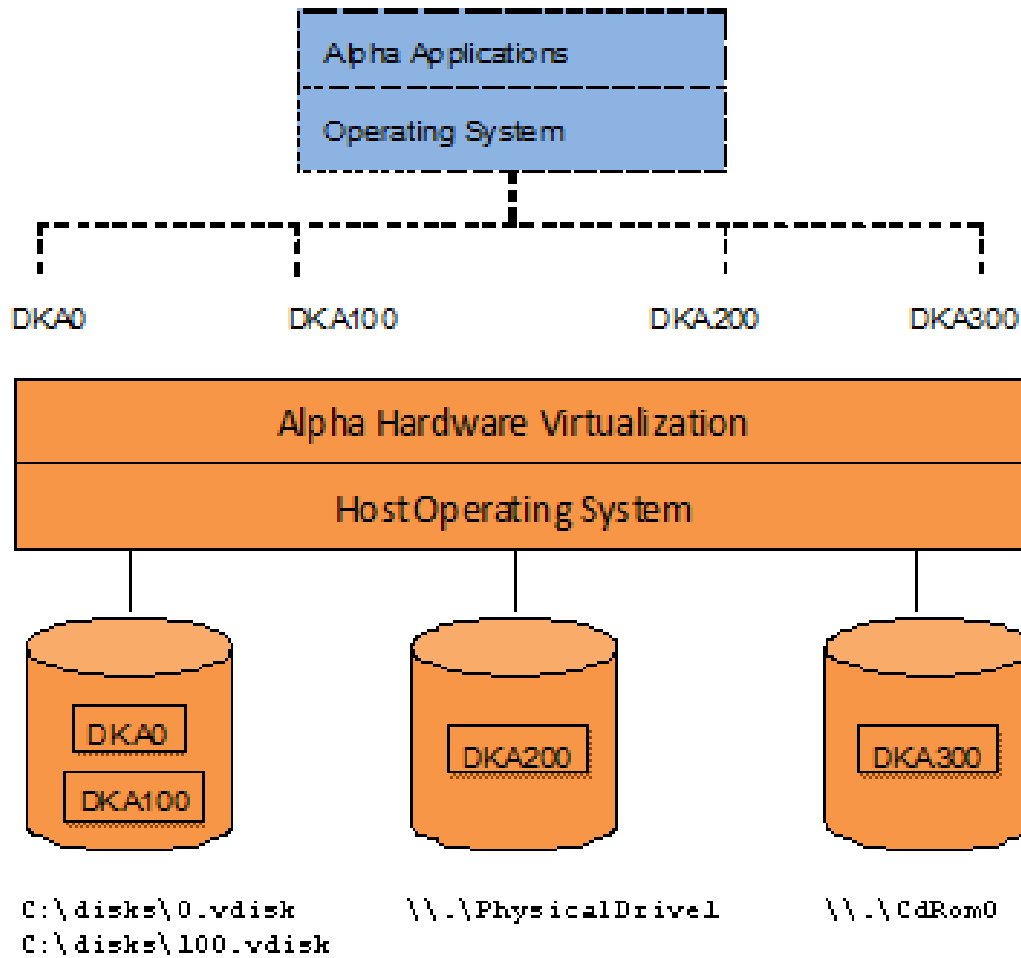
The following table shows which hardware boards CHARON virtualizes:

Subsystem	Covered HP Alpha hardware
Serial Lines Controllers	On-board serial line port COM2, Family of PCI controllers: PBXDA-BA, PBXDA-BB, PBXDA-AC, PBXDA-AC
IDE/ATAPI CD-ROM Controller	Virtual Acer Labs 1543C
PCI Fibre Channel Controller	KGPSA-CA
PCI SCSI Controller	KZPBA
PCI FDDI Controller	DEFPA
PCI Network Controllers	DE435, DE450, DE500AA, DE500BA, DE602, DE602AA

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Host platform

The Virtualization Software presents standard HP Alpha devices to the HP Alpha operating system, allowing the OS to function as though it were still running on a HP Alpha computer. For example, virtual disk container files in a directory or physical devices of the host Windows platform are presented by the Virtualization Software to the HP Alpha OS as emulated SCSI disks attached to a PCI SCSI adapter.



With the use of current storage technology, disks do not have to be physically attached to the Host platform, they can also reside on a SAN or iSCSI storage structure.

A similar translation process is also valid for other emulated hardware devices.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Conventions

Throughout the document(s) these conventions are followed

Notation	Description
\$	The dollar sign in interactive examples indicates an operating system prompt for VMS. The dollar sign can also indicate non superuser prompt for UNIX / Linux.
#	The number sign represents the superuser prompt for UNIX / Linux.
>	The right angle bracket in interactive examples indicates an operating system prompt for Windows command (cmd.exe).
User input	Bold monospace type in interactive examples indicates typed user input.
<path>	Bold monospace type enclosed by angle brackets indicates command parameters and parameter values.
Output	Monospace type in interactive examples, indicates command response output.
[]	In syntax definitions, brackets indicate items that are optional.
...	In syntax definitions, a horizontal ellipsis indicates that the preceding item can be repeated one or more times.
<i>disk0</i>	Italic monospace type, in interactive examples, indicates typed context dependent user input.

The following definitions apply

Term	Description
Host	The system on which the emulator runs, also called the Charon server
Guest	The operating system running on a Charon instance, for example, Tru64 UNIX, OpenVMS, Solaris or MPE


CHARON-AXP for Windows installation

Table of contents

- Introduction
- Hardware Requirements
 - Number of CPU cores
 - CPU type and speed
 - Operative memory
 - Disk storage
 - Ethernet adapters
- Software Requirements
- Host system preparation
- Before installation
- Distribution preparation
- Installation
- CHARON-AXP home directory
- License installation
 - Regular HASP USB dongle
 - Network HASP USB dongle
 - Software license
- License validity verification
 - Troubleshooting
- Network configuration
- After installation

Introduction

The CHARON-AXP product is distributed in the form of a zip file that contains the CHARON-AXP installation executable ("InstallShell.exe"). The InstallShell procedure offers the option to select which modules to install (optionally). It is recommended to install all modules (the default) by not selecting "Display components" checkbox.

 Before installing CHARON-AXP, please perform all hardware and software host system checks to ensure the host platform meets minimum CHARON-AXP installation requirements

Optionally, create a specific CHARON username with administrative privileges

CHARON-AXP installation steps:

- Extract the CHARON-AXP installation procedure files from its archive
- Install CHARON-AXP by running the "InstallShell.exe" installer and follow the instructions
- Install CHARON-AXP license (hardware dongle or software license)
- Configure CHARON-AXP host system, for example, network adapter, disable some Windows features (see [Host system preparation](#) further), etc.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Hardware Requirements

Number of CPU cores

Each CHARON-AXP emulated CPU requires a corresponding physical core. The total number of host CPUs must exceed the number of emulated CPUs since some of the host CPUs must be dedicated to serving CHARON I/O operations and fulfil host operating system needs. If several CHARON instances run in parallel, the required number of CPU cores is cumulative.

The following table shows the minimum and recommended number of CPUs required for each models for one instance (note that each model instance is able to run on 2 CPU cores hosts, but this configuration does not support emulation of all the virtual CPUs):

CHARON-AXP models	Minimum number of host CPU cores	Recommended number of host CPU cores
HP AlphaServer 400 - HP AlphaServer 4100	2	2
HP AlphaServer DS10	2	2
HP AlphaServer DS20	4	4
HP AlphaServer ES40	6	8
HP AlphaServer GS80	10	16
HP AlphaServer GS160	18	32
HP AlphaServer GS320	34	48

Hyperthreading must be switched off completely. Disable hyperthreading in the BIOS settings of the physical host or, for a VMware virtual machine, edit the virtual machine properties, select the Resources tab then select Advanced CPU. Set the Hyperthreaded Core Sharing mode to *None*.

CPU type and speed

Since CHARON-AXP utilizes LAHF instructions in the HP Alpha CPU emulation, please avoid using early (pre-2005) AMD64 and Intel 64 CPUs for the CHARON host system since they lack this capability. AMD Athlon 64, Opteron and Turion 64 revision D processors from March 2005 and Intel Pentium 4 G1 stepping from December 2005 are LAHF instruction capable.

Concerning CPU speed, the general recommendation is that higher CPU frequency is better since it allows better emulated HP Alpha performance. The minimum recommendation is at least 3 GHz.

Operative memory

The minimum host memory size depends on the amount of HP Alpha memory to be emulated and the number of CHARON-AXP instances to be run on one host.

The minimum host memory is calculated according to the following formula:

The minimum host memory = (2Gb + the amount of HP Alpha memory emulated) per CHARON-AXP instance.

Disk storage

The total amount of disk space required for CHARON-AXP can be calculated as a sum of all the disk/tape image sizes plus 50 MB for the CHARON software plus space required for the normal host OS. Temporary disk storage is often needed when setting up a new server, for saveset storage, software installation kits, etc.

Ethernet adapters

CHARON-AXP networking requires dedicated host Ethernet adapters; their number must be equal to the emulated adapters to be configured in CHARON-AXP. One adapter (optionally) can be left to the host for TCP/IP networking etc.

For VMware-based CHARON hosts it is mandatory to use the "E1000" virtual network adapter. Please avoid usage of the "E1000E" adapter since it may lead to problems with some TCP/IP services!

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Software Requirements

- Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Standard and Datacenter Editions, 64 bit version
- Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard and Datacenter Editions, 64 bit version (please notice that only R2 revision is supported)
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 (SP1) Standard and Enterprise Editions, 64 bit version (please notice that only R2 revision is supported)
- Microsoft Windows 7 Professional and Ultimate (SP1) Editions, 64 bit version
- Windows 8.1 Professional Edition, 64 bit version
- Windows 10 Professional and Enterprise Editions, 64 bit version
- VMware ESXi 5.5 and 6.x up to 6.5 (requires a supported Windows operating system on top of a ESXi virtual machine)
- Microsoft Hyper-V (requires a supported Windows operating system on top of a Hyper-V virtual machine)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Host system preparation

All antivirus, screen saver, automatic (scheduled) backup and any other CPU consuming software as well as software that is able to temporarily lock CHARON files (such as automatic indexing) must be turned off, uninstalled and disabled. Alternatively it is also possible to exclude all CHARON executables and material folders from scanning for viruses, but please note that scanning slows down CHARON host anyway - it may be critical for some installations requiring maximum performance.

The power scheme must be set to "High Performance" with all the "Sleep" and "Standby" modes turned off.

The automatic installation of Microsoft updates must be disabled. MS updates to the CHARON host must be done only in specific service maintenance periods established by the system administrator. Before applying new updates one must shutdown the operating system running on CHARON and stop all the running CHARON instances and services.

If a network-wide license (red dongle or software license) is going to be used, do the following:

- *On server side (where the network license will reside):* open port 1947 for both TCP and UDP
- *On the client side,* if broadcast search for remote licenses is to be used, UDP traffic from port 1947 of the license server to ports 30000-65535 of the client must be permitted.
- *Both on server and client sides:* set default gateway

Please consult with your Windows User's Guide for details.

If stricter firewall rules are required, it is possible to open the ports 30000-65535 and 1947 only for the "Sentinel HASP License Manager" (hasplms.exe) service (installed by CHARON-AXP).

If any magneto-optical (MO) drive installed on host system is going to be used with CHARON (mapped as "\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>" to CHARON emulated disk controllers) the host "MediaChangeNotification" (MSN) service must be switched off manually for these drives according to the following procedure:

1. Type "regedit" in the search field under "Start" menu or press Windows+R and enter "regedit"; press Enter to run the program.
2. Find the "AlwaysDisableMCN" parameter in the following path:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE
+ SYSTEM
  + CurrentControlSet
    + Enum
      + SCSI
        + Disk&Ven_DEC&Prod_RWZ53_____(C)DEC <- This one depends on Vendor and Model of your MO drive
          + 5&fd233cf&0&000500 <- This one depends on hardware connection (SCSI ID of MO drive, location of SCSI HBA
            on the host's mainboard, etc ...)
              + Device Parameters
                + MediaChangeNotification
                  + AlwaysDisableMCN = DWORD:00000000
```

3. Change the "AlwaysDisableMCN" parameter to "1", for example: "AlwaysDisableMCN = DWORD:00000001".
4. Reboot the host system.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Before installation

1. Login as the local system administrator ("Administrator") on the host system.
2. Create a special user for running CHARON-AXP (optional). This user must have all the administrative privileges. Please consult with your Windows User's Guide on details.




The CHARON installation procedure will create a special group called CHARON-GRP and the current user will be automatically included to this group. Do not remove this group and do not remove any CHARON user from it, otherwise a [problem with virtual memory allocation](#) may appear on CHARON startup.

The created user may belong to some domain, but please note that in this case you have to add this user to the CHARON-GRP manually as described in [this article](#), and then reboot the CHARON host.

3. Stay logged in as local system administrator ("Administrator") or log off and login as the CHARON-AXP user having administrative privileges (if this option has been chosen).
 4. Create a special directory for the CHARON-AXP distribution kit and copy the provided files there.
 5. Due to CHARON installation procedure update, it is required to uninstall all CHARON products before installing CHARON-AXP version 4.8
- [Back to Table of Contents](#)

Distribution preparation

1. Extract the content of the distribution archive to the current directory or copy the content of the provided distribution directory to the current directory.
2. Run the "InstallShell.exe" file:

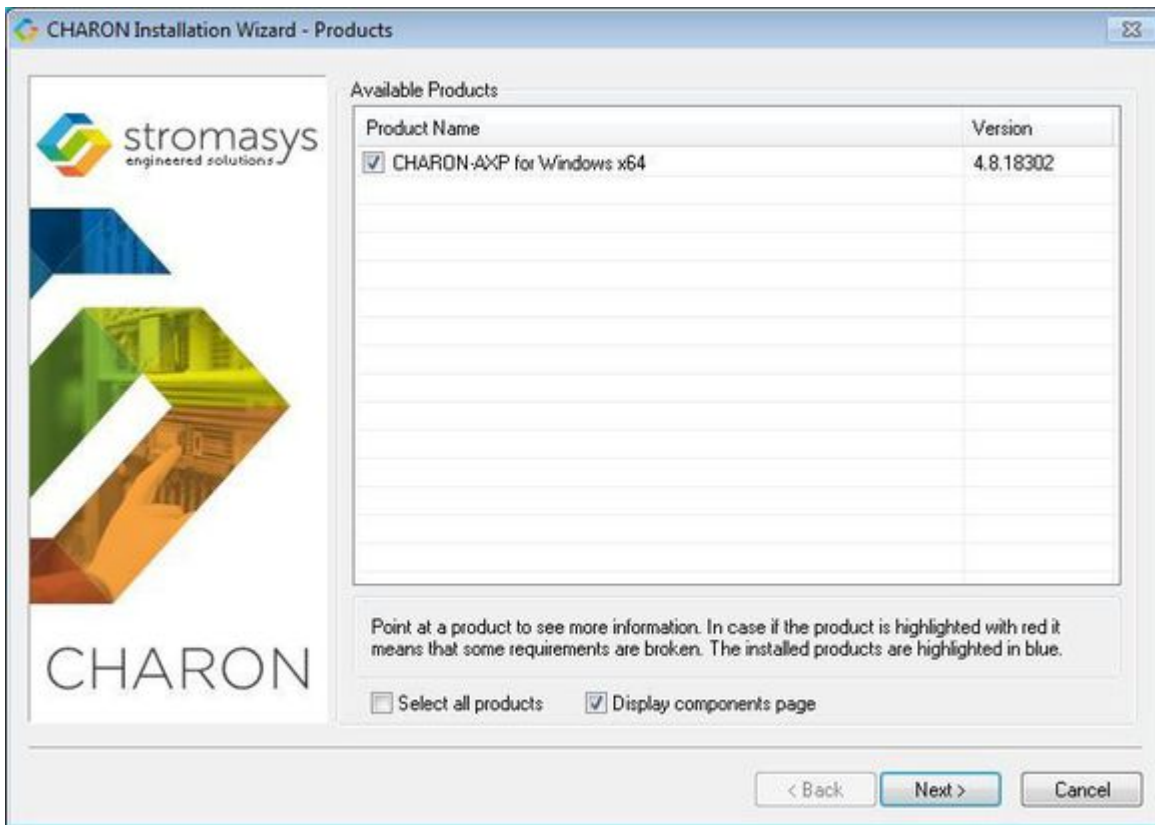
 idle_vms_pkg_3.0.def	18.08.2016 16:39
 InstallShell.exe	26.08.2016 11:56
 InstallShellCHS.dll	19.08.2016 13:12

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Installation

The following description assumes that this is the first installation of CHARON-AXP on the target host. Installation of additional CHARON products follows the same procedure.

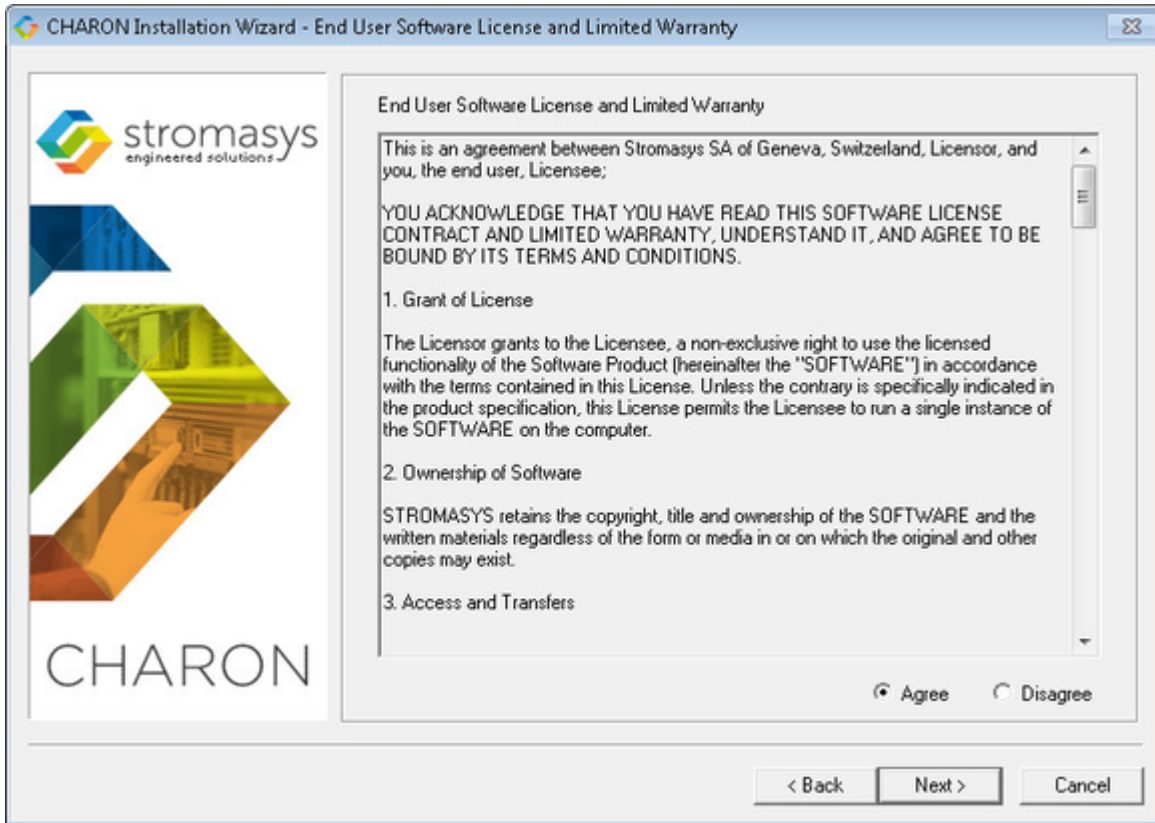
The first dialog lists the CHARON-AXP product:



Select the CHARON-AXP product, or all products, by checking the corresponding box. Select the "Display components page" to include the products components page if you need it. Typically it is not required.

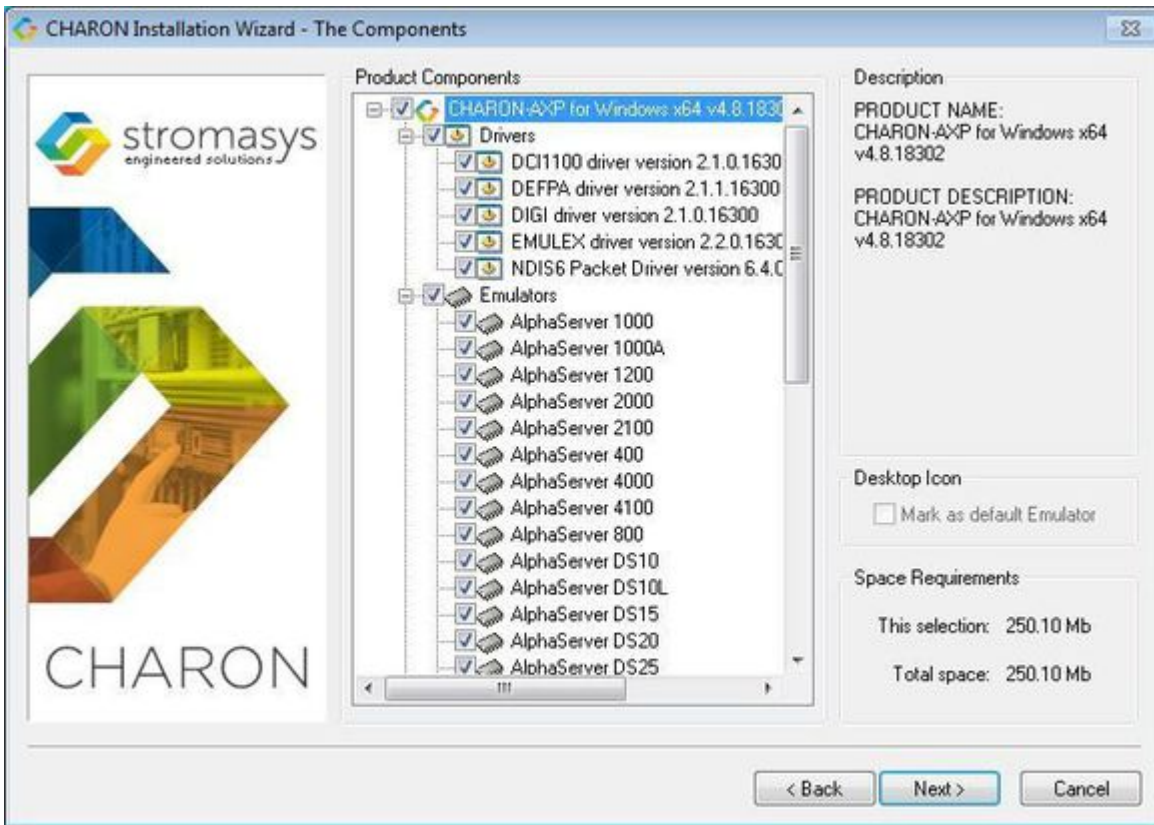
The CHARON products may be highlighted with a red color. This indicates that the CHARON host configuration does not meet CHARON minimal requirements. To see what requirements are not met, point the mouse cursor on that product and a pop-up box with details will appear.

Press the "Next" button.

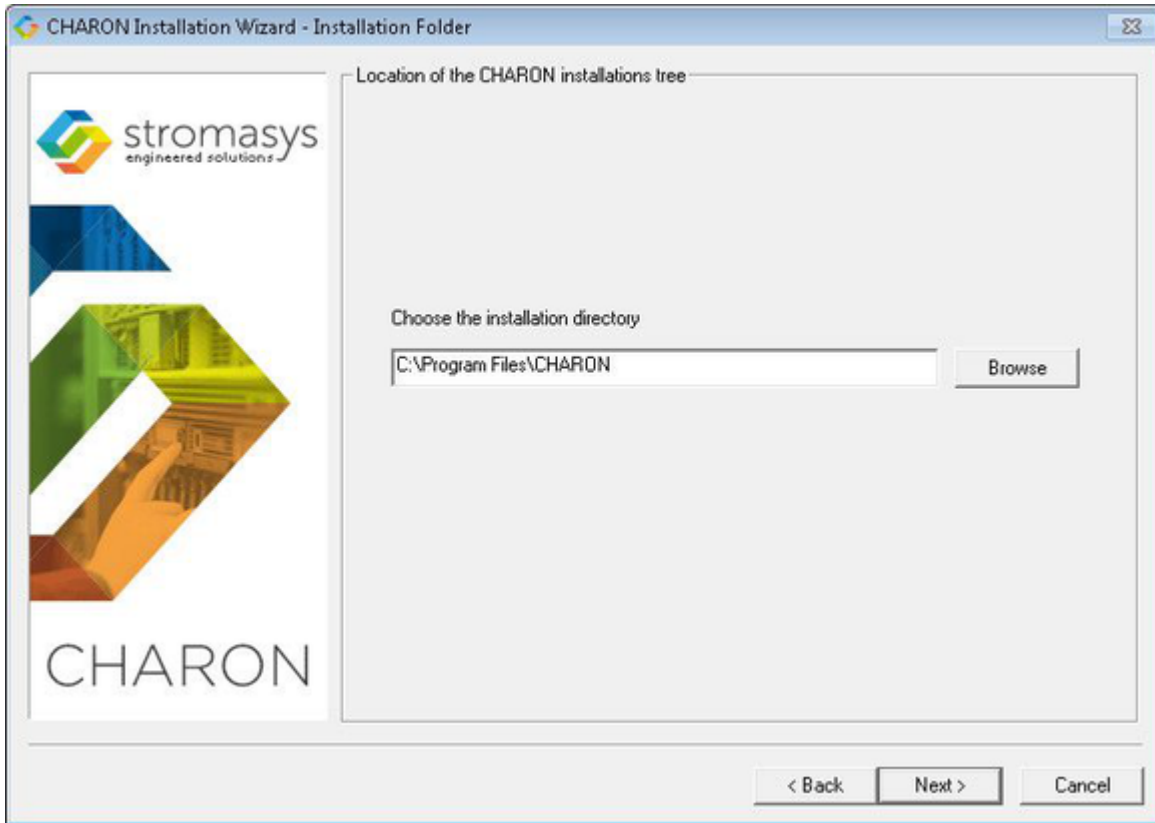


Read the license, check "Agree" and press the "Next" button.

If the "Display components page" option was selected, the setup procedure will display a dialog for the CHARON-AXP product components:

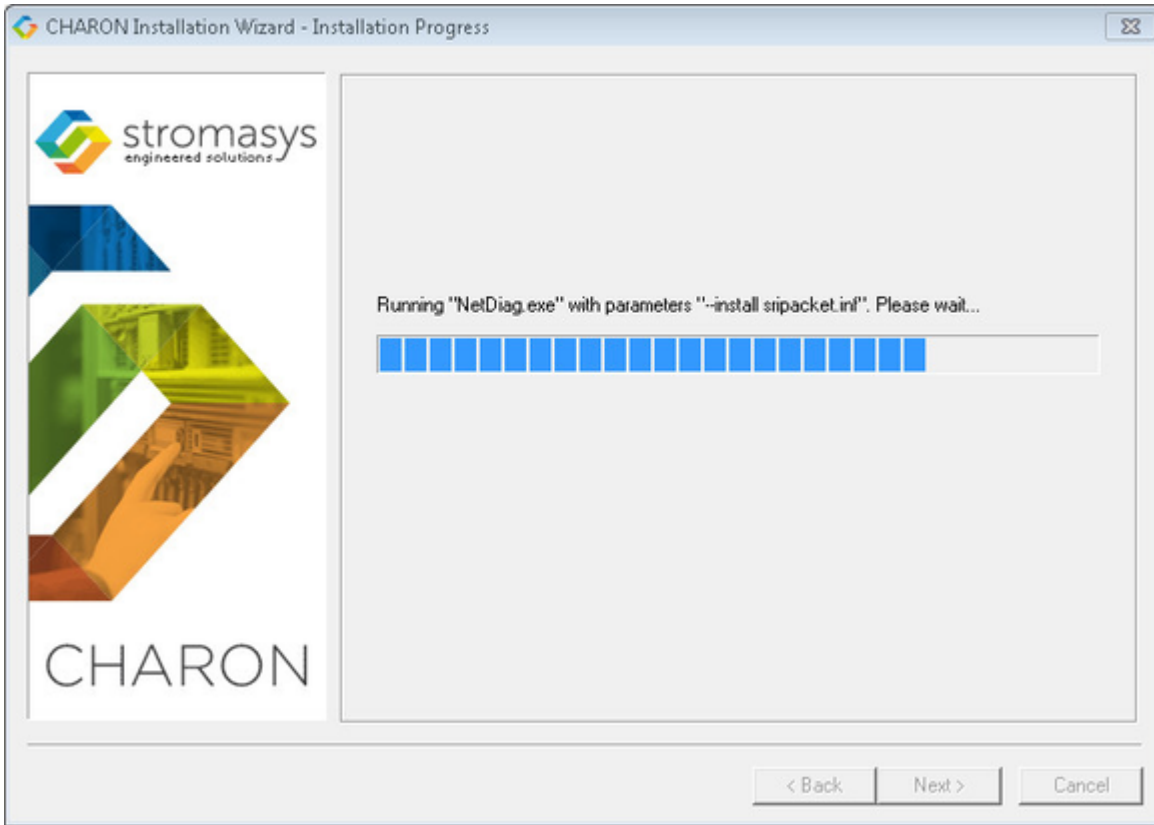


⚠ It is strongly recommended to leave the selection as it is unless you clearly understand what the impact is if you uncheck some modules.



Select a directory to be used for the CHARON installation or use the default. The path can either be entered manually or selected using the "Browse" button.

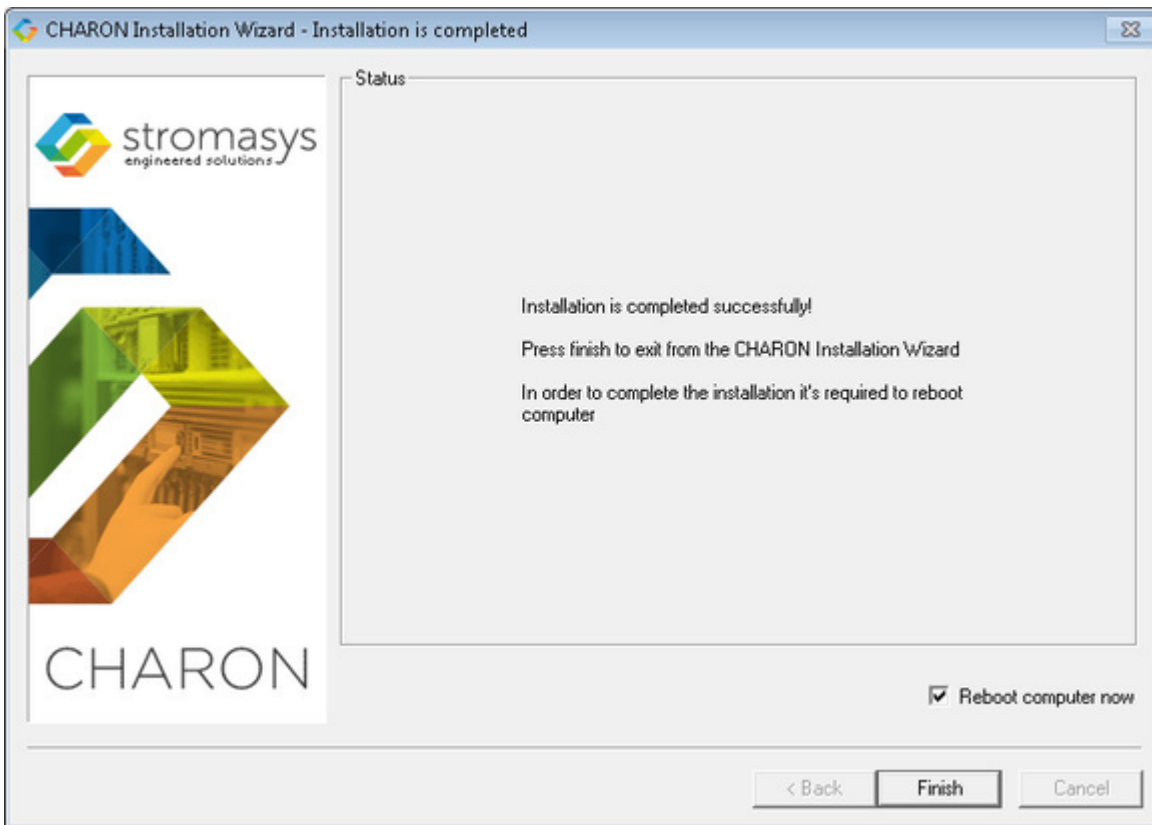
Once done, press the "Next" button to start the installation of the selected components.



During the CHARON installation procedure, you will have to confirm the installation of the CHARON-specific network driver. Press the "Install" button:



Once the installation is done, the following dialog will be displayed:



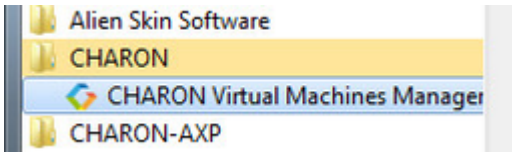
⚠ It is strongly recommended to reboot the CHARON host system immediately: leave the "Reboot computer now" box checked and press the "Finish" button.

Once the host system is up again, you will notice a new shortcut, "CHARON Virtual Machines Manager", created on the desktop during the installation procedure:



The CHARON Virtual Machines Manager is an essential utility for CHARON management. CHARON installation always keeps most up-to-date version of CHARON Virtual Machines Manager provided by all the installed kits.

The CHARON installation procedure creates the following simple structure under the "Start" menu:



[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CHARON-AXP home directory

By default CHARON-AXP is installed in the "C:\Program Files\CHARON" directory. It has the following sub-directories:

Directory	Description
Build_XXX\x64	Contains product executables and libraries
Drivers	Contains the CHARON drivers
InstallShell	Contains the CHARON installation procedure executables
Logs	Contains the CHARON installation log
Redistributables	Contains the redistributables needed for CHARON running (already installed)
Virtual Machines Manager	Contains the most up-to-date version of CHARON Virtual Machines Manager
Virtual Machine Templates	Contains templates for creating CHARON Virtual Machines
Virtual Machines	Contains the CHARON Virtual Machines
Virtual Disk Images	Contains the CHARON virtual disk images, for example "idle_vms_pkg_v3.0"

The "Virtual Machine Templates" directory contains template configuration files to build CHARON virtual machines using the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager. We will focus our attention on this subject in the next chapter.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

License installation

Regular HASP USB dongle

If the CHARON license is stored on a regular USB dongle, just connect it to a host USB port.

If the CHARON host is accessed remotely, please note that the contents of a regular HASP license cannot be displayed using RDP. ILO or iDRAC, some other console-capable program must be used.

Network HASP USB dongle

If the CHARON license is a network license (red USB dongle), it is possible either to connect it to the host USB port (to use it locally and provide it to other hosts on the local network at the same time) or to install it on a local network "license server" for remote access from this particular host.

If a remote license server is to be used:

- Copy the file "hasp_install\Sentinel_LDK_Run-time_cmd_line_X.XX.zip" from the CHARON distribution to any directory on the server, for example "C:\Temp".
- Extract the contents of this archive to the same directory.
- Login as "Administrator" on the server and open "cmd.exe" from the "Start" menu.
- Switch to that directory.
- Install the extracted file:
Example:

```
...> cd c:\temp
c:\temp> haspdinst.exe -fr -kp -nomsg
c:\temp> haspdinst.exe -install -cm
```

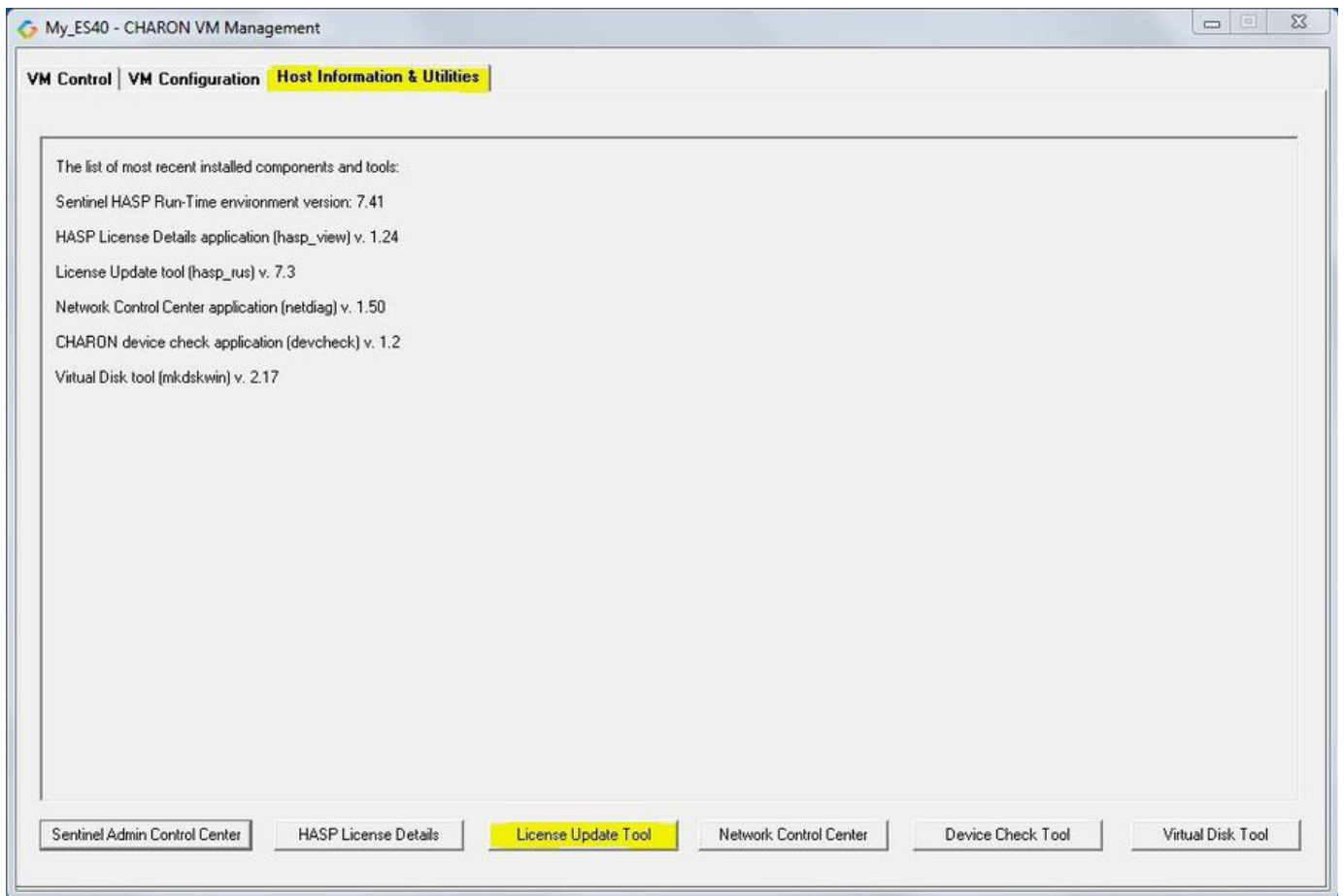
- Connect the network HASP dongle to the server USB port.

Network HASP (red dongles) licenses have no restrictions with respect to remote access.

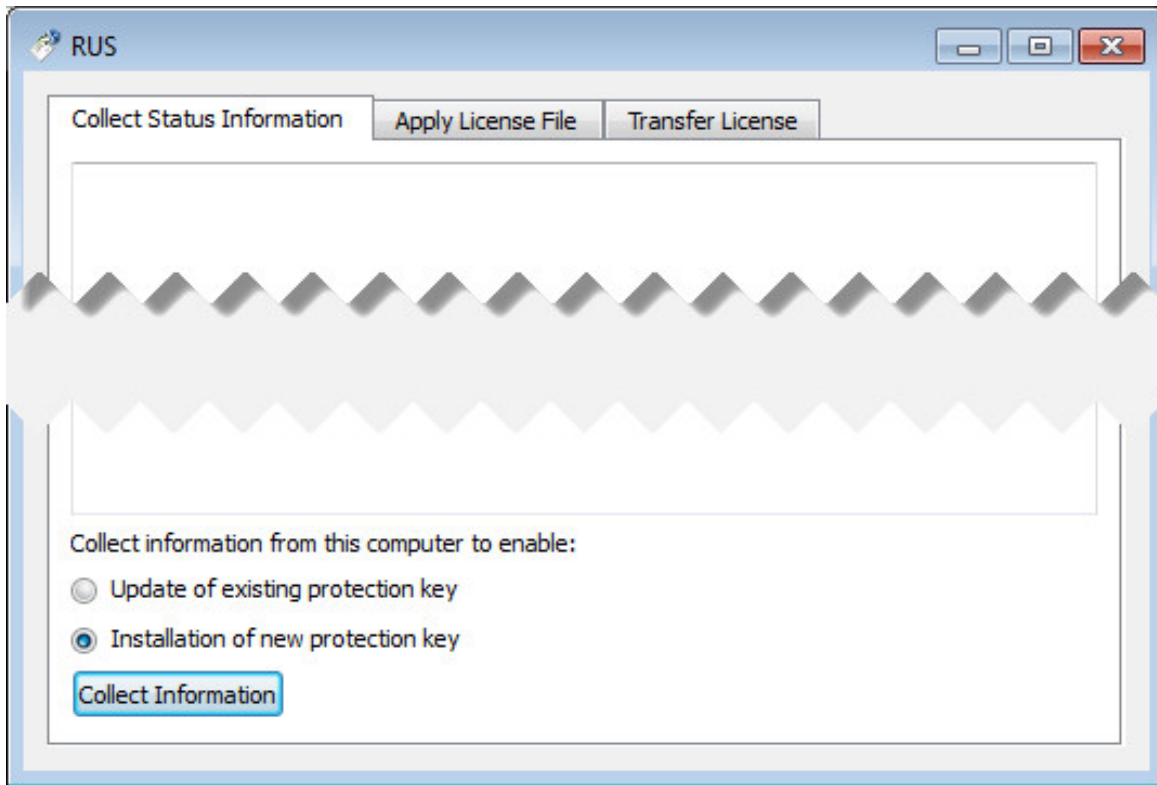
Software license

If the CHARON license is a software license (SL), it is installed on the host using the following procedure:

1. Double click the "CHARON Virtual Machines Manager" icon on the desktop or select this utility in the tray menu; select the "Host Information and Utilities" section and press the "License Update Tool" button:

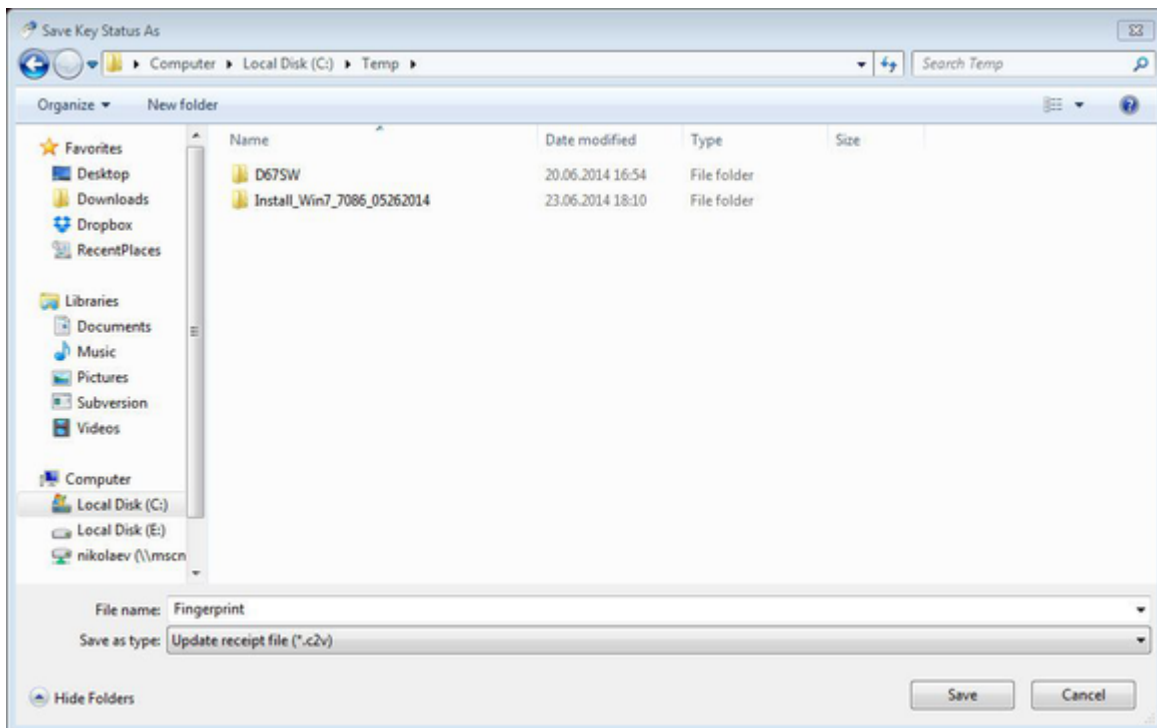


The following default dialog window will appear:



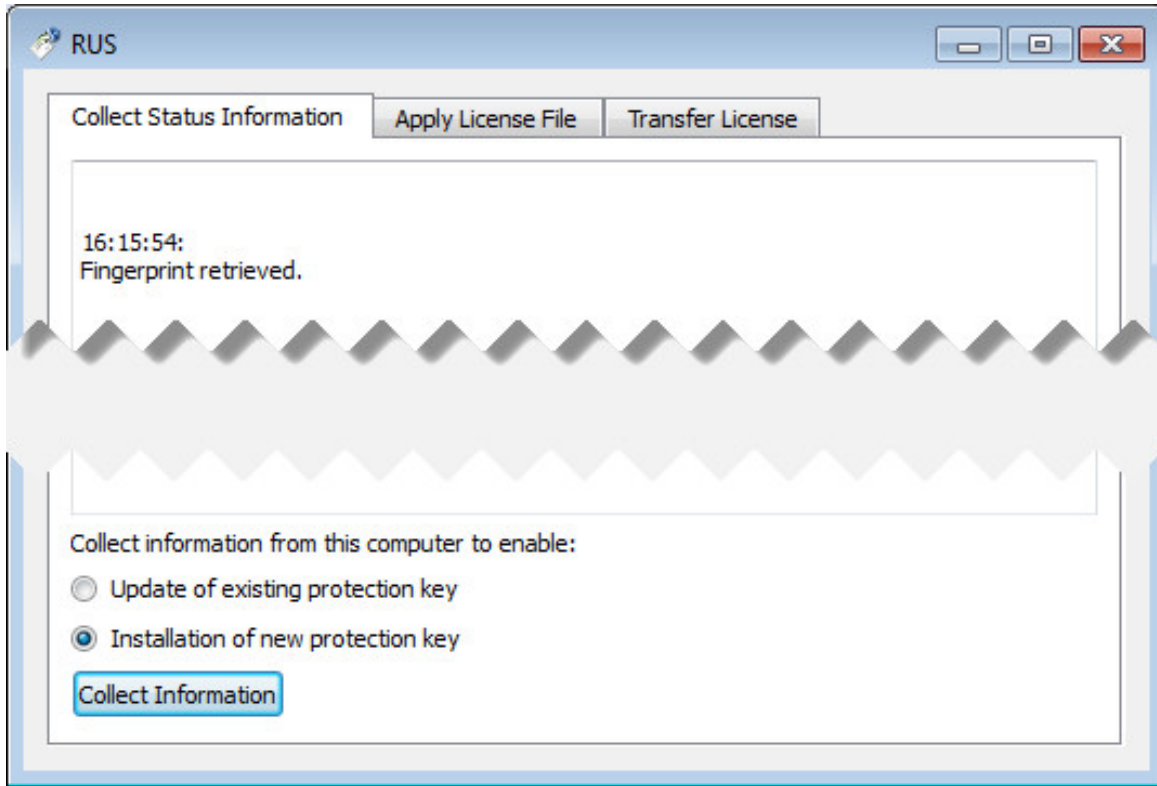
If you're installing a "Provisional" (demo) license, jump to step 5

2. Ensure no license dongle is connected, select the "Installation of new protection key" radio-box and press the "Collect Information" button. The following window will appear:

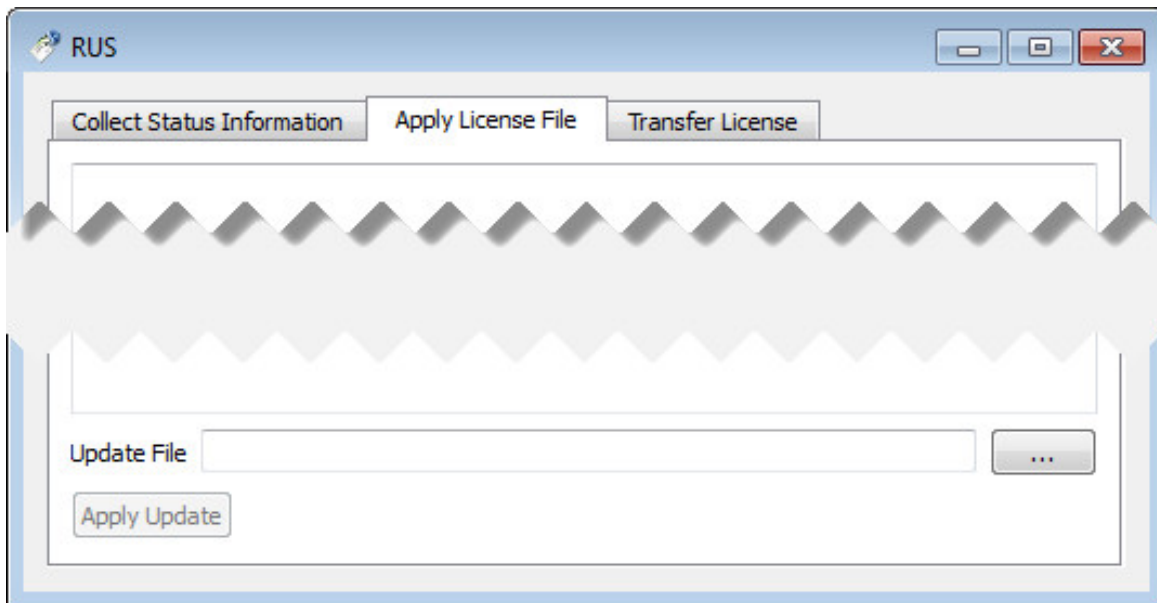


Specify the directory and name of the system "fingerprint" file to be created the press the "Save" button.

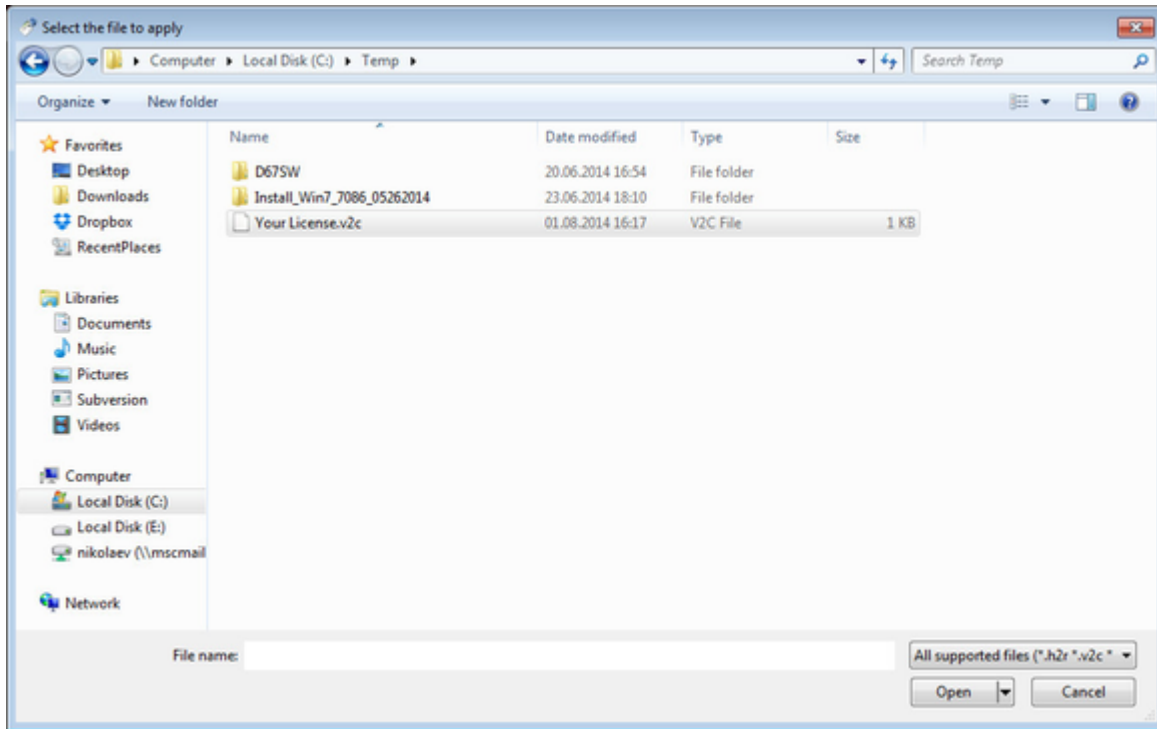
3. The "License Update Service" will save the fingerprint file under the given name and will report the status:



4. Send the resulting file to STROMASYS. In return STROMASYS will provide you with a ".v2c" file, for example "Your License.v2c".
5. Copy the received v2c file to the CHARON host in a folder of your choice and select the "Apply License File" tab:



6. Press the "..." button and browse for the received v2c file.
Example:



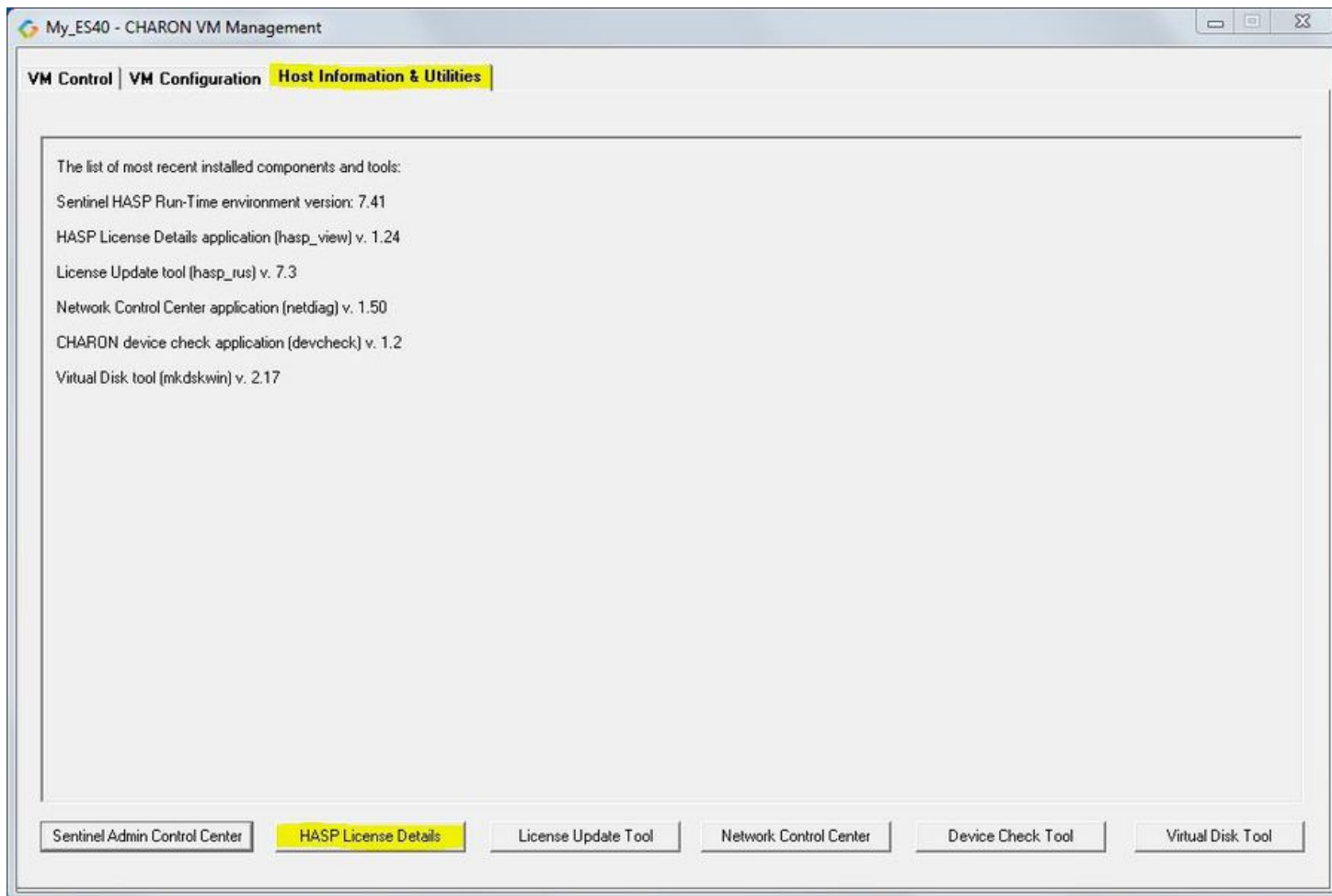
Press the "Open" button to apply the license.

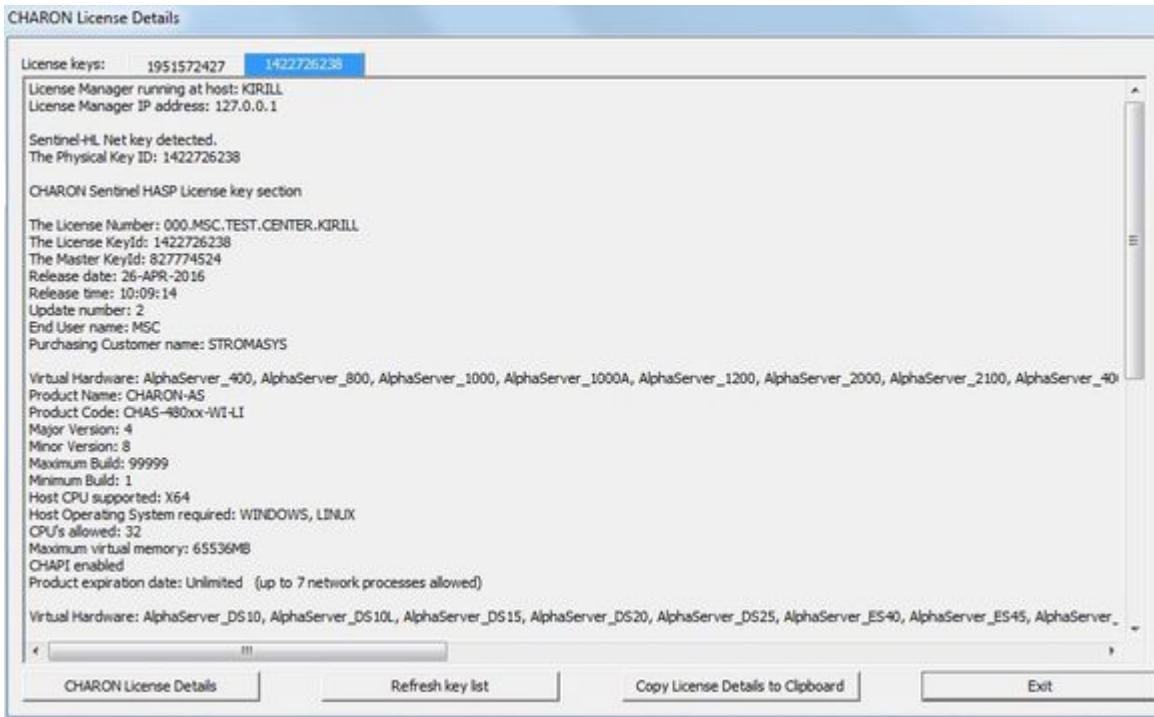
7. From the "CHARON Virtual Machines Manager" utility (see above) select the "Host Information and Utilities" section and press the "Sentinel Admin Control Center" button or (optionally) invoke the system default web browser and enter the URL <http://localhost:1947> to display the "**Sentinel Admin Control Center**" (**ACC**) web interface. This interface allows you to view and manage the CHARON licenses.
8. Ensure that the software license is now visible in the "**Sentinel Keys**" section of the **ACC**.

Software licenses are always network licenses. Hence, they have no restrictions with respect to being displayed or accessed via a remote connection.

License validity verification

Check the CHARON license validity by invoking the "Charon License Details" utility to make sure that the CHARON license is visible and is correct. Double click the "CHARON Virtual Machines Manager" icon on the desktop or select this utility in the tray menu; select the "Host Information and Utilities" section and press the "HASP License Details" button:





- Verify the the license content is displayed correctly and no error message is shown
- Verify the content of the license looks correct. Check for example the license number, the major and minor versions, the minimum and maximum build numbers, the CHARON-AXP products and allowed hardware (CHARON-AXP models). More details on the license content can be found in the CHARON-AXP Licensing chapter of this Guide.

Troubleshooting

If the CHARON license content cannot be displayed by the "CHARON License Details" utility or is incorrect, check that the license is available and correctly used:

1. From the "CHARON Virtual Machines Manager" utility (see above) select the "Host Information and Utilities" section and press the "Sentinel Admin Control Center" button or (optionally) invoke the system default web browser and enter the URL <http://localhost:1947> to display the "Sentinel Admin Control Center" (ACC) web interface.
2. Click on the "Sentinel Keys" link to open up the "Sentinel Keys Section" page
3. Make sure that one and only one CHARON HASP or SL license is present.

Problem	Action
No license is displayed	Make sure that all the recommendations above about remote access to the host are fulfilled (if remote access takes place) and the HASP USB key is not broken and its LED indicator is lit (meaning that it is used by the host).
Only one License key / SL is seen and its content is incorrect	Contact STROMASYS to request a new license update.
Several License keys / SLs are displayed	Remove all of them except the one provided by STROMASYS for the installed version of CHARON.

Removing licenses can be done by physical disconnection of the corresponding USB HASP keys from the CHARON host and physical disconnection of the network HASP keys from all hosts on a local network (or by disabling remote access to network licenses from the CHARON host - see detailed explanation below).

Software licenses can also be uninstalled using the method, described in the "Removing CHARON-AXP Software Licenses" chapter of this Guide

It is also possible to disable access to network licenses if only a local license is to be used: open the Sentinel ACC and click on the "Configuration" link to open up the "Configuration for Sentinel Manager" page.

Uncheck the "Allow Access to Remote Licenses" and the "Broadcast Search for Remote Licenses" checkboxes from the "Access to Remote License Managers" tab then press the "Submit" button to apply changes.

It is possible to have several licenses available to CHARON-AXP at the same time. In this case you have to specify in the CHARON-AXP configuration file the license key ids to be used.

Example:

```
set session license_key_id[0]=1877752571
```

It is also possible to have one "main" and one "backup" license in case the main license becomes unavailable:

```
set session license_key_id[0]=1877752571 license_key_id[1]=354850588
```

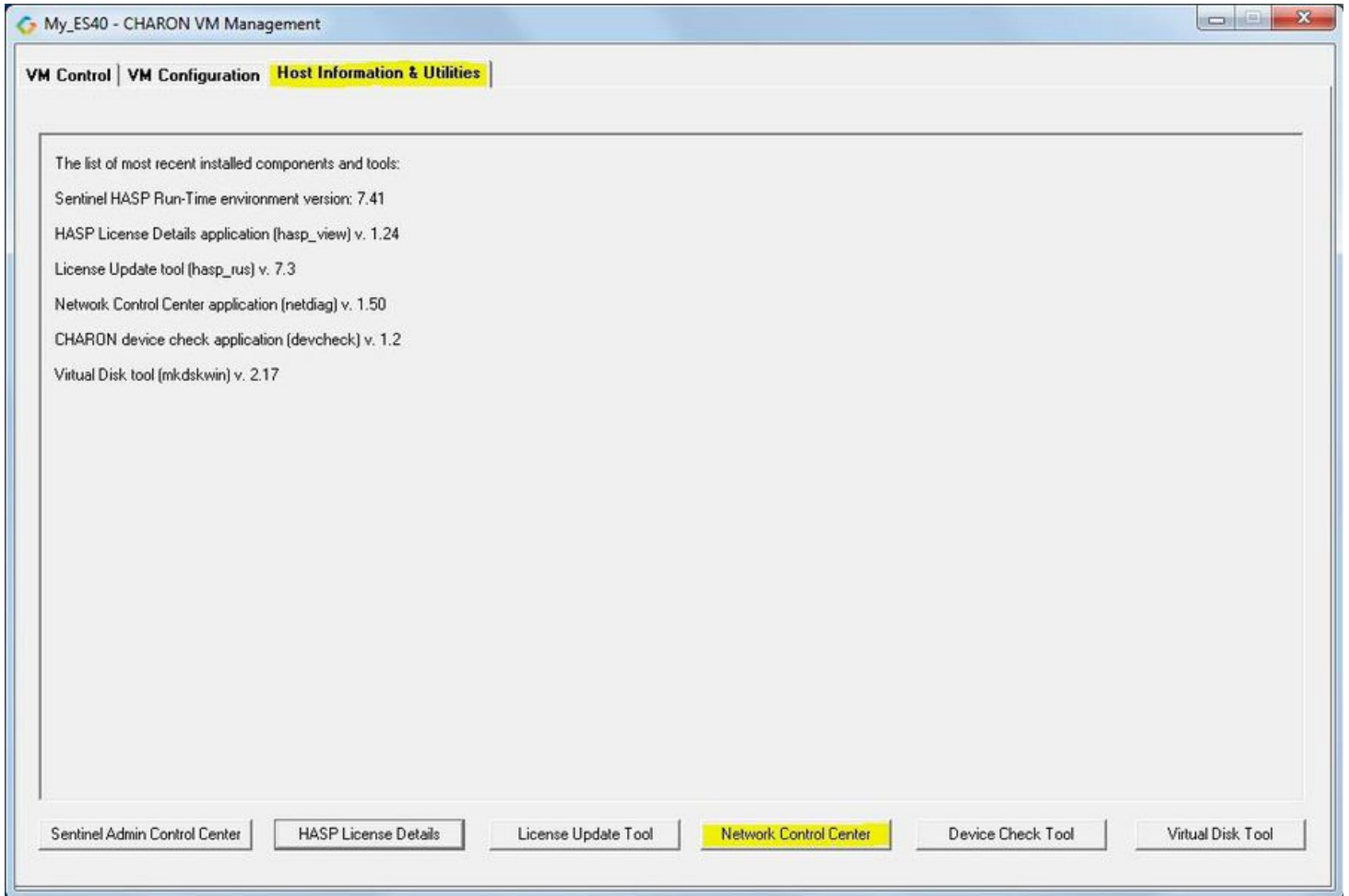
CHARON-AXP checks its licenses from time to time starting with the main license. If it is not available, it attempts to access the backup license.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

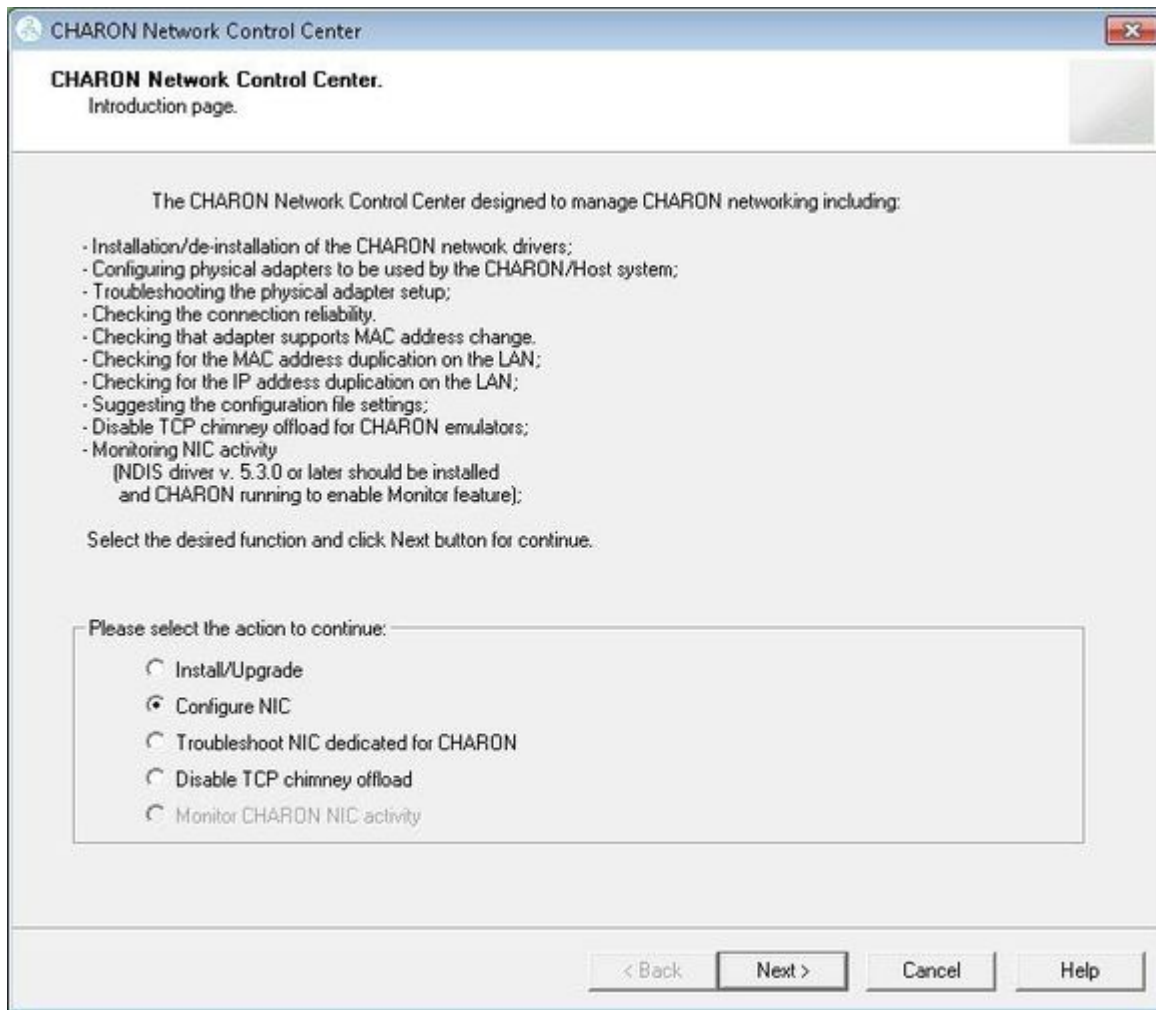
Network configuration

If the CHARON virtual machine needs access to the network, one or more dedicated network interfaces cleared from any other protocols including TCP/IP will have to be defined.

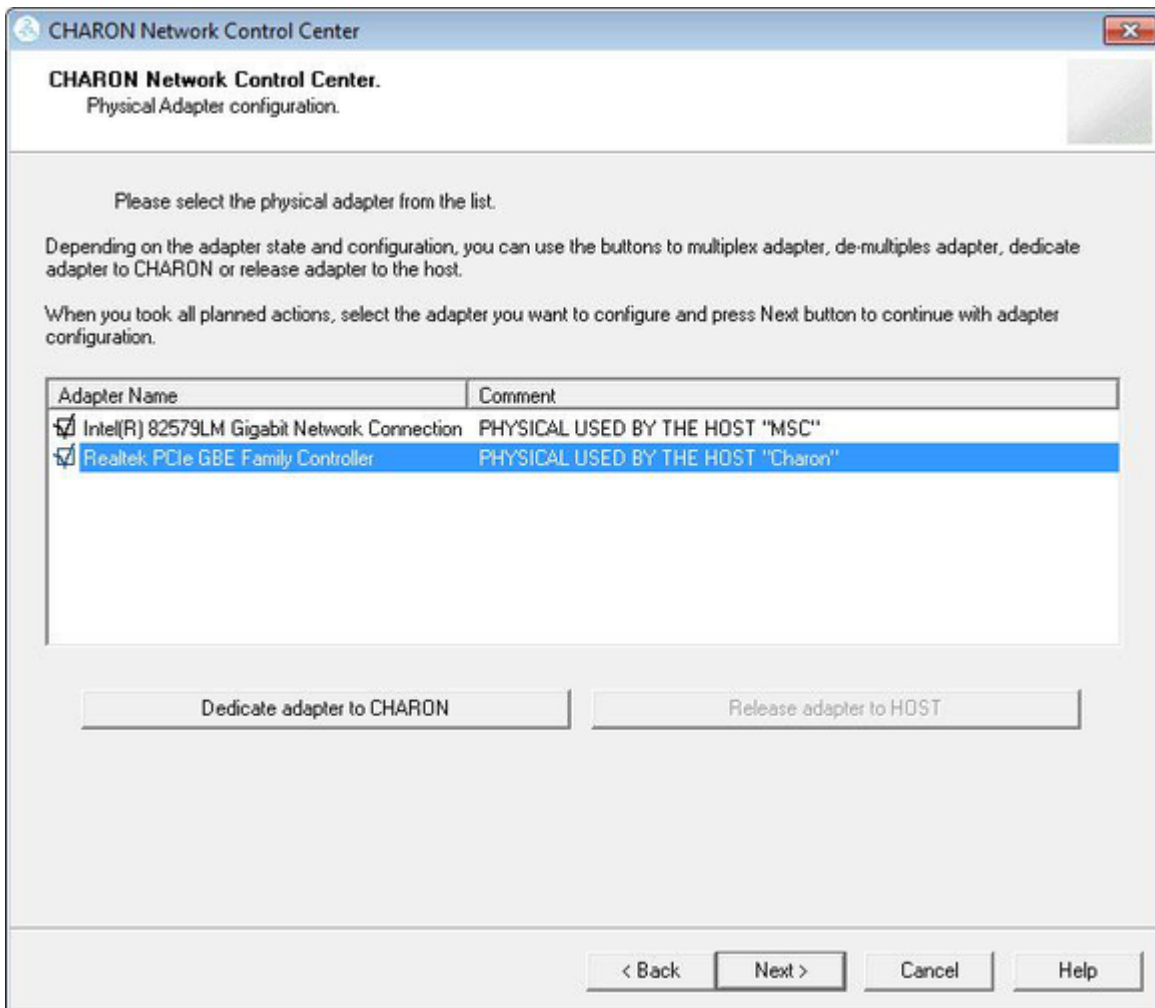
Configuring the network is done with the "Network Control Center" (NCC) utility. Double click the "CHARON Virtual Machines Manager" icon on the desktop or select this utility in the tray menu; select the "Host Information and Utilities" section and press the "Network Control Center" button:



In the appearing dialog, select "Configure NIC":



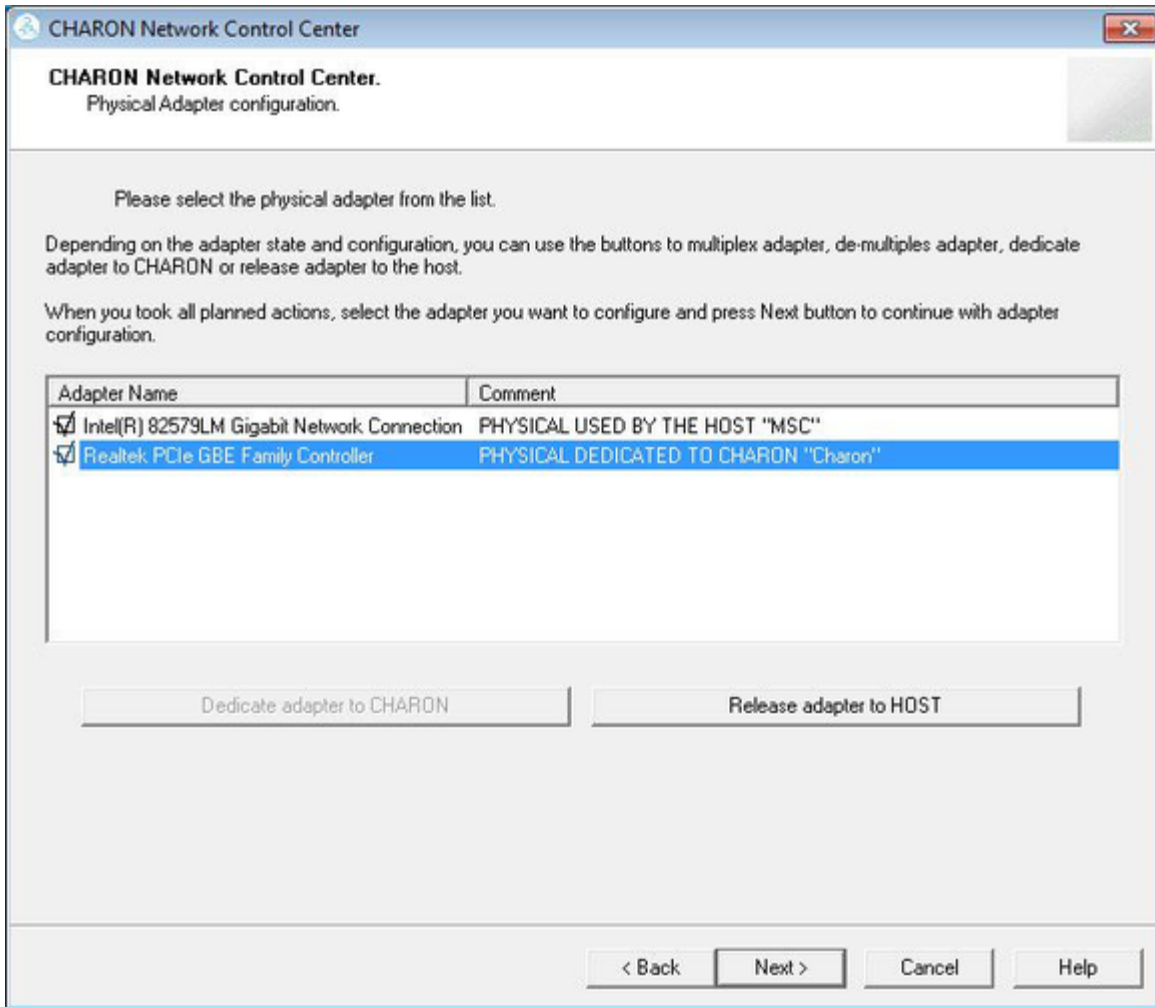
Press the "Next" button, the following dialog will appear:



Select the interface to be dedicated to CHARON (in our example it is Realtek PCIe GBE Family Controller named "Charon") and press the "Dedicate adapter to CHARON" button.

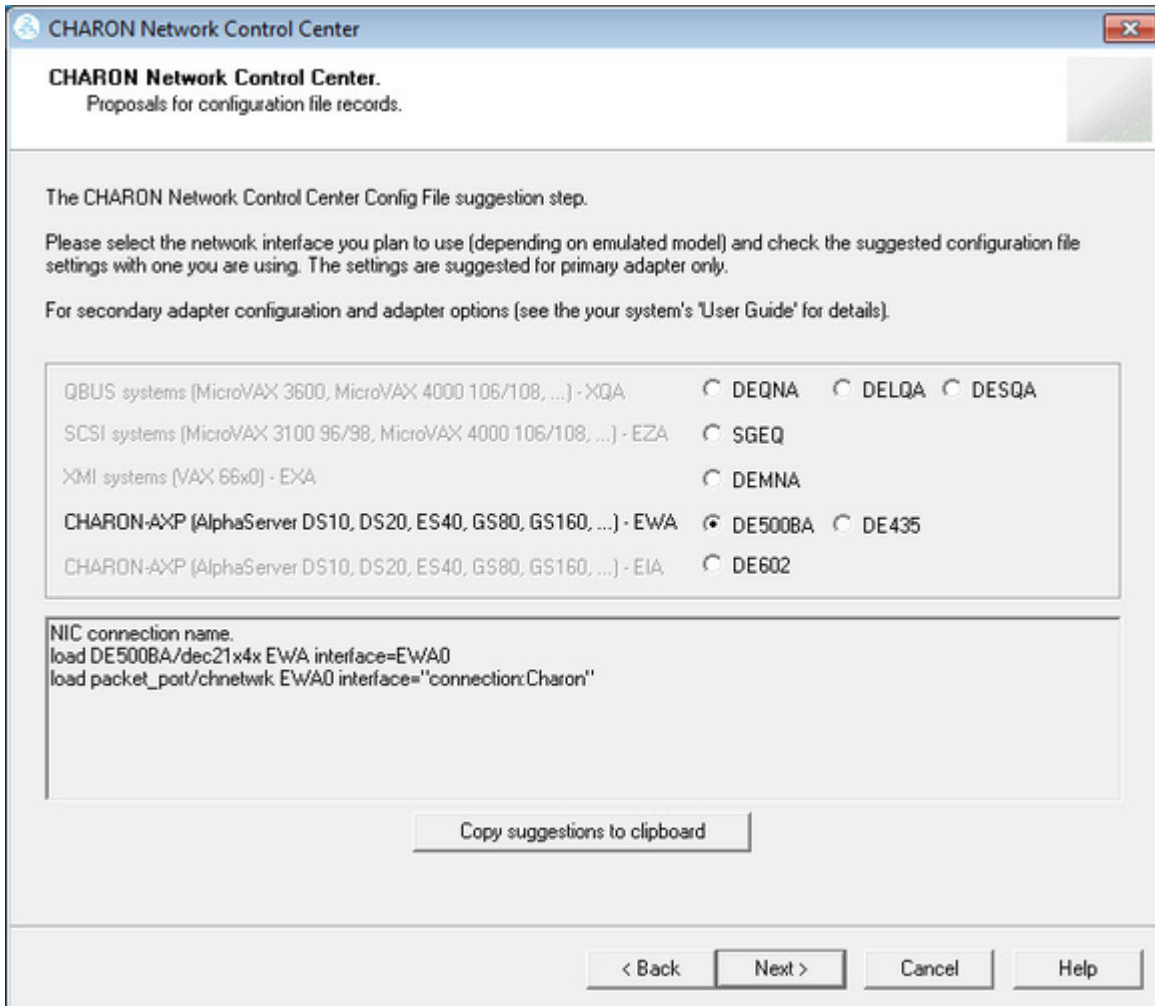
CHARON supports VLAN adapters. If you are going to use them, proceed with their installation and configuration according to the network adapter vendor User's Guide and then select the VLAN interface in the dialog shown above, the same as you would for a regular network interface. There is no difference in configuring a regular network adapter and a VLAN one, so all the provided instructions are fully applicable for VLAN adapters as well.

After a few seconds the chosen interface will be assigned to CHARON:



i It is possible to release the interface back to the CHARON host by selecting the target interface and pressing the "Release adapter to HOST" button.

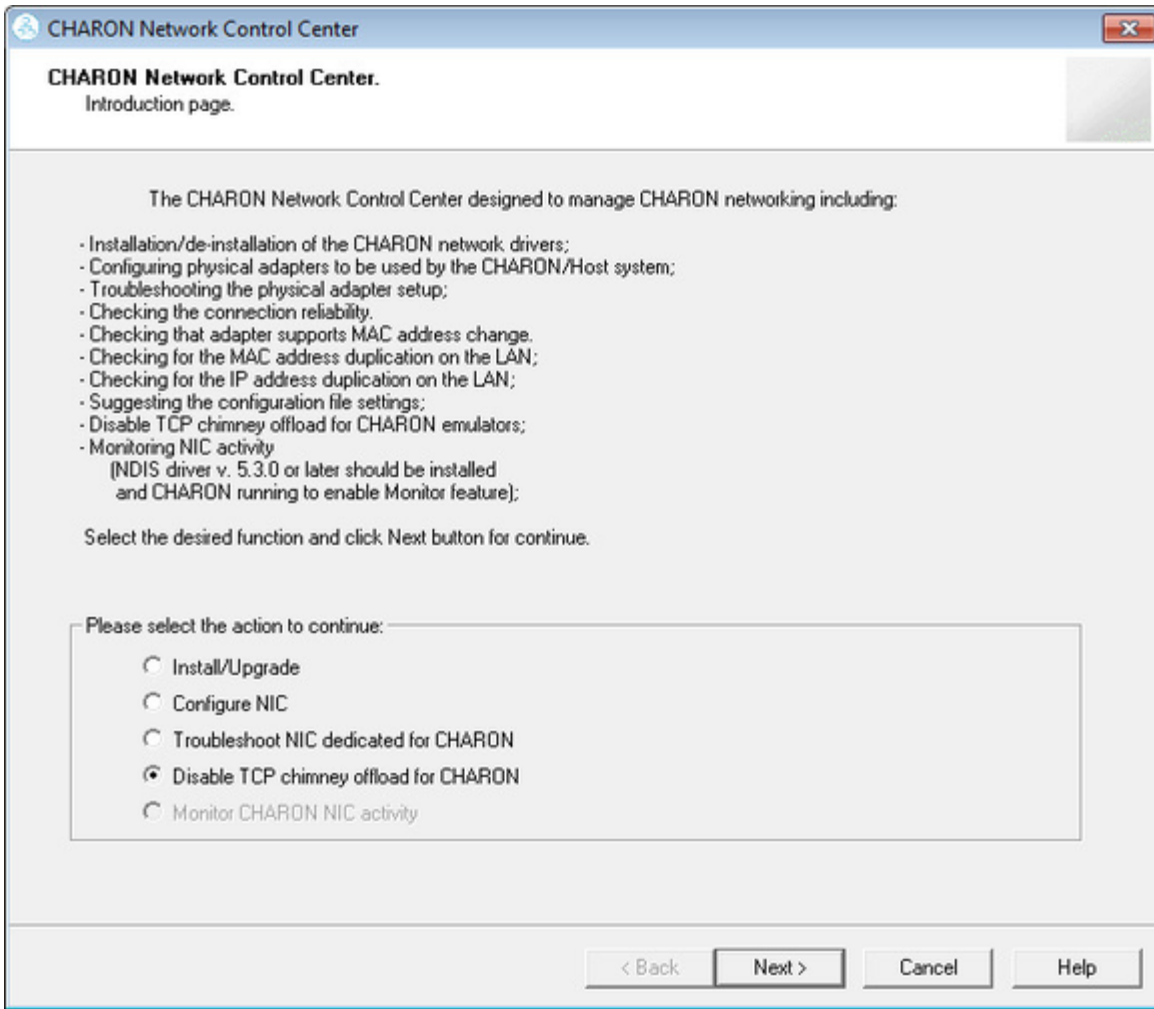
The next step displays the text to be included in the CHARON configuration file for the interface dedicated to CHARON. Select the target interface and press the "Next" button. The following dialog will appear:



Selecting the target emulated network interface displays the configuration lines specific for the selected CHARON host network interface. Press the "Copy suggestions to clipboard" button to copy the suggested configuration lines. They can be pasted into the CHARON-AXP configuration file during the next editing session by pressing "Ctrl-V".

Press the "Cancel" button to exit from the "Network Control Center" utility.

Restart the "Network Control Center" utility again and select "Disable TCP chimney offload for CHARON":



Press the "Next" button to apply the "offload" parameters settings.

Press the "Cancel" button to exit from the "Network Control Center" utility.

⚠ When the NIC properties are configured in Windows, a reboot of the CHARON host is required for the changes, specifically "offload" parameters, to take effect.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

After installation

If you plan to use the local system administrator account ("Administrator") or the CHARON-AXP user having administrative privileges, no other actions are required.

If the CHARON-AXP user belongs to some domain, you have to add this user to the CHARON-GRP group as described in [this article](#) and then reboot the CHARON host.

Otherwise it is possible to use a standard account (both local and domain) for running CHARON-AXP:

1. Login as the local system administrator ("Administrator") on the host system.
2. Create a special user for running CHARON-AXP. This user must have standard privileges. Please consult with your Windows User's Guide on details.
3. Add this user to the CHARON-GRP group as it is described in [this article](#) and then reboot CHARON host.
4. Login as the created user.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Running and managing CHARON-AXP for Windows

Table of Contents

- Starting CHARON Virtual Machines Manager
- Creating a CHARON Virtual Machine
 - Creating a CHARON VM using provided templates
 - Creating a CHARON VM using an existing configuration file
- Running a CHARON Virtual Machine
- Stopping a CHARON Virtual Machine
- Removing a CHARON Virtual Machine
- Modifying a CHARON Virtual Machine
 - Exploring CHARON Virtual Machine Home Directory
 - Making a new virtual disk
 - CHARON Virtual Machine configuration file
 - CHARON Virtual Machine startup mode
 - CHARON version to be used for CHARON VM
- Service functions
- Running CHARON utilities

Starting CHARON Virtual Machines Manager

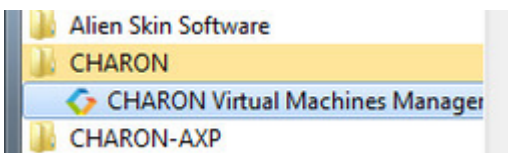
CHARON execution is controlled by the "CHARON Virtual Machines Manager" that manages each CHARON instance, called a "CHARON Virtual Machine", running on the host.

The CHARON installation procedure creates a shortcut on the desktop and under the Windows Start menu for the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager.

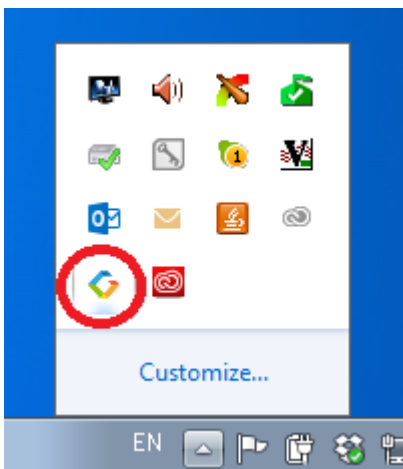
Desktop shortcut:



"Start" menu shortcut:



The CHARON Virtual Machines Manager runs automatically at Windows startup. If it is minimized to tray, it can be re-opened in the following way:



After clicking the shortcuts, the main dialog of CHARON Virtual Machines Manager appears.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

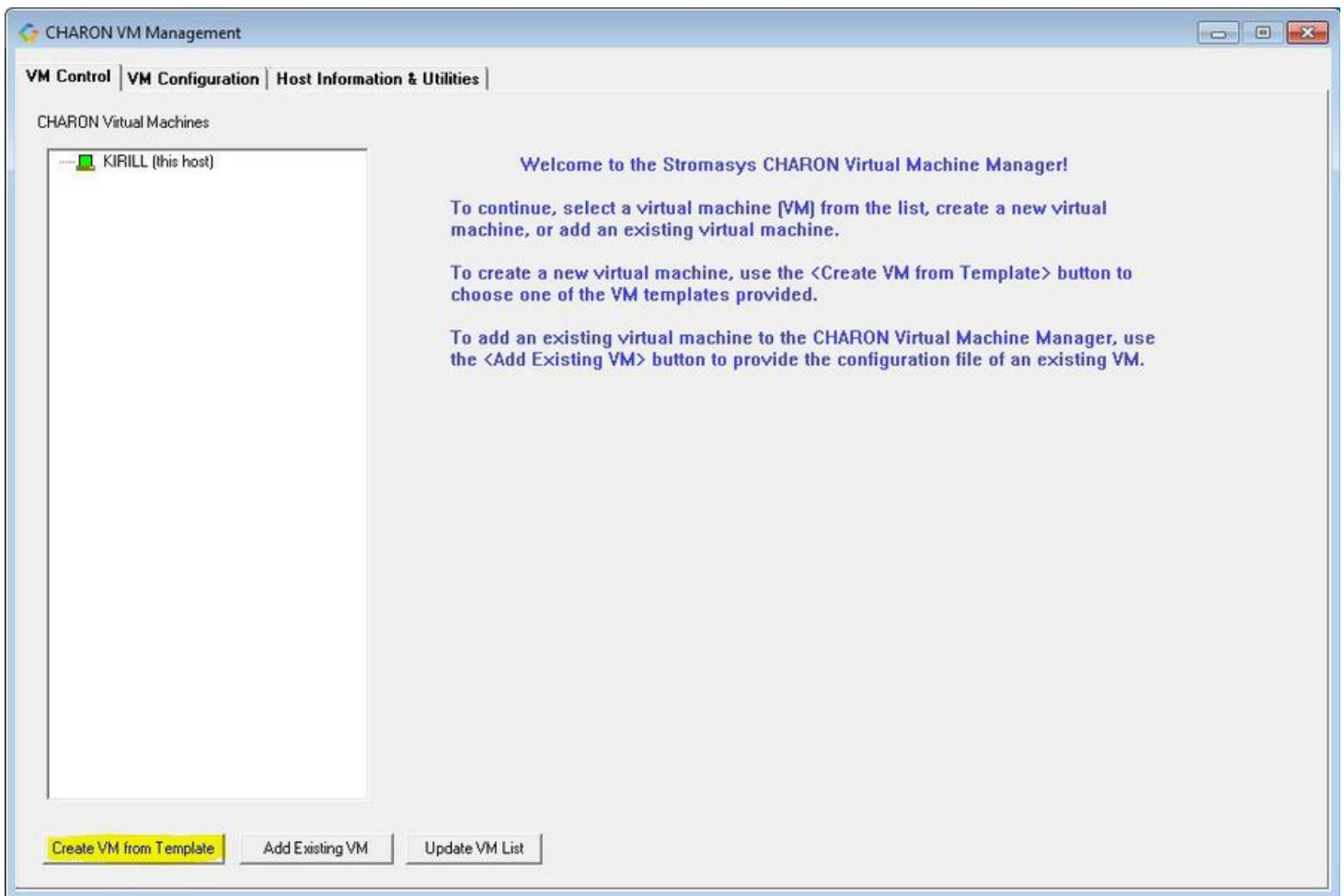
Creating a CHARON Virtual Machine

Creating a CHARON VM using provided templates

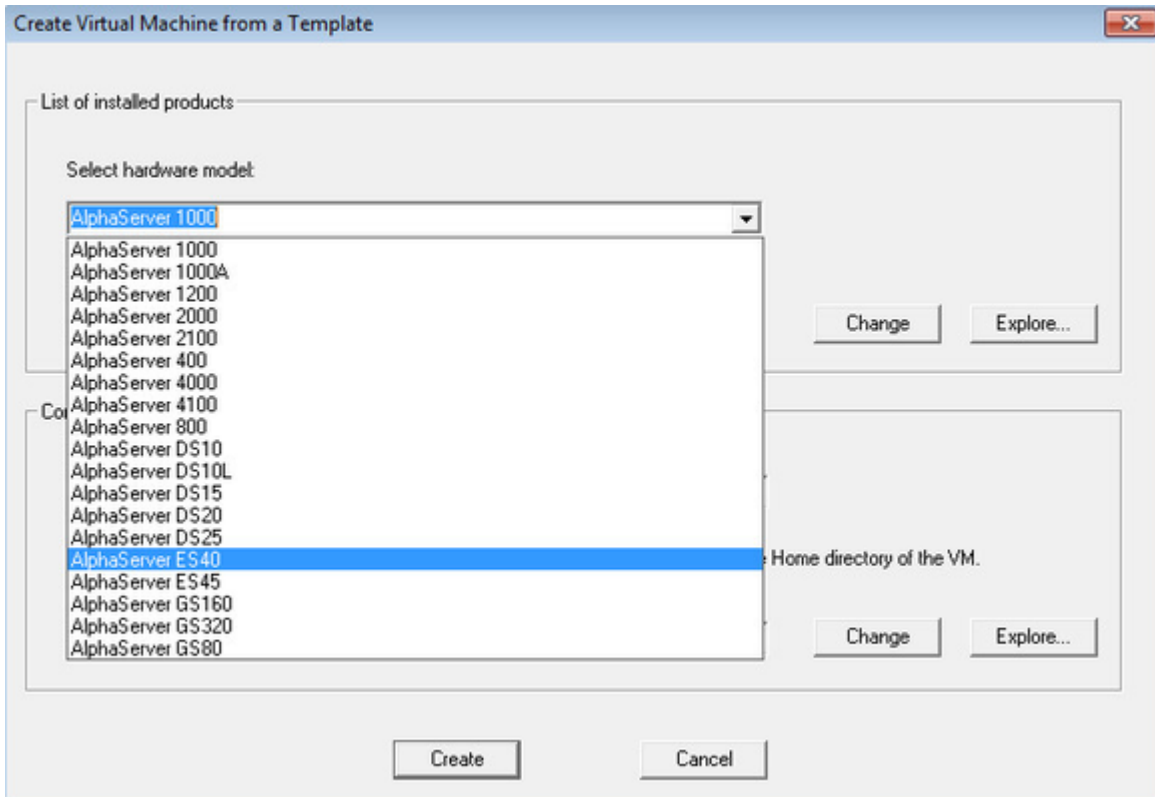
CHARON installation contains a set of template files for creating a base configuration for each AXP model. Once the CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) is created using these templates it can be configured further to meet your requirements and all the specifics of the emulated system.

By default the CHARON templates do not contain any specification for disks and network; you need to update the configuration file created from the template to specify your specific disk and network configuration.

Start the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager (see above) and press the "Create VM from Template" button:

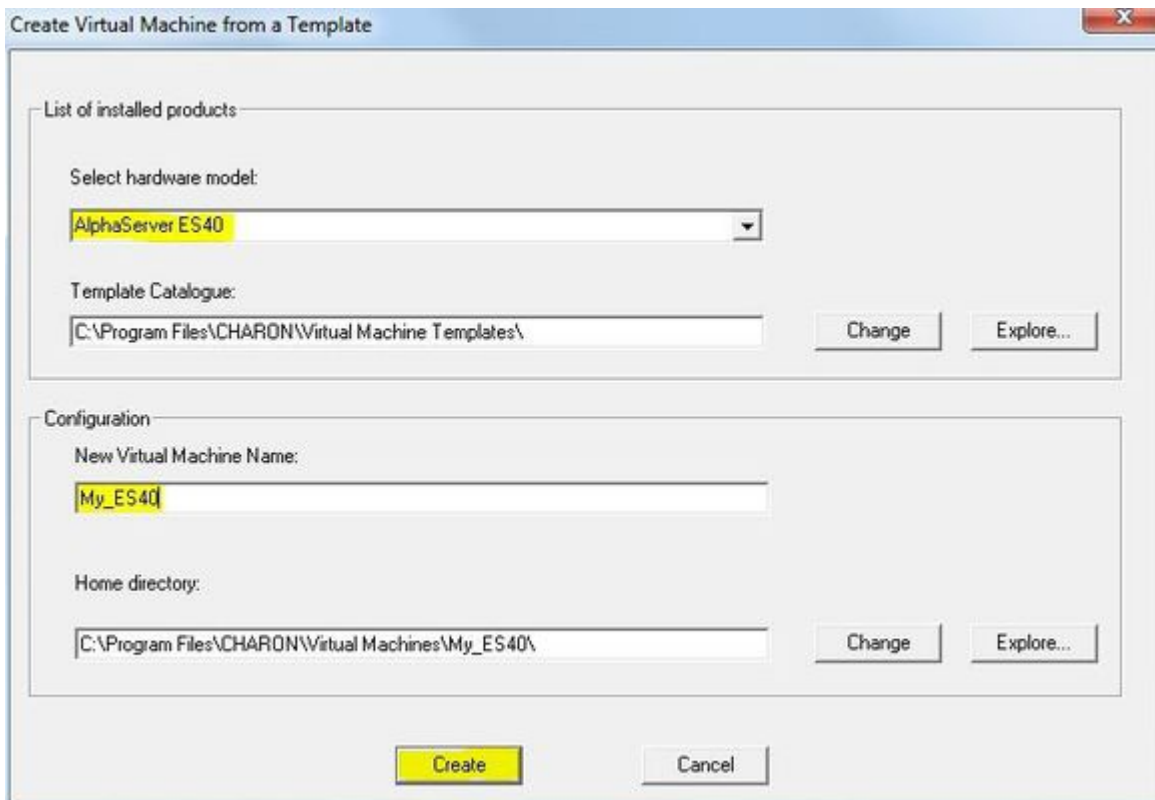


In the appearing dialog select the Alpha hardware model:

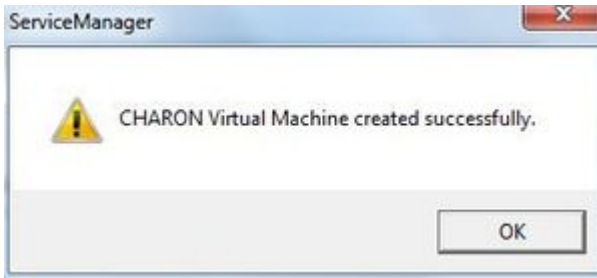


Note the Home Directory for the VM (see screenshot below), it will be used by default for storing logs, virtual disk images, toy and container files if no path is specified in the configuration file.

Specify a name for the VM and press the "Create" button:



The CHARON Virtual Machines Manager will report the VM has been created successfully:



It will then appear in the left pane:

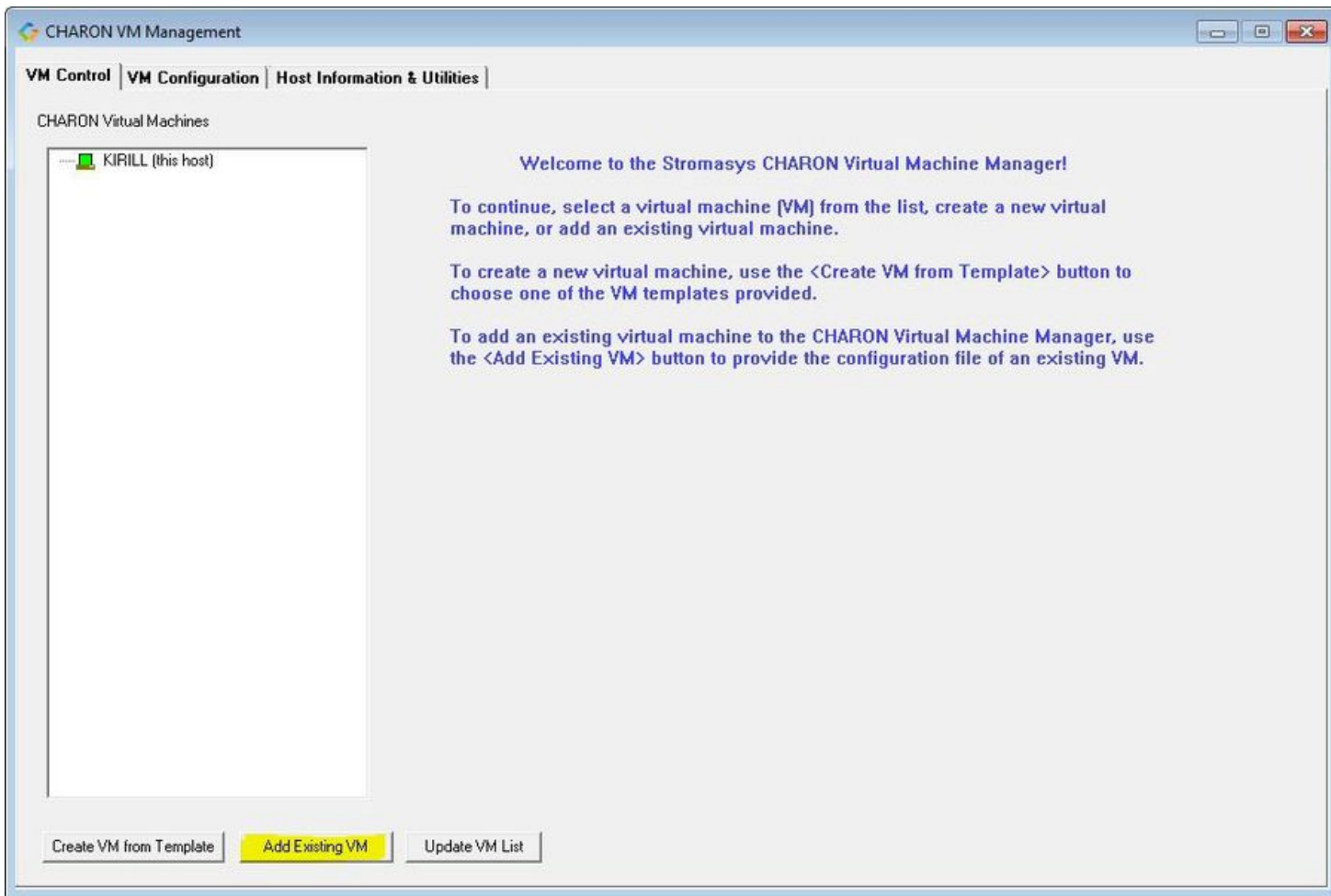


[Back to Table of Contents](#)

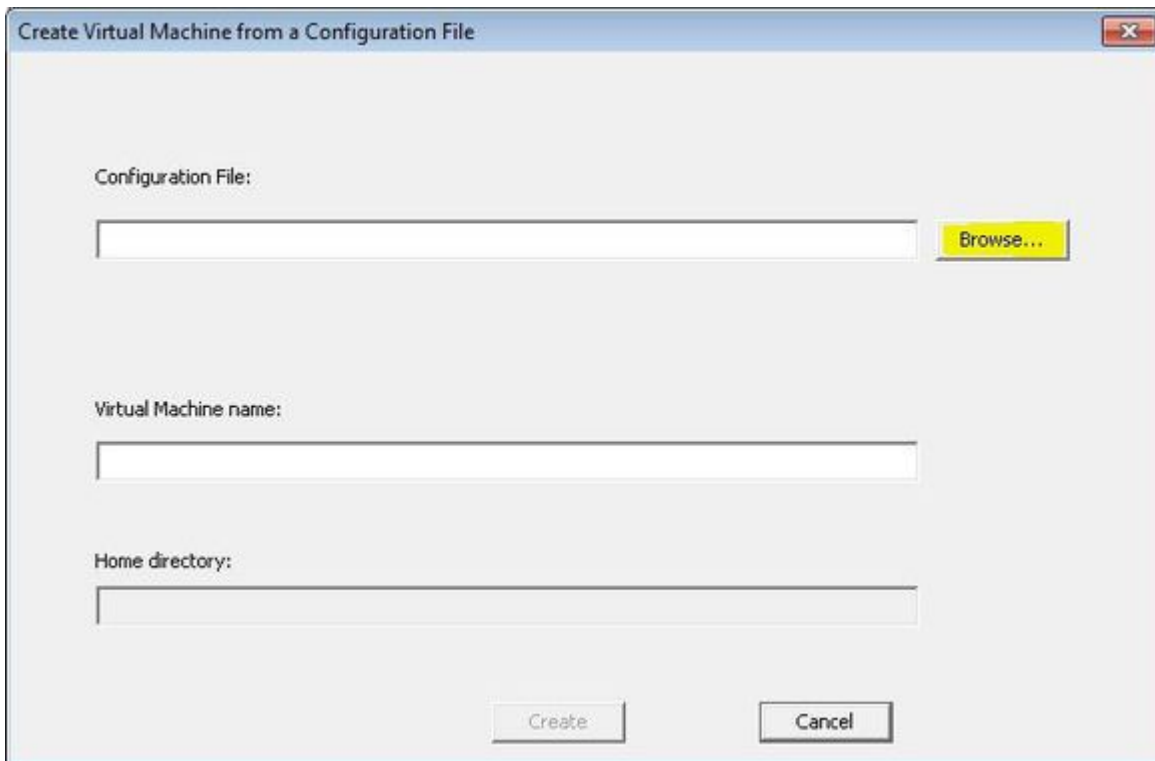
Creating a CHARON VM using an existing configuration file

It is also possible to use an existing configuration file for creating a CHARON Virtual Machine.

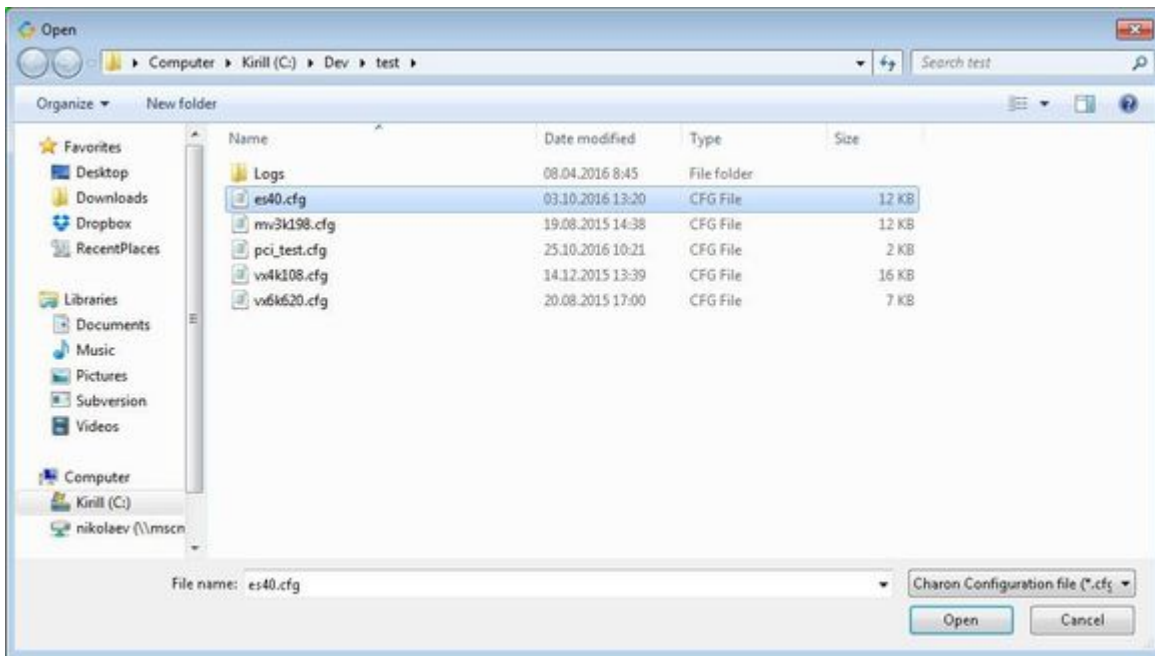
Open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager (see above) and press the "Add Existing VM" button:



In the appearing dialog select the target configuration file by pressing the "Browse" button:

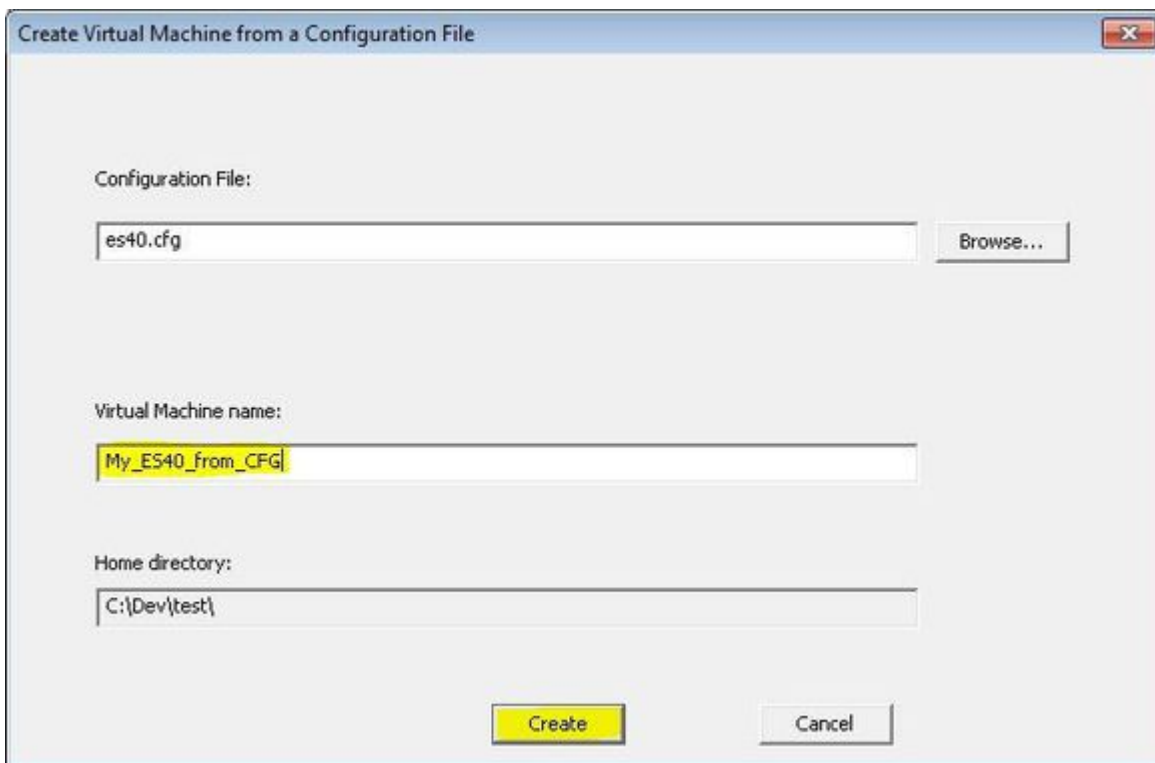


Select the configuration file and press the "Open" button:

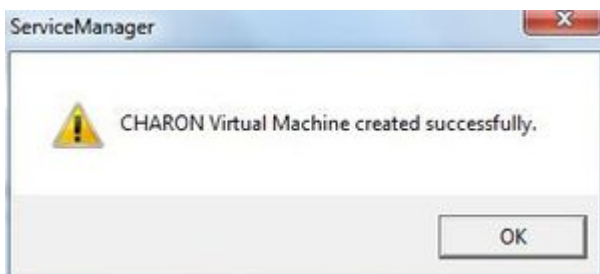


Enter the CHARON Virtual Machine name and note the Home Directory for this VM, it will be used by default for storing logs, virtual disk images, toy and container files if no path is specified in the configuration file.

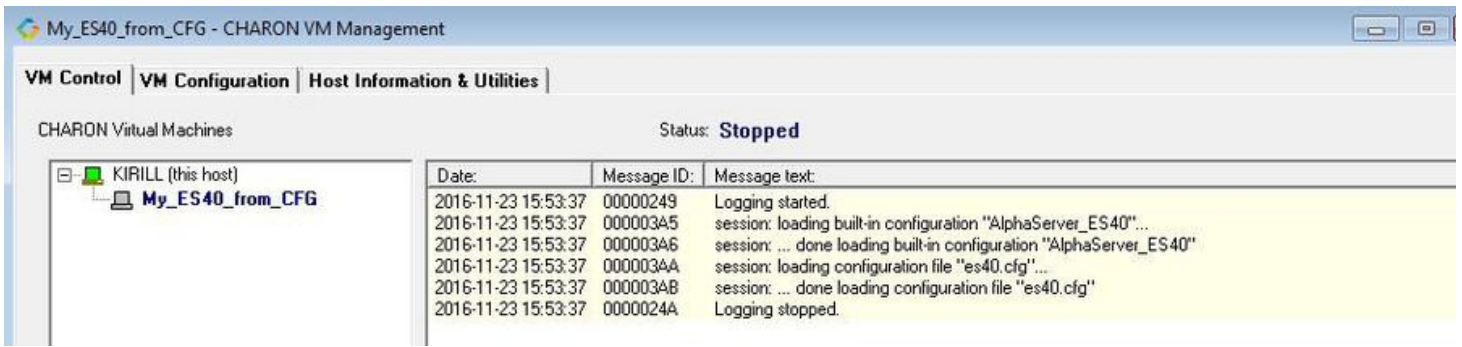
Press the "Create" button:



The CHARON Virtual Machines Manager will report the VM has been created successfully:



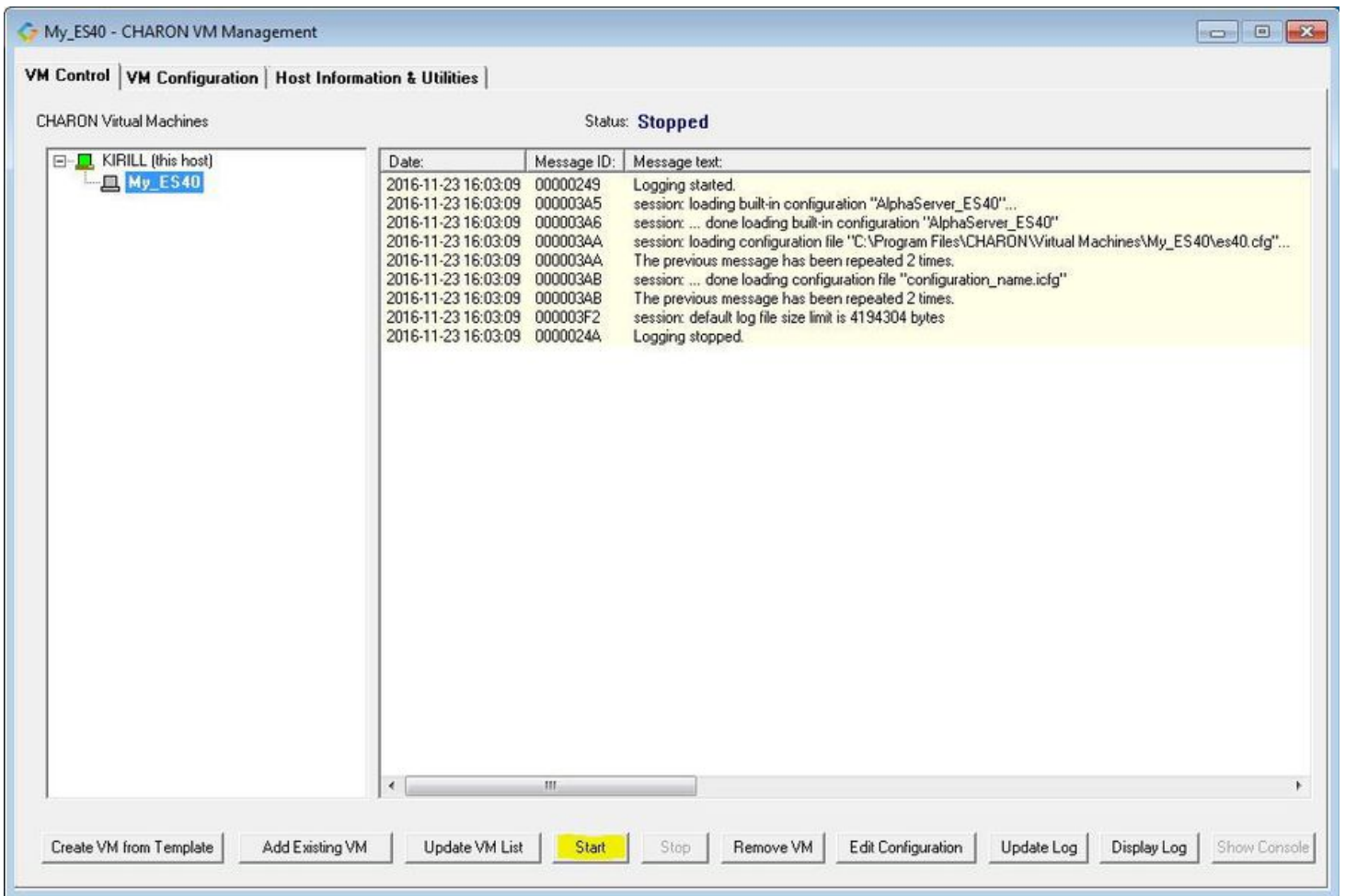
It will then appear in the left pane:



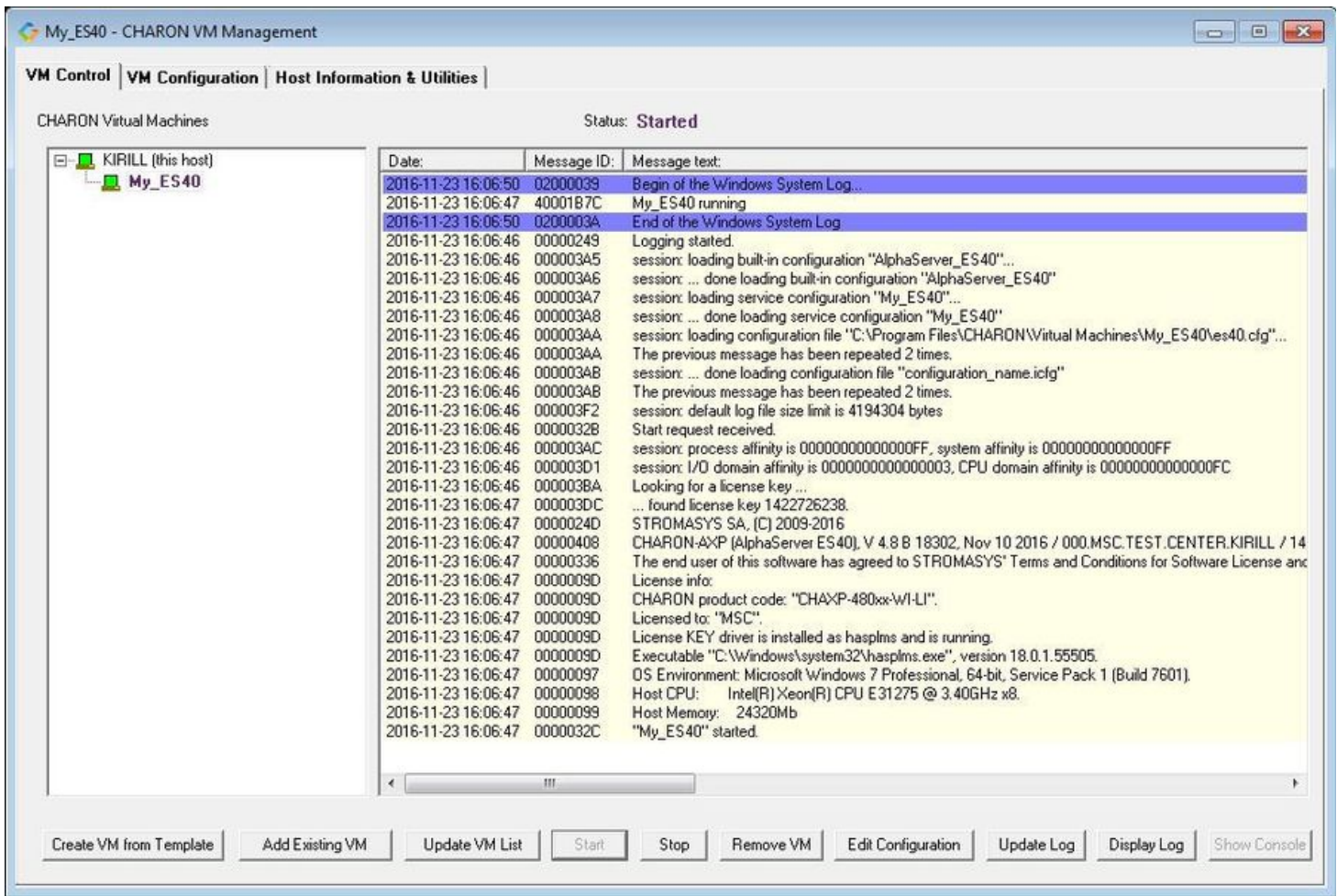
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Running a CHARON Virtual Machine

Select the target CHARON VM in the left pane and press the "Start" button:



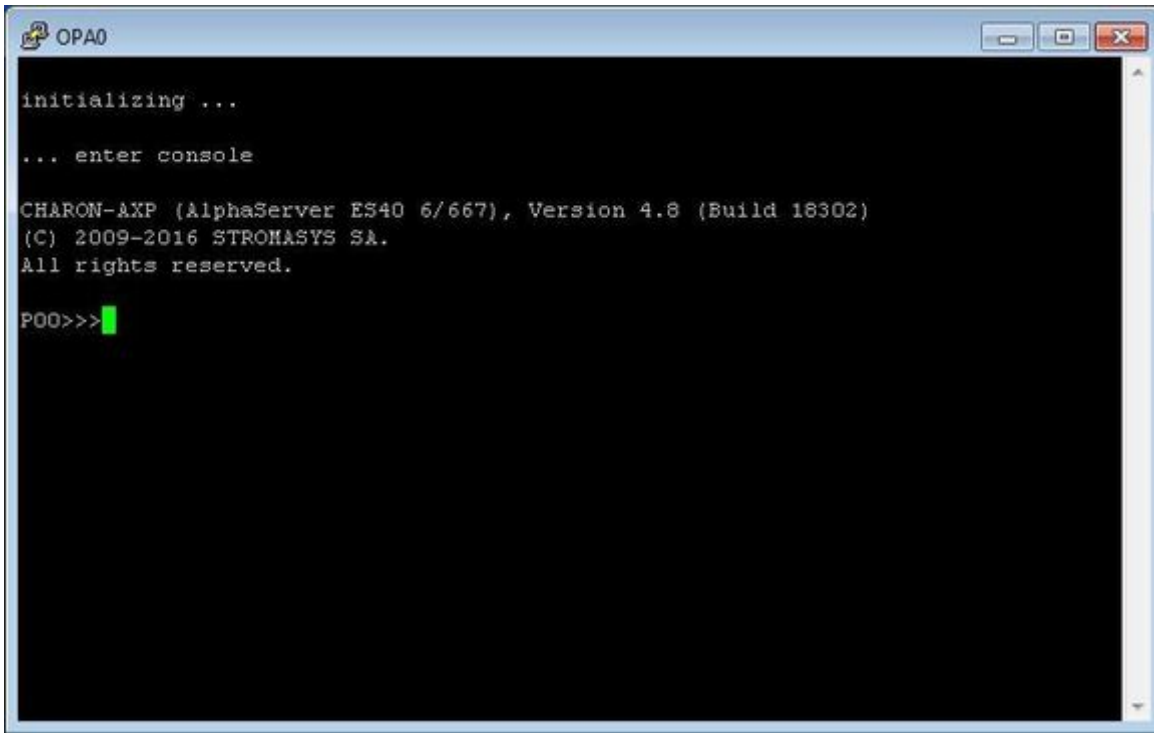
CHARON Virtual Machines Manager will display the execution log:



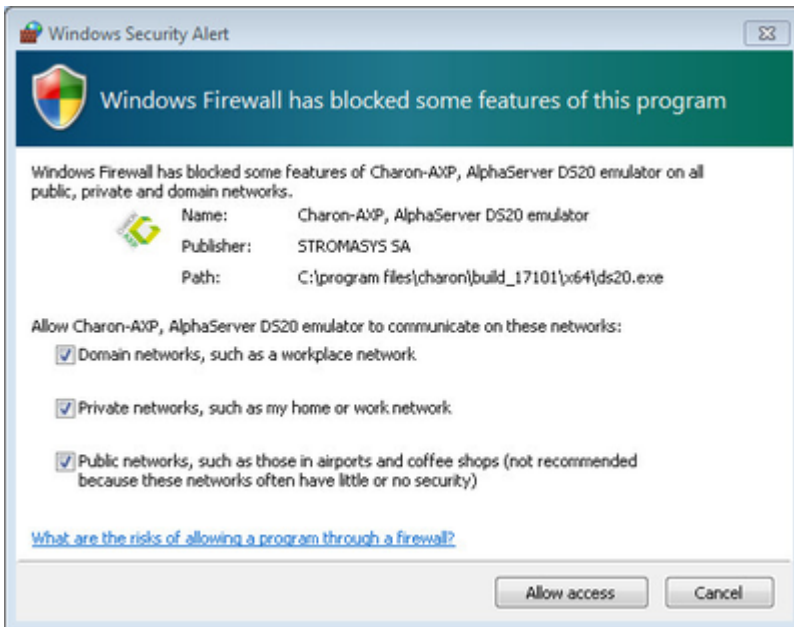
i Note the color meaning:

Colors	Meaning	Example
Red	Error	This is an error message
Light blue	Warning	This is a warning message
Light yellow	Information	This is an informational message
Purple	Begin/End of the Windows system log	Begin / End

The console of this particular CHARON VM will then appear (if defined in the configuration file):

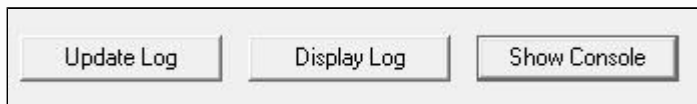


Depending on settings, Windows may display a Firewall warning dialog asking to confirm CHARON access to different networks.



Check the desired options and press the "Allow access" button.

If you closed the CHARON VM console, it is always possible to re-open it by pressing the "Show Console" button:



i Closing the console will not stop the CHARON Virtual Machine

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Stopping a CHARON Virtual Machine

⚠ Note: before stopping the virtual machine from the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, a clean shutdown of the operating system running on the VM has to be performed.

Select the target CHARON VM in the left pane and press the "Stop" button. A dialog will appear to confirm, select "Yes" to continue to stop the VM:

My_ES40 - CHARON VM Management

VM Control | VM Configuration | Host Information & Utilities

CHARON Virtual Machines

Status: **Started**

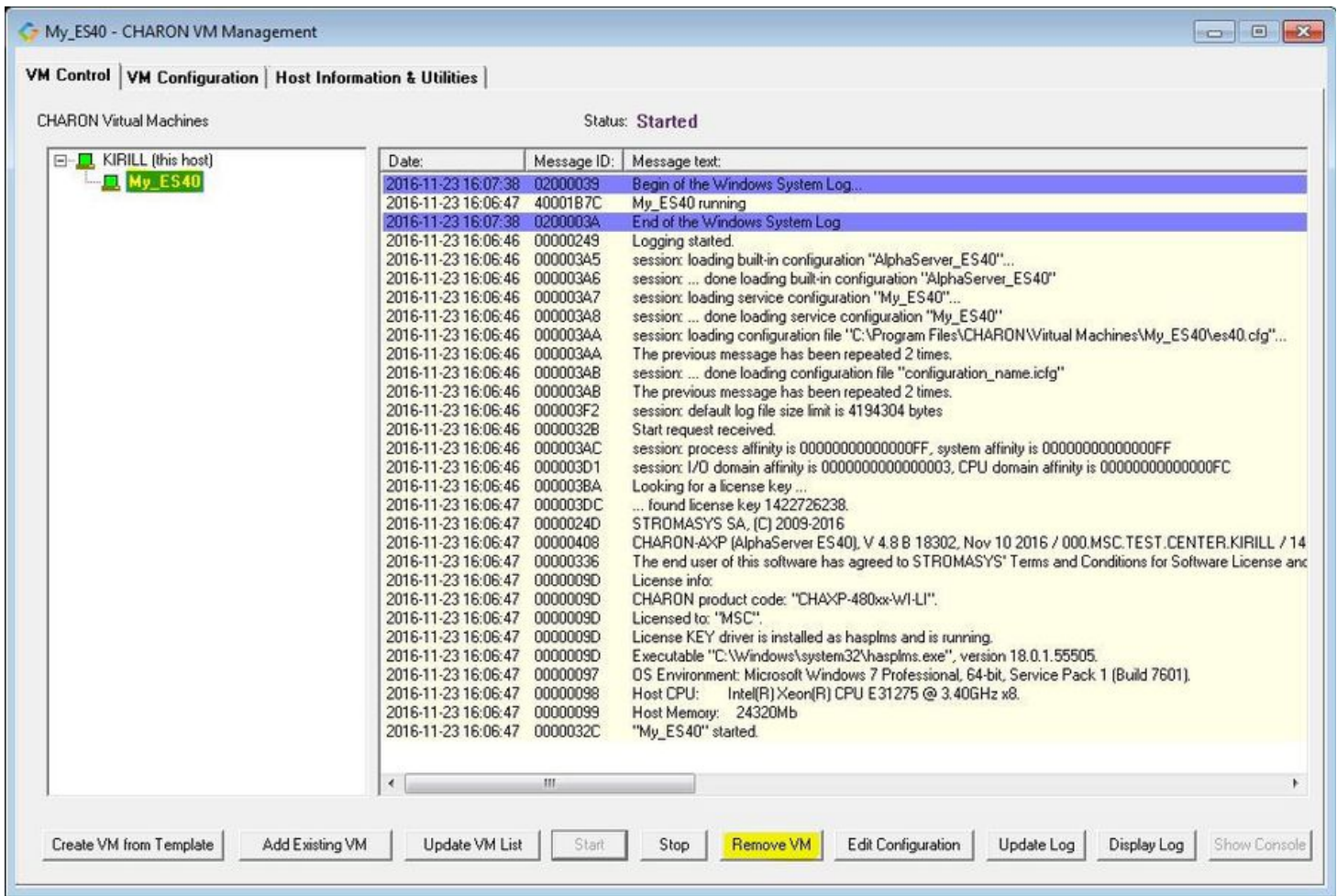
Date:	Message ID:	Message text:
2016-11-23 16:07:38	02000039	Begin of the Windows System Log...
2016-11-23 16:06:47	4000187C	My_ES40 running
2016-11-23 16:07:38	0200003A	End of the Windows System Log
2016-11-23 16:06:46	00000249	Logging started.
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003A5	session: loading built-in configuration "AlphaServer_ES40"...
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003A6	session: ... done loading built-in configuration "AlphaServer_ES40"
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003A7	session: loading service configuration "My_ES40"...
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003A8	session: ... done loading service configuration "My_ES40"
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AA	session: loading configuration file "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Virtual Machines\My_ES40\ves40.cfg"...
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AA	The previous message has been repeated 2 times.
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AB	session: ... done loading configuration file "configuration_name.icfg"
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AB	The previous message has been repeated 2 times.
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003F2	session: default log file size limit is 4194304 bytes
2016-11-23 16:06:46	0000032B	Start request received.
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AC	session: process affinity is 00000000000000FF, system affinity is 00000000000000FF
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003D1	session: I/O domain affinity is 0000000000000003, CPU domain affinity is 00000000000000FC
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003BA	Looking for a license key ...
2016-11-23 16:06:47	000003DC	... found license key 1422726238.
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000024D	STROMASYS SA, (C) 2009-2016
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000408	CHARON-XP (AlphaServer ES40), V 4.8 B 18302, Nov 10 2016 / 000.MSC.TEST.CENTER.KIRILL / 14
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000336	The end user of this software has agreed to STROMASYS' Terms and Conditions for Software License and
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	License info:
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	CHARON product code: "CHAXP-480xx-WI-LI".
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	Licensed to: "MSC".
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	License KEY driver is installed as hasplms and is running.
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	Executable "C:\Windows\system32\hasplms.exe", version 18.0.1.55505.
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000097	OS Environment: Microsoft Windows 7 Professional, 64-bit, Service Pack 1 (Build 7601).
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000098	Host CPU: Intel(R)Xeon(R) CPU E31275 @ 3.40GHz x8.
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000099	Host Memory: 24320Mb
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000032C	"My_ES40" started.

Buttons: Create VM from Template | Add Existing VM | Update VM List | Start | **Stop** | Remove VM | Edit Configuration | Update Log | Display Log | Show Console

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

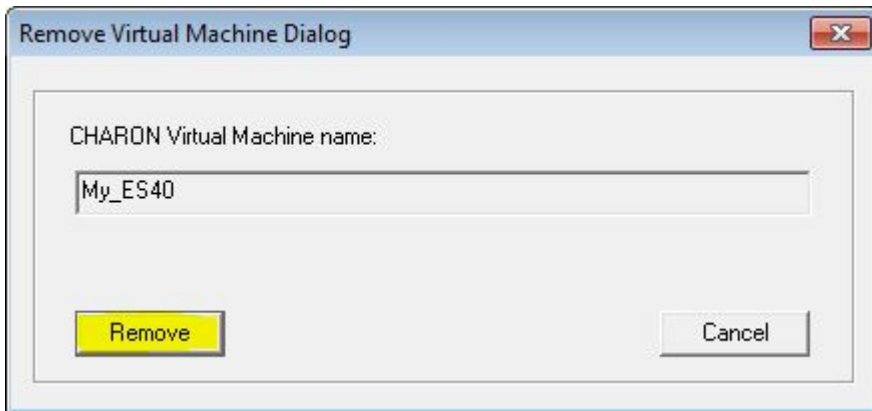
Removing a CHARON Virtual Machine

To remove a CHARON VM, select it and pressing the "Remove VM" button:



⚠ The Virtual machine has to be stopped before removing it (see [Stopping a CHARON Virtual Machine](#) chapter above)

A confirmation dialog will be displayed:

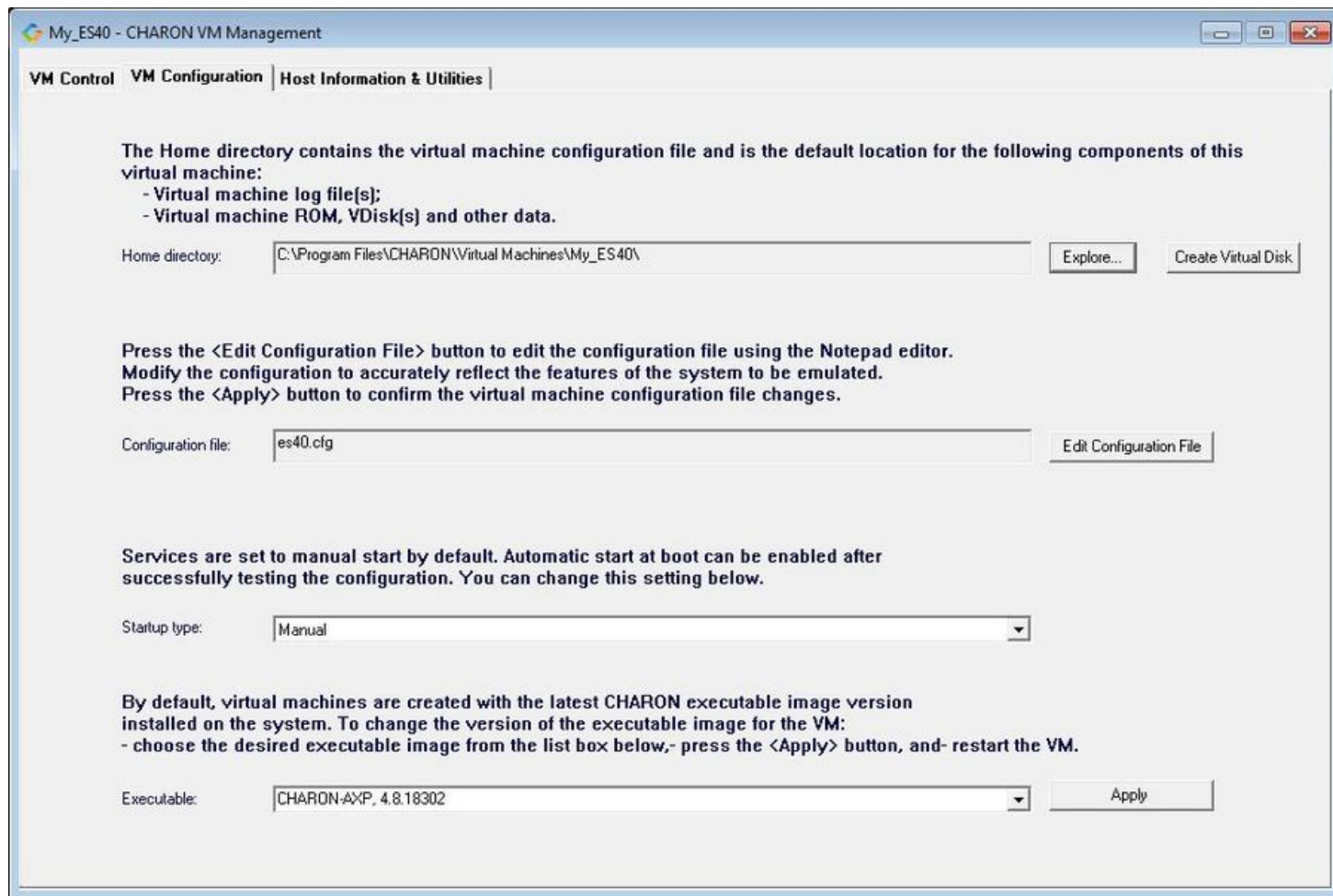


Press the "Remove" button and confirm the CHARON VM removal by pressing the "Yes" button:



Modifying a CHARON Virtual Machine

Select the target CHARON VM and switch to the "VM Configuration" tab to see its features:



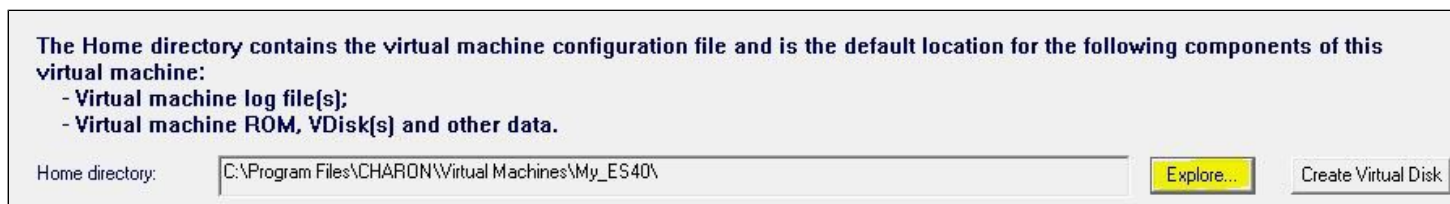
Using this dialog it is possible to:

- Explore the Home Directory of the CHARON VM.
- Create virtual disks by pressing the "Create Virtual Disks" button.
- Edit the CHARON VM configuration file.
- Change the startup mode.
- Select the CHARON version used for this Virtual Machine.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Exploring CHARON Virtual Machine Home Directory

Press the "Explore" button to open up a Windows Explorer window showing the content of the selected CHARON VM home folder:

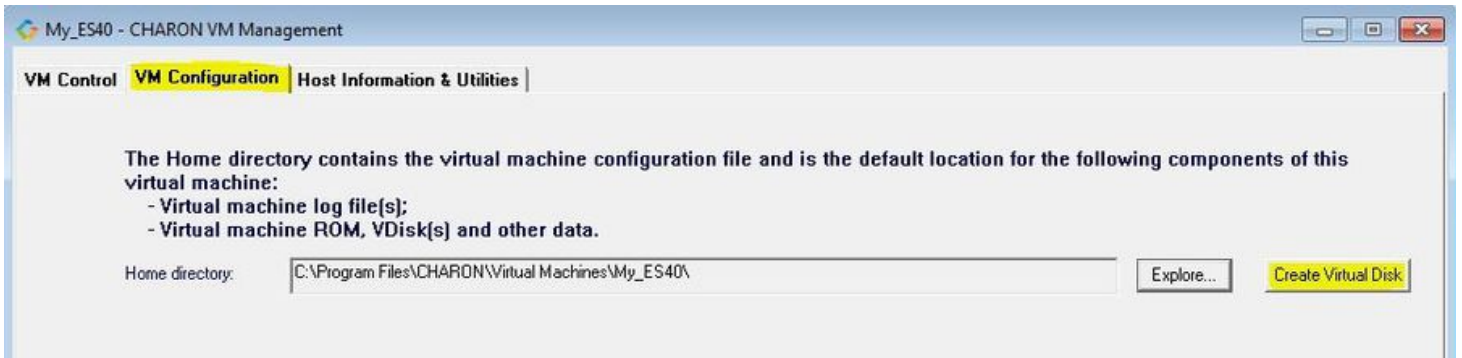


i This content includes the CHARON VM configuration file and may also include virtual disks and tapes images, logs, ROM files, etc.

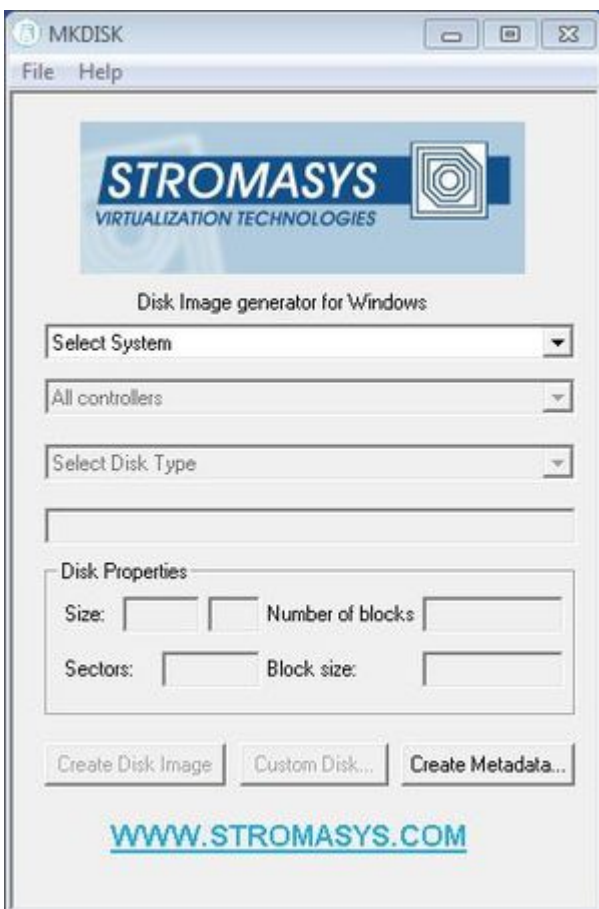
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Making a new virtual disk

It is very convenient to use the "Create Virtual Disk" button to create empty disk images in the CHARON VM Home Directory:



The Mkdisk utility will be called for this operation:



Refer to the "Utilities" section of this User's Guide for more information about the Mkdisk utility.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CHARON Virtual Machine configuration file

Press the "Edit Configuration file" button:

Press the <Edit Configuration File> button to edit the configuration file using the Notepad editor.
 Modify the configuration to accurately reflect the features of the system to be emulated.
 Press the <Apply> button to confirm the virtual machine configuration file changes.

Configuration file:

[Edit Configuration File](#)

Alternatively it is possible to select the target CHARON VM and press the "Edit Configuration" button:

My_ES40 - CHARON VM Management

VM Control | **VM Configuration** | Host Information & Utilities

CHARON Virtual Machines Status: **Started**

KIRILL (this host)

- My_ES40

Date:	Message ID:	Message text:
2016-11-23 16:07:38	02000039	Begin of the Windows System Log...
2016-11-23 16:06:47	4000187C	My_ES40 running
2016-11-23 16:07:38	0200003A	End of the Windows System Log
2016-11-23 16:06:46	00000249	Logging started.
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003A5	session: loading built-in configuration "AlphaServer_ES40"...
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003A6	session: ... done loading built-in configuration "AlphaServer_ES40"
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003A7	session: loading service configuration "My_ES40"...
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003A8	session: ... done loading service configuration "My_ES40"
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AA	session: loading configuration file "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Virtual Machines\My_ES40\es40.cfg"...
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AA	The previous message has been repeated 2 times.
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AB	session: ... done loading configuration file "configuration_name.icfg"
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AB	The previous message has been repeated 2 times.
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003F2	session: default log file size limit is 4194304 bytes
2016-11-23 16:06:46	0000032B	Start request received.
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AC	session: process affinity is 00000000000000FF, system affinity is 00000000000000FF
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003D1	session: I/O domain affinity is 0000000000000003, CPU domain affinity is 00000000000000FC
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003BA	Looking for a license key ...
2016-11-23 16:06:47	000003DC	... found license key 1422726238.
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000024D	STROMASYS SA, (C) 2009-2016
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000408	CHARON-AXP (AlphaServer ES40), V 4.8 B 18302, Nov 10 2016 / 000.MSC.TEST.CENTER.KIRILL / 14
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000336	The end user of this software has agreed to STROMASYS' Terms and Conditions for Software License and
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	License info:
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	CHARON product code: "CHAXP-480xx-WI-LI".
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	Licensed to: "MSC".
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	License KEY driver is installed as hasplms and is running.
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	Executable "C:\Windows\system32\hasplms.exe", version 18.0.1.55505.
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000097	OS Environment: Microsoft Windows 7 Professional, 64-bit, Service Pack 1 (Build 7601).
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000098	Host CPU: Intel(R)Xeon(R) CPU E31275 @ 3.40GHz x8.
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000099	Host Memory: 24320Mb
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000032C	"My_ES40" started.

The configuration file specifies all the settings of the CHARON VM. This will be discussed in the next chapter.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CHARON Virtual Machine startup mode

By default, the CHARON VM startup mode is set to "Manual" meaning a user has to start the CHARON VM manually using the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager after a host reboot. If the CHARON VM has to start automatically, select the "Automatic" option.

⚠ Setting the mode to "Automatic" will only start the CHARON VM, it will not boot the operating system. This part will be discussed in the next chapter.

Select the CHARON VM startup behavior in the "Startup type" drop down list:

Services are set to manual start by default. Automatic start at boot can be enabled after successfully testing the configuration. You can change this setting below.

Startup type:

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CHARON version to be used for CHARON VM

The CHARON installation procedure allows several versions of CHARON to be installed on the host at the same time (V4.8 and later only). This option can be used for testing.

! If a patch has been applied to a specific version, only the patched version will appear, not the vanilla one. If you need to rollback to a vanilla version, please uninstall the patch according to the documentation provided with the patch.

Select the target CHARON version from the "Executable" drop-down list and press the "Apply" button:

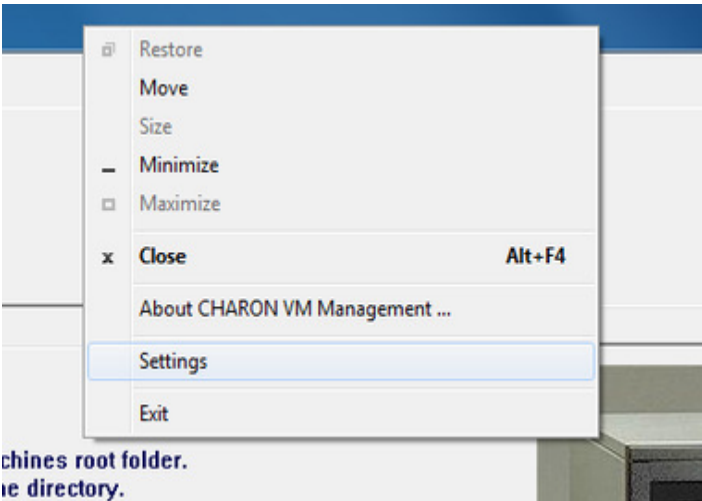
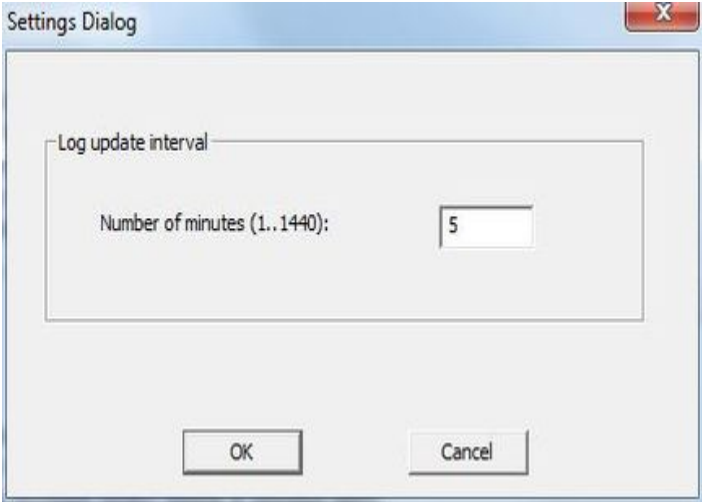
**By default, virtual machines are created with the latest CHARON executable image version installed on the system. To change the version of the executable image for the VM:
- choose the desired executable image from the list box below,- press the <Apply> button, and- restart the VM.**

Executable:

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

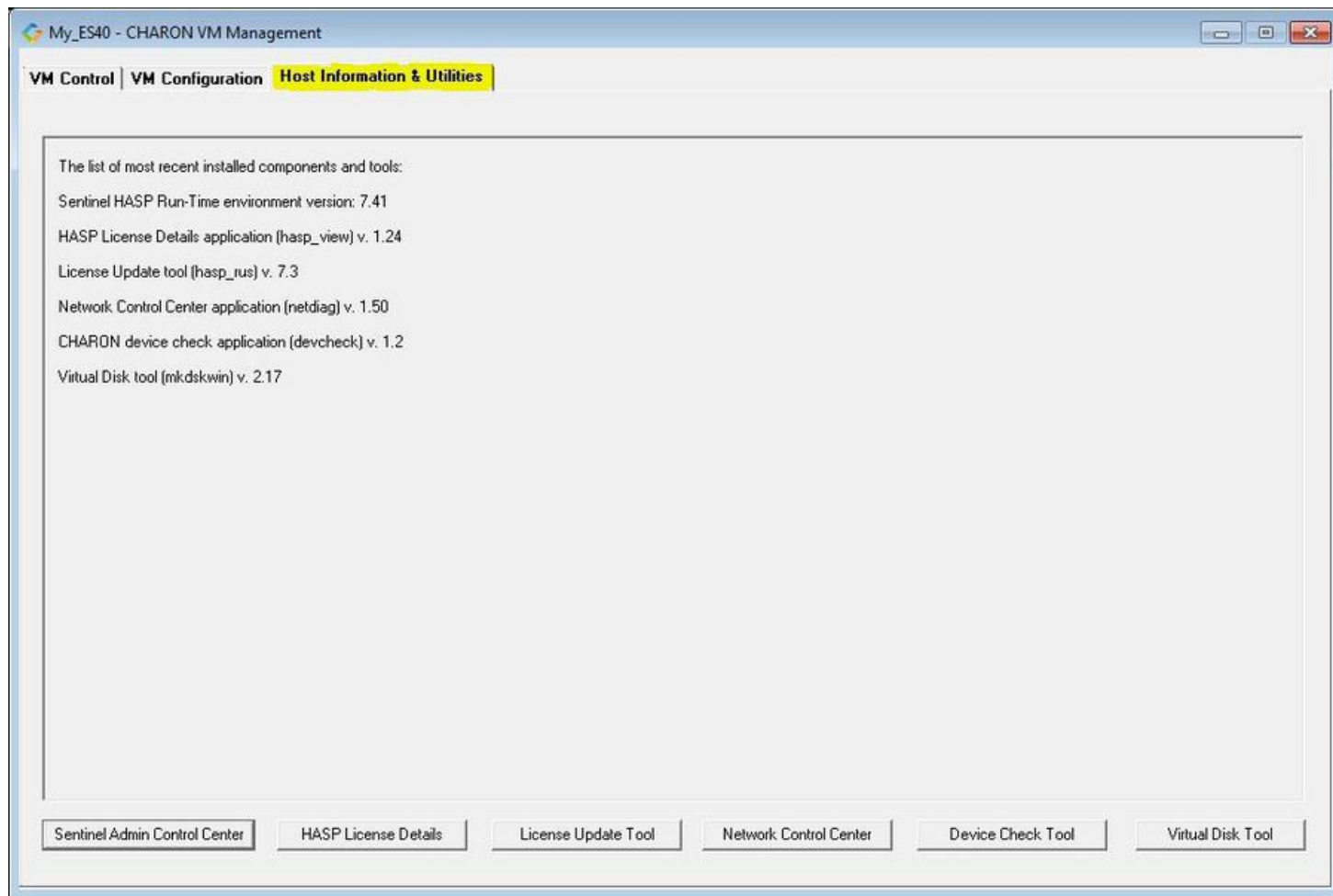
Service functions

Additional functionalities are available and described below:

Function	Description
Update Log	<p>The CHARON Virtual Machines Manager updates the displayed log every 5 minutes by default. It can be changed in the "Settings" dialog of the program system menu.</p> <p>Right click on top of the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager window and select "Settings":</p>  <p>In the appearing dialog you can change the interval:</p>  <p>If it is required to see most up-to-date version of the log, press the "Update Log" button.</p>
Display Log	<p>Available from the VM control tab, bottom right.</p> <p>Creates a separate window containing the selected CHARON VM log</p>
Show Console	<p>Available from the VM control tab, bottom right, and if the VM is running.</p> <p>Opens the selected CHARON VM console if it has been closed</p>

Running CHARON utilities

Select the "Host Information & Utilities" tab to get a quick access to the CHARON utilities:



These utilities are described below:

Button	Description
Sentinel Admin Control Center	Used to view CHARON licenses and manage them.
HASP License Details	Used to display the CHARON license content.
License Update Tool	Used to manage the CHARON licenses, collect the host system fingerprint.
Network Control Center	Used to configure the CHARON network.
Device Check tool	Used to review the system resources that can be mapped to CHARON.
Virtual Disk Tool	GUI-based utility used to create custom or standard CHARON virtual disk containers.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CHARON-AXP for Windows configuration

Table of Contents

- Creation of CHARON VM configuration
- HP Alpha model specification
- Configuration name
- Log file parameters
 - Rotating log (default)
 - Single log
- CPU affinity
- Number of host CPUs dedicated to CHARON I/O
- Setting a specific HP Alpha model
- Reducing number of emulated CPUs
- Setting system serial number
- TOY and ROM containers
- Emulated memory (RAM) size
- Console
 - Mapping to system resources
 - Exit on pressing F6 button
- Improve granularity of emulated timer
- ATAPI CD/DVD-ROM configuration
- Networking
- Disk/tape subsystem
 - KZPBA PCI SCSI disk/tape controller
 - KGPSA-CA PCI FC disk controller
 - KGPSA-CA mapping to the host resources
 - KGPSA-CA mapping to a storage controller using its "presentation" mode
 - KGPSA-CA pass through mode
- FDDI support via DEFPA PCI FDDI controller in "pass through" mode
- Serial lines support via emulated PBXDA-xx family PCI controllers in "pass through" mode
- Auto boot

Creation of CHARON VM configuration

When a CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) is created from a template using the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, it has to be updated to meet the desired configuration.

This configuration is represented as a text file ("configuration file") containing some specific keywords to define the main settings such as amount of memory, number of CPUs, peripheral devices as well as specifics of CHARON VM executions such as name of VM log file, number of host CPUs used for emulation, etc.

To change the configuration file, open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager from its shortcut on Desktop / Start menu or from the tray menu item, select the target CHARON VM and press the "Edit Configuration" button:

My_ES40 - CHARON VM Management

VM Control | VM Configuration | Host Information & Utilities

CHARON Virtual Machines Status: Started

KIRILL (this host)

- My_ES40

Date:	Message ID:	Message text:
2016-11-23 16:07:38	02000039	Begin of the Windows System Log...
2016-11-23 16:06:47	4000187C	My_ES40 running
2016-11-23 16:07:38	0200003A	End of the Windows System Log
2016-11-23 16:06:46	00000249	Logging started.
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003A5	session: loading built-in configuration "AlphaServer_ES40"...
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003A6	session: ... done loading built-in configuration "AlphaServer_ES40"
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003A7	session: loading service configuration "My_ES40"...
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003A8	session: ... done loading service configuration "My_ES40"
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AA	session: loading configuration file "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Virtual Machines\My_ES40\ves40.cfg"...
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AA	The previous message has been repeated 2 times.
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AB	session: ... done loading configuration file "configuration_name.icfg"
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AB	The previous message has been repeated 2 times.
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003F2	session: default log file size limit is 4194304 bytes
2016-11-23 16:06:46	0000032B	Start request received.
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003AC	session: process affinity is 00000000000000FF, system affinity is 00000000000000FF
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003D1	session: I/O domain affinity is 0000000000000003, CPU domain affinity is 00000000000000FC
2016-11-23 16:06:46	000003BA	Looking for a license key ...
2016-11-23 16:06:47	000003DC	... found license key 1422726238.
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000024D	STROMASYS SA, (C) 2009-2016
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000408	CHARON-XP (AlphaServer ES40), V 4.8 B 18302, Nov 10 2016 / 000.MSC.TEST.CENTER.KIRILL / 14
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000336	The end user of this software has agreed to STROMASYS' Terms and Conditions for Software License and
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	License info:
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	CHARON product code: "CHAXP-480xx-WI-LI".
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	Licensed to: "MSC".
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	License KEY driver is installed as hasplms and is running.
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000009D	Executable "C:\Windows\system32\hasplms.exe", version 18.0.1.55505.
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000097	OS Environment: Microsoft Windows 7 Professional, 64-bit, Service Pack 1 (Build 7601).
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000098	Host CPU: Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU E31275 @ 3.40GHz x8.
2016-11-23 16:06:47	00000099	Host Memory: 24320Mb
2016-11-23 16:06:47	0000032C	"My_ES40" started.

Notepad will be used to edit the configuration file:

```

es40.cfg - Notepad
File Edit Format View Help
#
# Copyright (C) 1999-2016 STROMASYS
# All rights reserved.
#
# The software contained on this media is proprietary to and embodies
# the confidential technology of STROMASYS. Possession, use, duplication,
# or dissemination of the software and media is authorized only pursuant
# to a valid written license from STROMASYS.
#
#-----
#
# Sample configuration file for AlphaServer ES40 machines.
#
#-----

set session hw_model = AlphaServer_ES40

#-----
#
# Choose a name for the instance, if needed, to differentiate it among other
# instances running on the same host.
#
#-----

include configuration_name.icfg

#-----
#
# Use the following commands to disable the rotating LOG files and enable
# a single LOG file. Select either append or overwrite (for each time the
# instance starts) and specify desired log path and file name.
#
#-----

set session log_method = append
#set session log_method = overwrite
#set session log = AlphaServer_ES40.log

```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP Alpha model specification

The first configuration statement is the specification of the exact HP Alpha hardware model to emulate, for example:

```
set session hw_model = AlphaServer_ES40
```

You must leave this line untouched.

⚠ If you create the CHARON VM configuration file from scratch, it must be the very first uncommented line in the configuration file.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Configuration name

The next configuration statement is the "Configuration name" option:

```
#set session configuration_name = My_ES40
```

You can optionally uncomment this line to differentiate this CHARON VM from all others in a multi-instance environment. The configuration name can be

any label that is meaningful.

It is possible to specify a configuration name containing spaces, in this case use quotation marks:

```
set session configuration_name = "My ES40"
```

The configuration name is reported in the log file and is used to set the log file name for rotating log (see further: [Rotating log \(default\)](#)).

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Log file parameters

The execution of a CHARON VM creates one log file or a set of log files reflecting the progress of its start-up and ongoing operations: start and end time of execution, system information, license and configuration details, warnings, reports on problems that may occur, etc. In case of problems with either the running CHARON VM or the emulated system configuration (such as the absence or malfunction of certain devices), the log file is the primary source to be analyzed for troubleshooting.

i If it becomes necessary to contact Stromasys for support, the configuration and log files, plus the license number, will be requested to begin the problem resolution.

Here is an example of a CHARON VM log file:

```
20160906:123954:INFO :0:00000249:ethane.cxx(8343): Logging started.
20160906:123954:INFO :0:000003A5:ethane.cxx(9414): session: loading built-in configuration
"AlphaServer_ES40"...
20160906:123954:INFO :0:000003A6:ethane.cxx(9446): session: ... done loading built-in configuration
"AlphaServer_ES40"
20160906:123954:INFO :0:000003A7:ethane.cxx(9604): session: loading service configuration "My_ES40"...
20160906:123954:INFO :0:000003A8:ethane.cxx(9639): session: ... done loading service configuration "My_ES40"
20160906:123954:INFO :0:000003AA:ethane.cxx(9687): session: loading configuration file "C:\Program
Files\CHARON\Virtual Machines\My_ES40\My_ES40\es40.cfg"...
The previous message has been repeated 2 times.
20160906:123954:INFO :0:000003AB:ethane.cxx( 540): session: ... done loading configuration file
"configuration_name.icfg"
The previous message has been repeated 2 times.
20160906:123954:INFO :0:000003F2:sesmgr.cxx(1394): session: default log file size limit is 4194304 bytes
20160906:123954:INFO :0:0000032B:ethane.cxx(2581): Start request received.
20160906:123954:INFO :0:000003AC:ethane.cxx( 739): session: process affinity is 00000000000000FF, system
affinity is 0000000000000000FF
20160906:123954:INFO :0:000003D1:ethane.cxx(1397): session: I/O domain affinity is 0000000000000003, CPU domain
affinity is 0000000000000000FC
20160906:123954:INFO :0:000003BA:ll_sentine( 730): Looking for a license key ...
20160906:123954:INFO :0:000003DC:ll_sentine( 825): ... found license key 1422726238.
20160906:123954:INFO :0:0000024D:ethane.cxx(2712): STROMASYS SA, (C) 2009-2016
20160906:123954:INFO :0:00000408:ethane.cxx(2754): CHARON-AXP (AlphaServer ES40), V 4.8 B 18302, Nov 11 21 2016
/ 00.MSC.TEST.CENTER.KIRILL / 1422726238
20160906:123954:INFO :0:00000336:ethane.cxx(2795): The end user of this software has agreed to STROMASYS' Terms
and Conditions for Software License and Limited Warranty, as described at: http://www.stromasys.com/pub/doc/30-17-033.pdf
20160906:123954:INFO :0:0000009D:ethane.cxx(2859): License info:
CHARON product code: "CHAXP-480xx-WI-LI".
Licensed to: "MSC".
License KEY driver is installed as hasplms and is running.
Executable "C:\Windows\system32\hasplms.exe", version 18.0.1.55505.
20160906:123954:INFO :0:00000097:ethane.cxx(2868): OS Environment: Microsoft Windows 7 Professional, 64-bit,
Service Pack 1 (Build 7601).
20160906:123954:INFO :0:00000098:ethane.cxx(2873): Host CPU: Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU E31275 @ 3.40GHz x8.
20160906:123954:INFO :0:00000099:ethane.cxx(2878): Host Memory: 24320Mb
20160906:123955:INFO :0:0000032C:ethane.cxx(2617): "My_ES40" started.
```

The next group of parameters defines the name of the CHARON VM log file and how the CHARON VM will use it:

```
set session log_method = append
#set session log_method = overwrite
#set session log = "AlphaServer_ES40.log"
```

Rotating log (default)

By default the CHARON VM utilizes a so-called "rotating log" method. This means that a new default log file is always created each time the CHARON VM starts and if the size of the log file exceeds 64Kb (previous log files are kept).

This mode is turned on if all the log parameters above are disabled (commented out) or the "session_log" parameter is pointing to a directory rather than to a file. If a directory is specified, the log files will be created in that directory.


The names of the rotating log files are composed as follows:


```
configuration_name-YYYY-MM-DD-hh-mm-ss-xxxxxxxxx.log
```

If the "Configuration name" parameter described before is omitted (commented out), the log name has the following format instead:

```
hw_model-YYYY-MM-DD-hh-mm-ss-xxxxxxxxx.log
```


Note that "xxxxxxxx" is an increasing decimal number starting from "000000000" to separate log files with the same time of creation.

 The "log" parameter, if specified, must correspond to an existing folder.

 If the path is not specified, the log file is created in the "Home directory" mentioned in the VM Configuration tab of the CHARON Virtual Machine Manager.

Single log

Alternatively it is possible to use a single log file. Uncomment the "set session log" line and specify the desired log file name. Optionally, a path can be added to the log file name.

 If the path is not specified, the log file is created in the "Home directory" mentioned in the VM Configuration tab of the CHARON Virtual Machine Manager.

The log file can be extended specifying "log_method = append" (*recommended for reporting issues*) or overwritten, specifying "log_method = overwrite".

Below is a specification of a CHARON VM log file located in the "C:\CHARON_logs" directory which will be appended each time the CHARON VM starts:

```
set session log_method = append
set session log = "C:\CHARON_logs\my_ES40.log"
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CPU affinity


This setting binds the running CHARON VM CPUs to particular host CPUs. This should be used for soft partitioning host CPU resources or for isolating multiple CHARON VMs on the same host from each other. By default the emulator instance allocates as many host CPUs as possible.

"Affinity" overrides the default and allows explicit specification of which host CPUs will be used by the instance. Affinity does not reserve the CPU for exclusive use.

```
set session affinity="0, 1, 2, 3"
```

The example above directs CHARON VM to use CPU 0,1,2 and 3.

If this parameter is omitted CHARON host will allocate available CPUs automatically.

 Note that the number of the specified host CPUs must correspond to the number of the emulated CPUs (one host CPU for one emulated CPU; this value is specific for each HP Alpha model) and number of CPUs needed for CHARON application itself ("n_of_io_cpus").

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Number of host CPUs dedicated to CHARON I/O

This setting reserves host CPUs (of those specified by "affinity" parameter, if any) for use by CHARON VM for I/O handling. By default CHARON VM reserves one third of available host CPUs for I/O processing (round down, at least one).

The "n_of_io_cpus" overrides the default by specifying the number of I/O host CPUs explicitly

Example:

```
set session n_of_io_cpus=2
```

The example above directs CHARON VM to use 2 CPUs for CHARON I/O operations.

! Note that the number of the specified CPUs dedicated to CHARON VM I/O operations must correspond to the total number of available for CHARON CPUs (restricted by "affinity" parameter if needed) and the number of the virtual HP Alpha CPUs to be emulated.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Setting a specific HP Alpha model

CHARON-AXP allows to specify an exact model of HP Alpha.

For example for HP AlphaServer ES40 family the template configuration file contains the following options:

```
#####
#
# AlphaServer ES40 6/500
#
#-----

#set ace cpu_architecture = EV6
#set rom dsrdb[0] = 1816 system_name = "AlphaServer ES40 6/500"
#set rom version[1] = 1.98-4 version[2] = 1.92-5

#####
#
# AlphaServer ES40 6/667
#
#-----

set ace cpu_architecture = EV67
set rom dsrdb[0] = 1820 system_name = "AlphaServer ES40 6/667"
```

Just uncomment the provided lines to apply a certain model (It is "AlphaServer ES40 6/667" in the example above).

The full description of the parameters and other models that can be also configured is available in the "Configuration details" chapter of this User's Guide.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Reducing number of emulated CPUs

If the CHARON host does not contain enough CPUs to emulate full range of the CPUs provided by a certain HP Alpha model, it is possible to direct the CHARON VM to reduce the number of emulated Alpha CPUs:

```
set session n_of_cpus=1
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Setting system serial number

If necessary, a specific system serial number instead of the default one:

```
set rom system_serial_number = SN01234567
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

TOY and ROM containers

The TOY and ROM containers have to be configured. Their presence depends on the HP Alpha model. It is always recommended to enable them. If a container file of the given name does not exist, starting the CHARON VM will create it.

TOY means "Time of Year". Its container records time, date and some console parameters while the CHARON VM is not running. It is highly recommended to define and activate this container:

```
set toy container="clipper.dat"
```

The ROM container stores an intermediate state of the Flash ROM and some console parameters. It is highly recommended to define and activate this container:

```
set rom container="clipper.bin"
```


Emulated memory (RAM) size

The next parameter defines the amount of host memory the CHARON VM reserves for the emulation:

```
#set ram size=4096
set ram size=32768
```

The amount of RAM is specified in MB. It cannot exceed or be lower than certain values specific for each HP Alpha model. It is very important to keep the listed predefined increment between possible memory values.

The following table shows all the parameters:

Hardware Model	RAM size (in MB)			
	Min	Max	Default	Increment
AlphaServer 400	64	1024	512	64
AlphaServer 800	256	8192	512	256
AlphaServer 1000	256	1024	512	256
AlphaServer 1000A	256	1024	512	256
AlphaServer 1200	256	32768	512	256
AlphaServer 2000	64	2048	512	64
AlphaServer 2100	64	2048	512	64
AlphaServer 4000	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer 4100	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer DS10	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer DS10L	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer DS15	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer DS20	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer DS25	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer ES40	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer ES45	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer GS80	256	65536	512	256
AlphaServer GS160	512	131072	512	512
AlphaServer GS320	1024	262144	1024	1024

It is possible to leave the RAM line commented out. In this case the model's default RAM amount is used.

Note that in some particular orders your license may restrict the maximum RAM amount of each HP Alpha model.

Console

Mapping to system resources

The next step is the specification of the HP Alpha console (OPA0) serial line:

```
#load physical_serial_line OPA0 line="COM1:"
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="opa0.ht"
load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="putty -load OPA0"
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="c:\kea\user\opa0.ktc"
```

The goal of this configuration step is to tell the CHARON VM what host device to use as the virtual system console. The following options are available:

Option	Description						
physical_serial_line	Mapping to host "\\.\COM<n>" ("COM<n>:") physical serial line.						
virtual_serial_line	<p>Mapping to an IP port of CHARON host. Using this mapping it is possible to connect to the CHARON VM console and disconnect from it at any time without usage of CHARON Virtual Machines Manager "Show Console" option. It is also possible to start up some chosen application to connect to the CHARON console IP port.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>port</td> <td>Specifies a unique IP port on the host to which the CHARON VM console will be mapped.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>application</td> <td>A string specifying a name of an application to be started together with CHARON to provide emulation of HP Alpha console (terminal emulator). It is assumed that this application has already been configured to use the IP port specified by the corresponding "port" parameter</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Example:</p> <pre>load virtual_serial_line/chserial OPA0 port=10003 application="putty.exe -load OPA0"</pre> <p>In the example above, the CHARON VM uses the IP port "10003" for the HP Alpha console and starts the "Putty" terminal emulator (included in the CHARON installation kit) with the "OPA0" saved session directing it to connect to the IP port "10003". If the terminal emulator is closed, it is always possible to reopen it with the "Show Console" feature from the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager.</p>	Parameter	Description	port	Specifies a unique IP port on the host to which the CHARON VM console will be mapped.	application	A string specifying a name of an application to be started together with CHARON to provide emulation of HP Alpha console (terminal emulator). It is assumed that this application has already been configured to use the IP port specified by the corresponding "port" parameter
Parameter	Description						
port	Specifies a unique IP port on the host to which the CHARON VM console will be mapped.						
application	A string specifying a name of an application to be started together with CHARON to provide emulation of HP Alpha console (terminal emulator). It is assumed that this application has already been configured to use the IP port specified by the corresponding "port" parameter						

The default setting is:

```
load virtual_serial_line/chserial OPA0 port=10003 application="putty.exe -load OPA0"
```

The second console line "TTA0" can be also optionally configured (for 1 CPU models such as HP AlphaServer 400, HP AlphaServer 800, HP AlphaServer 1000, HP AlphaServer 1000A, HP AlphaServer DS10, HP AlphaServer DS10L and HP AlphaServer DS15):

```
#load physical_serial_line TTA0 line="COM1:"
#load virtual_serial_line TTA0 port=10003
#load virtual_serial_line TTA0 port=10003 application="tta0.ht"
load virtual_serial_line TTA0 port=10003 application="putty -load TTA0"
#load virtual_serial_line TTA0 port=10003 application="c:\kea\user\tta0.ktc"
set COM2 line=TTA0
```

Note that additional parameters for the CHARON VM serial lines configuration can be added. Follow [this link](#) for details.

Exit on pressing F6 button

Despite the fact that the CHARON VM can stop with the "power off" command entered at SRM console level, it is recommended to set a hot key to stop the VM from the console (when the console is accessed remotely for example):

```
set OPA0 stop_on = F6
```

This line allows the CHARON VM to be stopped by pressing the "F6" key.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Improve granularity of emulated timer

The next configuration option can be applied for improving granularity of emulated CHARON-AXP timer:

```
#set isa clock_period=1000
```

Do not uncomment this parameter unless there are some problems with the system time or the system clock intervals in the guest OS.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

ATAPI CD/DVD-ROM configuration

If the sample configuration file provides this parameter it is possible to map this particular CHARON VM emulator's "DQA0" CD-ROM to the host CD/DVD-ROM with the following setting:

```
set ide container="\\.\CdRom0"
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Networking

CHARON-AXP supports DE435, DE450, DE500AA, DE500BA, DE602 and DE602AA virtual network adapters.

All of them are configured in a similar way:

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA interface=EWA0
load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="connection:Charon"
```

```
load DE602/i8255x EIA interface=EIA0
load packet_port/chnetwrk EIA0 interface="connection:Charon"
```

In the examples above the first line loads DE500BA/DE602 virtual adapter with a name "EWA"/"EIA" (note that "/i8255x" syntax must be used only with DE602 and DE602AA adapters); the following line maps it to the host network interface having a name "Charon" ("connection" is a key word). Note that the mapping is performed in 2 steps:

1. A mapping object "packet_port" with a name "EWA0"/"EIA0" is loaded and connected to the host interface named "Charon", so the CHARON VM will use this interface for its networking
2. The loaded DE500BA/DE602 virtual adapter "EWA"/"EIA" is connected to the "packet_port" object "EWA0"/"EIA0".

It is possible to load several DE435, DE450, DE500AA, DE500BA or DE602 controllers. For example (for DE500BA):

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA interface=EWA0
load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="connection:Charon1"
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB interface=EWB0
load packet_port/chnetwrk EWB0 interface="connection:Charon2"
```

Some network adapters available in CHARON-AXP are preloaded (for example, HP AlphaServer DS15 contains 2 preloaded adapters EWA and EWB), so their configuration in CHARON VM is even more simple:

```
load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface = "connection:Charon"
```

CHARON supports VLAN adapters. If used, proceed with their installation and configuration according to the network adapter vendor User's Guide and then use the resulting VLAN interface the same way as the regular network interface.

Follow [this link](#) for more details of CHARON-AXP network controllers configuration.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Disk/tape subsystem

The disk and tapes subsystems and the mapping to the system resources can be done using the samples given in the template configuration files.

CHARON-AXP supports KZPBA and KGPSA-CA adapters.

KZPBA PCI SCSI disk/tape controller

Below is the typical configuration options for the KZPBA PCI SCSI disk/tape controller:

```
load KZPBA PKA scsi_id = 7

#set PKA container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

#set PKA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive0"
#set PKA container[101]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID=XXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX)"
#set PKA container[102]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(iScsiTarget = <iSCSI target>, LUN = <LUN number>)"

#set PKA container[200]="\\.\ScsiN:X:Y:Z"

#set PKA container[300]="\\.\CdRom0"
#set PKA container[300]="\\.\CdRom<N>"

#set PKA container[400] = "<file-name>.iso"

#set PKA container[500]="\\.\Tape0"
#set PKA container[500]="\\.\Tape<N>"

#set PKA container[600] = "<file-name>.vtape"

#set PKA container[600]="\\.\A:"
#set PKA media_type[600]="RX23"
```

The first line ("load KZPBA PKA") loads a disk controller KZPBA with name "PKA", followed by 8 groups of lines showing different ways of mapping to the host resources:

- **File representing a physical disk of the HP Alpha system (disk image)**

- "<file-name>.vdisk"


These files can be created from scratch with "MkDisk" utility. Data and OS disks backups are transferred from the original system via tapes or network and restored into these container files.

Mapping may also include the full path, for example: "C:\My disks\my_boot_disk.vdisk". If the path is not specified, the disk images are expected to be in the CHARON VM home directory.

Using compressed folders to store virtual disks and tapes is not supported

- **Physical disk**

- "\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

 Be careful not to destroy all the information from the disk dedicated to CHARON VM by mistake.

These disks must not be formatted by the host OS.

- **Physical disk by its WWID**

- "\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID =XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX)"

⚠ Be careful not to destroy all the information from the disk dedicated to CHARON VM by mistake.

These disks must not be formatted by the host OS.

DevID addresses the target physical disk by its WWID (hexadecimal 128-bit identifier assigned to the disk drive by its manufacturer/originator).

Example:

```
set PKA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID= 6008-05F3-0005-2950-BF8E-0B86-A0C7-0001) "
```

- **iSCSI disks**

- "\\.\PhysicalDrive(iScsiTarget = <iSCSI target>, LUN = <LUN number>)"

Parameter	Description
iScsiTarget	Addresses the disk by its iSCSI target name.
LUN	Specifies the LUN on the connected iSCSI disk.

Example:

```
set PKA container[200]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(iScsiTarget= iqn.2008-04:iscsi.charon-target-test1, LUN= 1) "
```

- **SCSI device unknown to Windows for direct mapping, for example, a SCSI disk or tape reader**

- "\\.\Scsi<N>:<X>:<Y>:<Z>"

The values of N, X, Y and Z can be collected using special utility "[Host Device Check](#)" included in the CHARON distributive - or manually by investigation of the devices connected to CHARON host in the "Device Manager" applet.

Parameter	Description
N	A logical number assigned by host operating system (Microsoft Windows) to logical or host's physical storage resource such as physical SCSI HBA
X	An internal SCSI bus number (usually 0) on host's physical SCSI HBA
Y	A SCSI ID of physical SCSI target device attached to host's physical SCSI HBA
Z	A logical unit number inside physical SCSI target device attached to host's physical SCSI HBA

- **CD-ROM device**

- "\\.\CdRom<N>"

- **ISO file for reading distribution CD-ROM image**

- "<file-name>.iso"

Mapping may also include the full path, for example: "C:\My disks\vms_distributive.iso". If the path is not specified, the CD-ROM images are expected to be in the CHARON VM home directory.

- **Host tape device**

- "\\.\Tape<N>"

- **File representing the tape (tape image)**

- "<file-name>.vtape"

These files are created automatically.

Mapping may also include a full path, for example: "C:\My tapes\backup.vtape". If the path is not specified, the tape images are expected to be in the CHARON VM home directory.

Using compressed folders to store virtual disks and tapes is not supported

- **Floppy drive**

- "\\.\A:"

- **Other type of drive, for example magneto-optical drive**

- "\\.<N>:"

Additionally it is possible to specify a parameter "media_type" to assign the type of the attached media explicitly.

Example:

```
set PKA media_type[600]="RX23"
```

The numbers in the square brackets represent the SCSI addresses and LUNs associated with each container of the KZPBA controller. They have the following structure:

[XXYY], where

Parameter	Range	Description
XX	0...15	<p>Stands for SCSI ID of each connected unit.</p> <p>i Note that the KZPBA itself has some ID associated with it. By default it is 7 but it can be changed in the following way:</p> <pre>load KZPBA PKA scsi_id = 0</pre> <p>In this example an instance "PKA" of KZPBA controller is assigned with SCSI ID 0.</p>
YY	00...07	Stands for LUN.

It is possible to load several KZPBA controllers: DKB, DKC, etc. by configuring specific placement for them on the PCI bus. It is discussed in details in the "Configuration details" chapter of this Guide.

Some HP Alpha systems emulated by CHARON-AXP have already one or two KZPBA controllers pre-loaded. If the system has only one preloaded controller, the template configuration file usually provides some sample line on how to add another one. For example:

```
load KZPBA PKA bus=pci_1 device=1 function=0 irq_bus=isa irq=24
```

Follow [this link](#) for details on the KZPBA controllers configuration.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

KGPSA-CA PCI FC disk controller

Optionally it is possible to configure KGPSA-CA FC disk controllers.

They can be configured in 3 modes:

- [Direct mapping to the host resources](#)
- [Usage of "presentation mode" of connected or external storage controllers](#)
- [Pass Through mode](#)

Below is an example of a KGPSA-CA controller loading:

```
load KGPSA FGA
```

Optionally another KGPSA-CA adapter can be loaded in a similar way:

```
load KGPSA FGB
```

Follow [this link](#) for details on the KGPSA-CA controllers configuration.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

KGPSA-CA mapping to the host resources

Below is the typical configuration options for a KGPSA-CA PCI FC disk controller, mapped to the host resources:

```
load KGPSA FGA
#set FGA container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"
#set FGA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive0"
#set FGA container[200]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID=XXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX) "
#set FGA container[300]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(iScsiTarget = <iSCSI target>, LUN = <LUN number>)"
```

The first line ("load KGPSA FGA") loads a disk controller KGPSA named "FGA" followed by 2 groups of lines showing different ways of mapping to the host resources:

- **File representing a physical disk of the HP Alpha system (disk image)**

- "<file-name>.vdisk"

These files can be created from scratch with "MkDisk" utility. Data and OS disks backups are transferred from the original system via tapes or network and restored into these container files.

Mapping may also include the full path, for example: "C:\My disks\my_boot_disk.vdisk". If the path is not specified, the disk images are expected to be in the CHARON VM home directory.

Using compressed folders to store virtual disks and tapes is not supported

- **Physical disk**

- "\\.\PhysicalDriveN"

⚠ Be careful not to destroy all the information from the disk dedicated to CHARON VM by mistake.

These disks must not be formatted by the host OS.

- **Physical disk by its WWID**

- "\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID =XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX)"

⚠ Be careful not to destroy all the information from the disk dedicated to CHARON VM by mistake.

These disks must not be formatted by the host OS.

DevID addresses the target physical disk by its WWID (hexadecimal 128-bit identifier assigned to the disk drive by its manufacturer/originator).

Example:

```
set PKA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID= 6008-05F3-0005-2950-BF8E-0B86-A0C7-0001) "
```

- **iSCSI disks**

- "\\.\PhysicalDrive(iScsiTarget = <iSCSI target>, LUN = <LUN number>)"

iScsiTarget addresses the disk by its iSCSI target name. LUN specifies LUN on the connected iSCSI disk.

Example:

```
set PKA container[200]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(iScsiTarget= iqn.2008-04:iscsi.charon-target-test1, LUN= 1) "
```

The numbers in the square brackets represent the KGPSA-CA units. They can be in the range of 0 to 32766 but no more than 255 units can be configured on a single controller.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

KGPSA-CA mapping to a storage controller using its "presentation" mode

Some storage controllers allows CHARON VM to use their resources using so called "presentation" mode.

In this type of mapping the CHARON VM automatically creates a set of virtual FC devices for each of the units provided by the storage controller and connects to them through its KGPSA-CA FC adapter.

The main benefit in this type of mapping is a flexible way of the virtual disks management depending on the mapped storage controller configuration. For example if an extra disk is added to the storage controller, it automatically appears as a new disk unit on the corresponding KGPSA-CA virtual adapter mapped to that storage controller.

Below is an example of KGPSA-CA PCI FC disk controller mapped to some storage controller (for example SAN) using its "presentation" mode:

```
load KGPSA FGA storage_controller_path_id = 5008-05F3-0005-2950-5008-05F3-0005-2951
```

This line loads an instance of KGPSA-CA controller and maps it to some external controller having ID "5008-05F3-0005-2950-5008-05F3-0005-2951".

Type of mapping	Description
storage_controller_path_id = <Storage controller path ID>	<p>"Storage controller path ID" is a storage (for example SAN) controller path ID.</p> <p>This ID can be obtained from the special utility "Device check tool" (accessible in the "Host Information and Utilities" section of the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager). Once specified, all the disks attached to the storage are automatically mapped as disk units to the CHARON VM.</p>

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

KGPSA-CA pass through mode

It is also possible to use the emulated KGPSA-CA in "pass through" mode to address a physical EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter plugged into the host's PCI/PCI-X/PCIe slot.

The sample configuration file provides a template for this type of mapping:

```
#set FGA host_bus_location = "PCI bus X, device Y, function Z"
#set FGB host_bus_location = "PCI bus A, device B, function C"
```

The "host_bus_location" parameter addresses the host EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter in the following way:

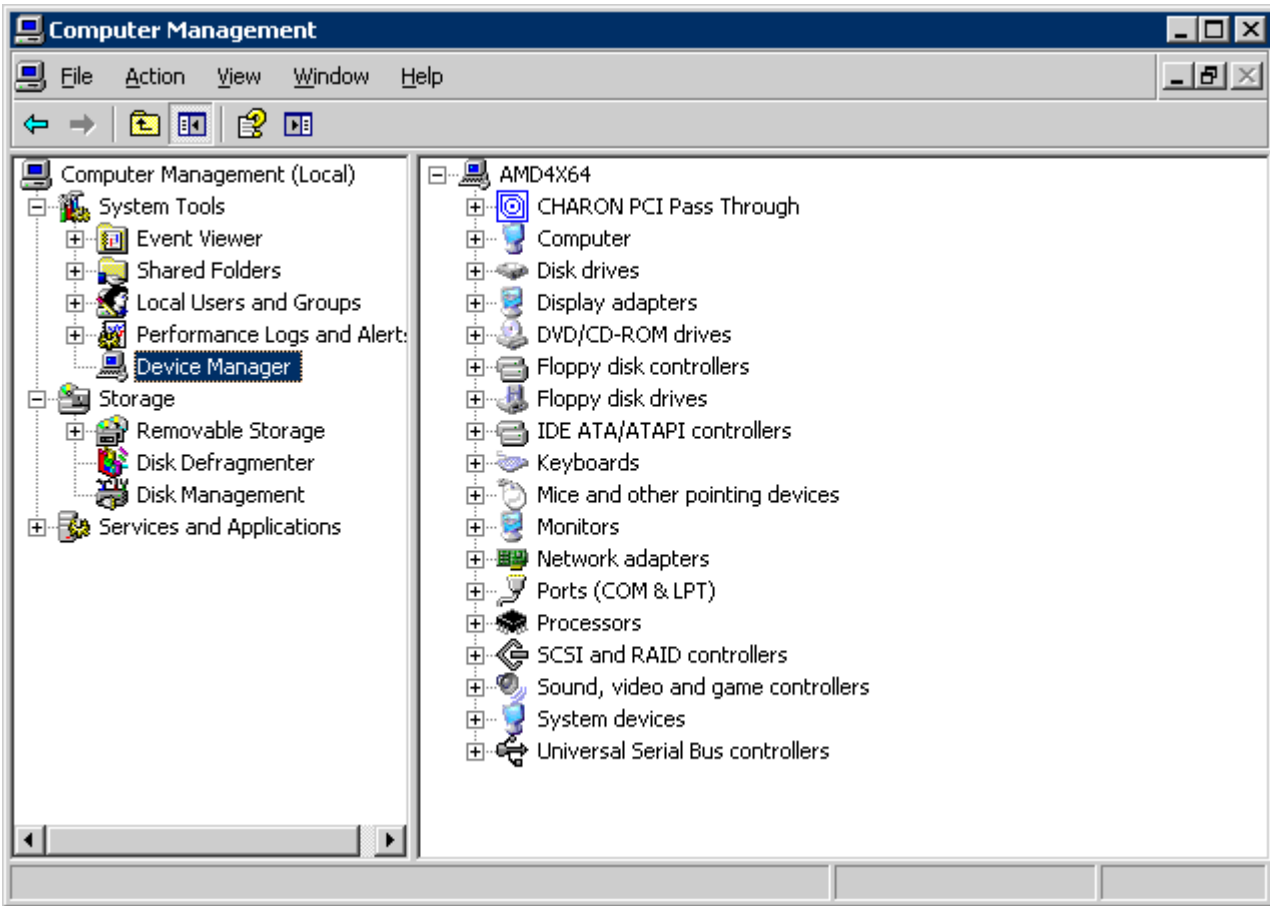
Parameters	Description
"PCI bus X"	PCI bus number of the host EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter
"device Y"	PCI bus device number of the host EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter
"function Z"	The "function" parameter of the the host EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter

To establish "pass through" mode do the following:

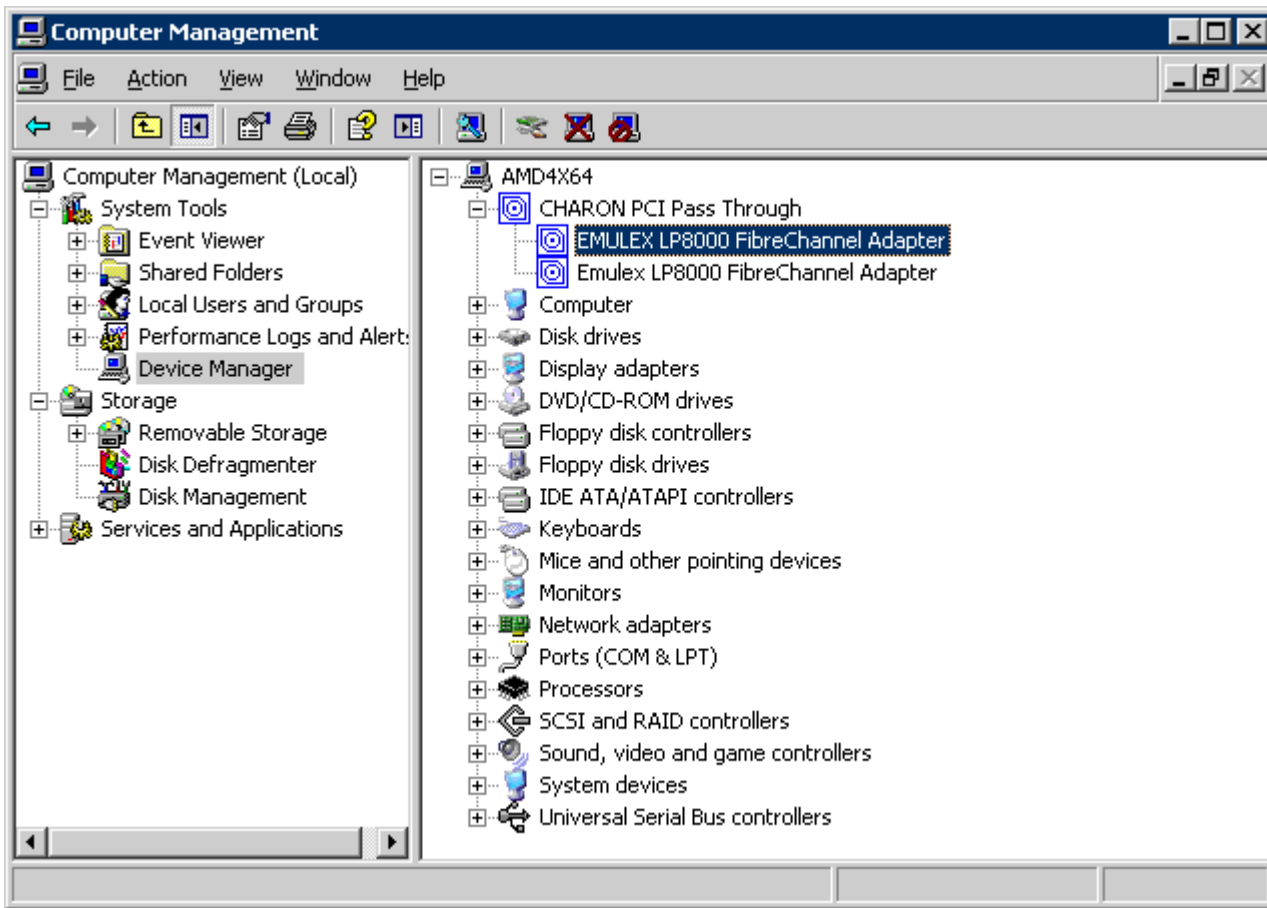
1. Install the EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter (see below for a list of supported models) to some spare PCI/PCI-X/PCIe slot of the host system
2. Boot a Windows operating system
3. Install the EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter driver from the following directory "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Drivers\EMULEX_X.X.0.XXXXX" by choosing the "Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)" option and then selecting the "emulex_lp_ppt_amd64.inf" file.
4. Reboot the host

Now it is possible to collect the parameters for CHARON VM mapping to the EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter.

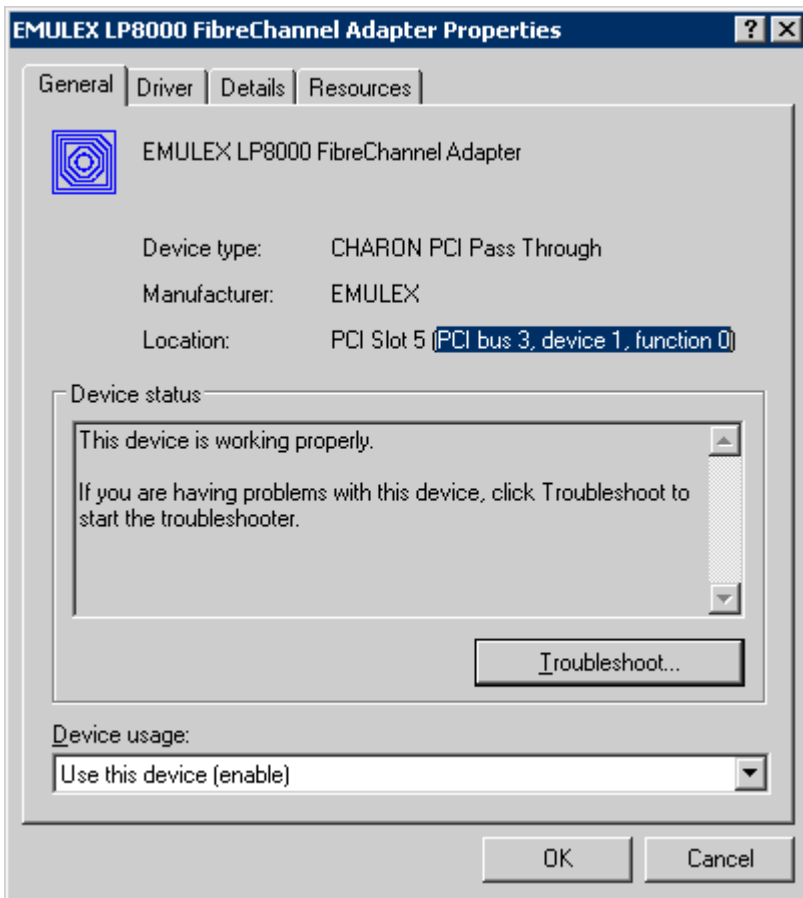
Open the "Computer Management" application and select "Device Manager":



On the right panel select the desired physical EMULEX LP FibreChannel adapter under "CHARON PCI Pass Through":



Open the properties sheet by double-clicking on the selected adapter:



The "Location:" on the above picture gives X, Y, and Z for the "host_bus_location" parameter. For example:

```
set FGA host_bus_location = "PCI bus 3, device 1, function 0"
```

! Non-US-EN installations of Windows may present "Location:" string in local language, but "host_bus_location" parameter requires English notation, so the words "PCI", "bus", "device", and "function" must be specified in English.

The following is the list of EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapters supported by the CHARON-AXP PCI Pass Through driver and suitable for the emulation of a KGPSA-CA PCI FC adapter in CHARON PCI Pass Through mode:

Supported	Not Supported	Not tested
LP8000 LP9000 LP9002 LP9802 LP10000 LP10000DC LP10000-S LPX1000 LP11002 LPe11002 (FC2242SR, A8003A) LPe1105	LPe1150 (FC2142SR, A8002A)	LPe11000

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

FDDI support via DEFPA PCI FDDI controller in "pass through" mode

Optionally it is possible to configure a DEFPA PCI FDDI controller in "pass through" mode, mapped to a physical DEFPA FDDI adapter installed on the host:

```
load defpa FDDI host_bus_location = "PCI bus X, device Y, function Z"
set FDDI bus=pci_1 device=1 function=0 irq=24 irq_bus=isa
```

Pay attention to the proper placement of the emulated DEFPA adapter on the virtual HP Alpha PCI bus (it is controlled by "bus", "device", "function", "irq" and "irq_bus" parameters). Refer to [this chapter](#) of this Guide for more information.

The "host_bus_location" parameter addresses the host DEFPA FDDI adapter in the following way:

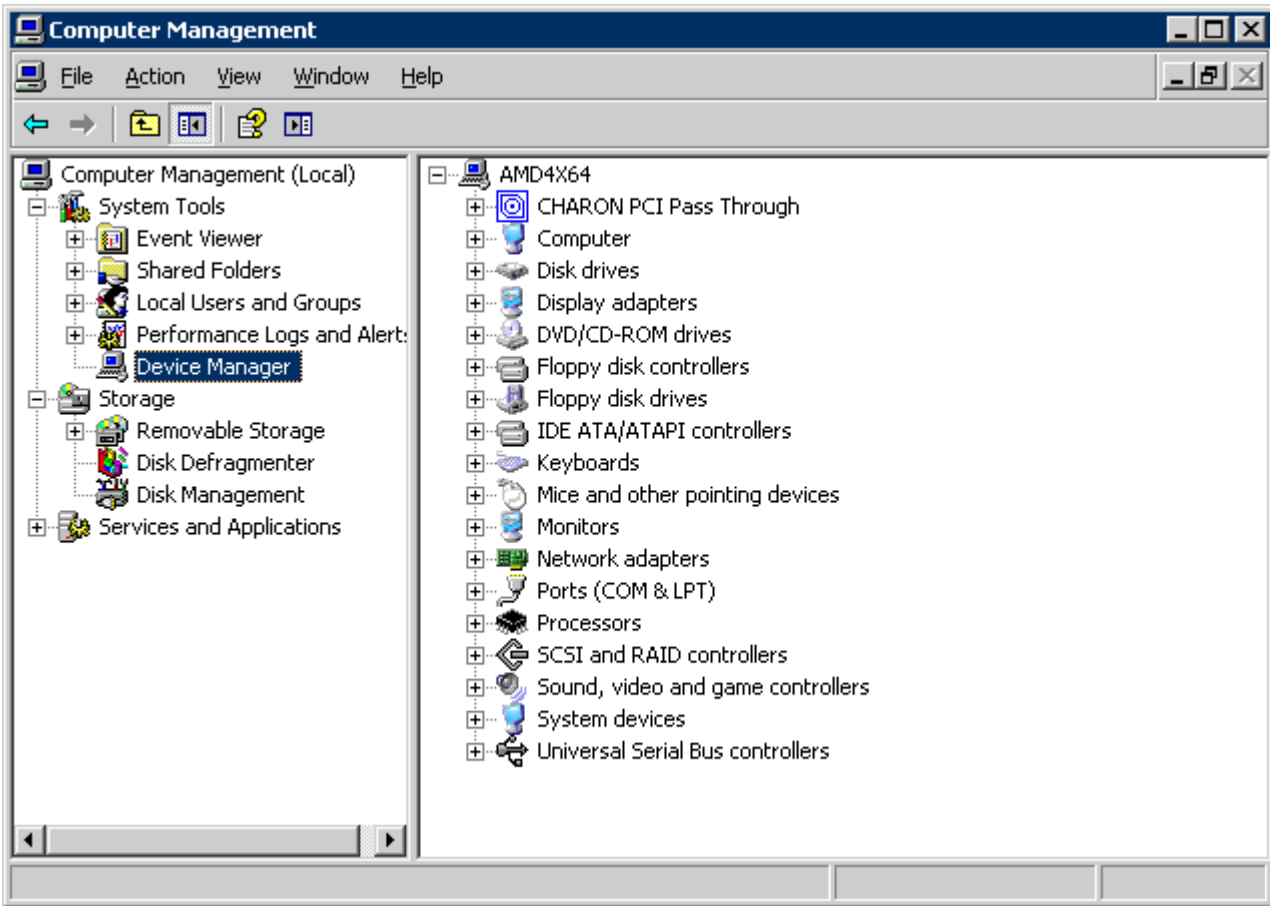
Parameters	Description
"PCI bus X"	PCI bus number of the host DEFPA FDDI adapter
"device Y"	PCI bus device number of the host DEFPA FDDI adapter
"function Z"	The "function" parameter of the the host DEFPA FDDI adapter

To establish the "pass through" mode do the following:

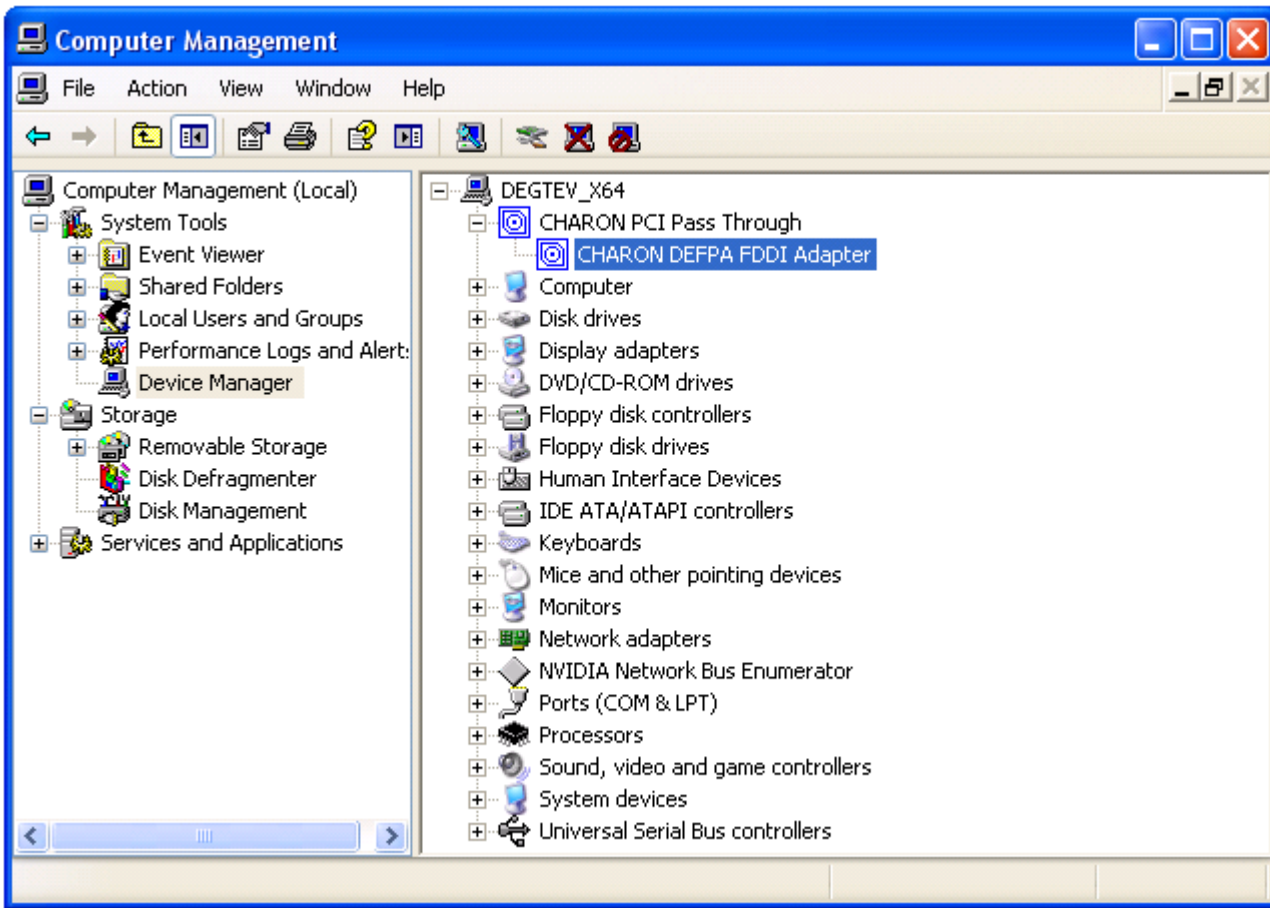
1. Install the DEFPA FDDI adapter to some spare PCI slot of the host system.
2. Boot a Windows operating system
3. Install the DEFPA FDDI adapter driver from the following directory: "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Drivers\DEFPA_X.X.X.XXXXX" by choosing the "Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)" option and then selecting the "defpa_ppt_amd64.inf" file.
4. Reboot the host

Now it is possible to collect the parameters for CHARON VM mapping to the DEFPA FDDI host adapter.

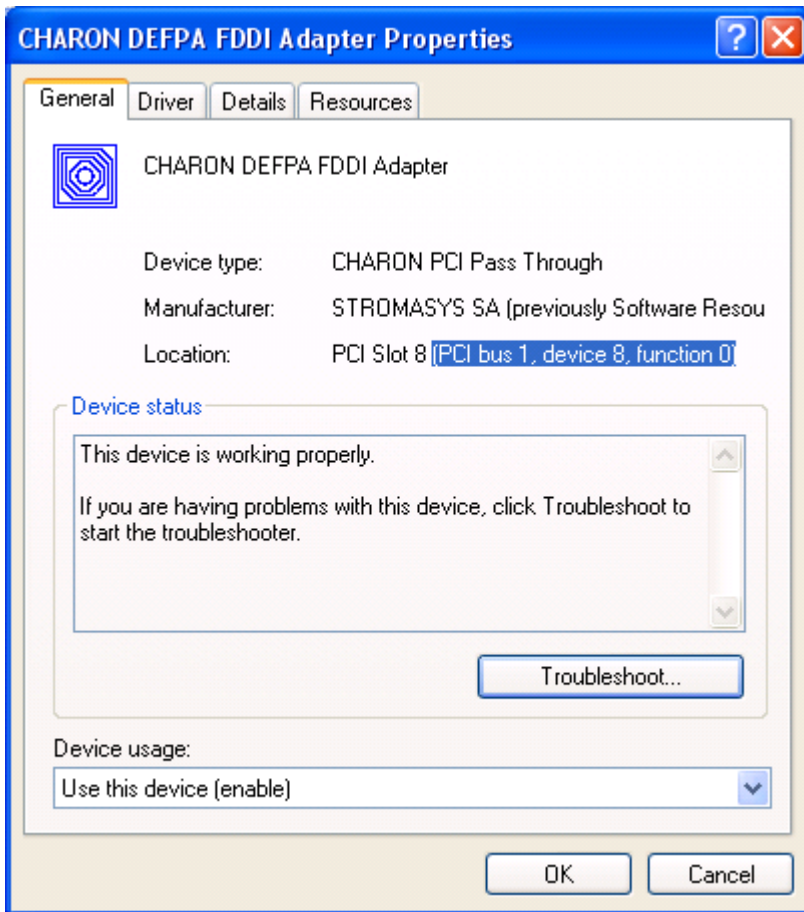
Open the "Computer Management" application and select "Device Manager":



On the right panel select the installed DEFPA adapter:



Open the properties sheet by double-clicking on the selected adapter:



The "Location:" on the above picture gives X, Y, and Z for the "host_bus_location" parameter. For example:

```
set FDDI host_bus_location = "PCI bus 1, device 9, function 0"
```

! Non-US-EN installations of Windows may present "Location:" string in local language, but "host_bus_location" parameter requires English notation, so the words "PCI", "bus", "device", and "function" must be specified in English.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Serial lines support via emulated PBXDA-xx family PCI controllers in "pass through" mode

Optionally it is possible to configure the following models of PBXDA-xx family controllers mapped to specific models of the physical DIGI serial lines adapters installed on the CHARON VM host:

DEC PBXDA-xx adapter	Name of the device to map to	Controller	Vendor ID	Device ID
PBXDA-BA	DIGI AccelePort 4r 920	ASIC PCI	114Fh	0026h
PBXDA-BB	DIGI AccelePort 8r 920	ASIC PCI	114Fh	0027h
PBXDA-AC	DIGI AccelePort Xem	ASIC PCI	114Fh	0004h
PBXDA-AC	DIGI AccelePort Xem	ASIC PCI	114Fh	0008h

Below is an example of mapping to a physical DIGI adapter installed on the host:

```
load digi PBXDA host_bus_location="PCI bus 3,device 1,function 0"
set PBXDA bus=pci_1 device=1 function=0 irq=24 irq_bus=isa
```

Pay attention to the proper placement of the emulated PBXDA-xx adapter on the virtual HP Alpha PCI bus (it is controlled by "bus", "device", "function", "irq" and "irq_bus" parameters). Refer to [this chapter](#) of this Guide for more information.

The "host_bus_location" parameter addresses the host DIGI adapter in the following way:

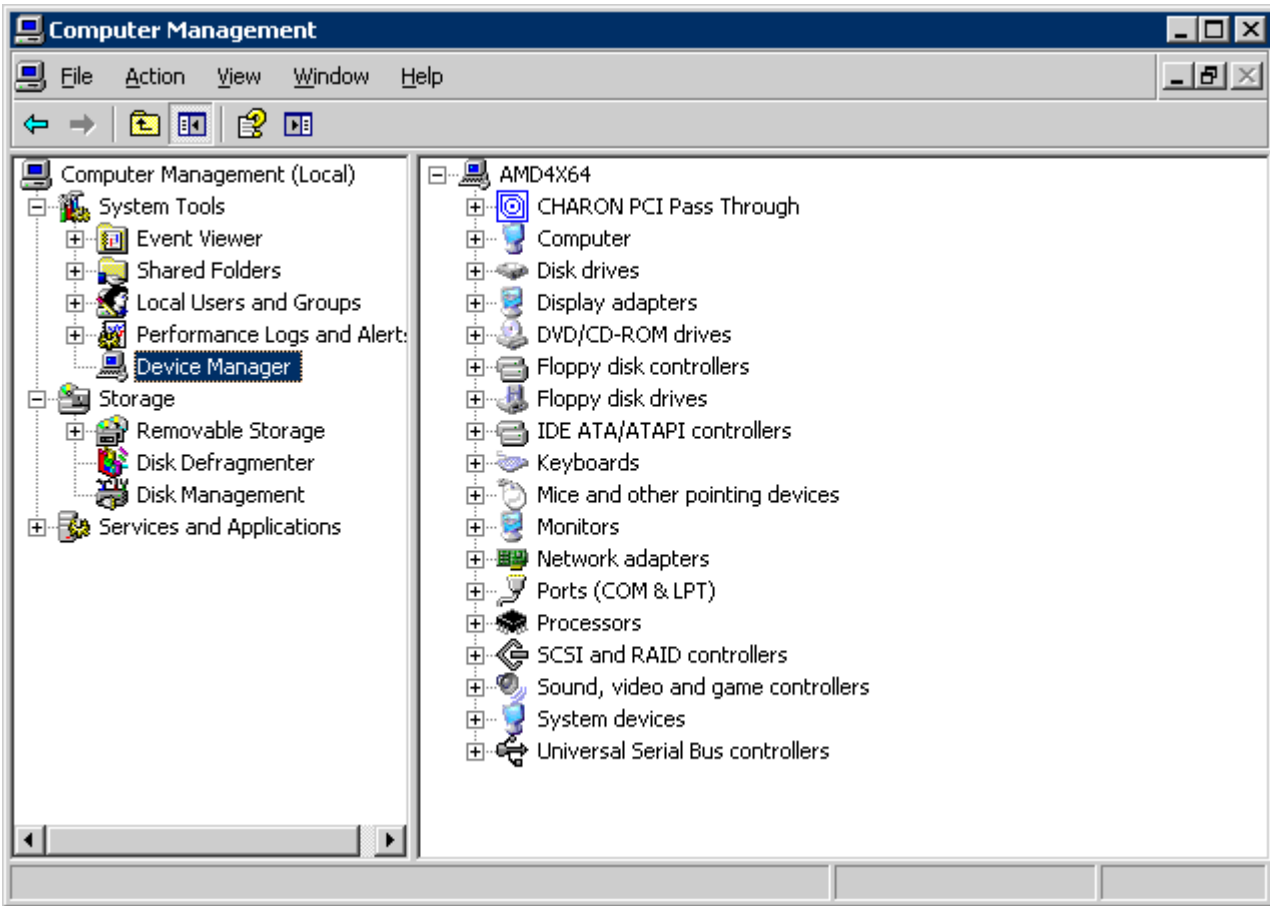
Parameters	Description
"bus X"	PCI bus number of the host DIGI adapter
"device Y"	PCI bus device number of the host DIGI adapter
"function Z"	The "function" parameter of the the host DIGI adapter

To establish the "pass through" mode do the following:

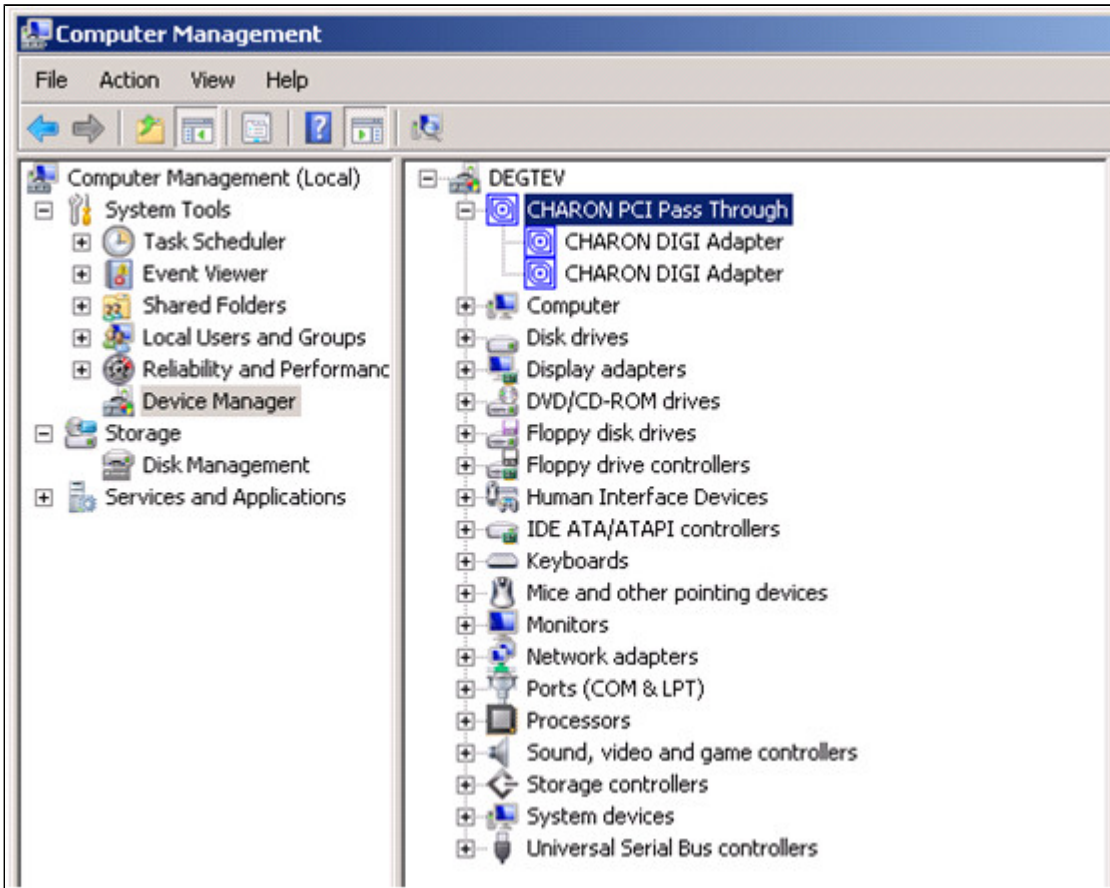
1. Install the DIGI adapter of the required type to some spare PCI/PCI-X/PCIe slot of the host system.
2. Boot a Windows operating system
3. Install the DIGI adapter driver from the following directory: "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Drivers\DIGI_X.X.X.XXXXX" by choosing "Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)" option and then selecting the "digi_ppt_amd64.inf" file.
4. Reboot the host

Now it is possible to collect the parameters for CHARON VM mapping to the DIGI host adapter.

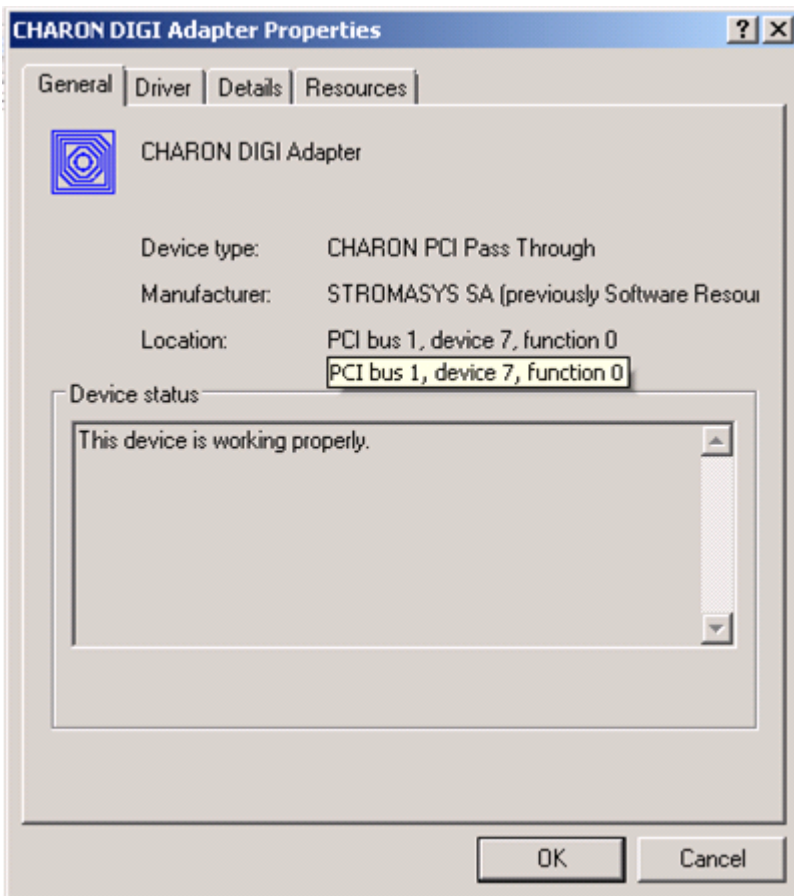
Open the "Computer Management" application and select "Device Manager":



On the right panel select proper physical DIGI adapter:



Open the properties sheet by double-clicking on the selected adapter:



The "Location:" on the above picture gives X, Y, and Z for the "host_bus_location" parameter. For example:

```
set PBXDA host_bus_location = "PCI bus 1, device 7, function 0"
```

! Non-US-EN installations of Windows may present "Location:" string in local language, but "host_bus_location" parameter requires English notation, so the words "PCI", "bus", "device", and "function" must be specified in English.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Auto boot

The CHARON VM can be configured to automatically boot an operating system at start up by specifying the default boot device and setting the 'auto_action' parameter to 'restart' from the console.

Example: dka0 is defined as the default boot device

```
>>>set bootdef_dev dka0
>>>set auto_action restart
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Migration to CHARON-AXP for Windows

Table of Contents

- Introduction
- Creating CHARON Virtual Machine
- Collecting information about the source HP Alpha system
- Creation of the CHARON-AXP configuration file
- Making disk images
- Installation of HP Alpha operating system
- Making remote backups
- Restore backups to CHARON-AXP disks
- Alternative ways of data transfer

Introduction

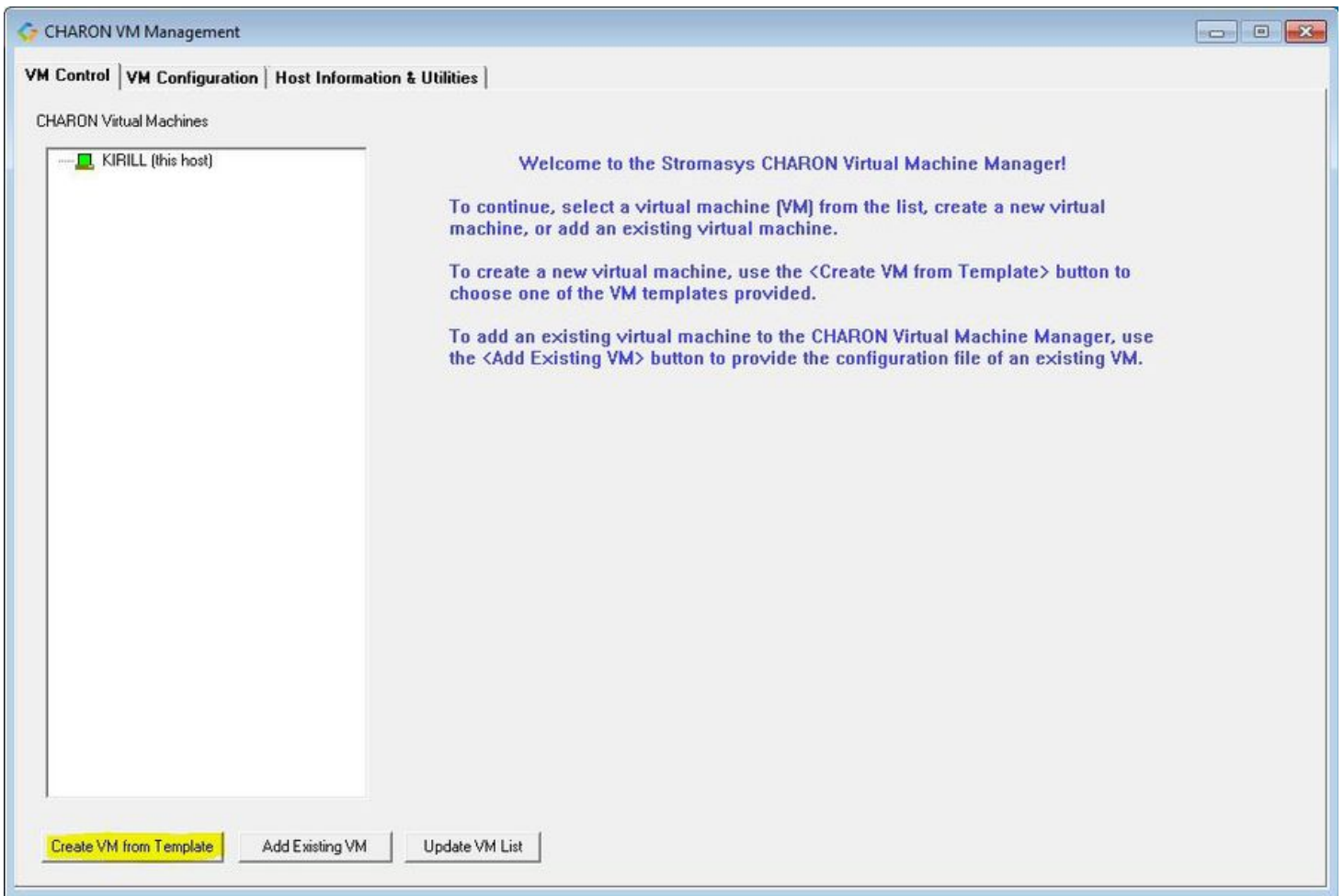
This section describes how to migrate your HP Alpha system to CHARON-AXP. We will use a sample HP AlphaServer ES40 system running OpenVMS to demonstrate the migration procedure. The process is similar for all CHARON-AXP models.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

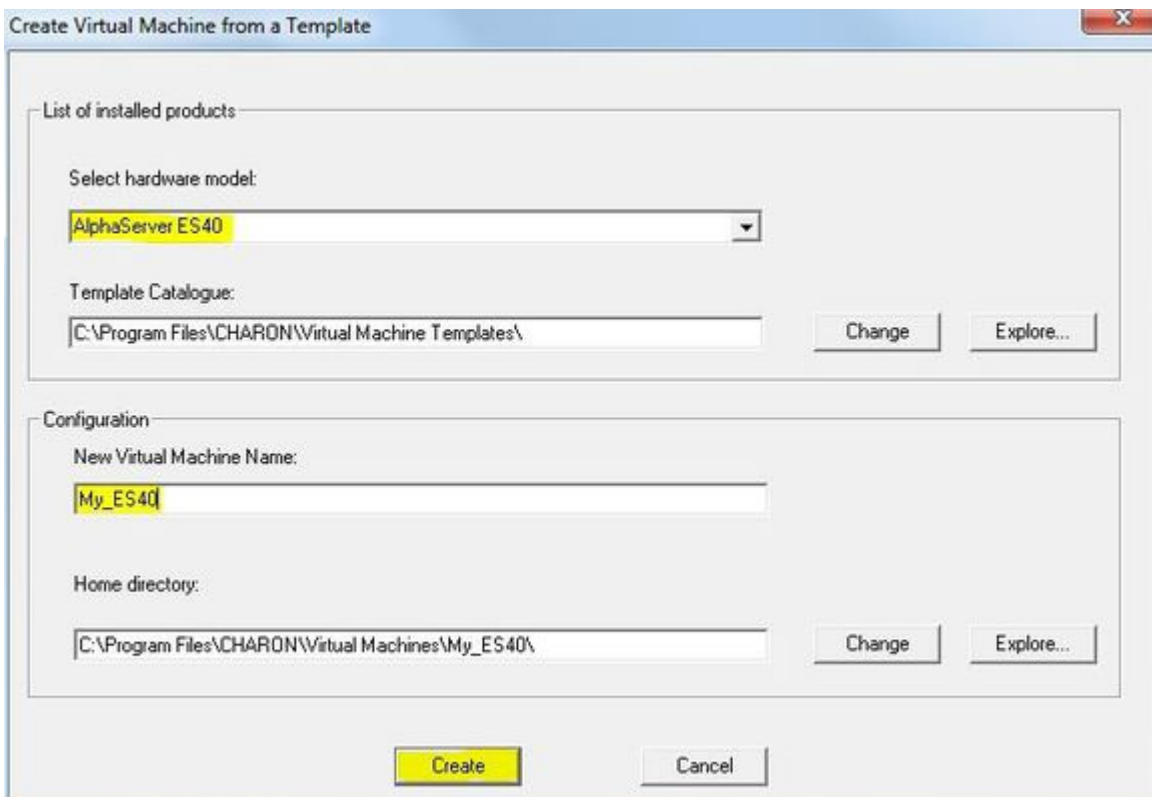
Creating CHARON Virtual Machine

As a first step it is required to create a CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) using the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager in the following way:

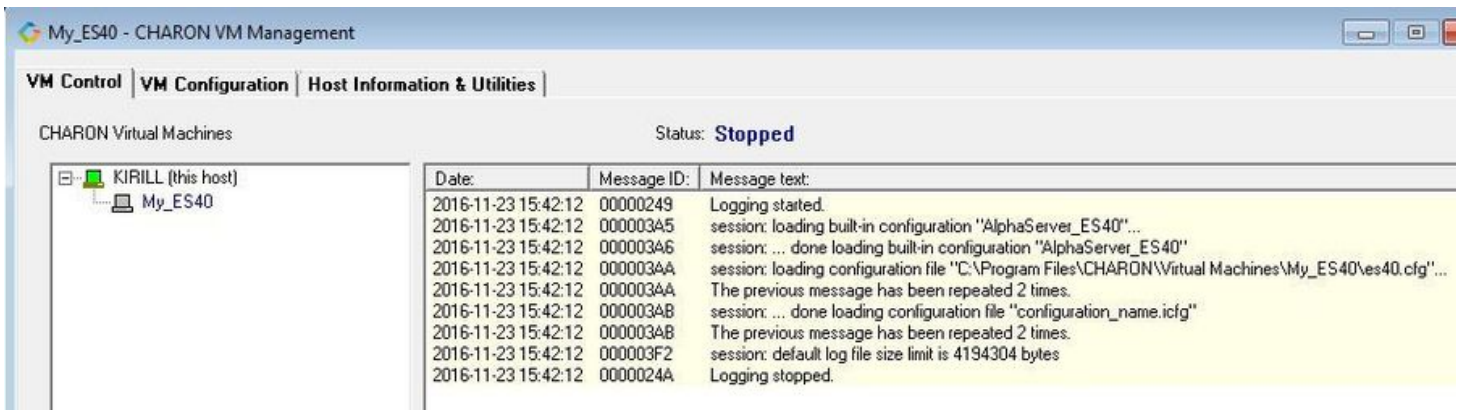
Press the "Create VM from Template" button:



Specify the HP Alpha model to be emulated and the name of the VM then press the "Create" button:

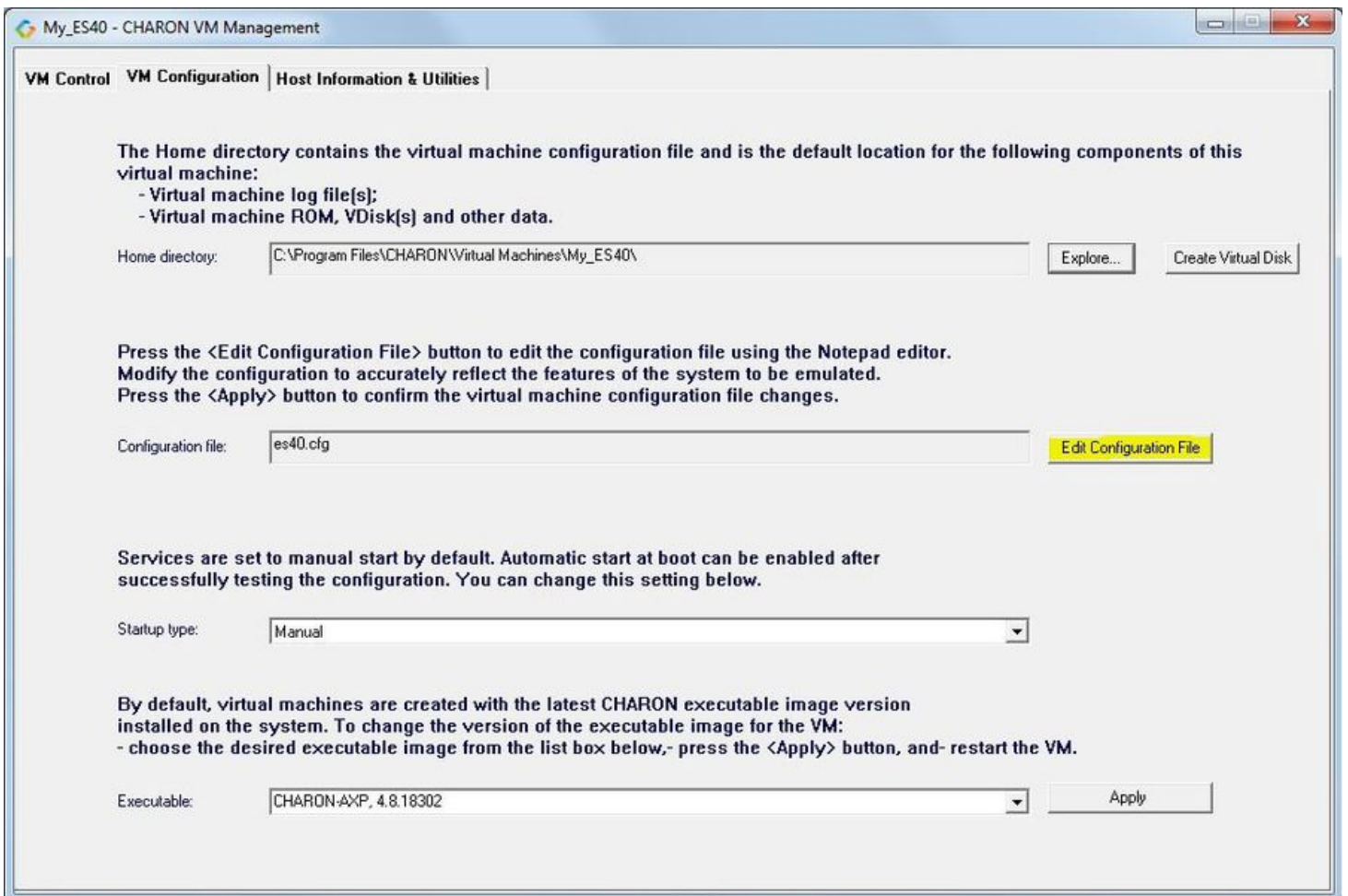


The VM will be created:



Select the VM from the left pane and switch to the "VM Configuration" tab.

In order to reproduce the target HP Alpha configuration, press the "Edit Configuration file" button:



i Alternatively it is possible to select the target CHARON VM and press the "Edit Configuration" button.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Collecting information about the source HP Alpha system

The next step is to determine the exact configuration of the HP Alpha hardware in order to create the CHARON VM configuration file.

Turn on the source HP Alpha system. At the ">>>" prompt, issue the "show device" command:

```
>>>show device
sys0.0.0.0.0 SYS0 System ROOT Device
ewa0.0.0.1.1 EWA0 F8-D1-11-00-67-E6
pka0.0.0.2.1 PKA0 Q-Logic/ISP PCI SCSI HBA
pga0.0.0.3.1 PGA0 WWN 1000-0000-0248-C550
pqa0.0.0.15.0 PQA0 ALi 1553C Integrated IDE Controller
pqb0.0.1.15.0 PQB0 ALi 1553C Integrated IDE Controller
dqa0.0.0.15.0 DQA0 TSSTcorpCDDVDW SH-222BB
dka0.0.0.2.1 DKA0 DEC RZ28 (C)DEC
dka100.1.0.2.1 DKA100 DEC RZ22 (C)DEC
dka200.2.0.2.1 DKA200 DEC RZ23 (C)DEC
mka600.6.0.2.1 MKA600 Virtual SCSI Tape
>>>
```


To get more detailed information, boot OpenVMS and issue the "show device /full" command:

```
$ show device /full

Disk PFCAXP$DKA0:, device type RZ28, is online, mounted, file-oriented device,
shareable, available to cluster, error logging is enabled.
...

Disk PFCAXP$DKA100:, device type RZ22, is online, file-oriented device,
shareable, available to cluster, error logging is enabled.
...

Disk PFCAXP$DKA200:, device type RZ23, is online, file-oriented device,
shareable, available to cluster, error logging is enabled.
...

Disk PFCAXP$DQA0:, device type TSSTcorpCDDVDW SH-222BB, is online,
file-oriented
device, shareable, available to cluster, error logging is enabled.
...

Disk $1$DGA0: (PFCAXP), device type RZ24, is online, file-oriented device,
shareable, available to cluster, error logging is enabled.
...

Magtape PFCAXP$MKA600:, device type Virtual SCSI Tape, is online, file-oriented
device, available to cluster, error logging is enabled, device supports
fastskip (per_io).
...

Terminal OPA0:, device type VT102, is online, record-oriented device, carriage
control.
...

Device EWA0:, device type DE500, is online, network device, device is a
template
only.
...

Device FGA0:, device type KGPSA Fibre Channel, is online, shareable, error
logging is enabled.
...

Device PGA0:, device type SCSI FCP, is online, error logging is enabled.
...

Device PKA0:, device type Qlogic ISP1020 SCSI port, is online, error logging is
enabled.
...

Device $1$GGA32767:, device type Generic SCSI device, is online, shareable.

$
```

If Tru64 UNIX V5 is running on the host system, it is recommended to use the following commands to get information on the host configuration:

Command	Description
<code>#!/sbin/hwmgrr view devices</code>	Get detailed information about the host hardware configuration
<code>#!/sbin/hwmgrr show scsi</code>	Get specific information about the host SCSI controllers and attached disks
<code>#!/sbin/hwmgrr view hierarchy</code>	Get information about the host controllers

Please refer to the Tru64 UNIX User's Guide for more details.

The source HP Alpha peripheral configuration in this example is:

Controller	Devices on controller	Description
KZPBA	-DKA0 (RZ28) -DKA100 (RZ22) -DKA200 (RZ23) -MKA600 (tape)	SCSI disk/tape controller
KGPSA-CA	-DGA0 (RZ24)	FC disk controller
OPA0		System console
TSSTcorpCDDVDW SH-222BB	-DQA0	IDE CD-ROM controller
EWA0		Network interface, MAC address: "F8-D1-11-00-67-E6"

Now collect some general information about the HP AlphaServer ES40 system:

```
>>>show cpu /full
System: PFCAXP, AlphaServer ES40 6/667

SMP execllet = 3 : Enabled : Streamlined.
Config tree = None
Primary CPU = 0
HWRPB CPUs = 4
Page Size = 8192
Revision Code =
Serial Number = SN01234567
Default CPU Capabilities:
System: QUORUM RUN
Default Process Capabilities:
System: QUORUM RUN

....
>>>
```

```
>>>show mem
System Memory Resources on 5-FEB-2015 09:29:16.42

Physical Memory Usage (pages): Total Free In Use Modified
Main Memory (512.00MB) 65536 56496 8610 430

...
>>>
```

So the collected information about the HP AlphaServer ES40 system is:

Component	Value
System Type	AlphaServer ES40 6/667
Serial Number	SN01234567
Number of CPUs	4
System memory	512 Mb

In some particular situations it is also important to know the exact placement of all the peripheral devices on the HP Alpha PCI bus. To do so, issue the "show config" command at the SRM prompt (>>>) on the HP Alpha console. For example:

```
>>>show config
...
PCI Bus
Bus 00 Slot 03: DECchip 21142 Network Controller
ewa0.0.0.3.0 00-00-F8-03-9A-6D
Bus 00 Slot 07: Cypress PCI Peripheral Controller
Bus 00 Slot 07: Function 1: PCI IDE
Bus 00 Slot 07: Function 2: PCI IDE
Bus 00 Slot 07: PCI USB
Bus 00 Slot 08: DECchip 21052 PCI to PCI Bridge
Bus 01 Slot 08: ISP1040 Scsi Controller
pka0.7.0.1008.0 SCSI Bus ID 7
dka0.0.0.1008.0 RZ2DD-KS
dka400.4.0.1008.0 RRD45
>>>
```

The "show config" command collects the following information of placement of peripheral devices on the PCI bus:

- Bus number
- Slot number
- Function number

To find out the exact types of controllers and other useful information refer to the source HP Alpha system documentation.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Creation of the CHARON-AXP configuration file

Using the above information, the following parameters and values can be set in the configuration file:

```
#
# HP AlphaServer model: AlphaServer ES40 6/667
#

set session hw_model = AlphaServer_ES40
set ace cpu_architecture = EV67
set rom dsrdb[0] = 1820 system_name = "AlphaServer ES40 6/667"

...

#
# Override default System Serial Number, set it to "SN01234567"
#

set rom system_serial_number = SN01234567

#
# Specify RAM size: 512 Mb
#

set ram size=512

#
# Map OPA0 console to "Putty" terminal emulator (included in CHARON-AXP kit)
#

load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="putty -load OPA0"

#
# Disconnect the emulator's DQA0 to the host's ATAPI CD/DVD-ROM drive.
#

set ide container="\\.\CdRom0"

#
# Load optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWA0) and map it to the "Charon" host network interface
#

load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA interface=EWA0
load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="connection:Charon"

#
# Load DEC-KZPBA SCSI controller and map it to 3 disk containers and 1 tape container
#

load KZPBA PKA scsi_id = 7

set PKA container[0] = "C:\My disks\bootable.vdisk"
set PKA container[100] = "C:\My disks\RZ22.vdisk"
set PKA container[200] = "C:\My disks\RZ23.vdisk"

set PKA container[600] = "C:\My tapes\my_tape.vtape"

#
# Load DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC adapter and map it to a disk container
#

load KGPSA FGA

set FGA container[0] = "C:\My disks\RZ24.vdisk"

...
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Making disk images

In our example, the mapping of the **KZPBA SCSI controller** include disk and tape images. The tape images have not to be manually created whereas the disk images have to be created as described below.

Our example creates disk images of the original physical type. In reality, this step is the best opportunity in the migration to provision larger disks to get extra storage space.

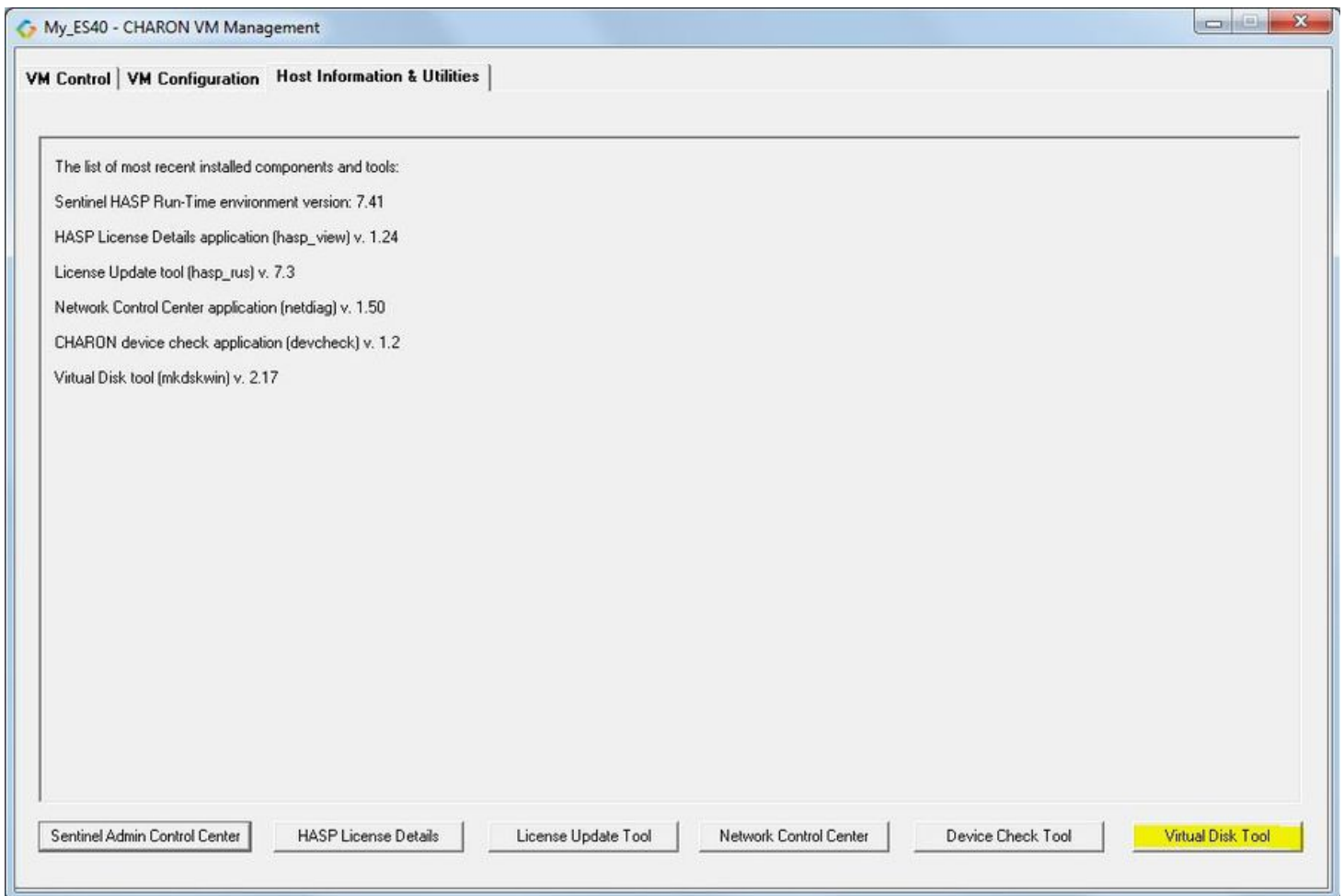
Create special directories for storing the disk and tape images. The created directories are referenced in the sample configuration file above.

```
...> cd C:\
C:\> mkdir "My disks"
C:\> mkdir "My tapes"
```

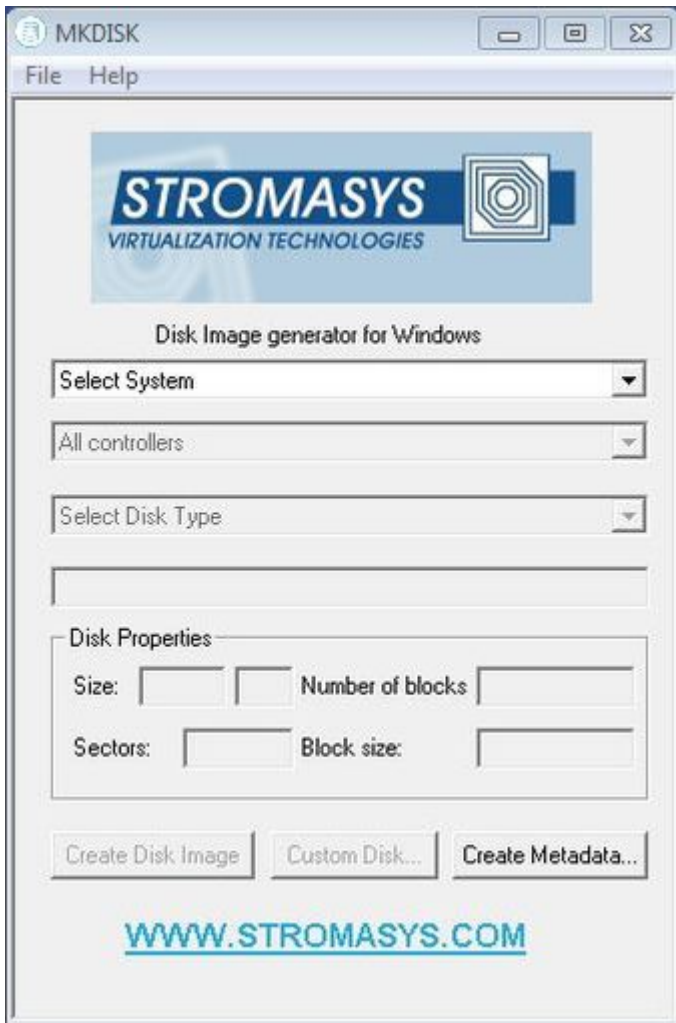
This operation can also be done using Windows Explorer.

i Alternatively it is possible to put the tape and disk images in the CHARON VM Home Directory.

Start the "MkDisk" utility by pressing the "Virtual Disk Tool" button in the "Host Information & Utilities" tab of the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager:

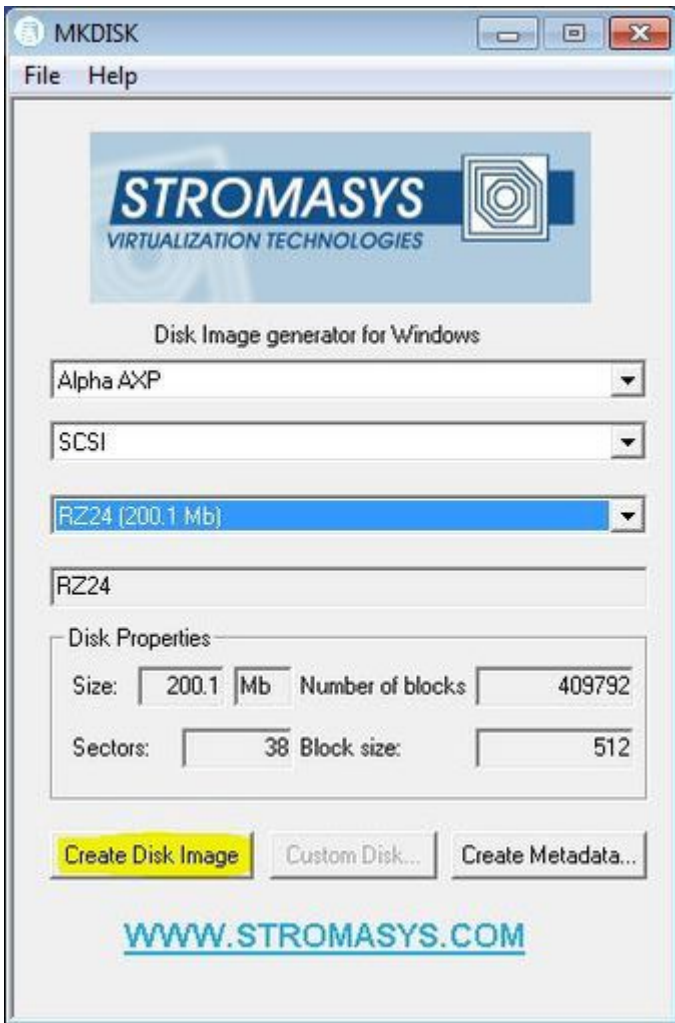


The following dialog will appear:

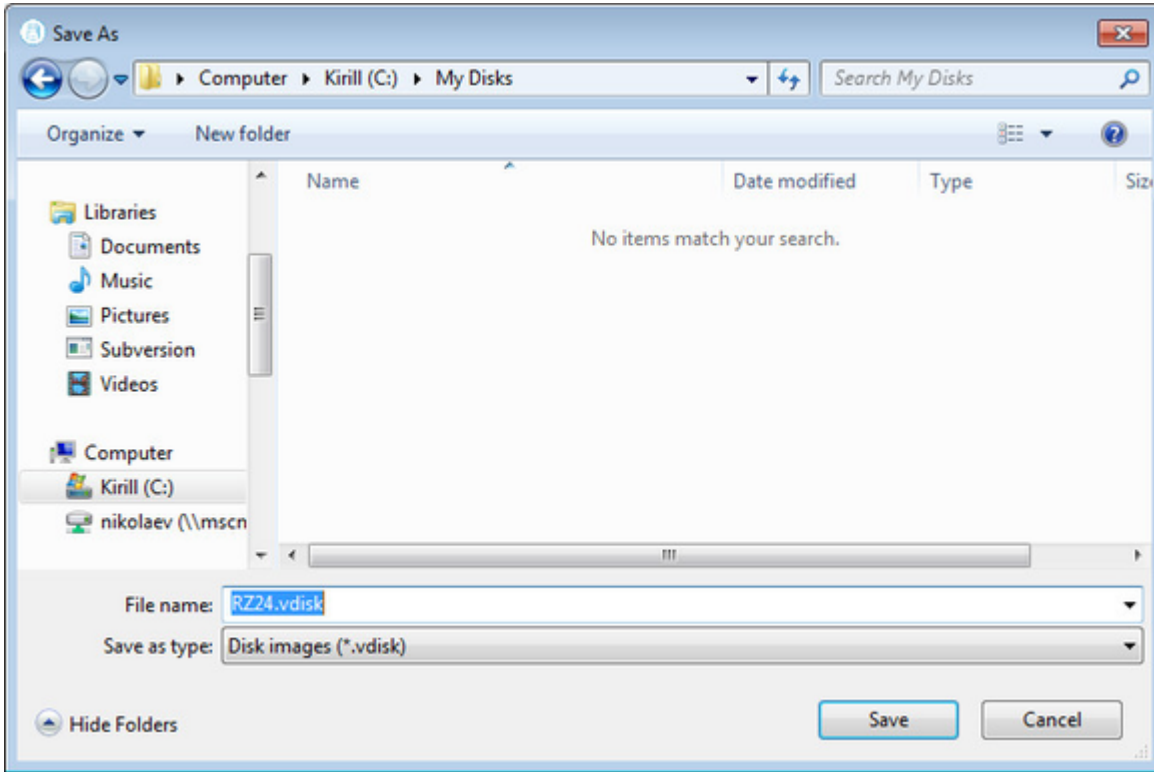


Select "Alpha AXP" in the "Select System" drop-down menu, "SCSI" in the "All Controllers" drop-down menu and "RZ24" (for example) in the "Select Disk Type" drop-down menu.

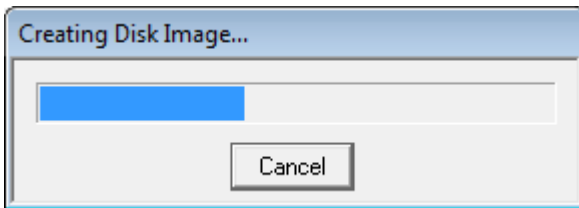
Press then the "Create Disk Image" button:



The utility will ask you to specify the output file name. Select the "C:\My disks" directory that has been created earlier, or create it directly in the dialog, and press the "Save" button:



The "MkDisk" utility will create the requested disk image:



Repeat this sequence for the disks "RZ28.vdisk", "RZ22.vdisk" and "RZ23.vdisk". Place them in the same folder.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Installation of HP Alpha operating system

The next step is to transfer the data from the source HP Alpha system to CHARON-AXP. The easiest way to do this is via backup over the network but for this operation a bootable network-enabled operating system on a CHARON-AXP disk image or physical disk is needed.

The example configures the CHARON-AXP AlphaServer ES40 system for installation of HP OpenVMS from a distribution CD-ROM (usually it is "\\.\CdRom0" if the host has only one CD-ROM drive):


```
#
# DEC-KZPBA SCSI controller is mapped to 5 disk containers; one of them (DKA300) - for migration purposes;
# another one (DKA400) - for installation of fresh HP OpenVMS system from distributive
#

load KZPBA PKA scsi_id = 7

set PKA container[0] = "C:\My disks\bootable.vdisk"
set PKA container[100] = "C:\My disks\RZ22.vdisk"
set PKA container[200] = "C:\My disks\RZ23.vdisk"
set PKA container[300] = "C:\My disks\migration.vdisk"
set PKA container[400] = "C:\My disks\fresh_openvms.vdisk"

#
# CD-ROM for HP OpenVMS installation (DQA0)
#

set ide container="\\.\CdRom0"
```

 DKA300 will be the disk where all the source disks will be copied so its size needs to be large enough to store all the disk backup images.

Create an empty disk image for installation of HP OpenVMS and another one for storing the backups from the source HP Alpha system as it is shown in the section above.

Run the CHARON VM and boot from the CDROM named "dqa0" ("migration.cfg" is the configuration file we use in this example):

```
CHARON-AXP/ES40 for Windows x64 (AlphaServer ES40 6/667), Version 4.8.18100
(C) 2009-2016 STROMASYS SA.
All rights reserved.

P00>>>boot dqa0
```

Install HP Alpha/VMS including DECnet on "dka400". The DECnet address must belong to the same area as the source HP Alpha system.

Login to the newly installed OpenVMS system and initialize the disk that will be used to store the backups. Let's assume its prompt is "newvms\$ "

```
newvms$ INIT DKA300: SCRATCH
newvms$ MOUNT/SYSTEM/NOASSIST DKA300: SCRATCH
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Making remote backups

Now we are ready to create the disk backups of the source HP Alpha system on the CHARON VM.

Boot the CHARON VM and make sure that the source HP Alpha system is available via DECnet.

Login to the source HP Alpha system. Stop all the batch queues, kick off the users, stop all the applications and close the databases if there are. The commands listed in SYS\$MANAGER:SYSHUTDOWN.COM may be helpful. The goal is to close as many files as possible. The system disk will have several files opened (pagefile, swapfile, etc.) and this is a normal situation.

 The use of the "SHOW DEVICE /FILES" command would be of help to list opened files on a disk.

In this example, the CHARON VM system is node 1.400.

Issue the following commands from the source HP Alpha. Let's assume its prompt is "source\$ ":

```
source$ BACKUP/IMAGE/IGNORE=INTERLOCK DKA0: 1.400"username password": :DKA300:[000000]DKA0.BCK/SAVE
source$ BACKUP/IMAGE/IGNORE=INTERLOCK DKA100: 1.400"username password": :DKA300:[000000]DKA100.BCK/SAVE
source$ BACKUP/IMAGE/IGNORE=INTERLOCK DKA200: 1.400"username password": :DKA300:[000000]DKA200.BCK/SAVE
```

When the backup operation will be completed, the disk "DKA300" of the CHARON VM will contain 3 savesets: "DKA0.BCK", "DKA100.BCK" and "DKA200.BCK".

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Restore backups to CHARON-AXP disks

The savesets have now to be restored on their corresponding virtual disks. Login to the CHARON VM guest OS and issue this sequence of commands:

```
newvms$ MOUNT/FOREIGN DKA0:
newvms$ BACKUP/IMAGE DKA300:[000000]DKA0.BCK/SAVE DKA0:
newvms$ DISMOUNT DKA0:
newvms$ MOUNT/FOREIGN DKA100:
newvms$ BACKUP/IMAGE DKA300:[000000]DKA100.BCK/SAVE DKA100:
newvms$ DISMOUNT DKA100:
newvms$ MOUNT/FOREIGN DKA200:
newvms$ BACKUP/IMAGE DKA300:[000000]DKA200.BCK/SAVE DKA200:
newvms$ DISMOUNT DKA200:
```

If you are going to have the CHARON VM and the original physical HP Alpha on the network at the same time, you must change the network identity of one system, usually the CHARON VM.

The easiest way is to boot the CHARON VM on the restored system disk with the network disabled and to configure new addresses then enable the network and reboot.

 The NIC can be disabled with a `interface="(disabled)"` statement in the CHARON VM configuration file.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Alternative ways of data transfer

Some alternative methods of data transfer are also possible. For example:

- Connect a SCSI tape drive to the CHARON-AXP host via a PCI card
 - Map the tape drive in the CHARON VM configuration file
 - a. Restore the source HP Alpha system backups from tape to disk images via OpenVMS running on the CHARON VM.
 - b. Boot from standalone backups and restore the content to the CHARON VM virtual disks
 - Dump the source HP Alpha system backups to tape images using the "mtd" utility and:
 - a. Boot from the freshly installed OpenVMS system and restore the tape images to the CHARON VM virtual disks
 - b. Boot from the standalone backup and restore the content to the CHARON VM virtual disks
- Create a network cluster between the source HP Alpha system and the CHARON VM (it is possible to use the source system as a boot server); then perform simple backups from one disk to another:

```
$ BACKUP/IMAGE/IGNORE=INTERLOCK REAL$DKA0: DKA0:
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CHARON-AXP for Windows licensing

Table of Contents


- General description
- Parameters defined by CHARON-AXP license
- CHARON-AXP technical licensing models
 - Regular Sentinel HASP keys
 - Network Sentinel HASP keys
 - Software licenses
- Multiple licenses configuration and backup license
- License installation
 - Installation from scratch
 - Replacement of currently installed Sentinel run-time
 - Installation and update of CHARON-AXP Software License or HASP dongle License
- License management
 - Sentinel Admin Control Center
 - General Description
 - Disable remote keys access
 - License management utility
- Removing CHARON-AXP software licenses
- License Deinstallation
- Special "backup" license keys

General description

The CHARON-AXP product is protected by licenses issued on a customer basis by STROMASYS Inc. The CHARON-AXP license defines all the specifics of a particular CHARON-AXP distribution and its usage.

The license is implemented in the form of a hardware dongle (a Sentinel HASP key) or a software license bound to the hardware. Please be careful with your license key, in case of loss or damage, the CHARON Virtual Machines (VM) will not run or start until the license key is replaced. For redundancy, STROMASYS recommends to use a backup license key (purchased separately) that can replace the main license key for a restricted period of time. It is possible to specify the backup license in the CHARON VM configuration file to prevent CHARON VM from stopping in case the main license dongle is no longer available.

The CHARON-AXP license being checked upon the start of CHARON VM and at a specified interval (defined by the license) during the emulated system execution (default is 1 hour). If CHARON VM detects the absence (or malfunction) of the license key or software license, CHARON VM will try to use a backup license (if specified in the configuration file). If the license is not available or not specified, CHARON VM displays a warning message in the log file requesting the license key reconnection or software license reactivation. If the license is not reconnected or reactivated within a given period of time (the check interval), CHARON VM exits.

 The CHARON-AXP main license is time restricted or unlimited, the backup license is limited by the number of executions (1 execution = 1 interval check)

Note that if the time-restricted license is used and it expires, the CHARON VM tries to find its replacement automatically and, if found, proceeds using the replacement license.

The CHARON-AXP software license is not distributed for Proof-of-Concept and evaluation installations. Only hardware dongles are used in these cases.

It is important to keep the HASP license keys connected to a computer powered on even if the CHARON VM is not running because the keys contain a built-in battery that needs to be charged. If the battery is completely discharged, the license key can be irreparably damaged.

Update of the CHARON-AXP license can be performed on the fly without stopping the CHARON VM. The expiration date and execution counter can be updated, however the CHARON VM virtual hardware configuration should remain unchanged. At the next license check, the CHARON VM will use the updated license.

The following sections list all the main parameters of the CHARON-AXP licensing mechanism.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Parameters defined by CHARON-AXP license

The following table represents all the parameters defined by the CHARON-AXP license:

General	Products relevant	Optional
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Physical key ID License Number End user name Master key ID License release date and time Update Number Purchasing Company name. In most cases the company to which the key was issued originally 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Commercial product name Commercial product code Commercial product version and range of build numbers suitable for running Range of CHARON-AXP virtual models available for running Type of host CPU required Host operating system required Number of virtual CPUs enabled for virtual SMP systems Minimum number of host CPU cores required Minimum host memory required Maximum memory emulated. If not present the value defaults to the maximum memory possible for the particular virtual system. Note that the maximum memory may not be available to the virtual system if the host computer has insufficient physical memory. Maximum number of CHARON VMs that can be run concurrently Whether or not CHAPI (CHARON API) can be used with this product Product and Field Test expiration dates (if any) Product and Field Test executions counter (if any) Maximum number of hosts that may run CHARON VMs concurrently (in the case of a networking license) Level of support (if any), end date of any support contract, the "First Line" Service Provider Frequency of CHARON VM license checking during CHARON VM running 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parameter that reduces the maximum speed of CHARON-AXP (might be required for synchronization with legacy hardware systems) Parameter that enables the product to support additional serial lines through an option board from a company such as DIGI Parameter that prohibits use of Advanced CPU Emulation. If not present the Advanced CPU Emulation is enabled

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CHARON-AXP technical licensing models

CHARON-AXP licensing models are divided into 3 groups:

Regular Sentinel HASP keys

This is the most common way of CHARON-AXP licensing.

The CHARON-AXP license is embedded in a Sentinel HASP dongle. This license is available only on the host where the dongle is physically installed.

The CHARON-AXP installation procedure takes care of the Sentinel HASP run-time (driver) installation. Once the CHARON-AXP product has been installed, it is possible to plug in the regular license key and proceed with using CHARON-AXP without additional configuration steps.

The number of CHARON VMs allowed to run on a particular host may be restricted by the license content (see above).

Network Sentinel HASP keys

The Network Sentinel HASP key (red dongle) can be shared between several hosts running CHARON virtual machines (including the host on which the network license is installed).

If CHARON-AXP is installed on the host where the network key is connected, no additional steps are required. The Sentinel driver is activated as part of the CHARON-AXP installation. If the host does not have CHARON-AXP installed, the host can still distribute the connected network license(s) to the CHARON virtual machines running on other hosts. In this case the Sentinel driver must be installed on the host manually.

The Sentinel run-time driver is distributed as a part of the CHARON-AXP kit. Please see the "License installation" section of this chapter for details.

Once the Sentinel run-time driver is installed and the network license is connected, the CHARON VM can be started on any appropriate host on the LAN network segment.

CHARON-AXP/VAX version 4.7 build 171-01 introduced a change with respect to network licenses. In previous versions of CHARON-AXP/VAX a network license controlled the maximum number of client host systems and CHARON instances per host system (station/instance mode).

In the current CHARON-AXP/VAX versions a network license controls the maximum overall number of active instances, which can be distributed across client host systems according to the preference of the customer.

Software licenses

The CHARON-AXP Software License (SL) is a "virtual" key with exactly the same functionality as the hardware dongle. It does not require any hardware but the installation of the Sentinel run-time environment is required.

The Software Licenses (SL) are best suited for stable environments because their correct function depends on certain characteristics of the host system. Changing any of these characteristics will invalidate the license.

- If the CHARON host runs on real hardware, the software licenses are by default **tightly bound to the hardware** for which they were issued. If major hardware characteristics of the system are changed, the license will be disabled.
- If the CHARON host runs in a **virtual environment** (e.g. VMware), software licenses are normally bound to the virtual machine ID and a set of additional characteristics of the virtual machine. If any of these parameters are changed, the license will be disabled.

For a more detailed description of the restrictions, please refer to [Software Licensing restrictions](#) or contact your Stromasys representative.

Software licenses are always network-wide on Windows, so they behave the same way as Network HASP keys.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Multiple licenses configuration and backup license

For any type of licensing, a CHARON VM can use **only one valid ("active") license (of given vendor code) at a time**.

The "HASP License details" utility (it can be started from CHARON Virtual Machines Manager) displays a range of available licenses but note that, by default, a CHARON VM may use any of them as the "active" one - unless it is directly specified by the "license_key_id" parameter (see below). The utility provides the license numbers and ID / IP addresses of the hosts where the licenses are installed.

A CHARON VM **cannot**:

- check all the available license keys / software licenses,
- choose one,
- automatically switch from one key to another (except when the backup license is specified in its configuration file).

The general recommendation is to avoid the usage of multiple keys in one network segment. Use only one locally installed license per host or one network license per local network segment containing several CHARON hosts.

When needed, it is possible to use a special parameter in the CHARON VM configuration files to specify exactly which license must be used by each particular CHARON VM:

Parameter	Type	Value
license_key_id[N], N=0 or 1	Numeric	<p>A number (decimal Sentinel key ID) that specifies regular (N=0) and backup (N=1) license keys to be used by the CHARON VM.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set session license_key_id[0]=1877752571 set session license_key_id[1]=354850588</pre> <p>It is also possible to specify both regular and backup key in one line.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set session license_key_id[0]=1877752571 license_key_id[1]=354850588</pre> <p>Depending on the presence of the regular and/or backup license key IDs in the configuration file, the CHARON VM behaves differently:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> No keys are specified The CHARON VM behaves as usual (performs unqualified search for any suitable key). If no keys are found, the CHARON VM stops. Both keys are specified The CHARON VM performs qualified search for regular license key. If it is not found, the CHARON VM performs qualified search for backup license key. If it is not found, the CHARON VM stops. Only regular key is specified The CHARON VM performs qualified search for regular license key. If it is not found, the CHARON VM performs unqualified search for any suitable key. If it is not found, the CHARON VM stops. Only backup key is specified The CHARON VM behaves as usual (performs unqualified search for any suitable key). If no keys are found, the CHARON VM stops.

This parameter also specifies the license which will be used as backup if the active license expires.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

License installation

Installation from scratch

Before installing the license make sure that the Sentinel run-time (driver) to be installed is collected from your CHARON kit or provided by STROMASYS on request for your particular product. Do not update the Sentinel run-time (driver) from online or any other sources, including the Sentinel web site.

In case of several CHARON kits containing different versions of Sentinel run-time (driver), the last one, having the most recent version, must be installed. The CHARON installation performs this operation automatically.

At the moment CHARON supports Sentinel HASP keys, Sentinel HL and Sentinel Software Licenses (SL).

Installation of a CHARON-AXP regular or network license consists of:

1. Installation of the Sentinel run-time environment on the CHARON-AXP host (regular and network keys) or on the host that will distribute CHARON-AXP licenses over a local network segment (network key only). The Sentinel software is installed automatically by CHARON-AXP for Windows.
2. Physical connection of the HASP license dongle to the CHARON-AXP host or to the host distributing the CHARON-AXP license over the local network segment.
3. Collecting the system fingerprint (*.c2v file), sending it to STROMASYS and applying the update (*.v2c file) in case of software license (and in case of updating HASP dongle license). See the details below.

When a manual installation of the Sentinel run-time is required (in the case of the network license server that does not have CHARON-AXP installed):

1. Login as Administrator
2. Open the CHARON-AXP kit folder
3. Switch to the "hasp_install" subfolder
4. Unzip the archive located in this folder
5. Open "cmd.exe" and switch to the folder where the files were unzipped
6. Execute the following commands:

```
...> haspdinst.exe -fr -kp -nomsg
...> haspdinst.exe -install -cm
```

Note that the following operations have to be performed on installation phase for network licenses:

- *On the server side (where the network license will reside):* open port 1947 for both TCP and UDP
- *On the client side,* if broadcast search for remote licenses is to be used, UDP traffic from port 1947 of the license server to ports 30000-65535 of the client must be permitted.
- *Both on server and client sides:* setup default gateway

Please consult with your Windows User's Guide on details.

If stricter firewall rules are required, it is possible to open the ports 30000-65535 and 1947 only for the "Sentinel HASP License Manager" (hasplms.exe) service (it will be installed by CHARON-AXP).

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Replacement of currently installed Sentinel run-time

Replacement of the currently installed Sentinel Run-time can be needed in case of installation of specific run-time provided by STROMASYS.

To proceed, remove the current version of Sentinel run-time:

- Login as Administrator
- Extract the content of the unique ZIP file residing in "hasp_install" directory of the CHARON distribution to the same folder.
- Run "cmd.exe" from the "Start" menu of host computer
- "cd" to the "hasp_install" directory
- Issue the following command:

```
...> haspdinst.exe -fr -kp -nomsg
```

Install the other Sentinel run-time:

- "cd" to the directory where the target run-time resides
- Issue the following command:

```
...> haspdinst.exe -install -cm
```

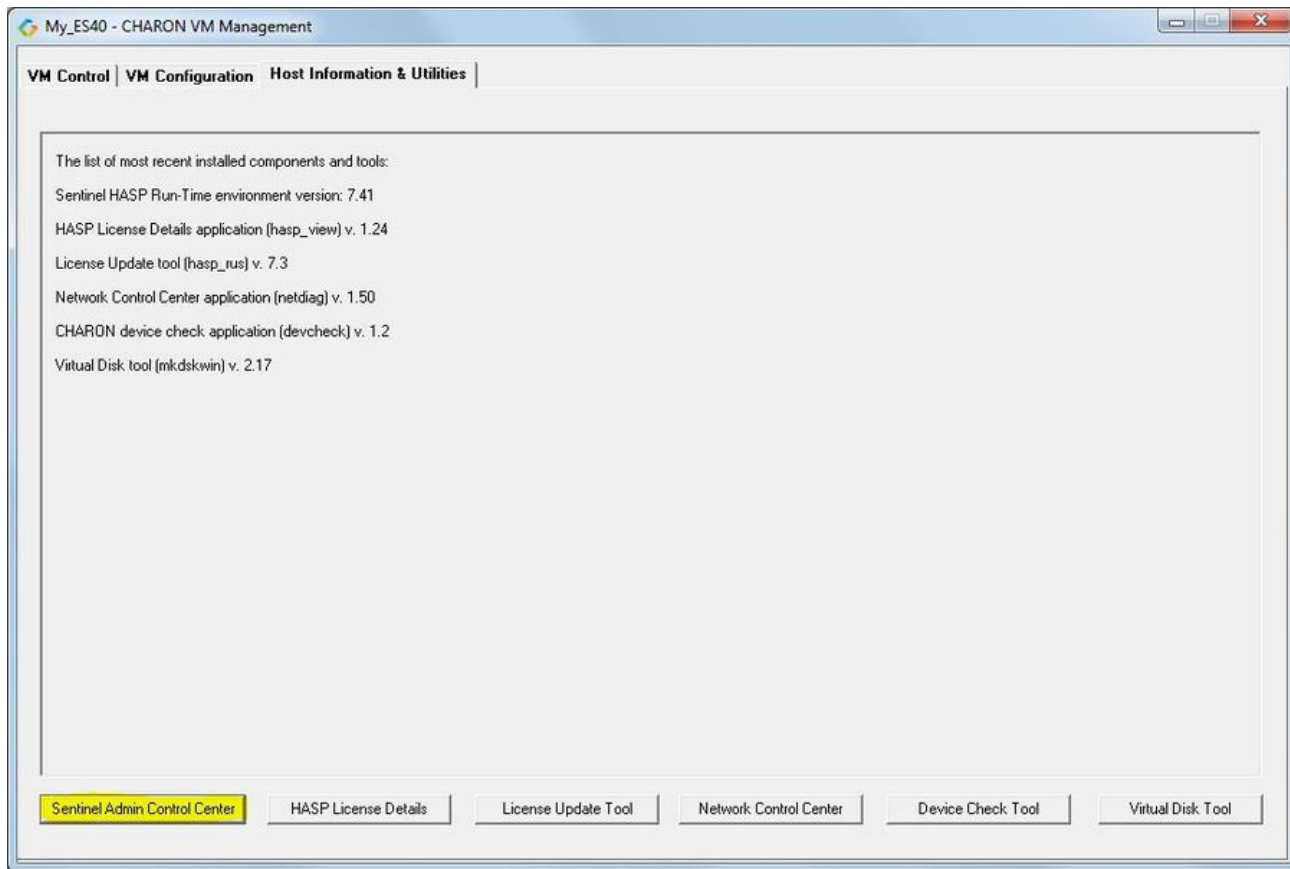
You do not need to perform this procedure for Sentinel HL keys - local and network ones (red dongle) used as local.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Installation and update of CHARON-AXP Software License or HASP dongle License

The CHARON-AXP software licenses can be installed / updated according to the procedure described below:

- Install CHARON-AXP together with Sentinel run-time (Sentinel run-time is an essential part of CHARON-AXP for Windows distribution)
- Reboot the host system
- In case of Software License (SL) installation and if there are already installed network-wide SL's on the local network, disable access to the network licenses in the following way:
 - Open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, switch to the "Host Information & Utilities" tab and press the "Sentinel Admin Control Center" button:

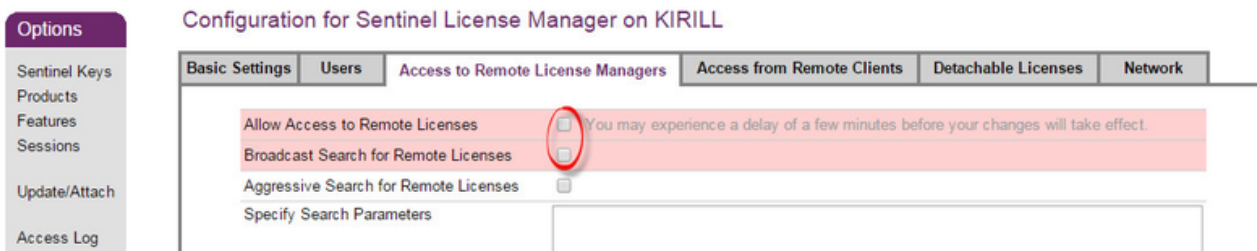


or - alternatively - go to the <http://localhost:1947> page using your browser to access the "Sentinel HASP Admin Control Center" (ACC).

- Select the "Configuration" option in the left pane then switch to the "Access to Remote License Managers" tab.
- Uncheck the highlighted options:



Sentinel Admin Control Center



- Press the "Submit" button to apply the settings
- Switch to the "Network" tab.
- Set the "Network visibility" to "None":

Options

- Sentinel Keys
- Products
- Features
- Sessions
- Update/Attach
- Access Log
- Configuration
- Diagnostics

Configuration for Sentinel License Manager on KIRILL

Basic Settings | Users | Access to Remote License Managers | Access from Remote Clients | Detachable Licenses | Network

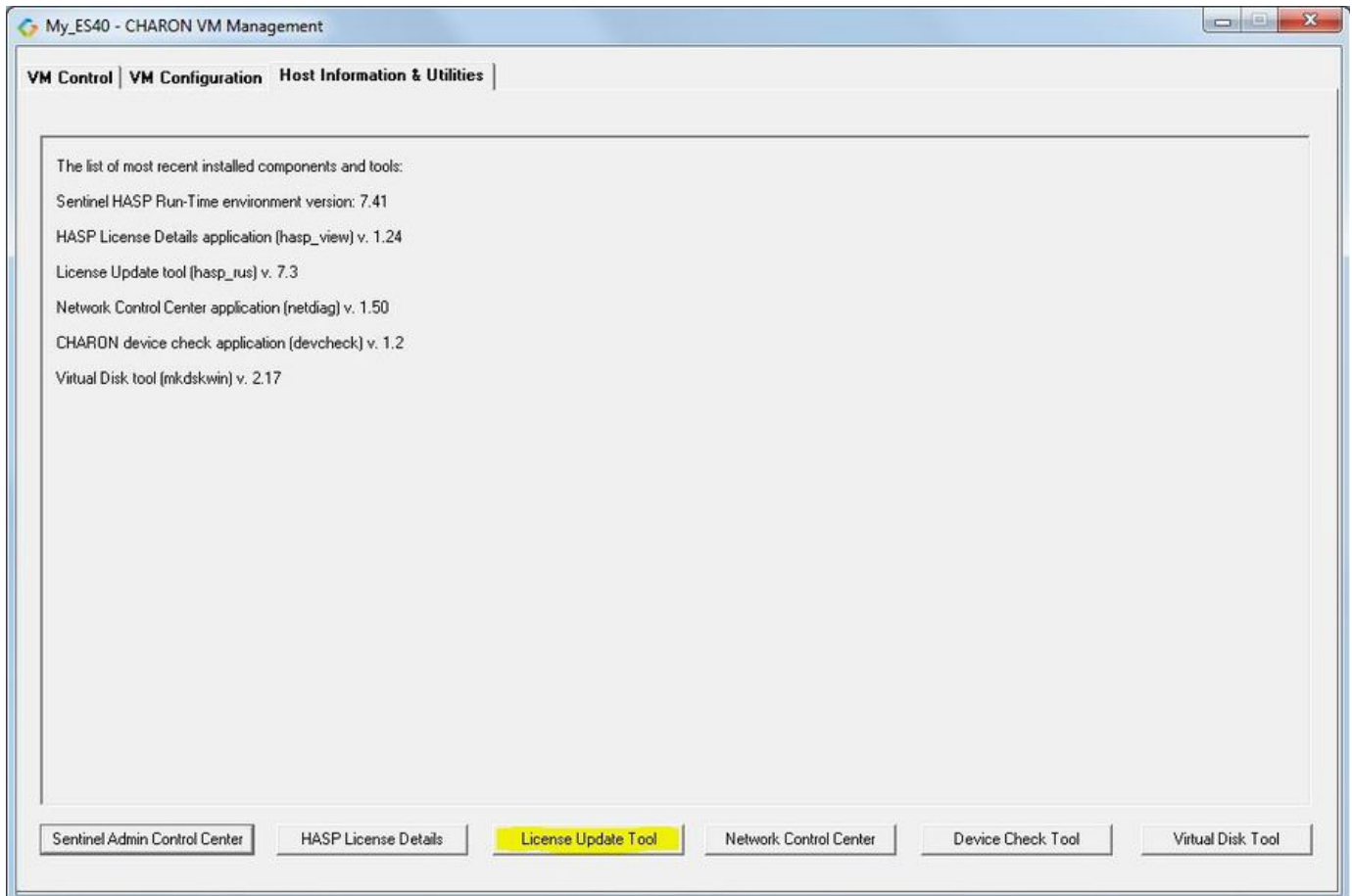
Network Visibility

All Network Adapters
 None (Local Access Only)

• A change to this setting may disrupt existing local and remote sessions with this License Manager.
 • When this setting is changed, License Manager will be unavailable for several seconds.
 • If set to "None", keys containing FQDN-protected licenses will be disabled.
 • Warning: If this browser session is with a remote Admin Control Center, and you set that remote License Manager service to "None", your session terminates. You will not be able to reconnect to that License Manager service or Admin Control Center.

- Press the "Submit" button to apply the settings.
- Do not forget to return these settings back after the software license installation.
- Connect the HASP dongle to the host system (in case of update of a license located on a dongle)
- Collect the CHARON-AXP host fingerprint file (*.c2v):

Open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, switch to the "Host Information & Utilities" tab and press the "License Update tool" button to invoke the "License Update Service" utility:



My_ES40 - CHARON VM Management

VM Control | VM Configuration | Host Information & Utilities

The list of most recent installed components and tools:

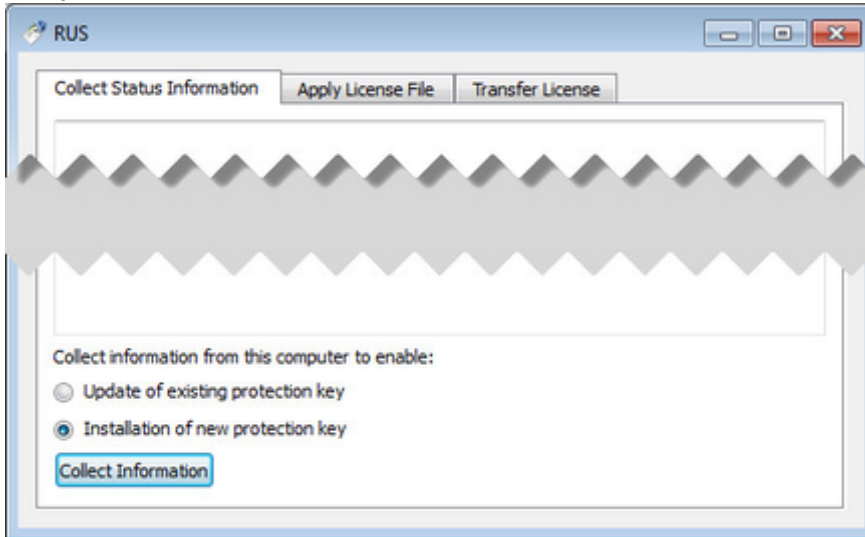
- Sentinel HASP Run-Time environment version: 7.41
- HASP License Details application (hasp_view) v. 1.24
- License Update tool (hasp_rus) v. 7.3
- Network Control Center application (netdiag) v. 1.50
- CHARON device check application (devcheck) v. 1.2
- Virtual Disk tool (mkdskwin) v. 2.17

Sentinel Admin Control Center | HASP License Details | License Update Tool | Network Control Center | Device Check Tool | Virtual Disk Tool

In the utility dialog popup switch to the "Collect Status Information" tab (opened by default) then select:

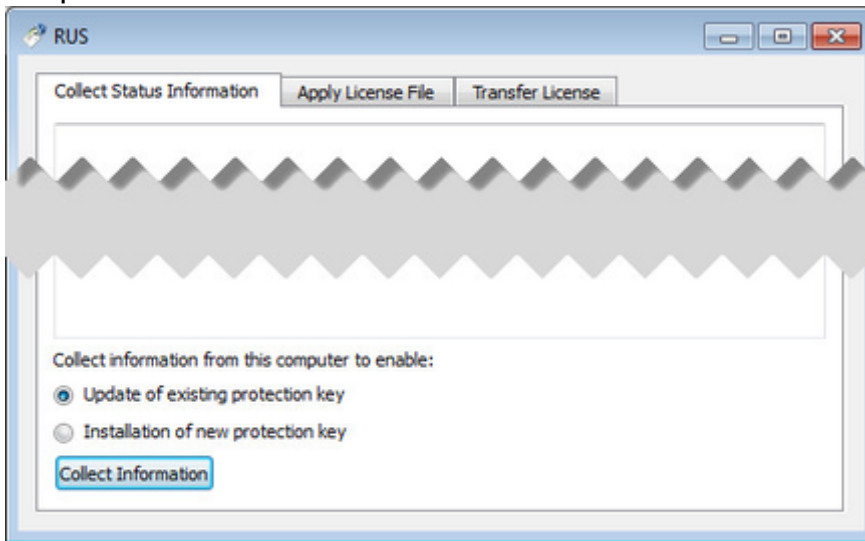
- "Installation of new protection key" in case of Software License if no Software License has been already installed on the host.

Example:



- "Update of existing protection key" in case of HL/HASP dongle or Software License that has been already installed on the host and needs updating.

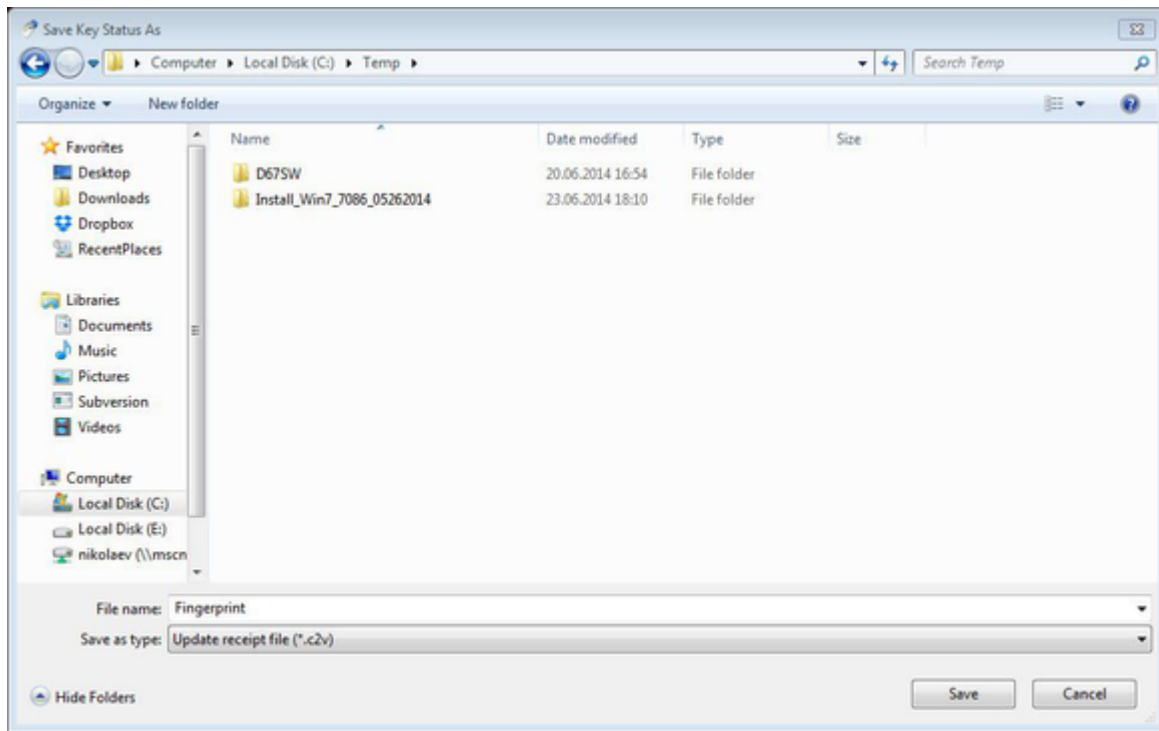
Example:



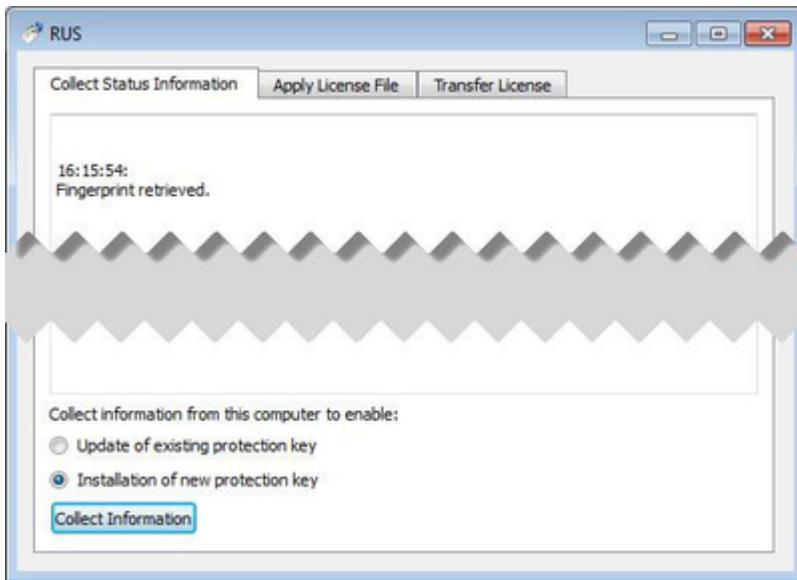
When using HASP dongles, select only the "Update of existing protection key" option.

In case of Software License use the "Installation of new protection key" option if the host does not have any Software License installed and the "Update of existing protection key" option if an already installed Software License has to be updated.

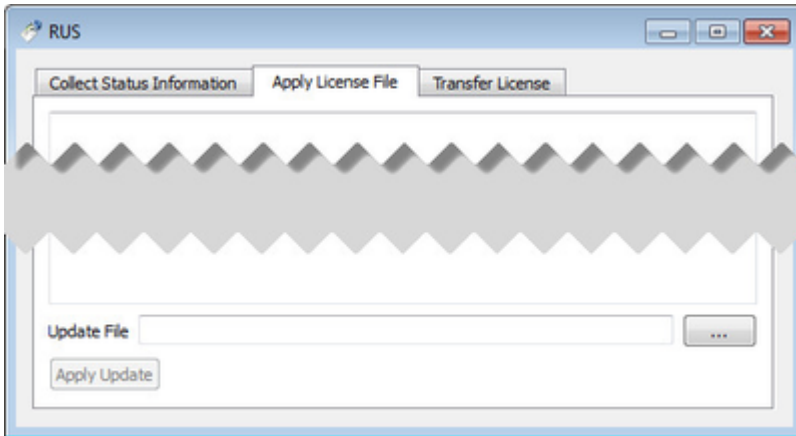
- Press the "Collect Information" button. In the popup dialog choose the place to store the "Fingerprint.c2v" file and press the "Save" button:



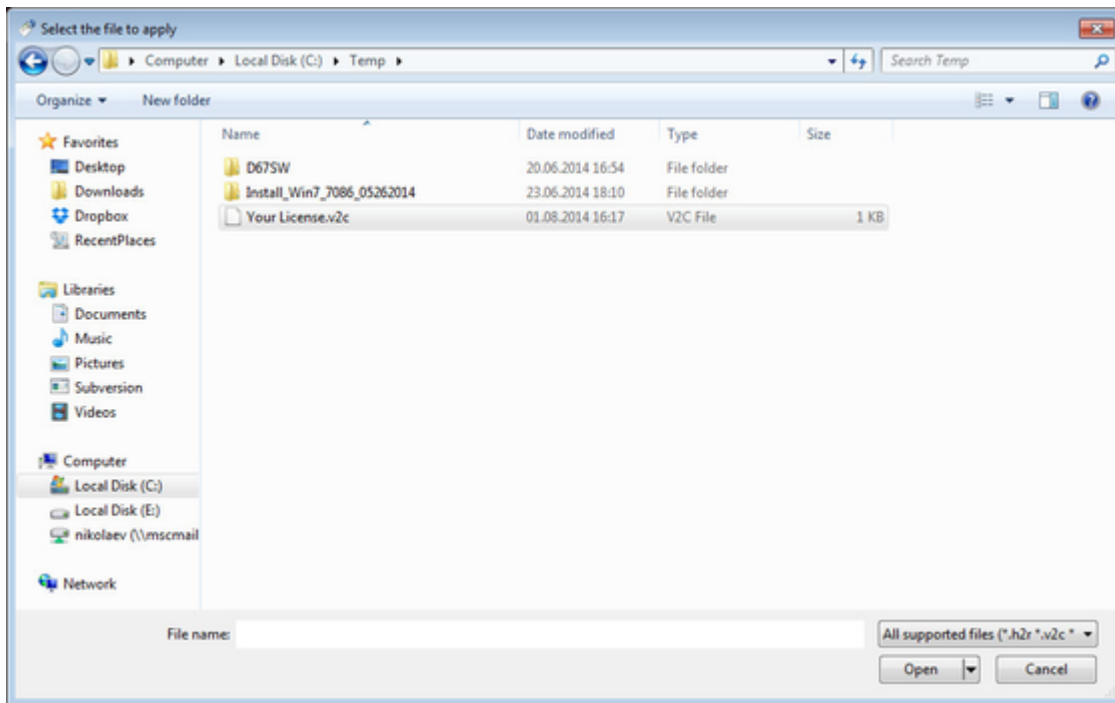
- A message should appear similar to this example, confirming the fingerprint has been collected successfully.



- Send the ".c2v" file ("*Fingerprint.c2v*" in the example above) to STROMASYS
- STROMASYS will send you a ".v2c" file in return. Put it somewhere on the CHARON-AXP host.
- Open up the "License Update Service" utility the way described above and open the "Apply License File" tab:

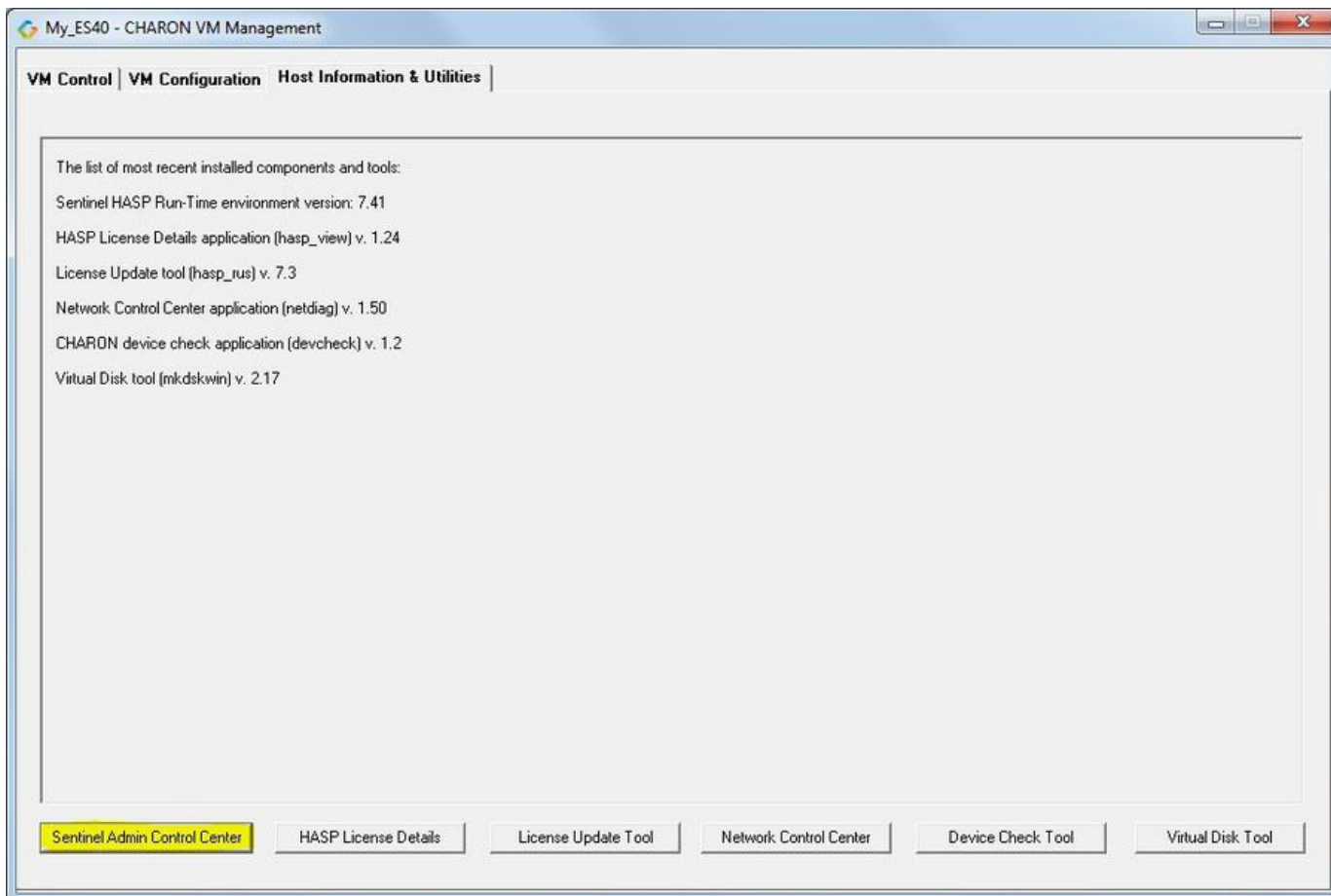


Press the "..." button beside the "Update File" edit-box. In the popup select the license file received from STROMASYS:



Press the "Open" button and apply the license.

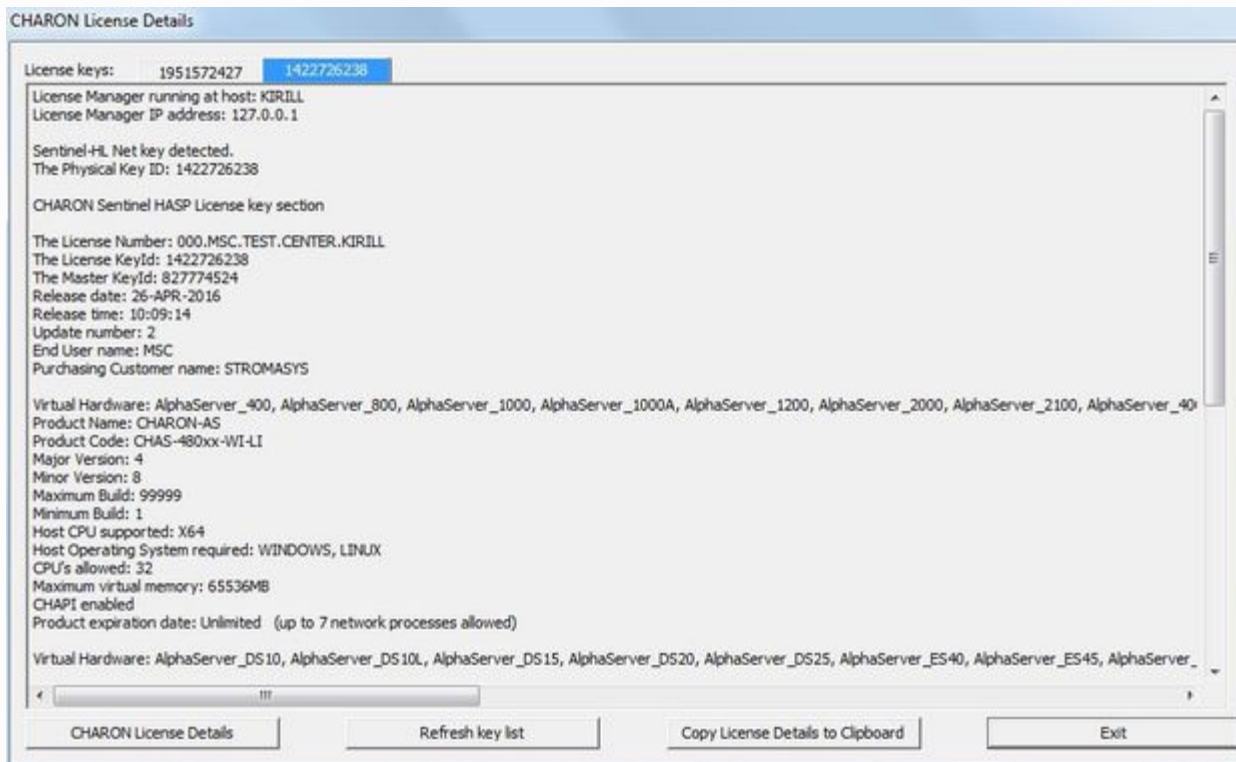
- Open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, switch to the "Host Information & Utilities" tab and press the "Sentinel Admin Control Center" button:



or - alternatively - start any web browser on this system and go to the <http://localhost:1947> page to access the "Sentinel HASP Admin Control Center" (ACC).

- Ensure that the license appears in the "Sentinel Keys" menu.

As the content of the installed software or HL/HASP license is not shown by the Sentinel HASP Admin Control Center, press the "HASP License Details" button in the "Host Information & Utilities" section of the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager (see above) to display it:



Note that the following operations have to be performed on installation phase for network-wide software licenses:

- *On the server side (where network license will reside):* open port 1947 for both TCP and UDP
- *On the client side,* if broadcast search for remote licenses is to be used, UDP traffic from port 1947 of the license server to ports 30000-65535 of the client must be permitted.
- *Both on server and client sides:* setup default gateway

Please consult with your Windows User's Guide on details.

If stricter firewall rules are required, it is possible to open the ports 30000-65535 and 1947 only for the "Sentinel HASP License Manager" (hasplms.exe) service (it will be installed by CHARON-AXP).

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

License management

CHARON-AXP license management is performed by the Sentinel Admin Control Center and specific utilities.

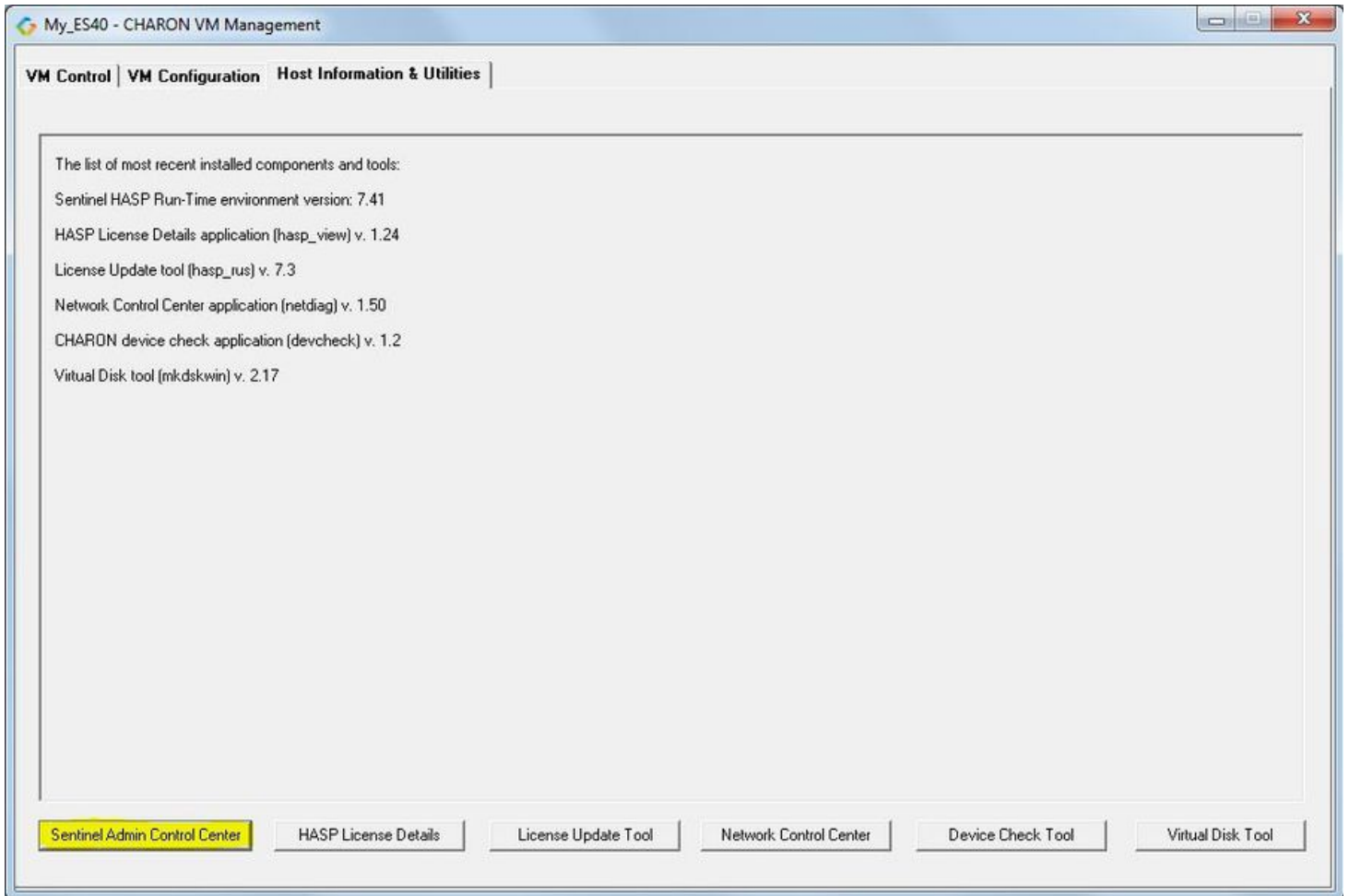
Sentinel Admin Control Center

General Description

The Sentinel Admin Control Center (ACC) is the web-interface to the Sentinel run-time environment. It allows the viewing and managing of any available keys, enabling and disabling them, controlling usage of remote keys etc.

Sentinel Admin Control Center is not able to display CHARON-AXP licenses. To do this operation, open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, switch to the "Host Information & Utilities" tab and press the "HASP License Details" button (see below).

To access the Sentinel Admin Control Center, open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, switch to the "Host Information & Utilities" tab and press the "Sentinel Admin Control Center" button:



or - alternatively - start any web browser on this system and go to the <http://localhost:1947> page.

Example:



Sentinel Admin Control Center

Options

Sentinel Keys

Products

Features

Sessions

Update/Attach

Access Log

Configuration

Diagnostics

Help

About

Sentinel Keys Available

#	Location	Vendor	Key ID	Key Type	Configuration	Version	Sessions	Actions
1	XEON4WAYW7	68704	961833018	HASP HL NetTime 50	-	3.25	-	<input type="checkbox"/> Browse Net Features
2	Local	68704	354850588	HASP HL NetTime 50	-	3.25	-	Products Features Sessions Blink on
3	Local	68704	1351199824	HASP HL Time	-	3.25	-	Products Features Sessions Blink on
4	RH64	DEMOMA - evaluation	464243137687019632	HASP SL AdminMode Rehostable	-	2.31	1	<input type="checkbox"/> Browse Net Features

Details for HL NetTime 50 (ID:961833018) on 192.168.1.22
 Key Hardware Version: 6.2
 Sentinel License Manager Version: 12.50 Build 1.16926
 Uptime: 7 days 23 hours 45 minutes
 Host: XEON4WAYW7 running Windows 7 Ultimate Build 7601 Service Pack 1 (x86 Family 15 Model 2 Stepping 5)

This example demonstrates that 4 license keys are available:

1. A network key ("HASP-HL NetTime") on the host "XEON4WAYW7"
2. A network key installed locally
3. An HASP-HL installed locally
4. A network-wide software license on the host "RH64"

The Sentinel Admin Control Center reports that there is one opened session on key #4. The other keys are not being used at the moment.

For a more detailed description of the Sentinel Admin Control Center, please refer to its "Help" section.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Disable remote keys access

A helpful feature of the Sentinel Admin Control Center is the ability to disable access to remote keys. If the network key is installed locally, access to the key from remote hosts can be disabled. The following examples demonstrate how this can be done.

To disable access to remote keys, switch to the "Access to Remote License Managers" tab, uncheck the "Allow Access to Remote Licenses" check box then press the "Submit" button to apply this change:



Sentinel Admin Control Center

Options

Sentinel Keys

Products

Features

Sessions

Update/Attach

Access Log

Configuration

Diagnostics

Help

About

Configuration for Sentinel License Manager

Basic Settings
Users
Access to Remote License Managers
Access from Remote Clients
Detachable Licenses

Allow Access to Remote Licenses You may experience a delay of a few minutes before your changes will take effect.

Broadcast Search for Remote Licenses

Aggressive Search for Remote Licenses

Specify Search Parameters

To disable access to the locally installed license key from remote hosts, switch to the "Access from Remote Clients" tab, uncheck the "Allow Access from Remote Clients" check box then press the "Submit" button to apply this setting:



Options

- Sentinel Keys
- Products
- Features
- Sessions
- Update/Attach
- Access Log
- Configuration**
- Diagnostics
- Help
- About

Configuration for Sentinel License Manager

Basic Settings | **Users** | **Access to Remote License Managers** | **Access from Remote Clients** | **Detachable Licenses**

Allow Access from Remote Clients You may experience a delay of a few minutes before your changes will take effect.

Access Restrictions: allow=all

Show Recent Client Access

The entries are evaluated in the order in which they are specified. As soon as a match is found, evaluation stops.
allow=all is implicitly added to end of list

Submit Cancel Set Defaults

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

License management utility

CHARON-AXP for Windows provides two specific utilities for license management:

- "HASP View" - This utility is used to display the license(s) content.
- "License Update Service" - This utility is used to collect key status information and host fingerprint (C2V) files and to apply updates (".v2c" files).

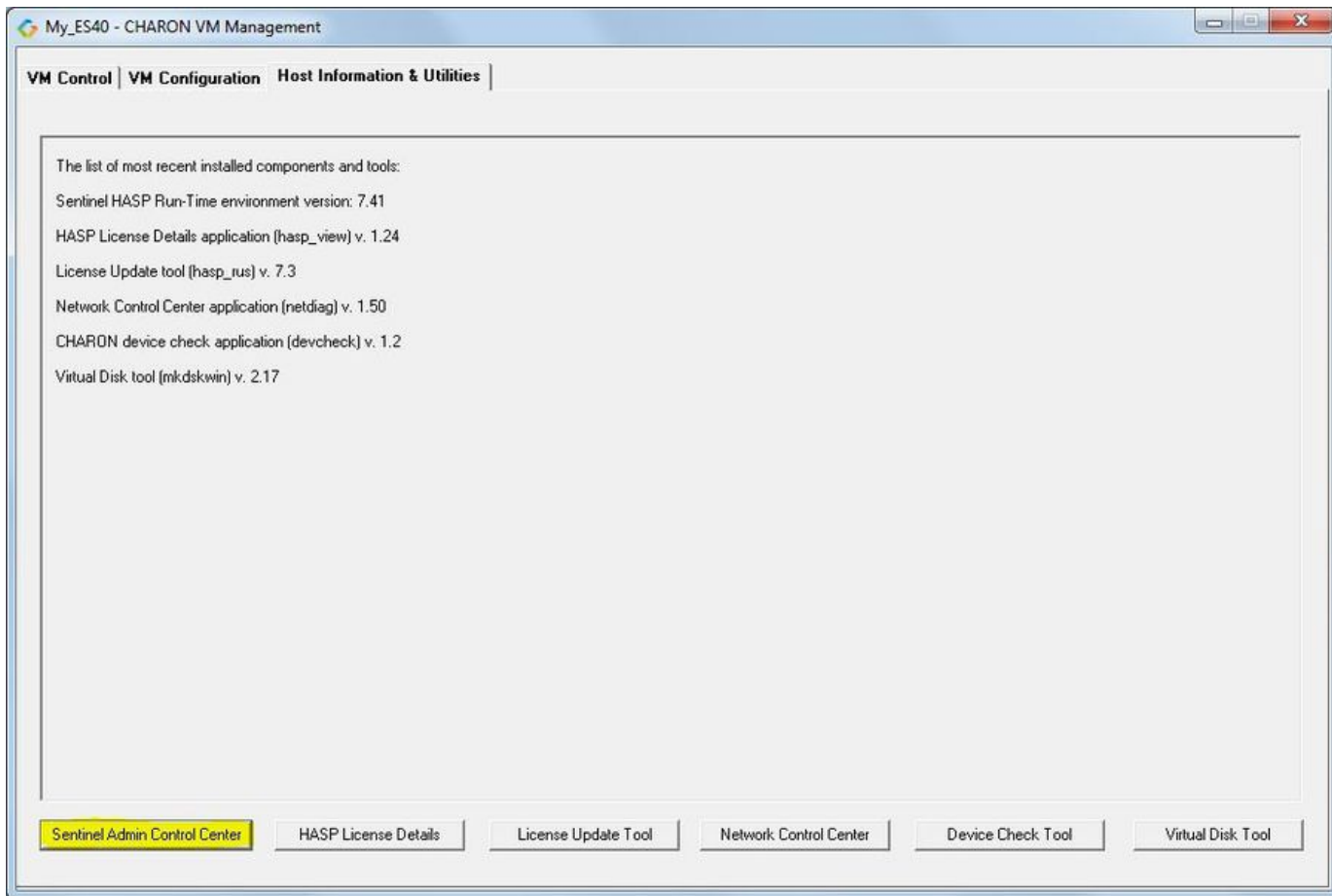
Please refer to the "Utilities" section of this Guide for more details.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Removing CHARON-AXP software licenses

The following procedure must be applied to remove the software license (SL):

1. Open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, switch to the "Host Information & Utilities" tab and press the "Sentinel Admin Control Center" button:



or - alternatively - start any web browser on this system and go to the <http://localhost:1947> page.

- In the "Sentinel HASP Admin Control Center" (ACC), select the "Sentinel Keys" option in the left pane and locate the target "Sentinel SL AdminMode" license.
- Press the "Certificates" button at the right side of the SL description:



Sentinel Admin Control Center


Options

Sentinel Keys

Products

Features

Sentinel Keys Available on charontest.msc.masq

#	Location	Vendor	Key ID	Key Type	Configuration	Version	Sessions	Actions
1	Local	68704	387285561437702475	HASP SL AdminMode Inactive (Cloned)		-	2.33	- <input type="button" value="Certificates"/>

- Note the name of the correspondent certificate and path to the certificates base in the "Certificates" section:



Options

Sentinel Keys

Products

Features

Sessions

Certificates Available on ADANILOV: Key 387285561437702475 (Vendor: 68704)

#	Update	Status	Certificate Name	Creation Date
1	Base	OK	387285561437702475_base.v2c	Jun 9, 2015

Certificates Base Directory: C:\Program Files (x86)\Common Files\SafeNet Sentinel\Sentinel LDK\Installed

- Remove the corresponding certificate file in the "C:\Program Files\Common Files\SafeNet Sentinel\Sentinel LDK\installed\68704" folder. In the example above the file to remove is "C:\Program Files\Common Files\SafeNet Sentinel\Sentinel LDK\installed\68704\387285561437702475_base.v2c".

- Reboot the CHARON host.

- Start the "Sentinel HASP Admin Control Center" (ACC) again to ensure the SL has been removed.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

License Deinstallation

To completely remove a CHARON-AXP license from a host, remove the Sentinel run-time driver using the following procedure:

- Login as Administrator
- Open the CHARON-AXP kit folder
- Switch to the "hasp_install" subfolder
- Unzip the archive located in this folder
- Open "cmd.exe" and switch to the folder where the files were unzipped
- Execute the following command:

```
...> haspdinst.exe -fr -kp -nomsg
```

Unplug the license dongle. Note that the Sentinel run-time driver is uninstalled automatically when a complete uninstallation of CHARON-AXP is performed.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Special "backup" license keys

Backup keys are provided by STROMASYS along with the standard license dongles. It is strongly recommended to order a backup key to recover immediately from damage or loss of the main license key. The backup keys use a counter (integer) value hardcoded inside the key, this integer value corresponds to a number of hours CHARON-AXP is allowed to run. Each time CHARON-AXP checks the license (every hour), the value is decreased (by 1 hour). Please note that the backup keys have restricted functionality:

- The run time is typically limited to 720 hours (30 days). This is the time allotted to get a replacement dongle from STROMASYS.
- A backup license may be valid only until a certain date.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CHARON-AXP for Windows utilities

General description

CHARON-AXP provides the following set of utilities:

Utility	Description
Host Device Check	Used to review system resources that can be mapped to CHARON.
Network Control Center	Used to configure a CHARON network.
MkDisk	GUI-based utility used to create custom or standard CHARON virtual disk containers.
MkDskCmd	Command line utility used to create custom or standard CHARON virtual disk containers. This utility also may be used to transfer virtual disks of one type to virtual disks of another type.
HASP View	Used to display the CHARON license content.
License Update Service	Used to manage CHARON licenses, collect the host system fingerprint and to transfer software licenses from one host to another.
License Expiration Check	Used to warn user about expiration of CHARON license
mtd	Used to create CHARON tape images from physical tapes and to write tape images back to physical tapes.
CHARON Log Monitor and Dispatcher	Used to trace CHARON log files and run a specific program on certain conditions.
HOSTPrint	Used to print CHARON output to Windows printers.
CHARON Guest Utilities for OpenVMS	Used to manage virtual tapes and CHARON performance.

Host Device Check

Table of Contents

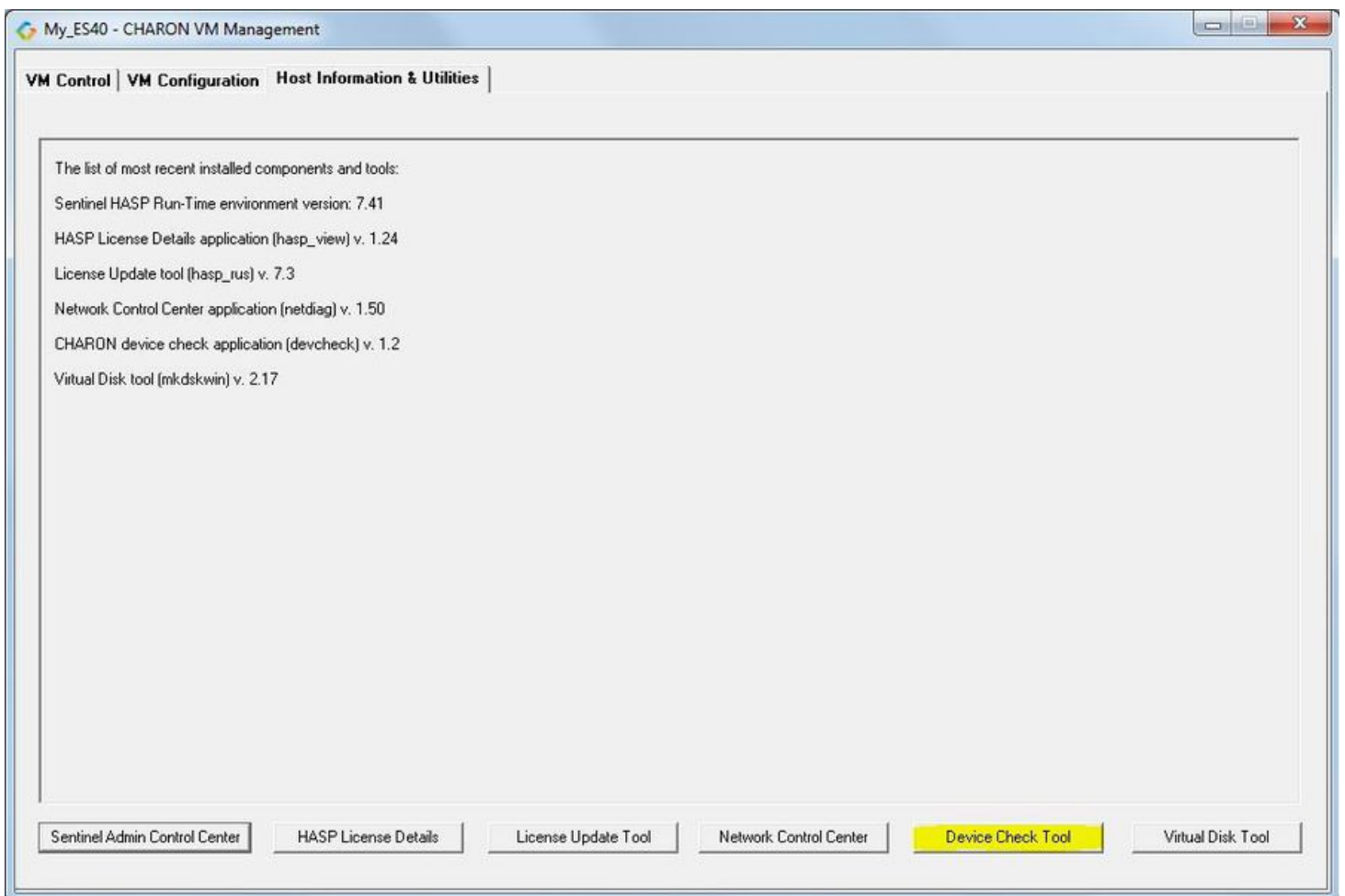
- General Description
- Reviewing available physical disks
- Reviewing all the available host resources
- Collecting the configuration strings

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General Description

The "Host Device Check" utility is used to review system resources that can be mapped to CHARON.

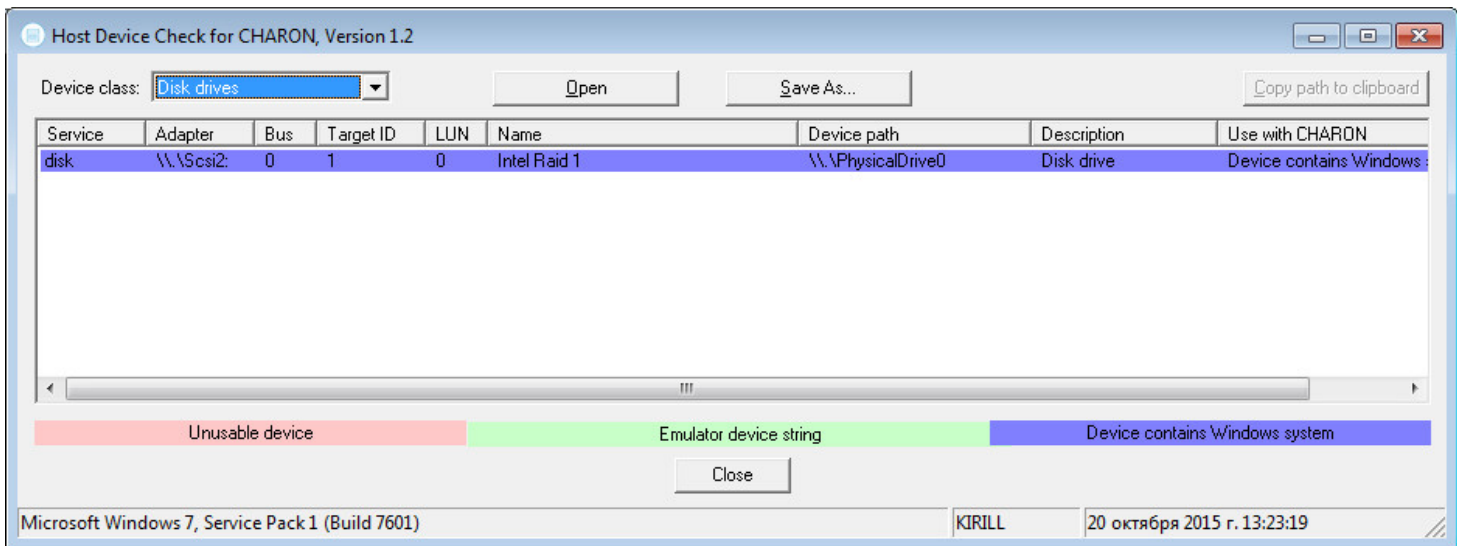
Open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, switch to the "Host Information & Utilities" tab and press the "Device Check Tool" button:



[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Reviewing available physical disks

By default the "Host Device Check" utility reports the available physical disks:

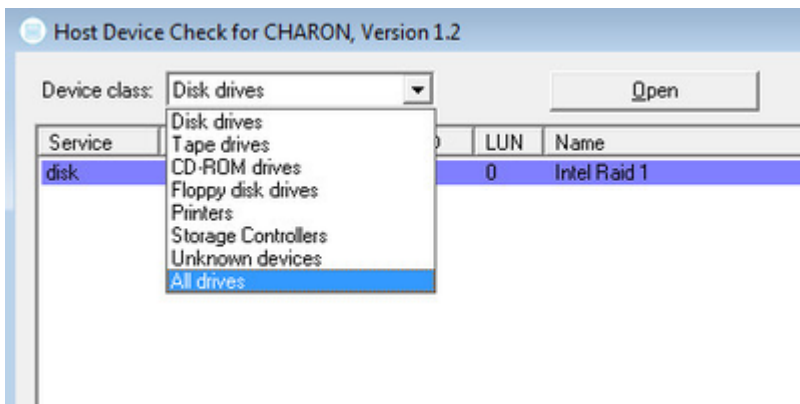


⚠ Please note that the unusable devices and the devices containing Windows system (see corresponding colors above) **must not** be mapped to CHARON!

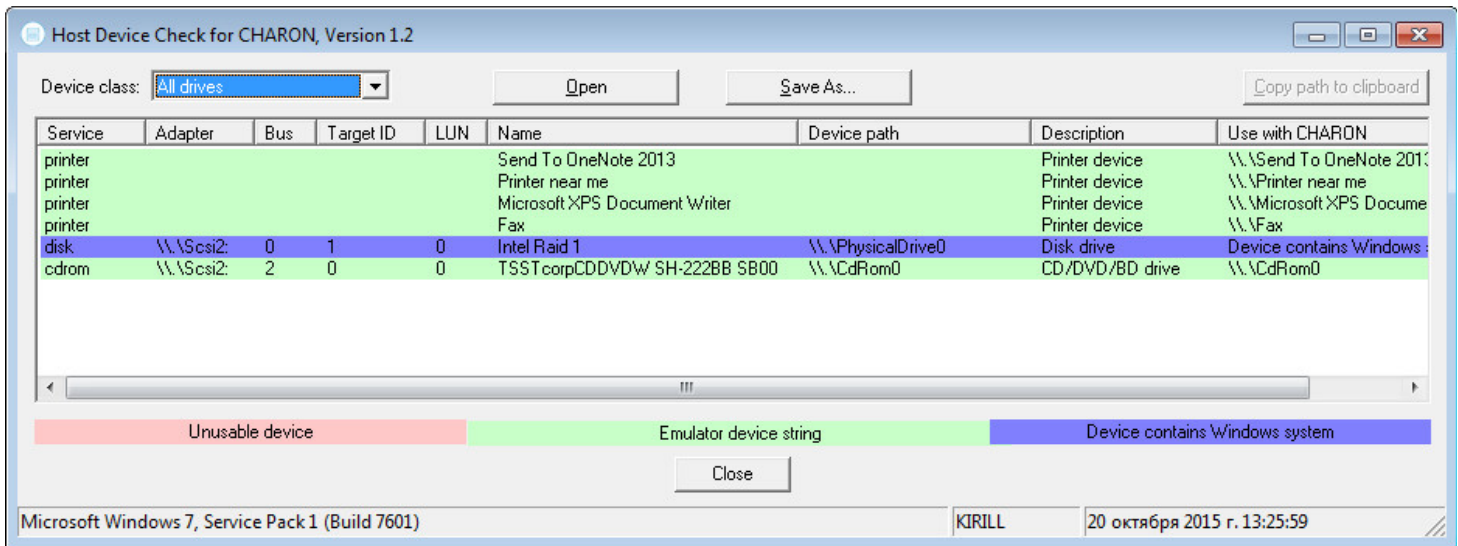
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Reviewing all the available host resources

Select "All drives" in the "Device class" drop-down list:



The "Host Device Check" utility will display all the host resources:



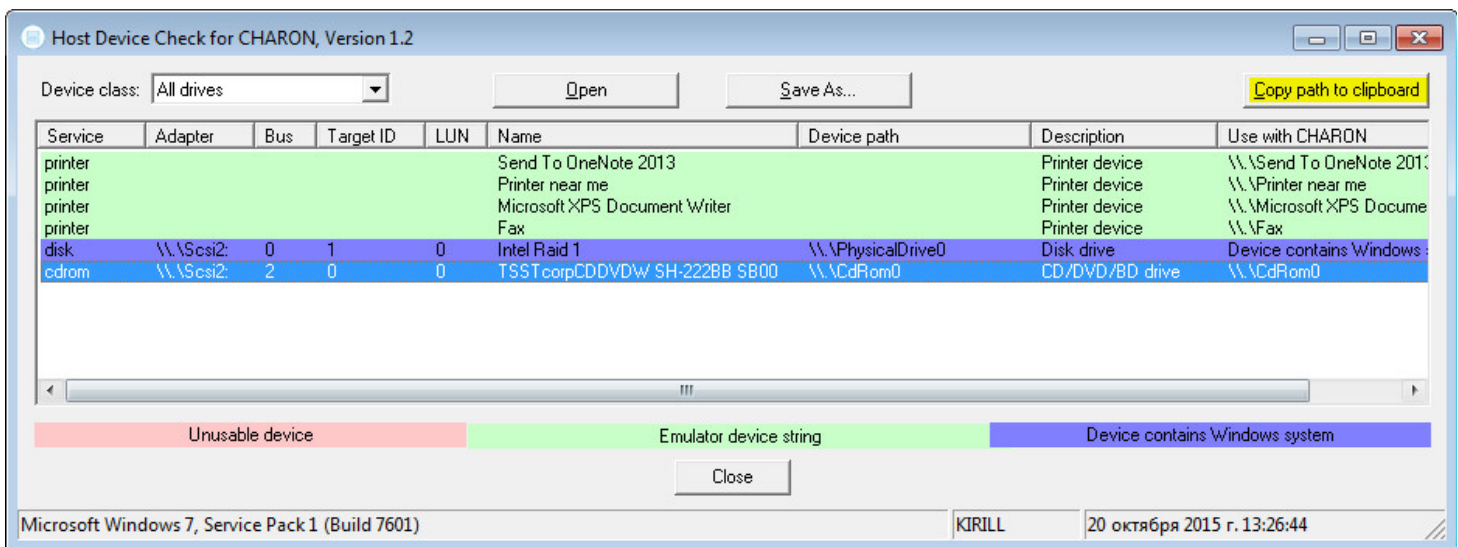
It is also possible to choose all the other categories to narrow the possible mapping options list.

Note the "Use with CHARON" column contains the actual configuration options for each available device to be inserted, if needed, in the CHARON configuration file (see below).

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Collecting the configuration strings

To collect the actual configuration strings to be used in the CHARON configuration file, select the target device and press the "Copy path to clipboard" button:



The selected configuration string will be copied to the clipboard, it can then be pasted to the CHARON configuration file (using the "CTRL-V" keys combination for example).

The buttons "Open" and "Save As..." help to open up the displayed options in form of text file and save this text file under some given name.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Network Control Center

Table of Contents

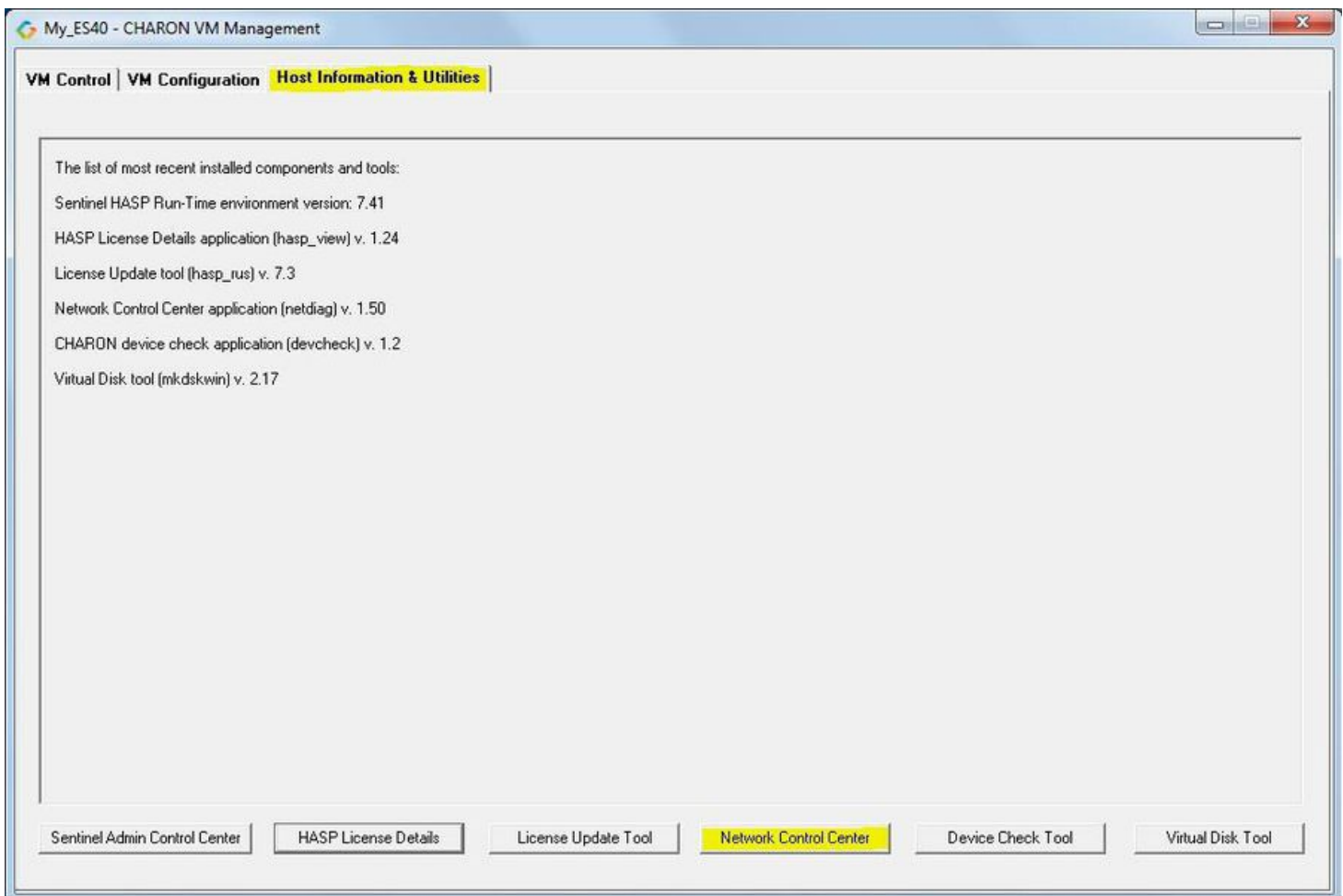
- General Description
- Installation of CHARON network drivers
- Deinstallation of the CHARON network driver
- Configuring the host network interfaces for CHARON
- Release of the host network interfaces
- Troubleshooting the CHARON network interfaces configuration
- Disable "offload" parameters
 - Configuration type 1
 - Configuration type 2
 - Configuration type 3
- Monitoring the CHARON network activity

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General Description

The "Network Control Center" utility is used to configure, verify dedicated network interfaces and trace the network activity for a CHARON network.

Open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, switch to the "Host Information & Utilities" tab and press the "Network Control Center" button:

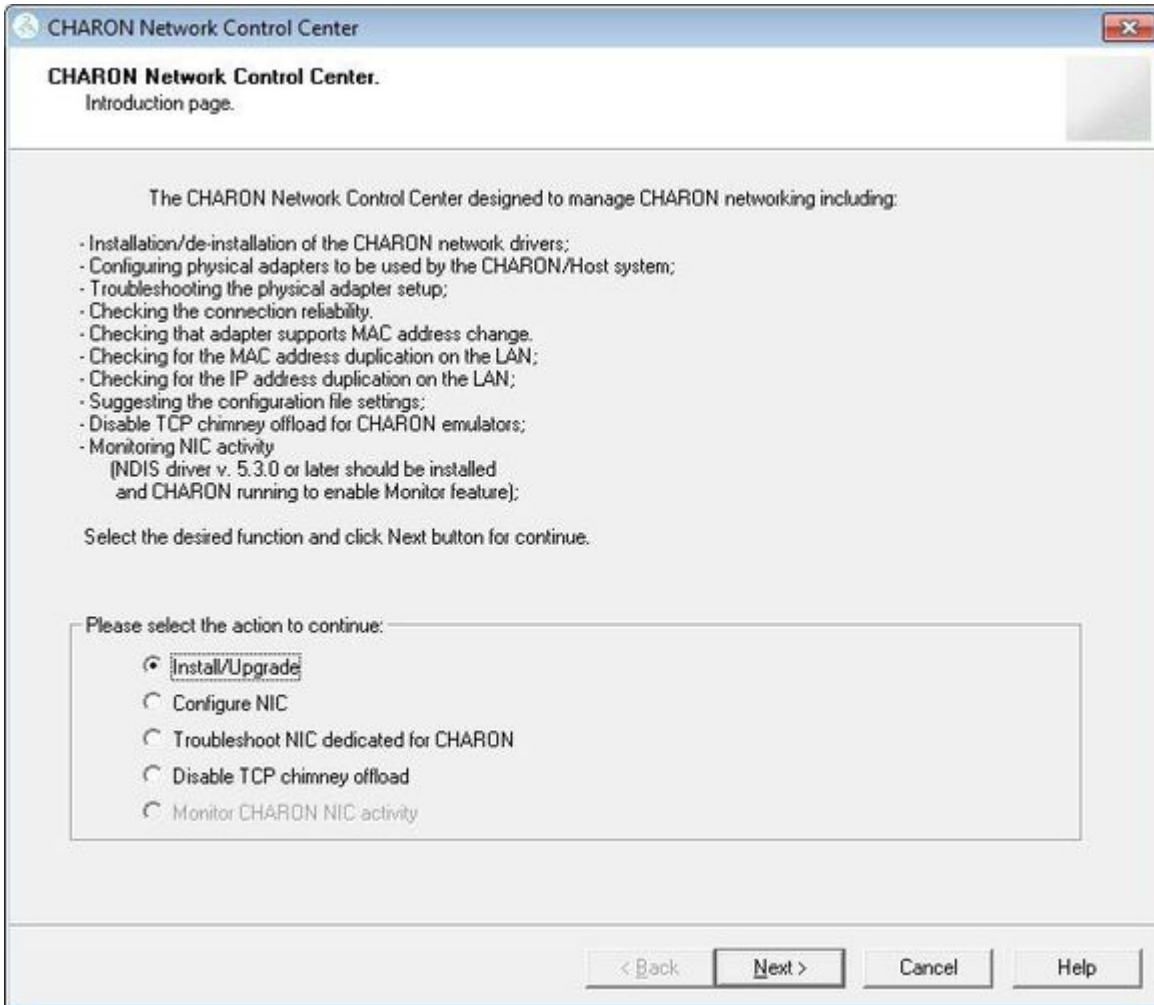


[Back to Table of Contents](#)

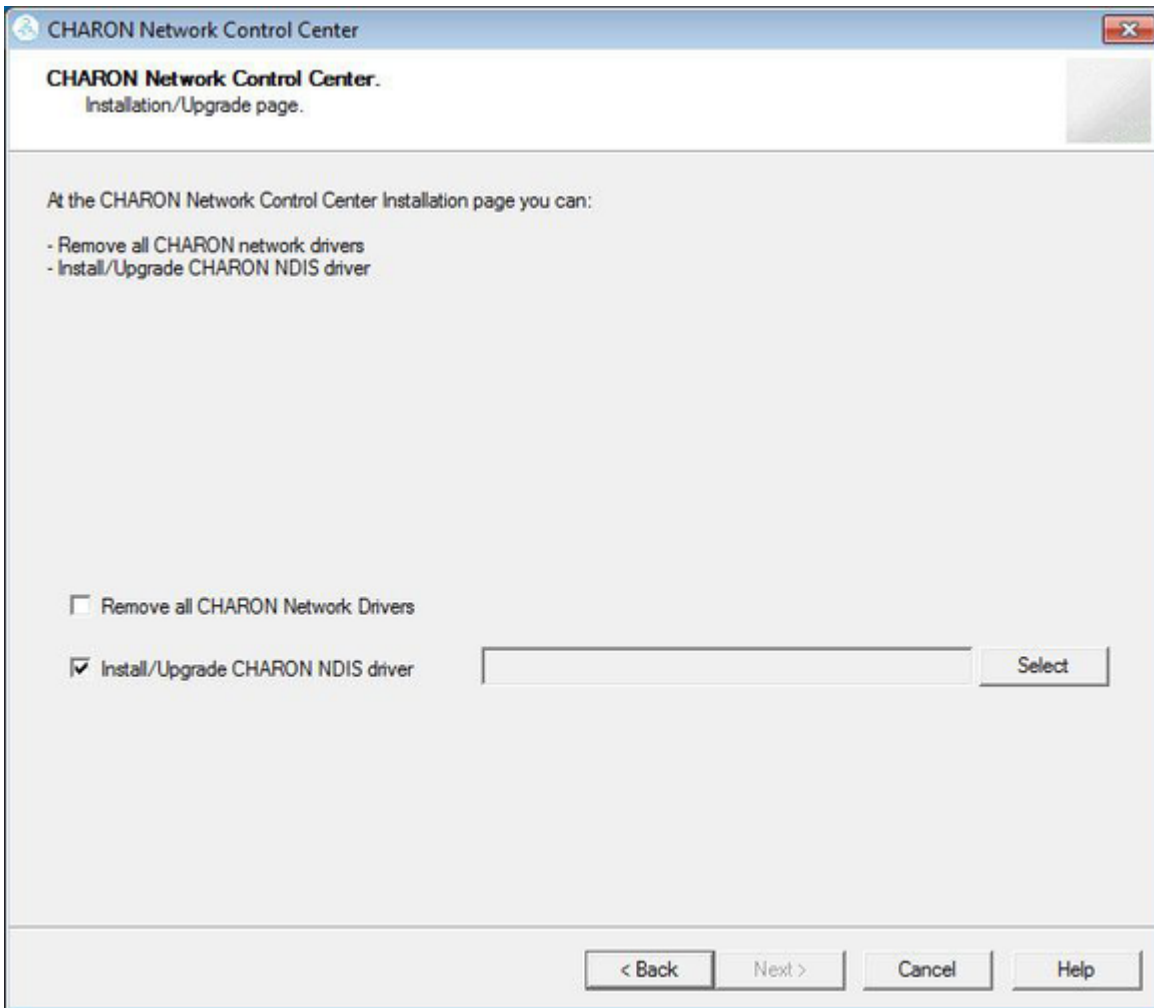
Installation of CHARON network drivers

By default a CHARON network driver is automatically installed by the CHARON installation procedure.

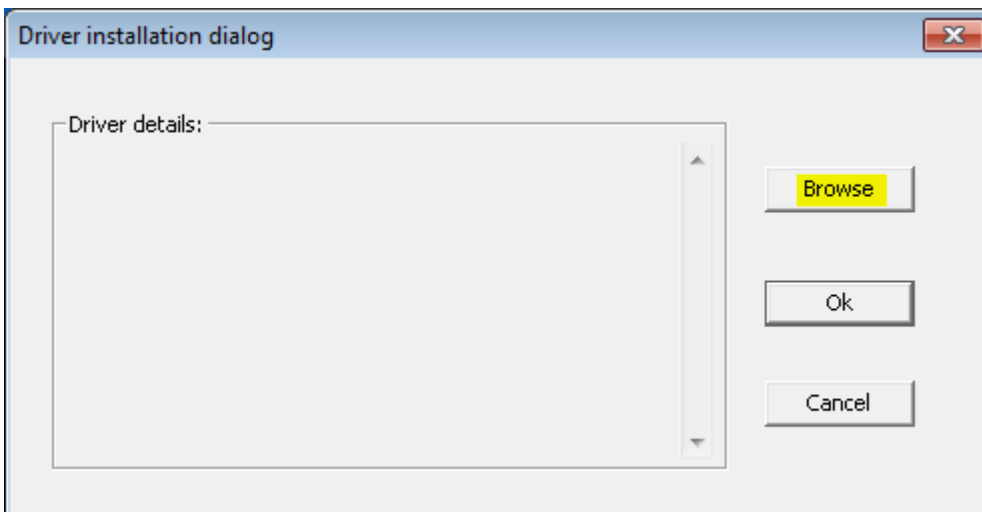
When it is needed to install a modified driver, use the following procedure. Select "Install/Upgrade" and press the "Next" button:



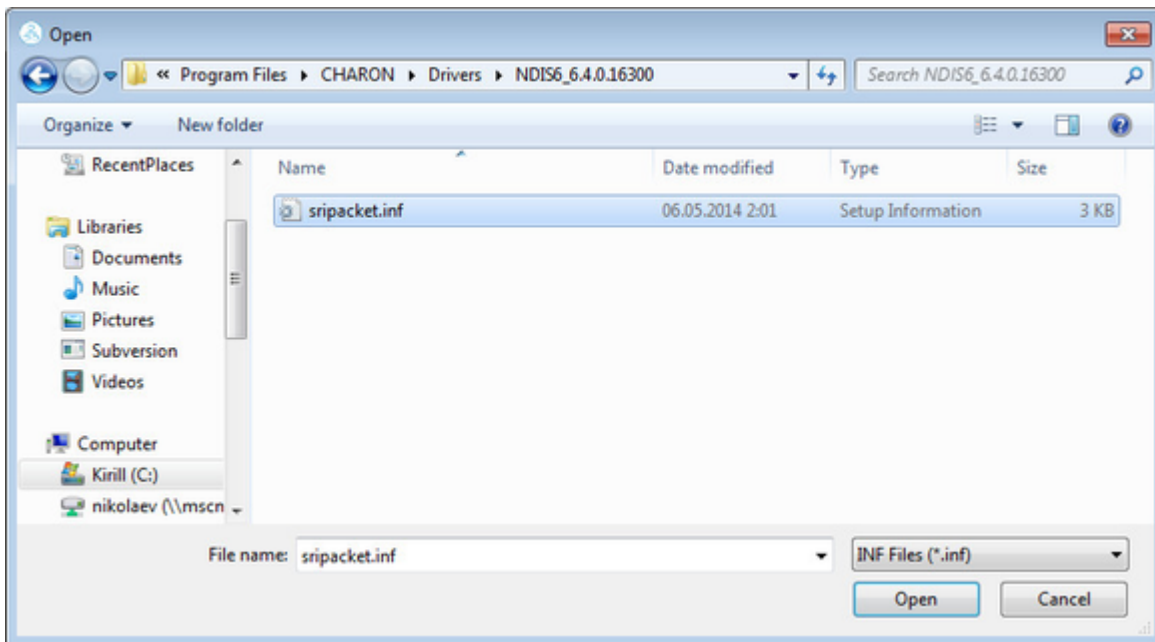
Select "Install/Upgrade CHARON NDIS driver" checkbox and press the "Select" button:



Press the "Browse" button:

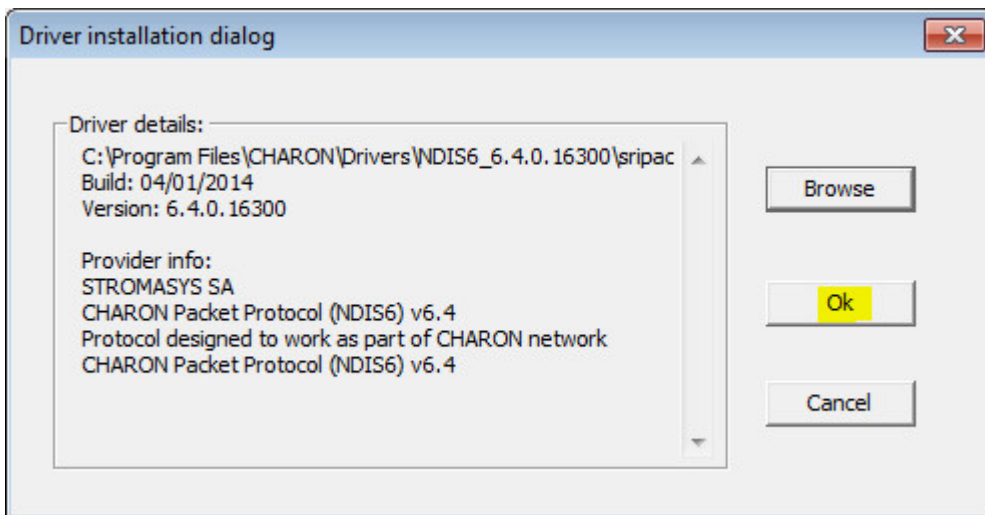


Browse for the target "sripacket.inf" file which is by default located in the "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Drivers\NDIS6_X.X.X.XXXXX" directory, select it and press the "Open" button:

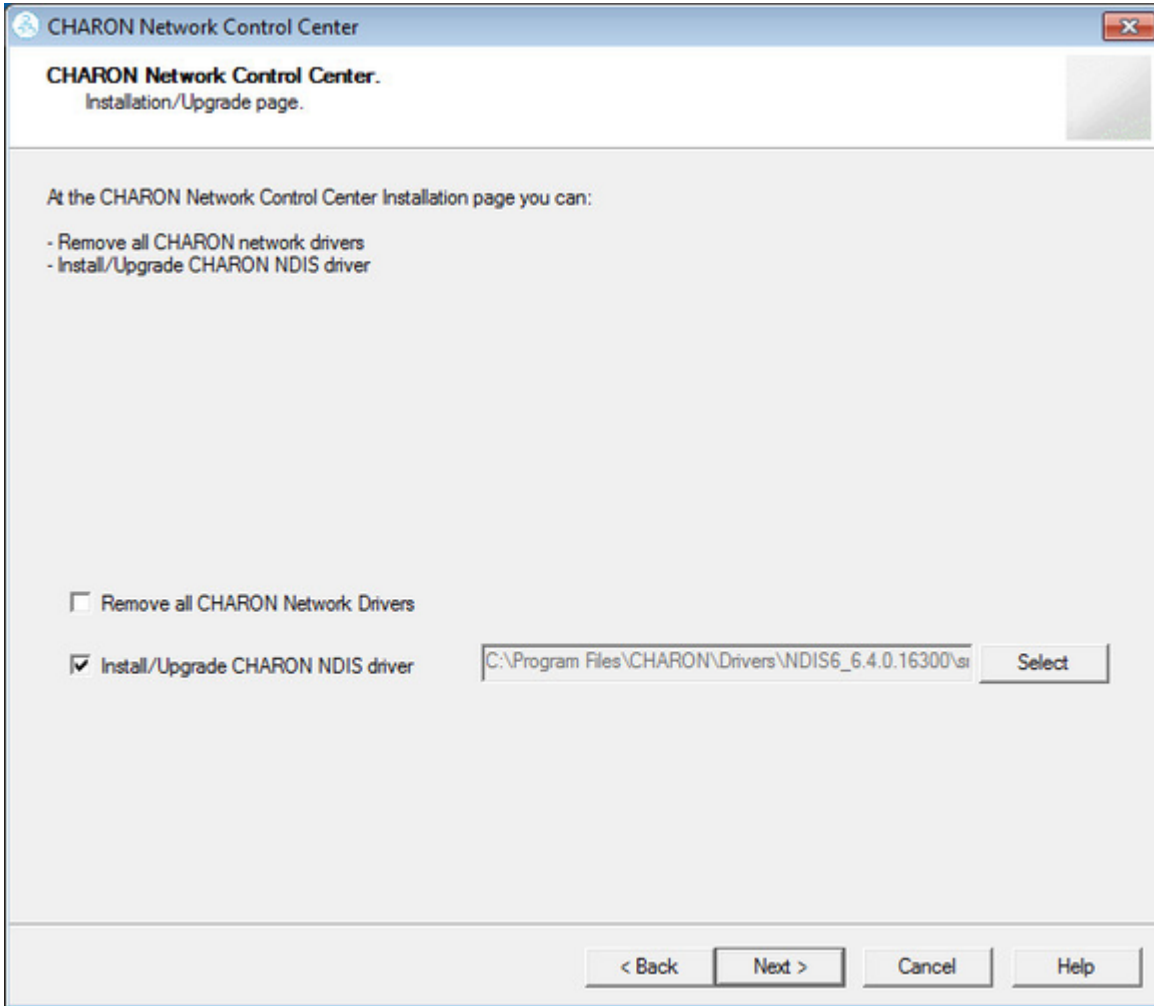


If the CHARON network driver has been acquired directly from STROMASYS, put it in a temporary directory and choose the "sripacket.inf" file from this directory in the dialog above.

Review the version of the driver and, if it is correct, press the "Ok" button:



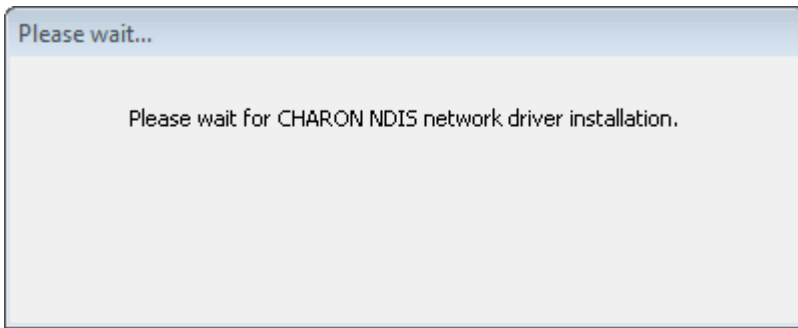
The Network Control Center will display the previous dialog with the path to the CHARON network driver. Press the "Next" button in the popup below to continue:



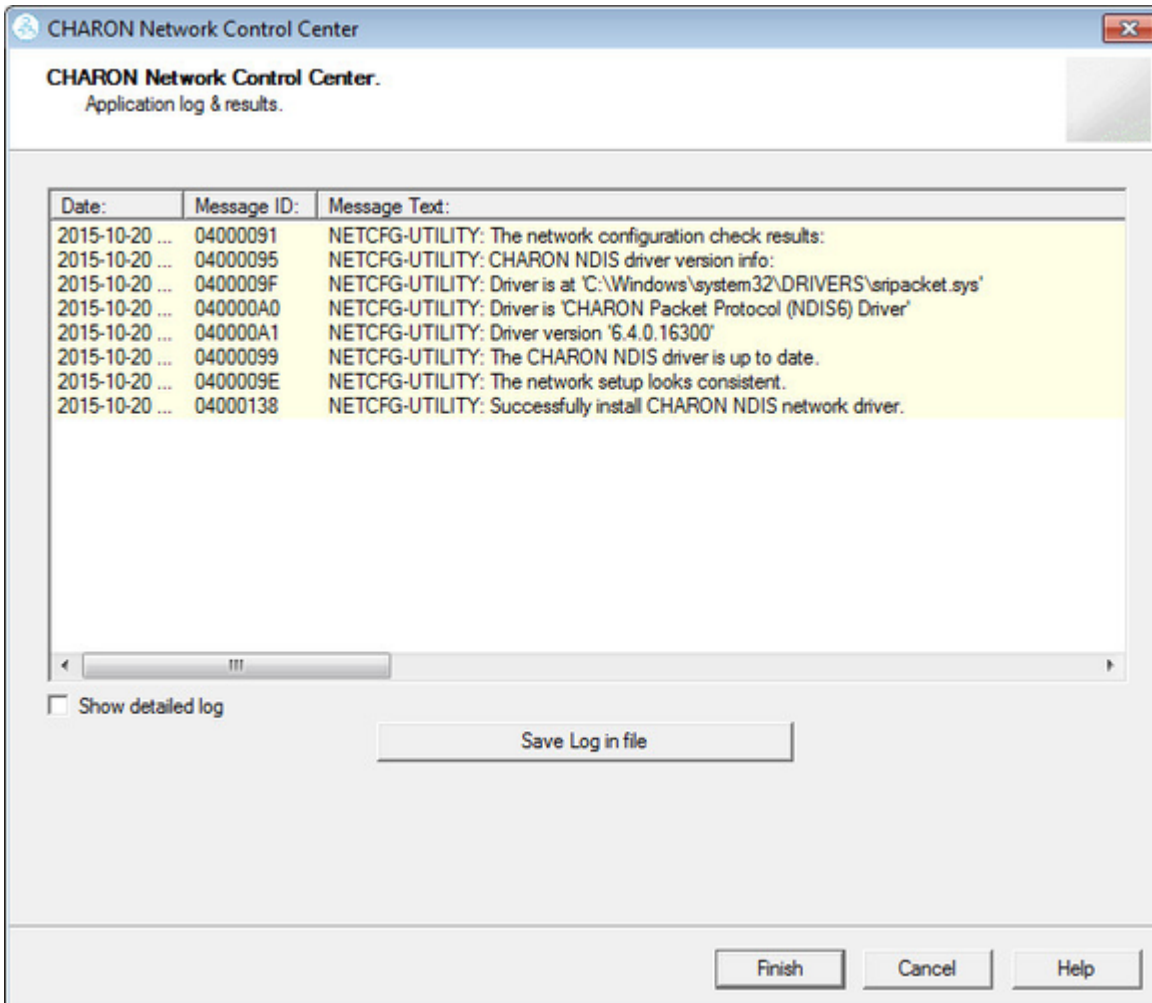
The utility will begin the CHARON network driver installation. If Windows Security asks you to confirm the driver installation, press the "Install" button:



The driver installation will resume:



At the completion of the network installation procedure, the utility will display the following log:



Review the log, make sure it is correct. You can save the log to a file by pressing the "Save Log in file" button in case the log file has to be sent to Stromasys Customer Support.

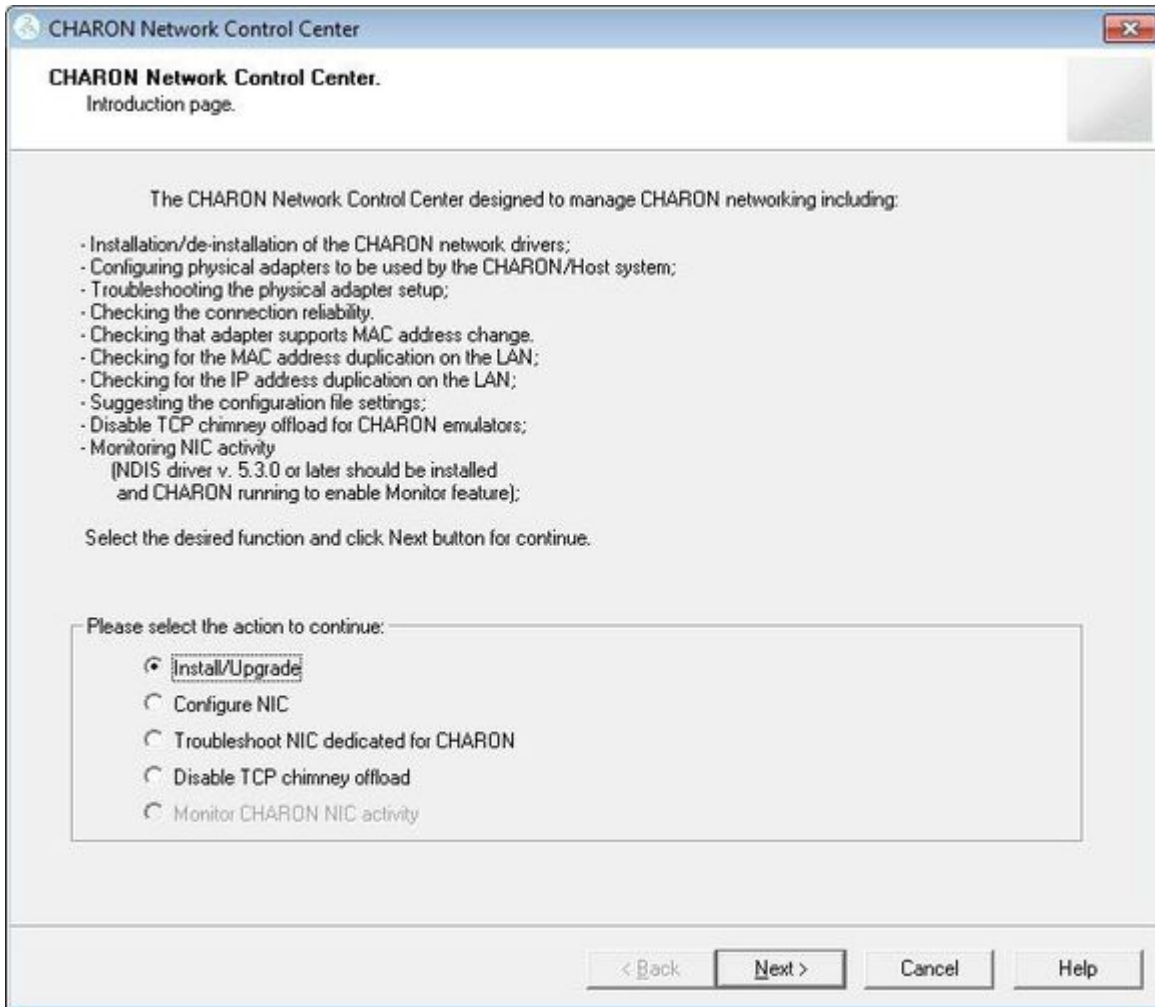
Select "Show detailed log" to display more detail.

Press the "Finish" button to exit.

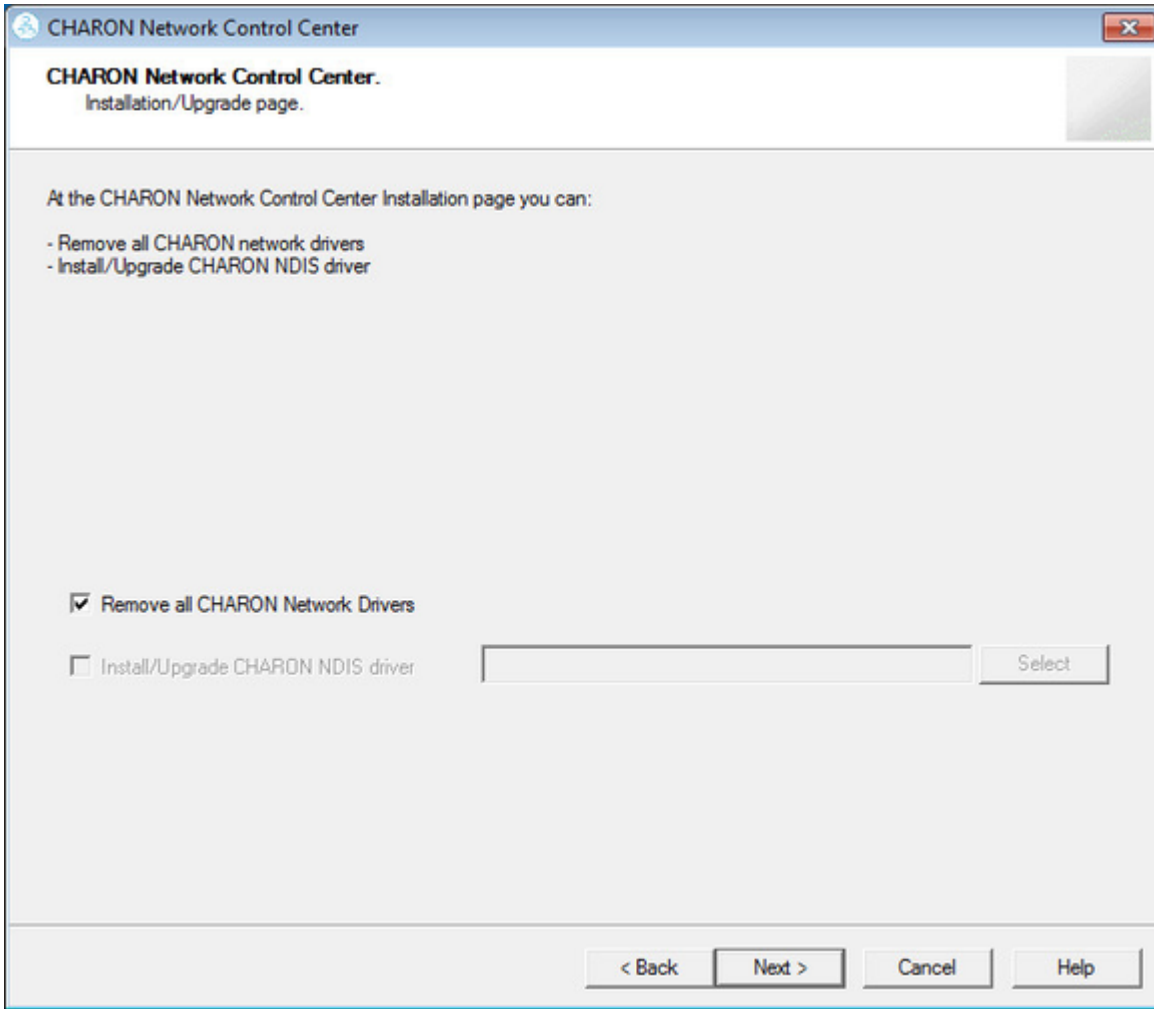
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Deinstallation of the CHARON network driver

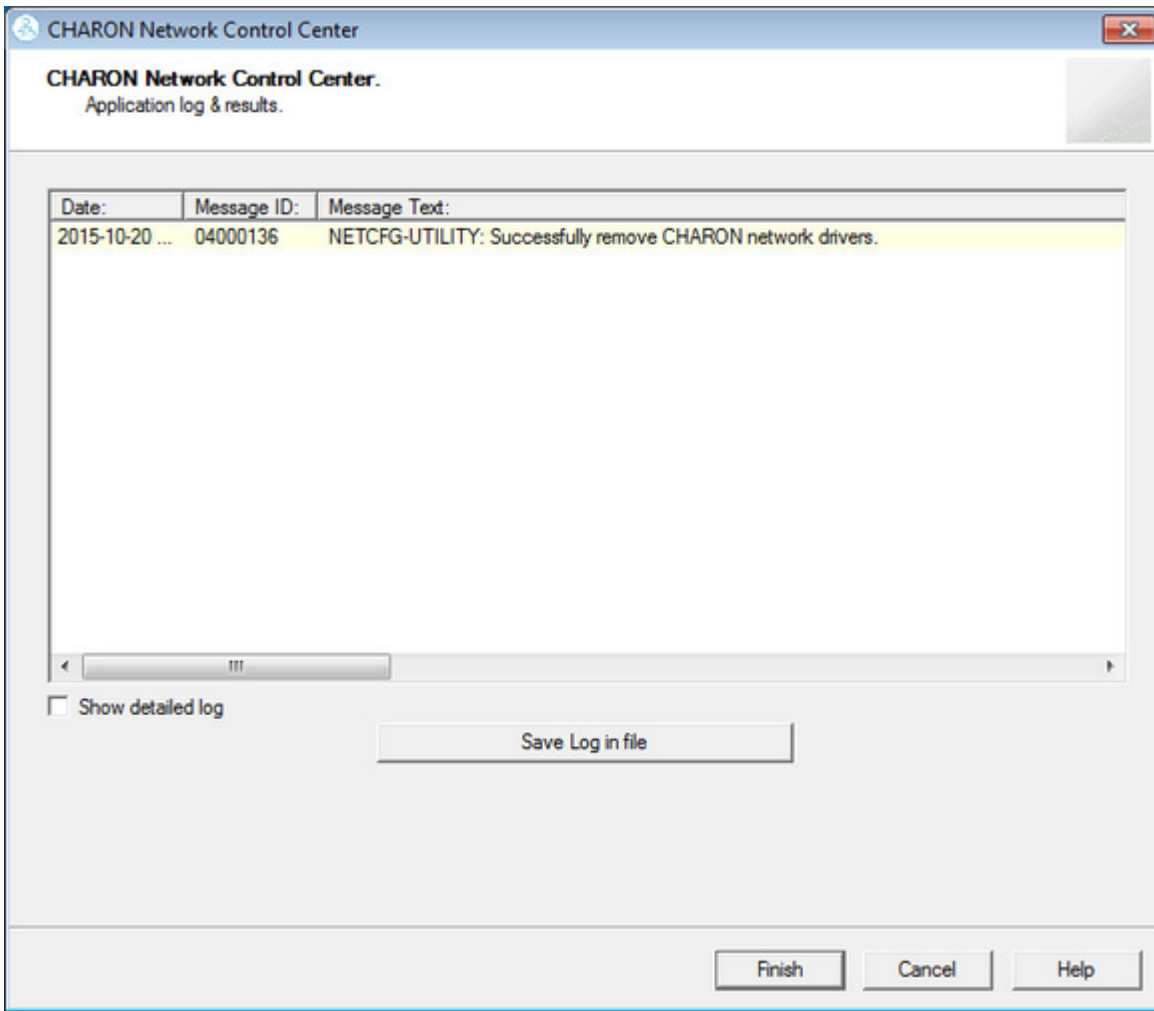
Start the utility and select "Install/Upgrade"; press the "Next" button:



Select "Remove all CHARON Network Drivers" and press the "Next" button:

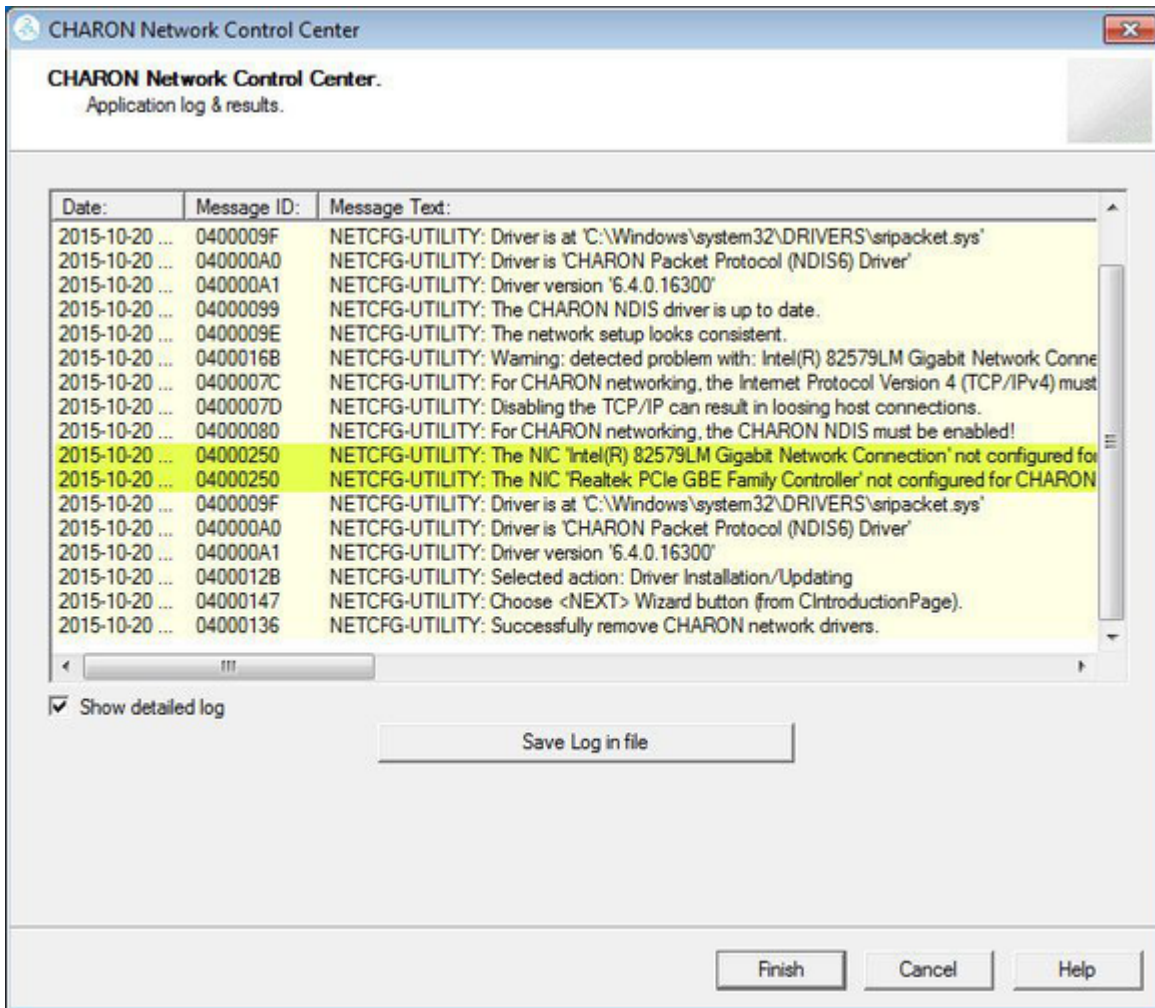


The utility will report that the CHARON drivers have been removed:



Review the log for errors. You can save the log to a file by pressing the "Save Log in file" button in case the log file has to be sent to Stromasys Customer Support.

Select "Show detailed log" to display more detail.

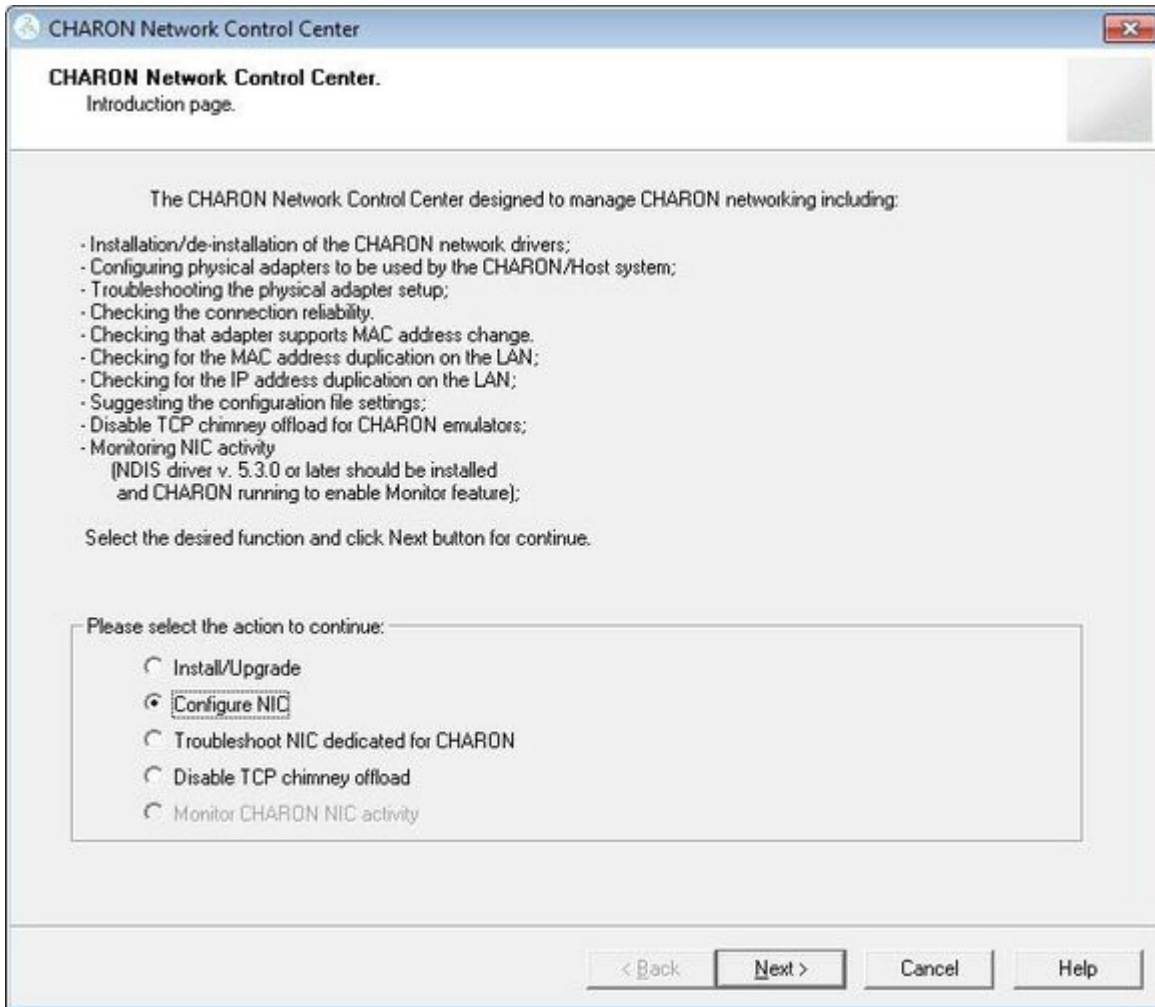


Press the "Finish" button to exit.

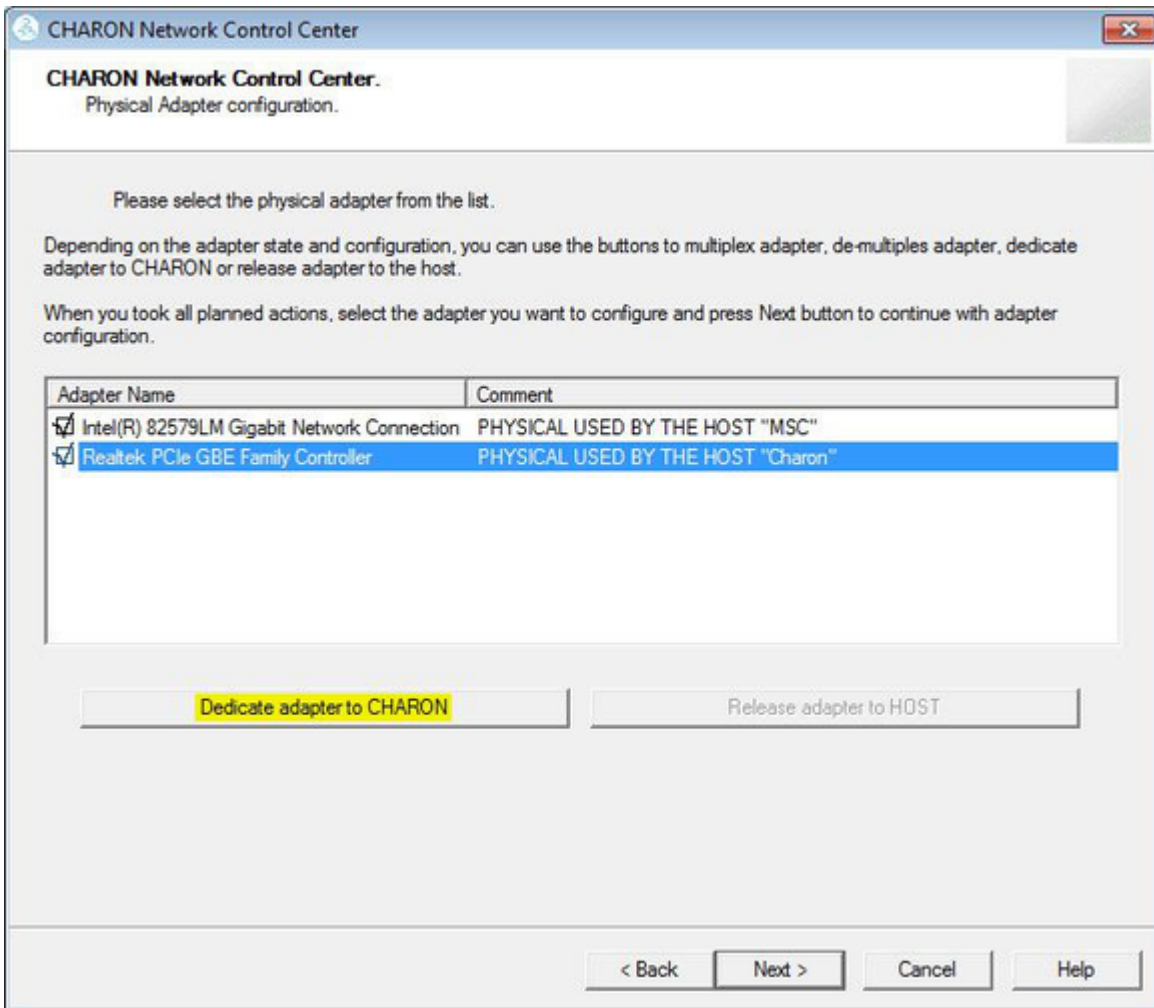
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Configuring the host network interfaces for CHARON

Start the utility, select "Configure NIC" and press the "Next" button:

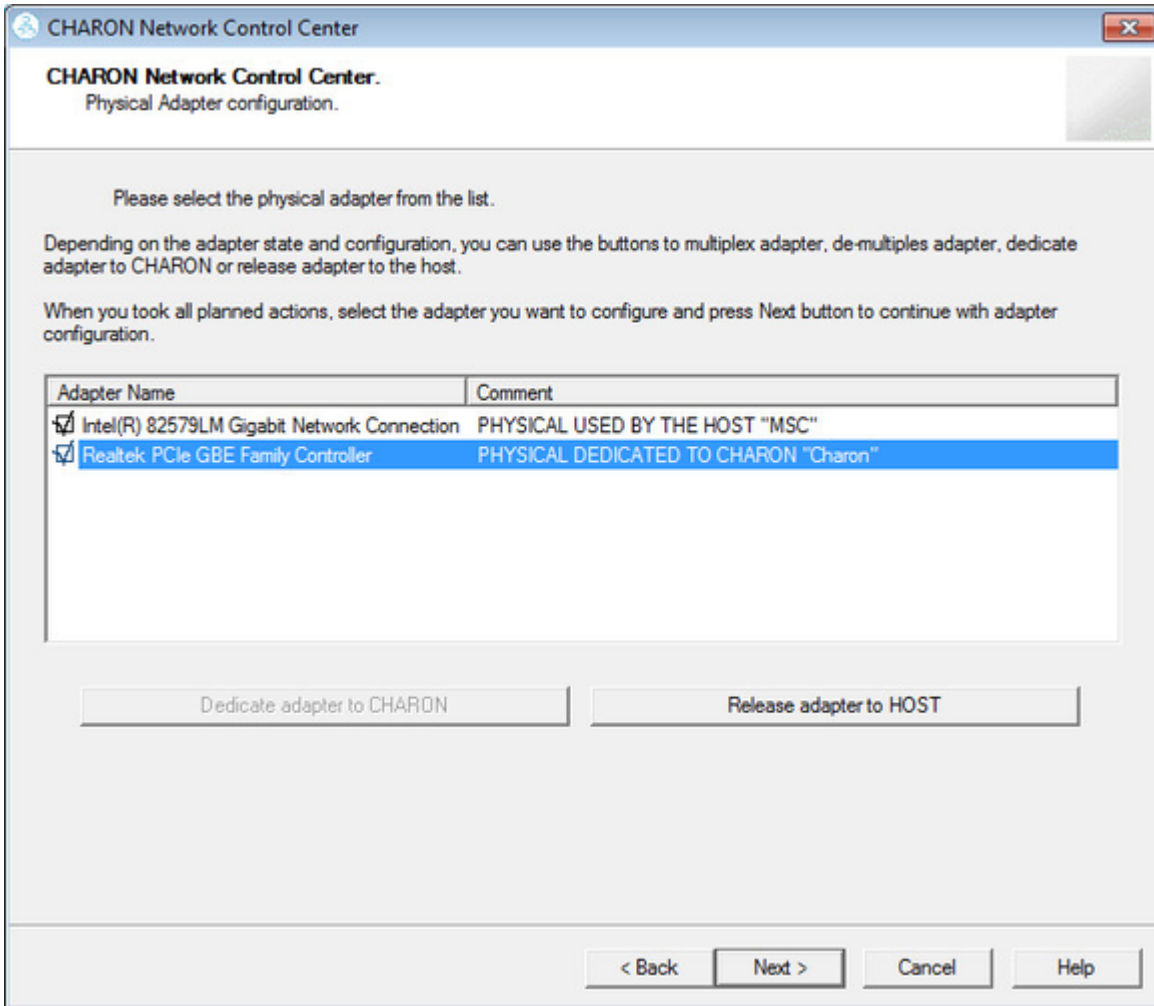


Select the host interface to be dedicated to CHARON (in the example below its name is "Charon"), press the "Dedicate adapter to CHARON" button:

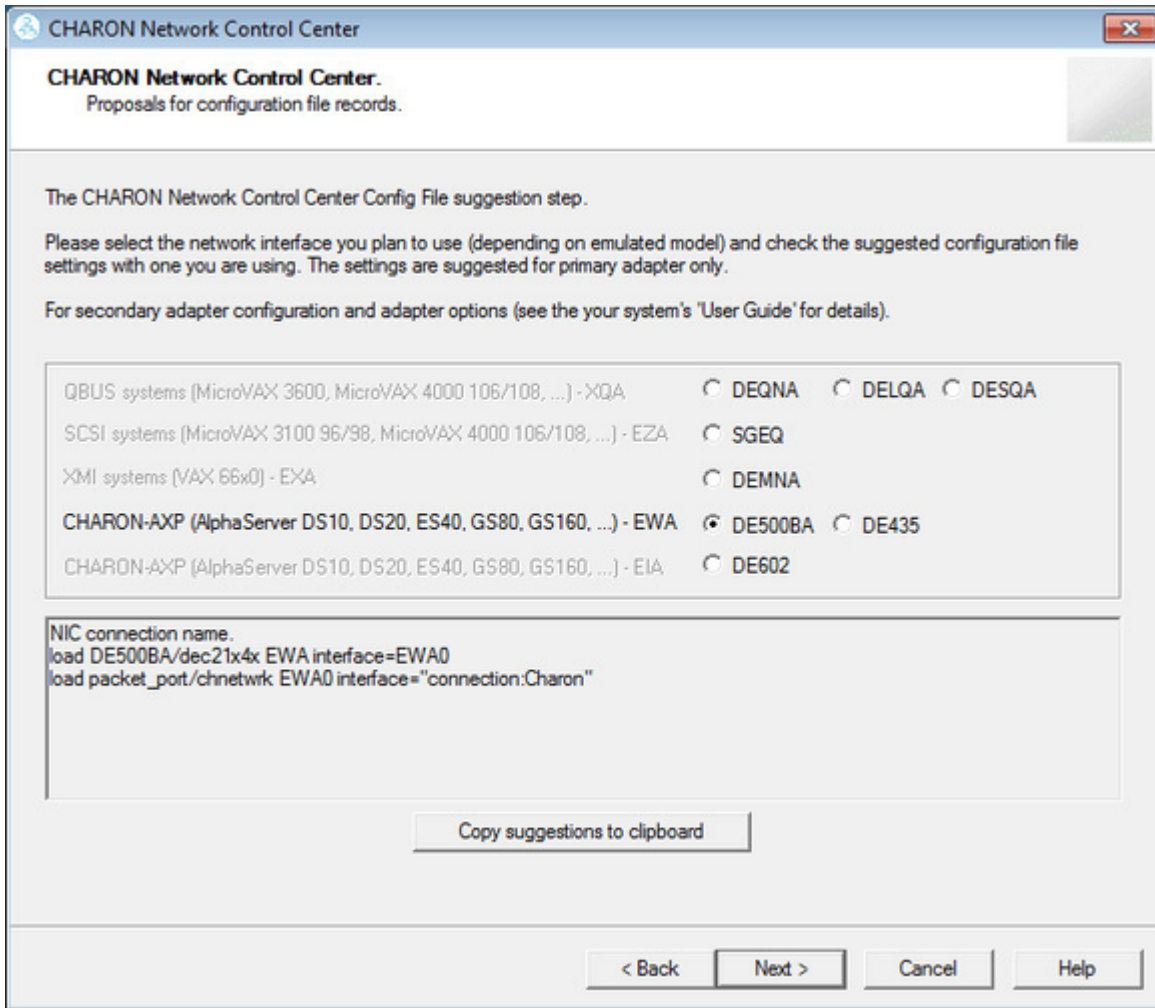


Install and configure VLAN adapters, according to the vendor's User's Guide, if required. Select the VLAN adapter in the dialog box in the above example. A VLAN adapter is not configured differently, the same procedure should be followed.

The Network Control Center will dedicate the selected adapter to CHARON. Press the "Next" button.



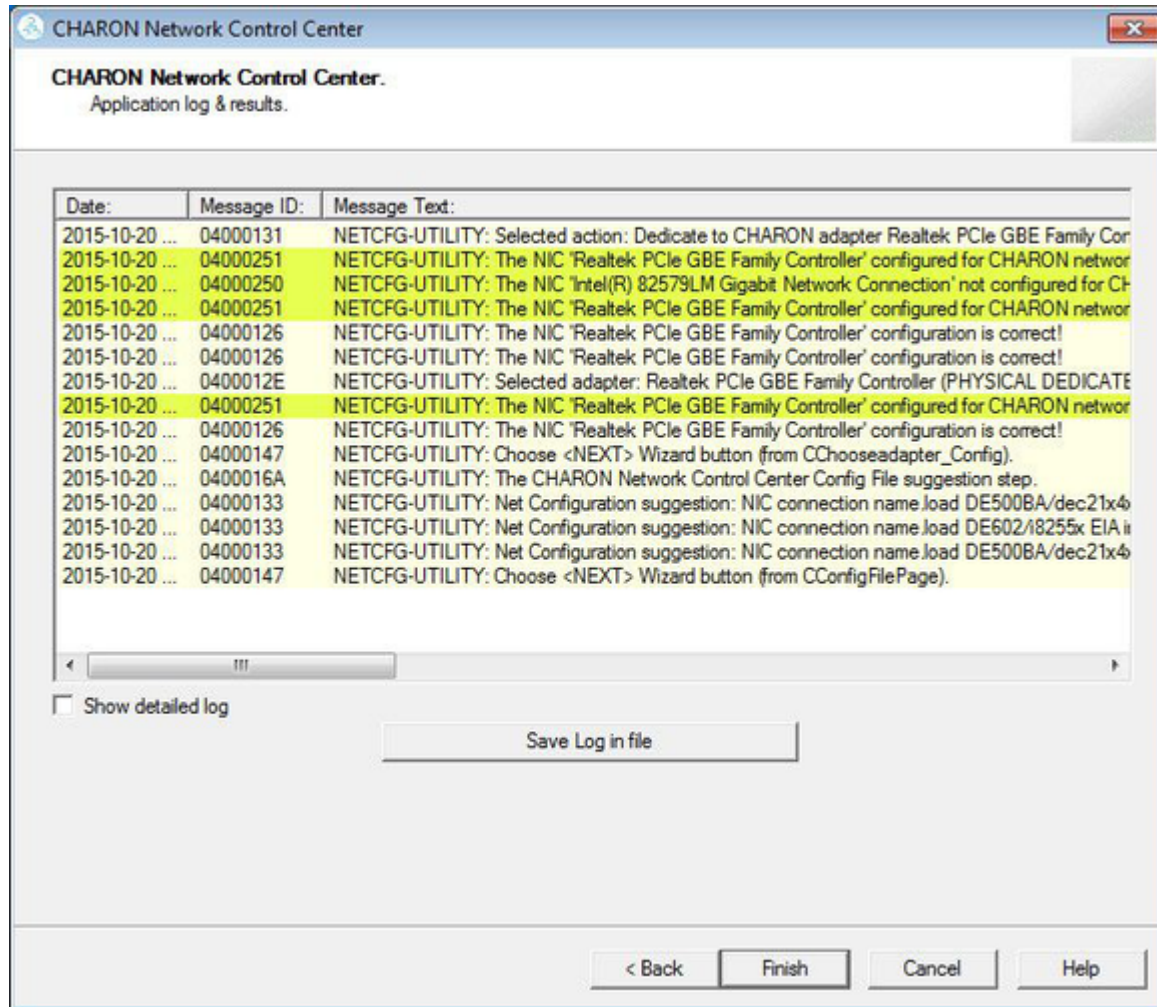
The next dialog helps to define the correct lines for the CHARON configuration file. Select the target emulated network adapter and press the "Copy suggestions to clipboard" button:



It is possible to paste the content of the clipboard to the CHARON configuration file as shown in the example below:

```
...
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA interface=EWA0
load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="(disabled)"
load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="connection:Charon"
...
```

Press the "Next" button to see the log file:



Review the log for errors. You can save the log to a file by pressing the "Save Log in file" button in case the log file has to be sent to Stromasys Customer Support.

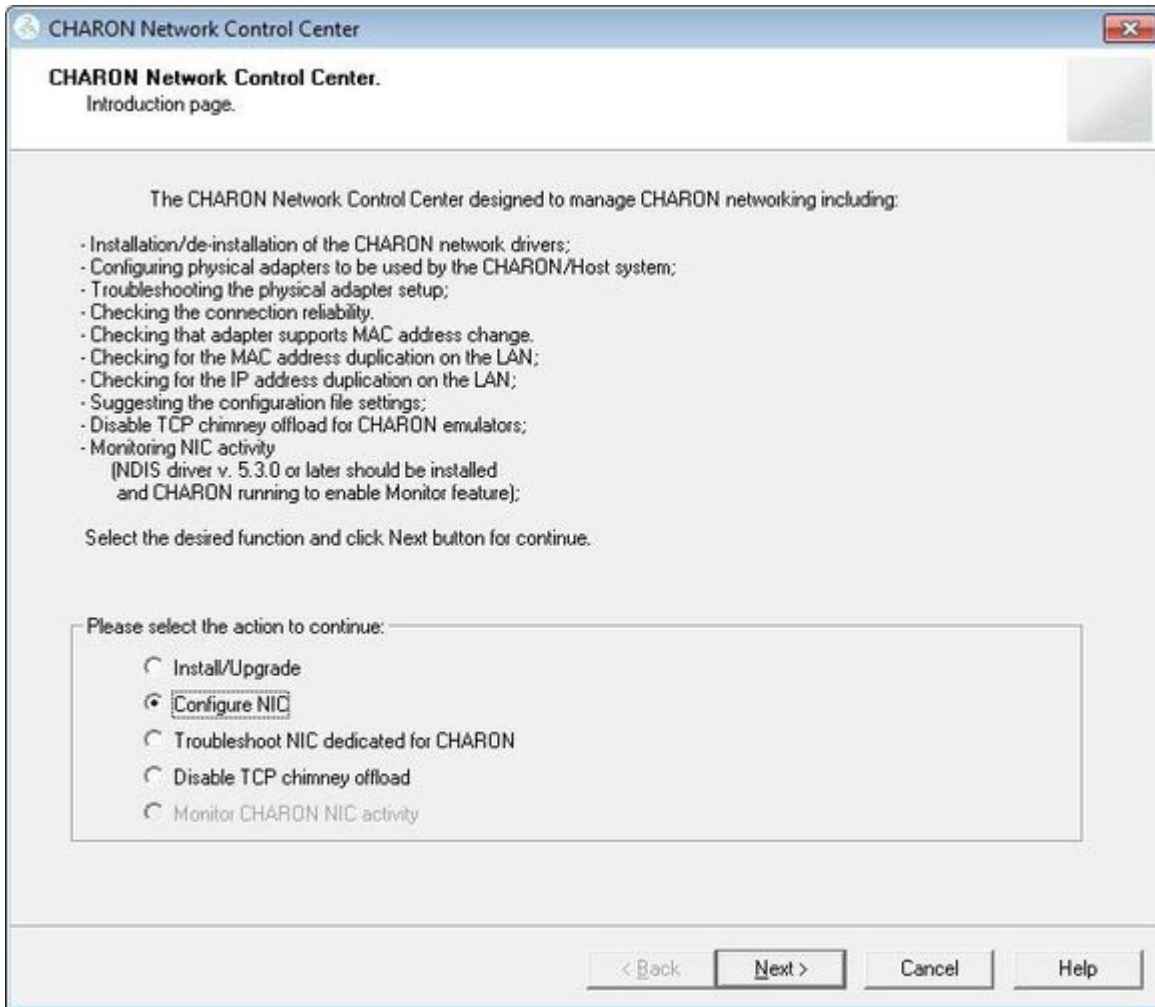
Select "Show detailed log" to display more detail.

Press the "Finish" button to exit.

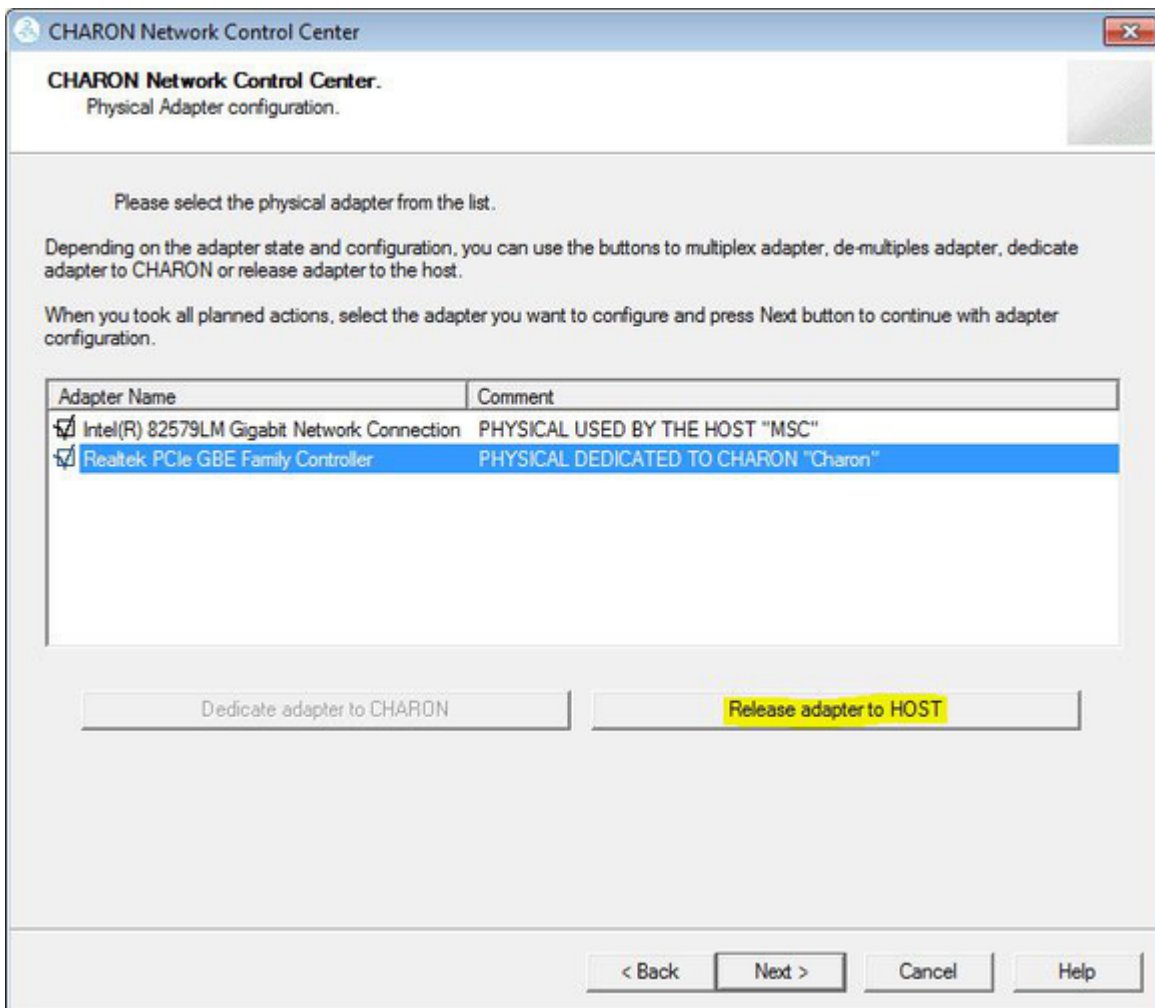
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Release of the host network interfaces

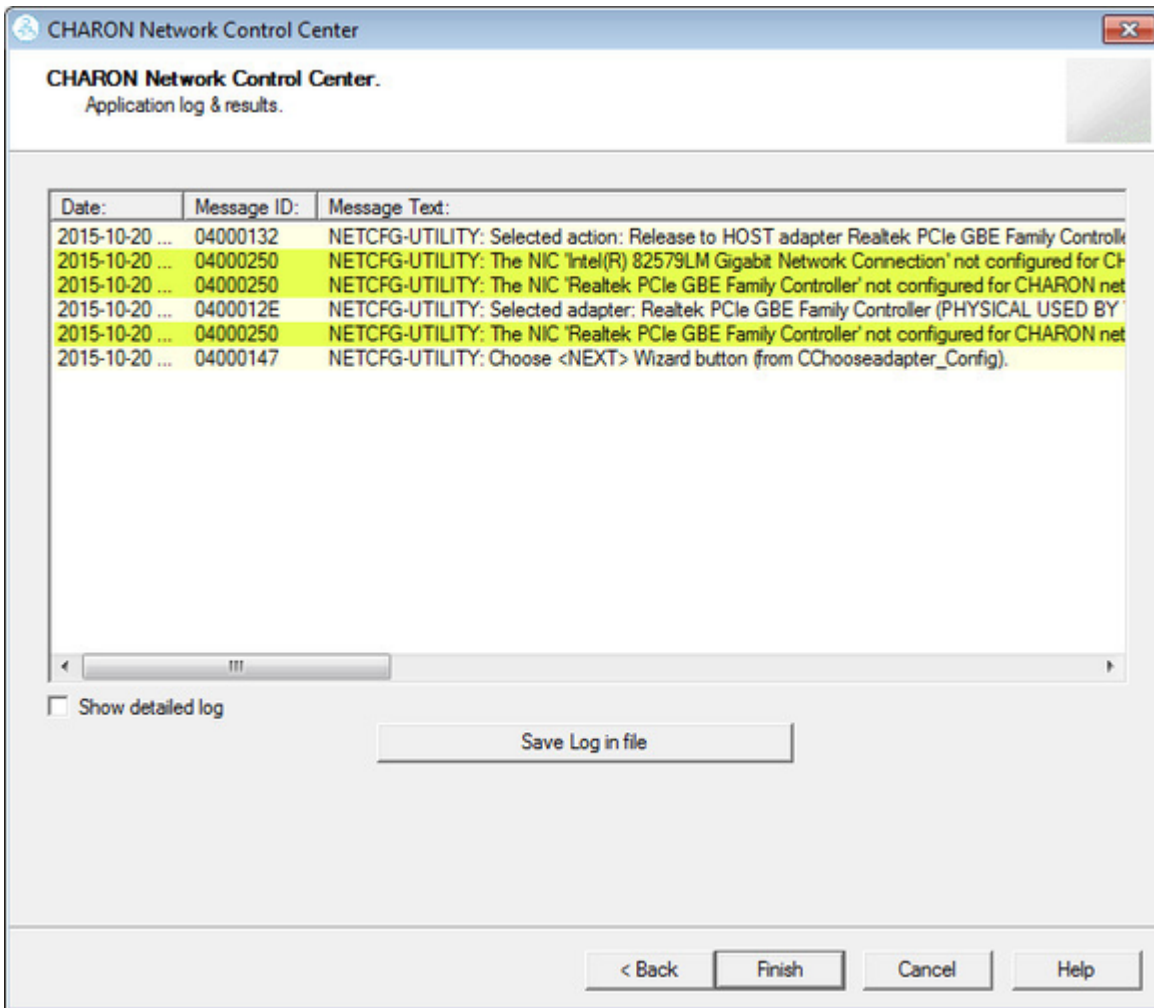
Start the utility, select "Configure NIC" and press the "Next" button:



Select the interface to be released back to the host (in the example below its name is "Charon"), press the "Release adapter to HOST" button:



Press the "Next" button and review the log of this operation:



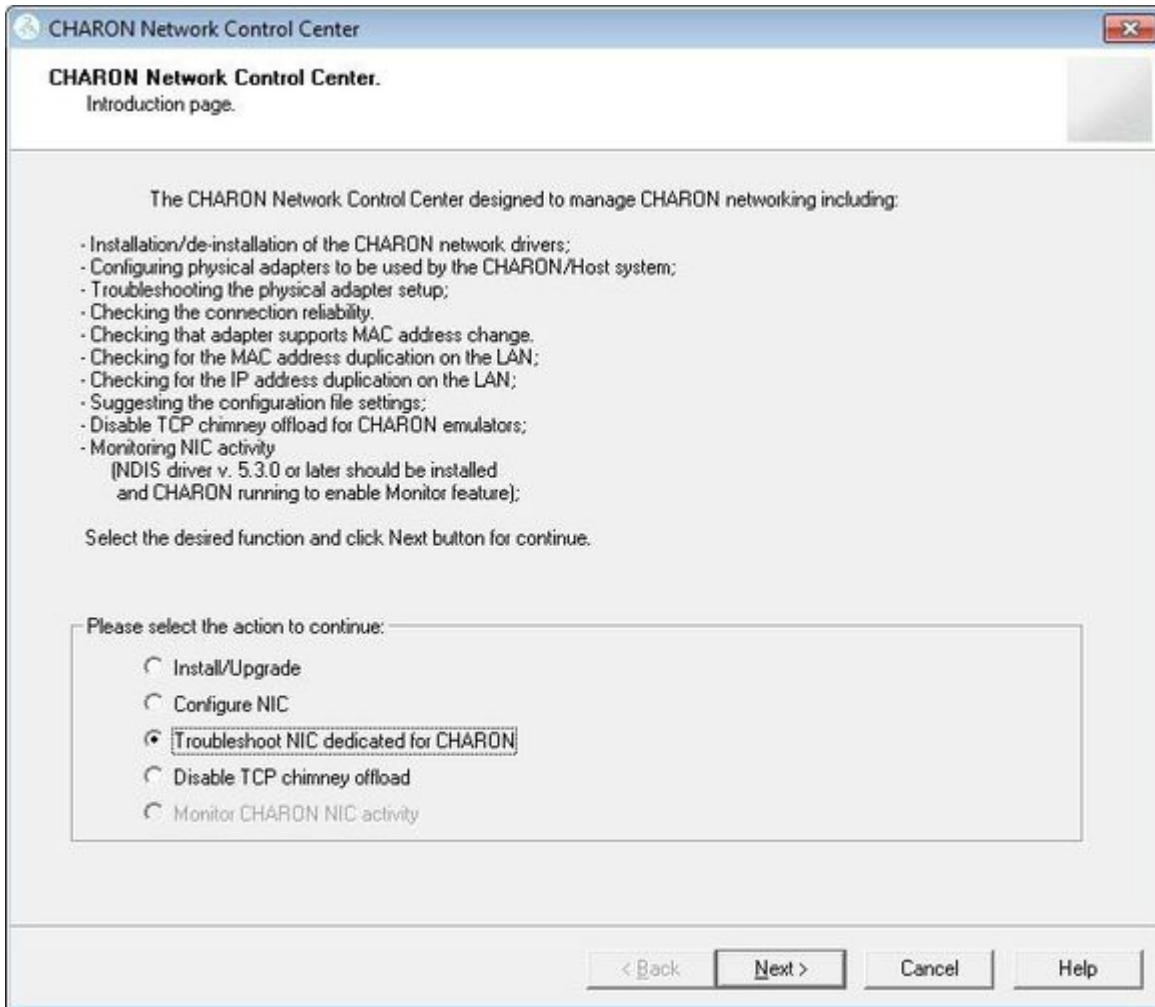
Select "Show detailed log" to display more detail.

Press the "Finish" button to exit.

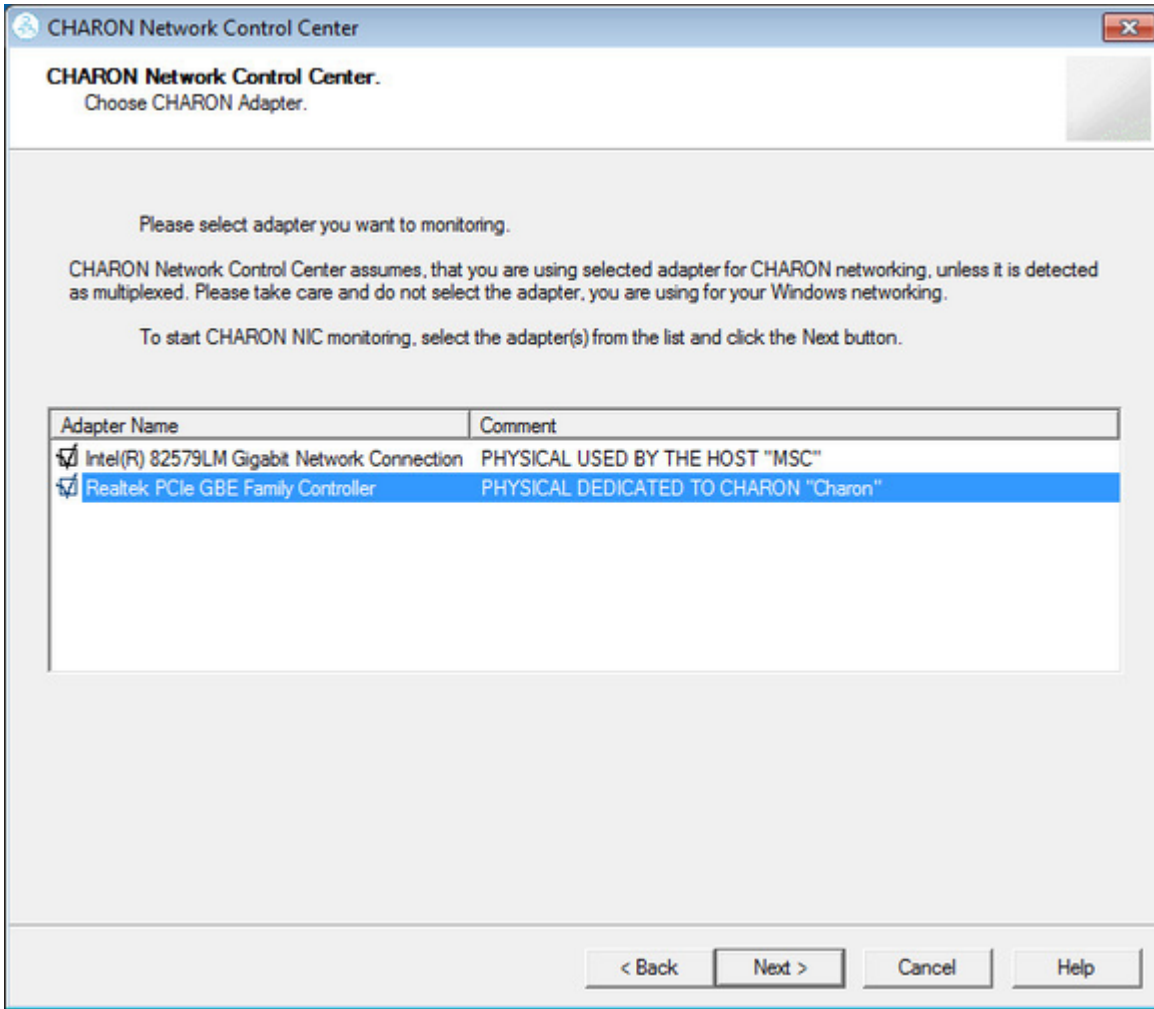
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Troubleshooting the CHARON network interfaces configuration

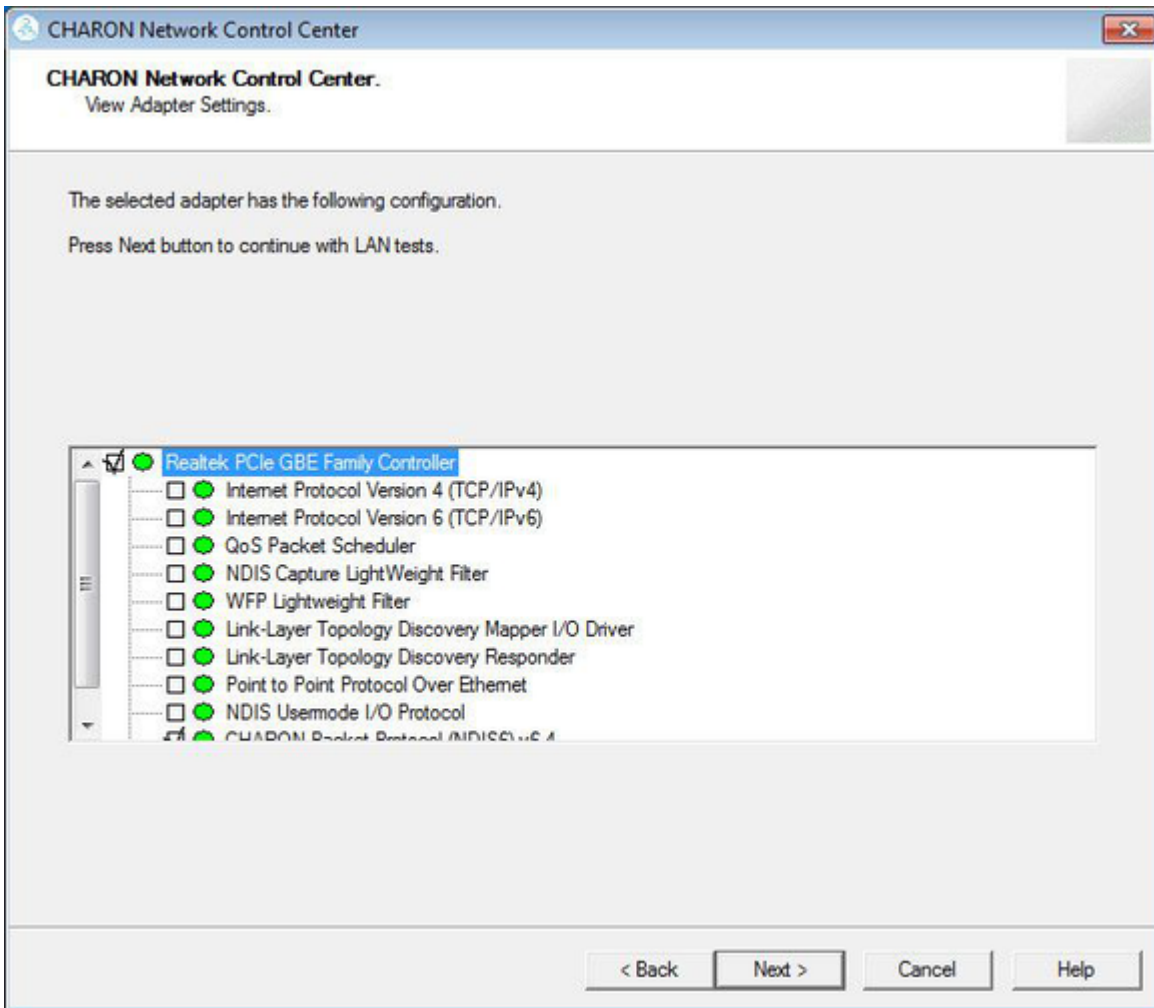
Start the utility, select "Troubleshoot NIC dedicated for CHARON" and press the "Next" button:



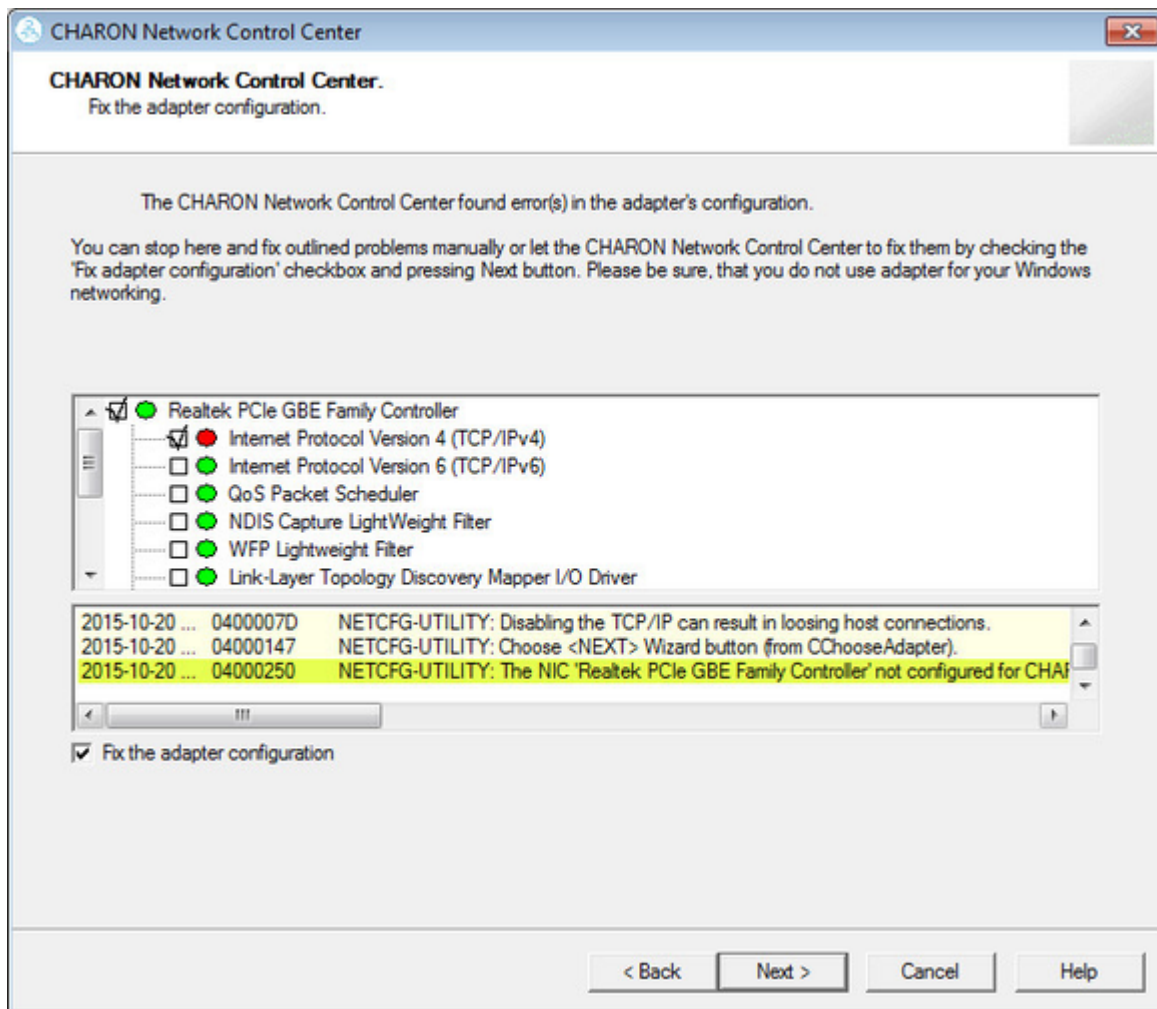
Select the target interface and press the "Next" button:



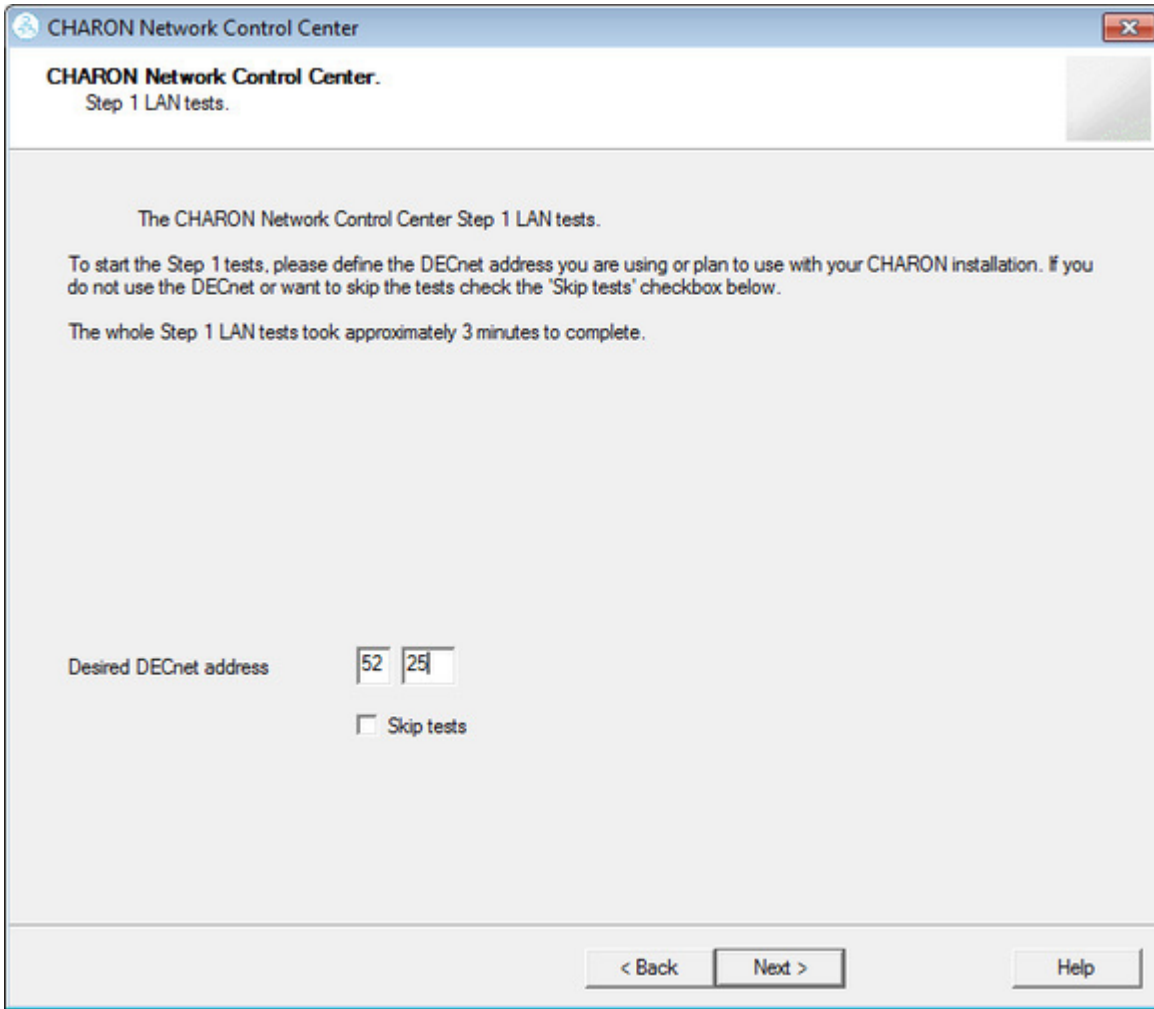
Review the status of the interface:



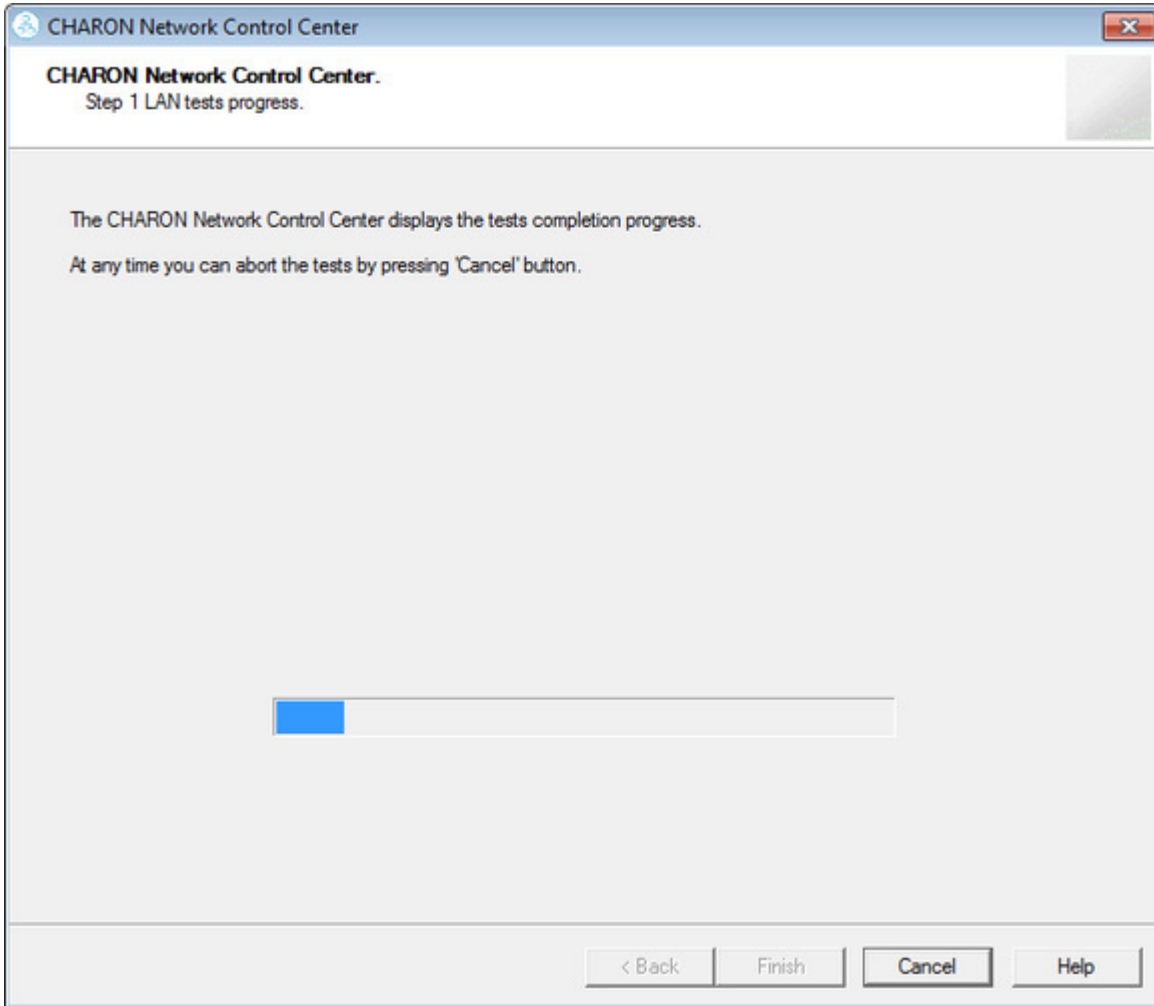
In the example below, there is an issue with the host TCP/IP being enabled on the CHARON interface. Review the problem description, select "Fix the adapter configuration" then press the "Next" button.



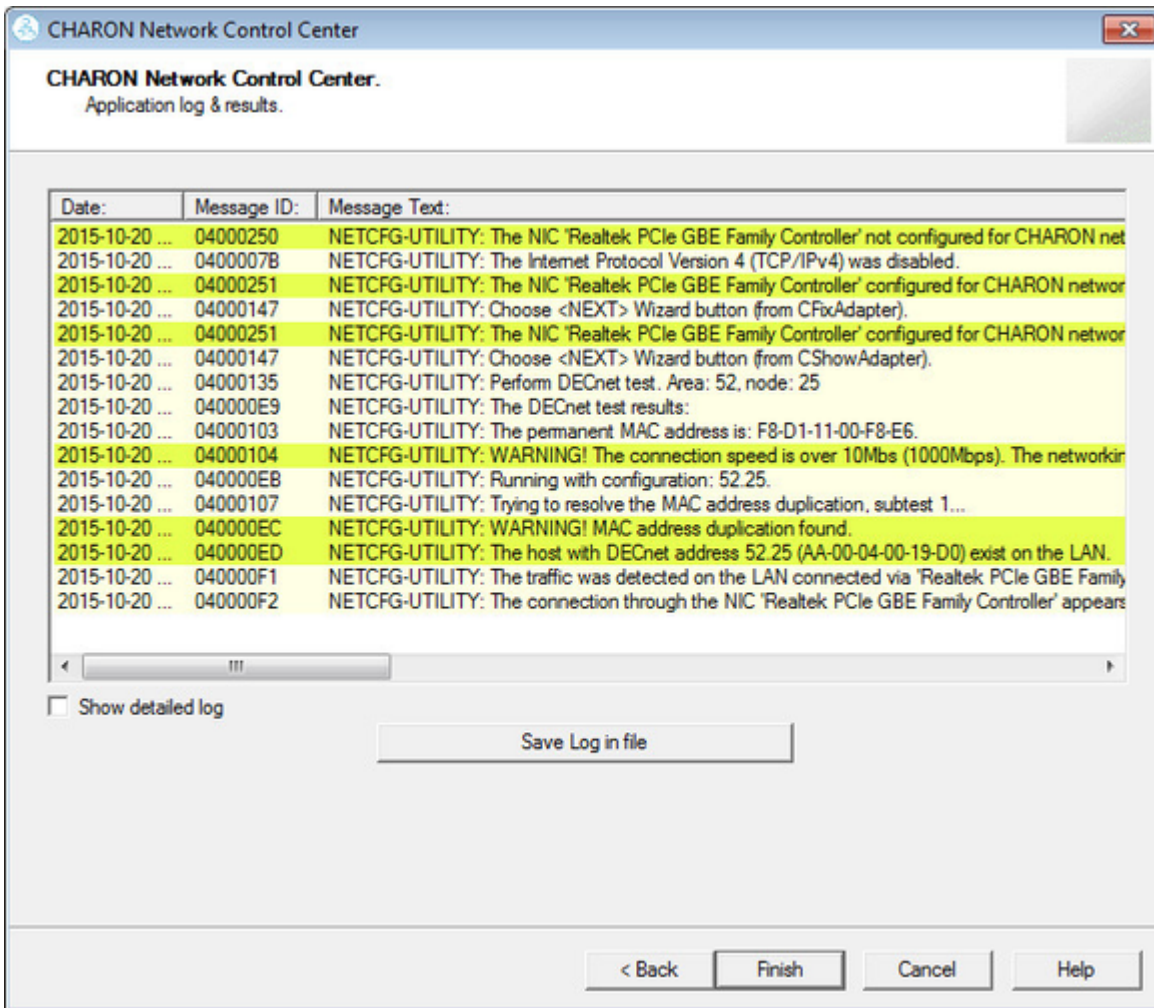
The utility will fix issues and report a good status for the interface. Press the "Next" button, the following dialog will appear:



The Network Control Center offers to check whether the DECnet address, to be used by CHARON, is unique on the network in this step. Enter the desired DECnet address, for the CHARON guest, and press the "Next" button:



Once the check is completed, if there are issues, the utility will abort the test and display a log containing information about the issues found:



If no issues are found, the utility will offer to check the CHARON TCP/IP networking the same way:

The CHARON Network Control Center Step 2 LAN tests.

To start the Step 2 tests, please define the IP address and subnet mask you are using or plan to use with your CHARON installation or your LAN's subnet address and subnet mask. If you want to skip that tests check the 'Skip tests' checkbox below.

WARNING: The IP address duplication test can result in the losing connections by the Windows host that using the IP address you specify.

The whole Step 2 tests duration depends on the size of you subnet. Typically, for class C networks, or subnetted networks with amount of node ~256 the whole Step 2 tests took ~15 minutes maximum.

Desired IP address (or subnet address)

Subnet mask

Skip tests

< Back Next > Cancel Help

Enter the IP address and subnet mask to be used by the CHARON guest then press the "Next" button:

The CHARON Network Control Center Step 2 LAN tests.

To start the Step 2 tests, please define the IP address and subnet mask you are using or plan to use with your CHARON installation or your LAN's subnet address and subnet mask. If you want to skip that tests check the 'Skip tests' checkbox below.

WARNING: The IP address duplication test can result in the loosing connections by the Windows host that using the IP address you specify.

The whole Step 2 tests duration depends on the size of you subnet. Typically, for class C networks, or subnetted networks with amount of node ~256 the whole Step 2 tests took ~15 minutes maximum.

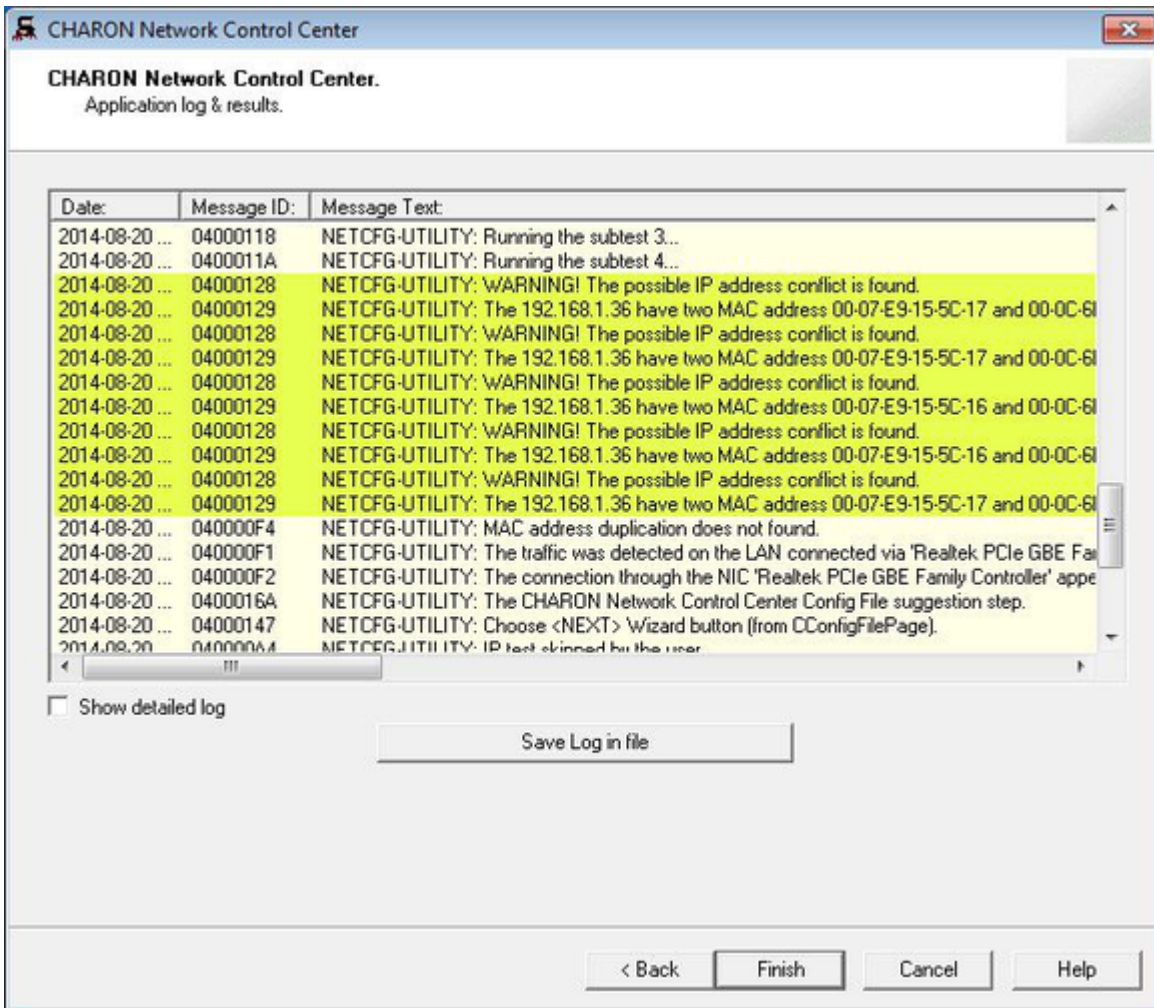
Desired IP address (or subnet address)

Subnet mask

Skip tests

< Back Next > Cancel Help

The Network Control Center will display the log of the performed operations:



Select "Show detailed log" for more detail.

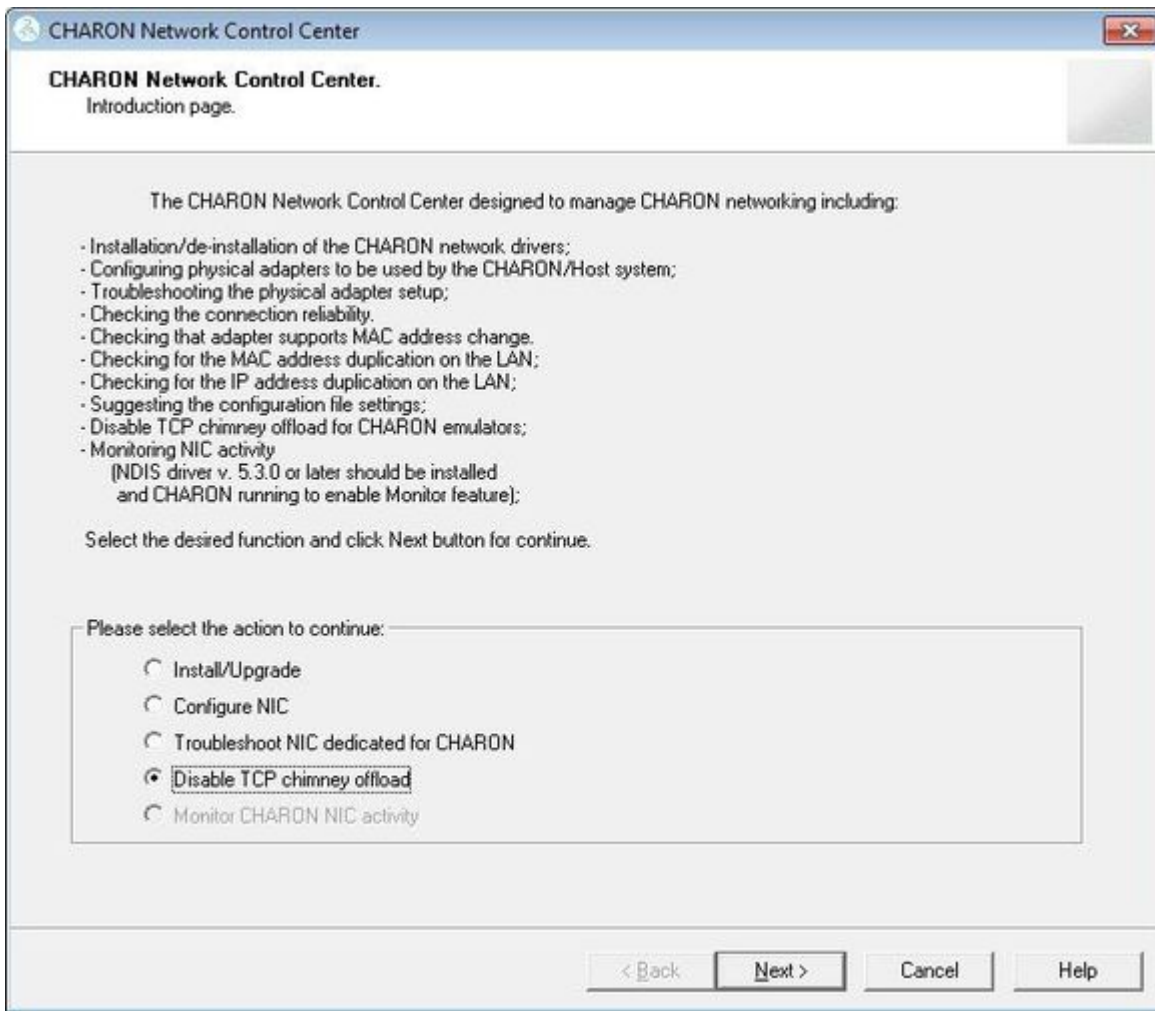
Press the "Finish" button to exit.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Disable "offload" parameters

The Network Control Center is able to disable "offload" parameters for CHARON. It is highly recommended to disable them to avoid problems with TCP/IP networking.

Start the utility, select "Disable TCP chimney offload for CHARON" and press the "Next" button:








The "offload" parameters will be reset for all CHARON emulators (executable files).

Press the "Finish" button to exit.

 Please note to restart the CHARON host to enable this settings.

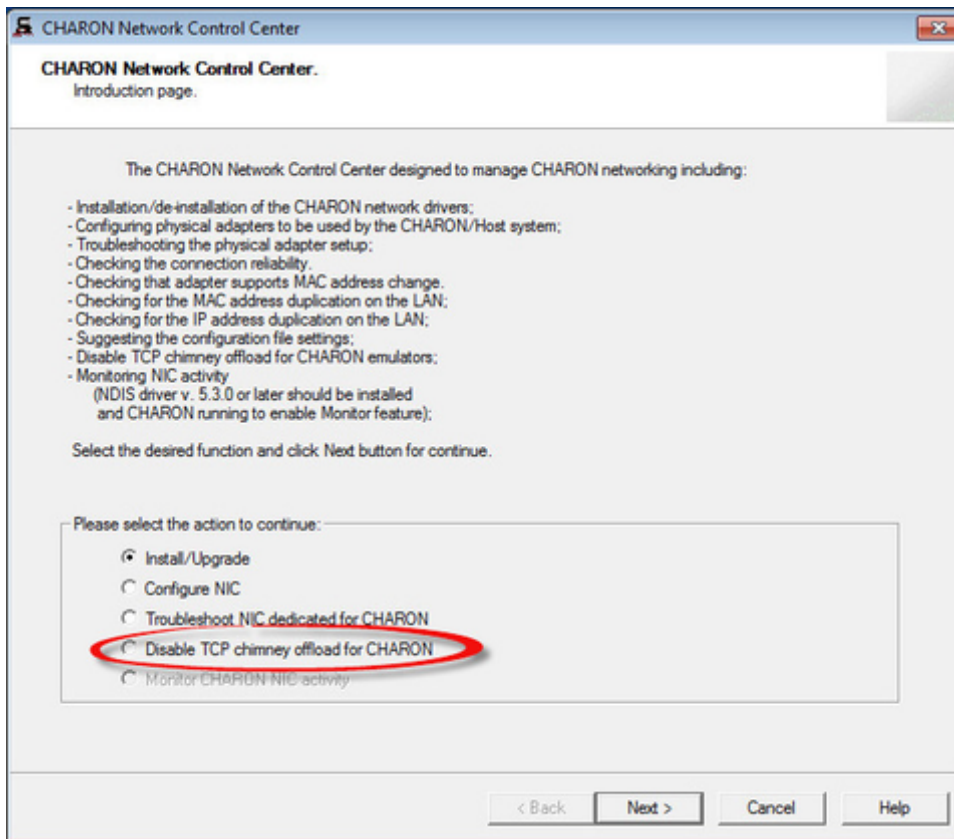
∨ [More information on details of disabling TCP chimney offload is available](#)

Operating system	Notes	Charon version	Configuration steps
<p>Windows 2008 R2</p> <p>Windows 2012 R2</p> <p>Windows 2016</p> <p>Windows 7</p> <p>Windows 8 & 8.1</p> <p>Windows 10</p>	<p>TCP Chimney offload must be disabled.</p> <p>TCP Chimney Offload is a networking technology that helps transfer the workload from the CPU to a network adapter during network data transfer.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Warning</p> <p>The commands to enable and disable TCP Chimney Offload for specific applications and ports require that the Windows Firewall service and Base Filtering Engine (BFE) services are running. Before using these commands or the Network Control Center Utility, ensure that the Windows Firewall service and BFE service are running.</p> </div> <p> Running guests will have to be powered off/on for the new settings to be taken into account.</p> <p> To check TCP Chimney offload is disabled, use the following commands:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">C:\Windows\system32>netsh int tcp show global Querying active state... TCP Global Parameters ----- Receive-Side Scaling State : enabled Chimney Offload State : disabled NetDMA State : disabled Direct Cache Access (DCA) : disabled ...</pre> <p> To revert back to the original settings manually, use the following command:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">C:\Windows\system32>netsh int tcp set global chimney=automatic</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHARON-VAX V4.7 and CHARON-AXP V4.7 Build 171-10 and above (patched) • Charon-AXP/PDP/VAX V4.8 Build 183-02 <p>Older versions of Charon-AXP/PDP/VAX</p> <p> Do not use the network control center utility to disable TCP chimney offload. Please use only the manual settings described in this chapter</p>	<p>Configuration type 1</p> <p>Configuration type 2</p>
<p>Older versions of Windows</p>	<p> Running guests will have to be powered off/on for the new settings to be taken into account</p>	<p>Charon-AXP/PDP/VAX versions supported on these old versions of Windows</p>	<p>Configuration type 3</p>

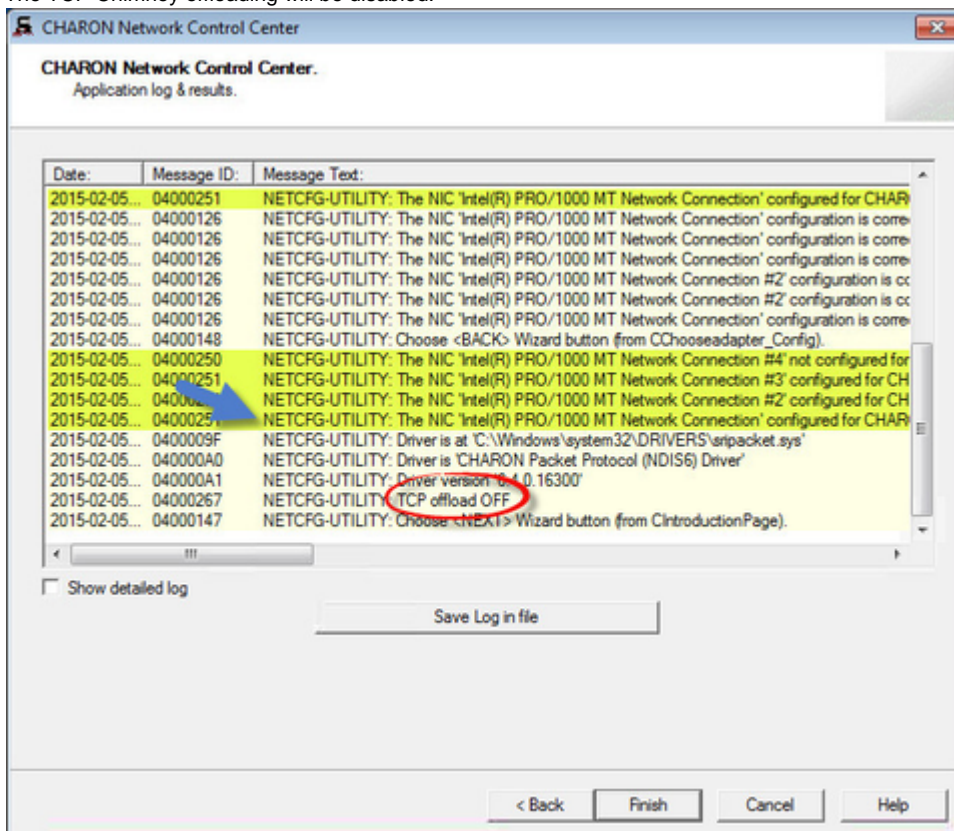
Configuration type 1

- **Charon-AXP/VAX V4.7:**
 - open the **Start** menu, select **"All Programs"** then **"CHARON"**, select your Charon product version, **"Utilities"** then **"Network Controler Center version x.xx"**.
- **Charon-AXP/PDP/VAX V4.8:**
 - Double click the **"CHARON Virtual Machine Manager"** icon on desktop or select this utility in the tray menu; select **"Host Information and Utilities"** section and press **"Network Control Center"** button.

- From the **"Network Control Center"** utility main page, select the **"Disable TCP chimney offload for CHARON"** option:



- Click on the "Next" button.
- The TCP Chimney offloading will be disabled:



- Click on the **"Finish"** button to exit.

Configuration type 2

- Open a command line windows with Admin rights
- Issue the following command:

```
C:\> netsh int tcp set global chimney=disabled
```

- Delete all occurrences of Charon executables in the following table if any as described below:

```
C:\> netsh interface tcp show chimney
```

```
...
```

```
C:\> netsh interface tcp delete chimneyapplication application="C:\Program Files\CHARON\Build_16400\x64\as1000.exe"
```

Configuration type 3

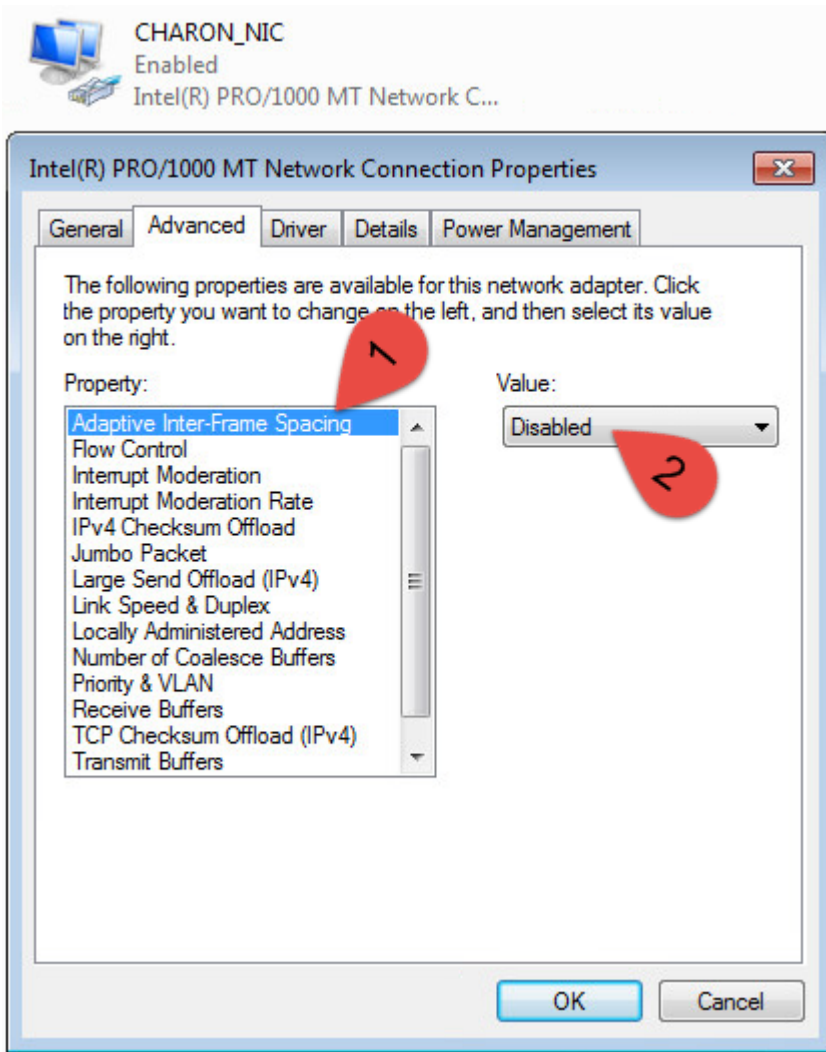
Intelligent packet processing should be switched off for the network adapters dedicated to CHARON-AXP (naming of the parameters depends on the network adapter driver):

- Adaptive interframe spacing
- Flow control
- Interrupt moderation
- Interrupt moderation rate
- Ipv4 checksum offload
- Jumbo packet
- Large send offload
- Disable Priority and VLAN
- TCP checksum offload
- UDP checksum offload

To do so, open the **"Control Panel"**, select **"Network and Internet"** and **"Network Connections"**. Right click on the adapter you dedicated to CHARON, select **"Properties"** and click on the **"Configure"** button.

Select the **"Advanced"** tab and disable the properties mentioned in the list above.

Example:



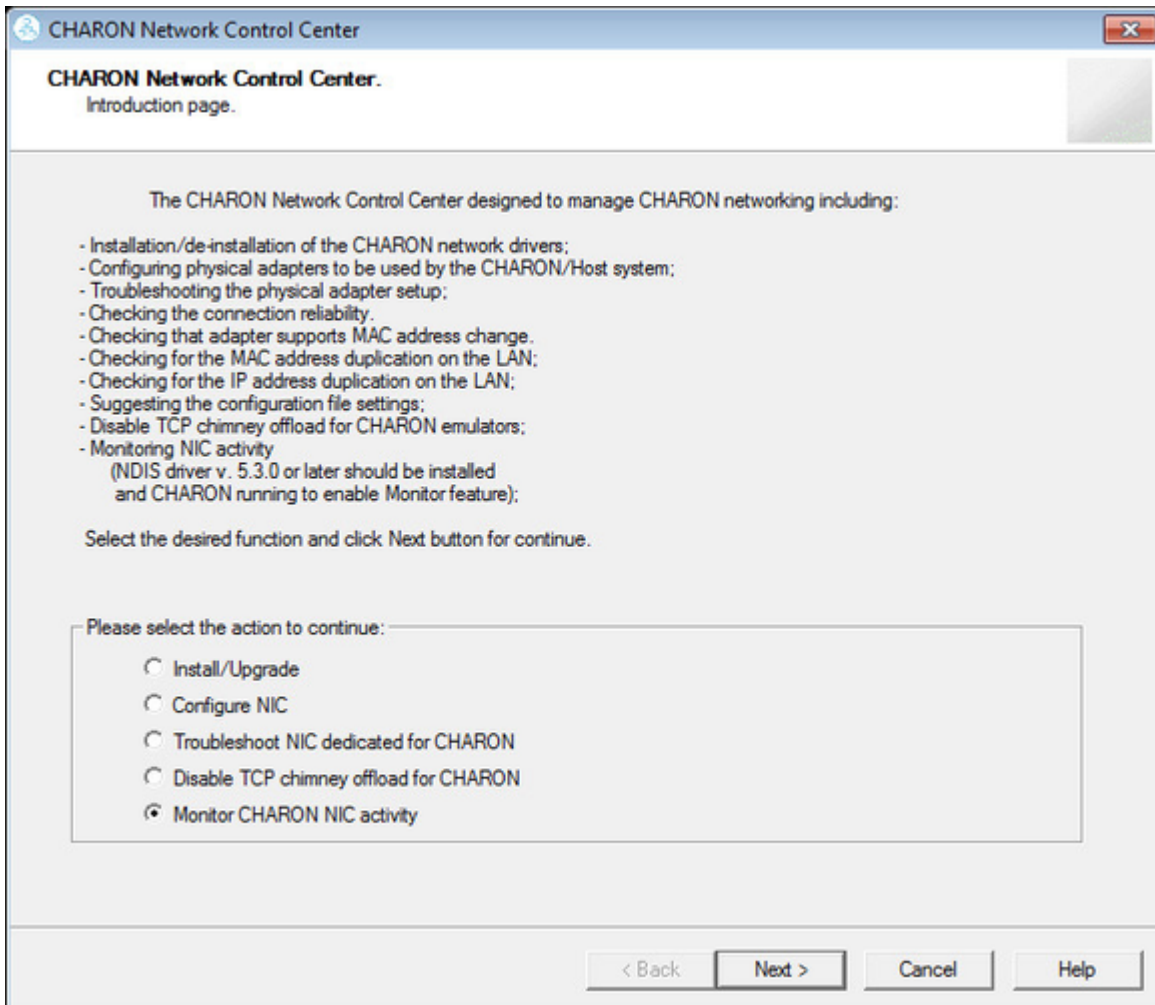
Once all parameters have been turned off, click on the "OK" button.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

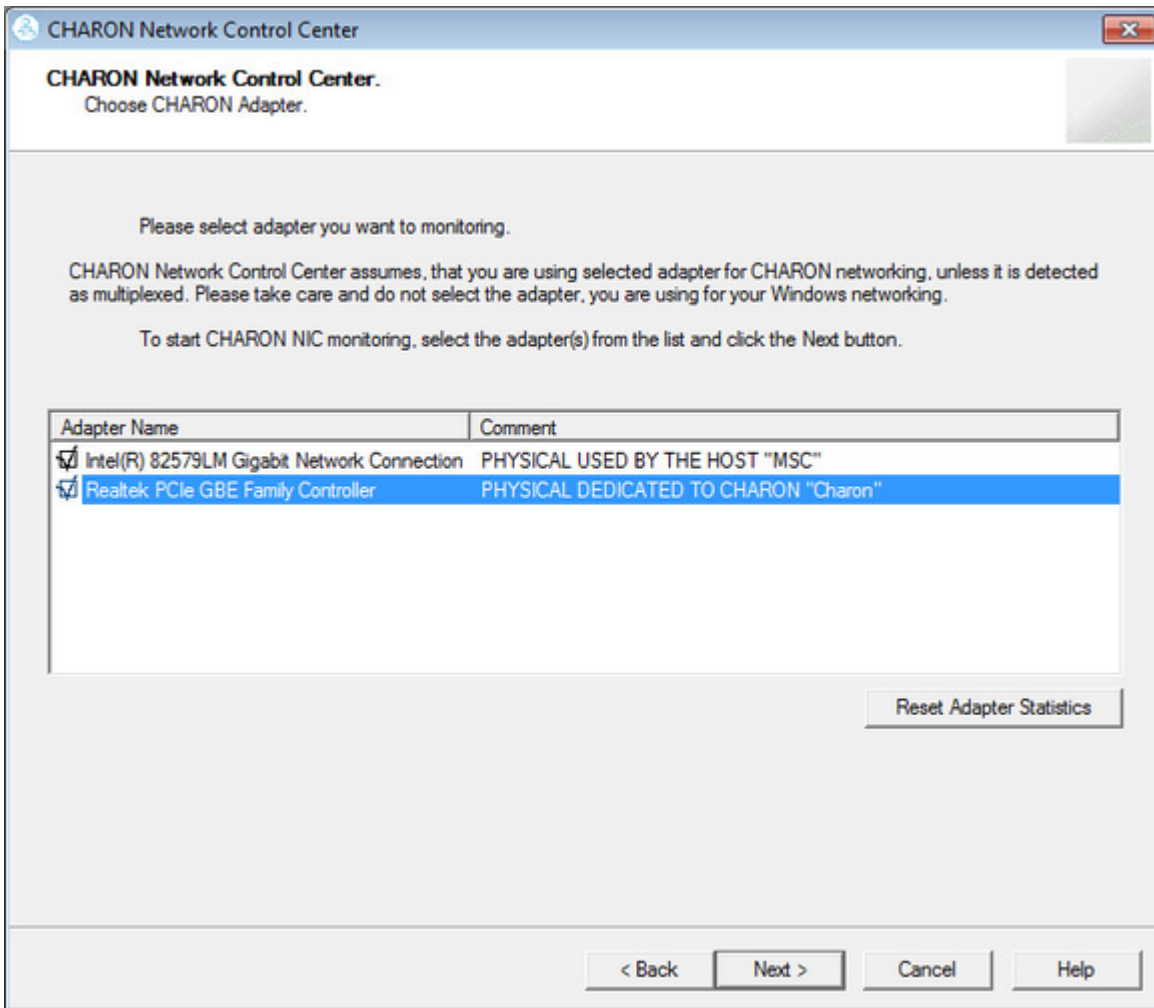
Monitoring the CHARON network activity

The Network Control Center is able to monitor CHARON network activity. This function is available only if CHARON is running.

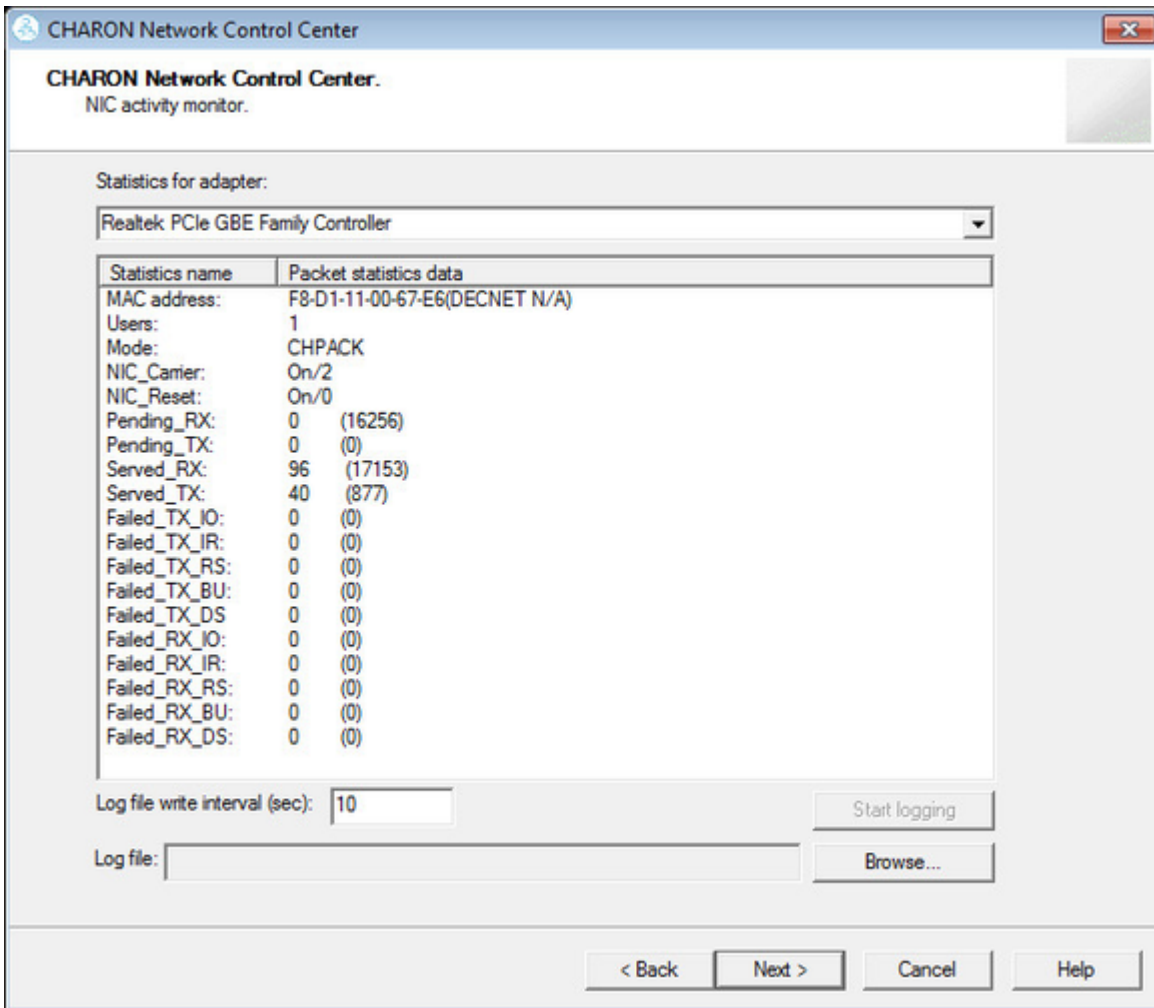
Start the utility, select "Monitor CHARON NIC activity" and press the "Next" button:



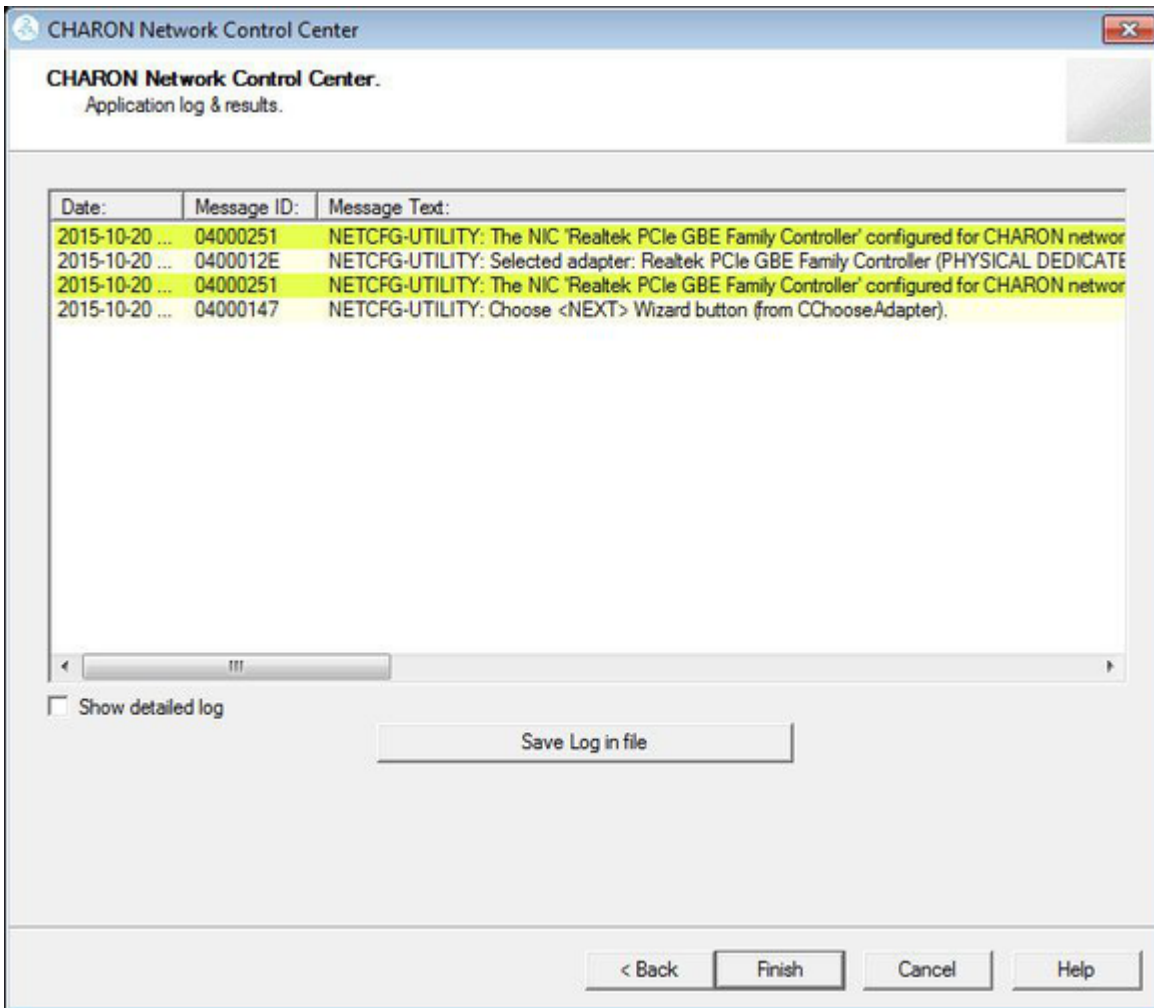
Select the network interface to monitor (it must be dedicated to CHARON) and press the "Next" button:



The utility will display statistics updated in a real time. Note it is possible to record the statistics in a log file with a selected write interval.



Press the "Next" button to stop the recording and to see the log of this operation:



Select "Show detailed log" for more detail.

Press the "Finish" button to exit.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

MkDisk

Table of Contents

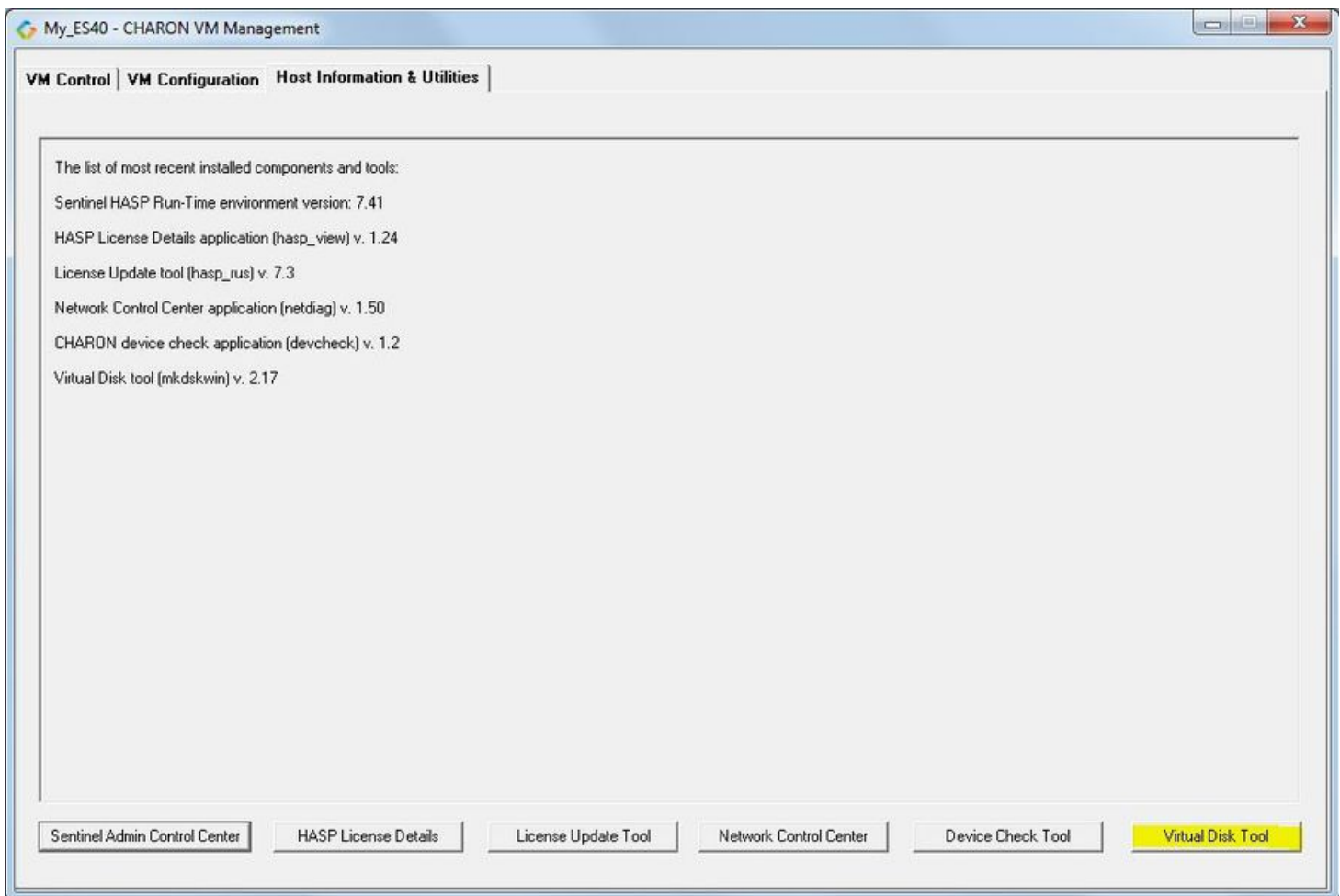
- General Description
- Creating empty disk container
- Creating disk metadata
- Creating custom disk image
- Getting information about available disk types

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

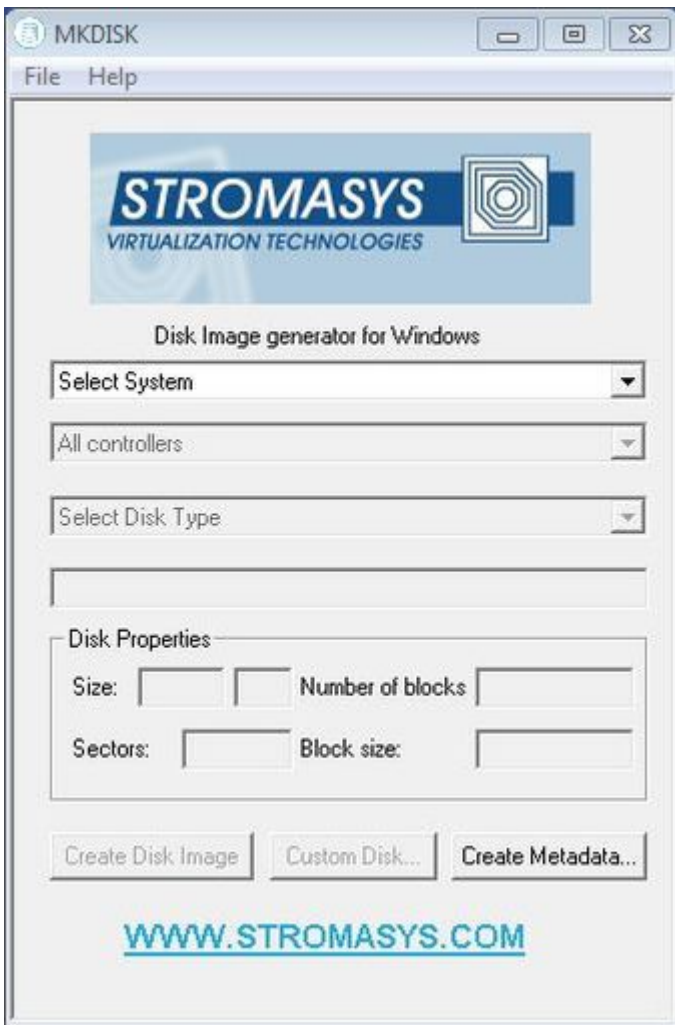
General Description

The "MkDisk" utility is used to create CHARON standard or custom empty disk containers (disk images).

Open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, switch to the "Host Information & Utilities" tab and press the "Virtual Disk Tool" button:



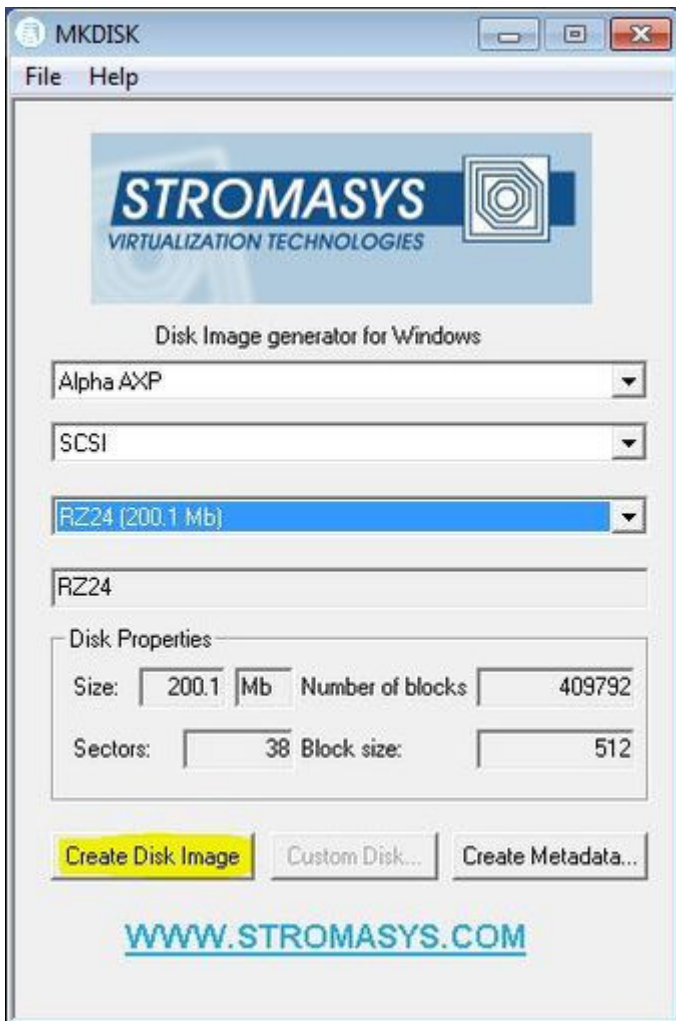
The main dialog of the utility will appear:



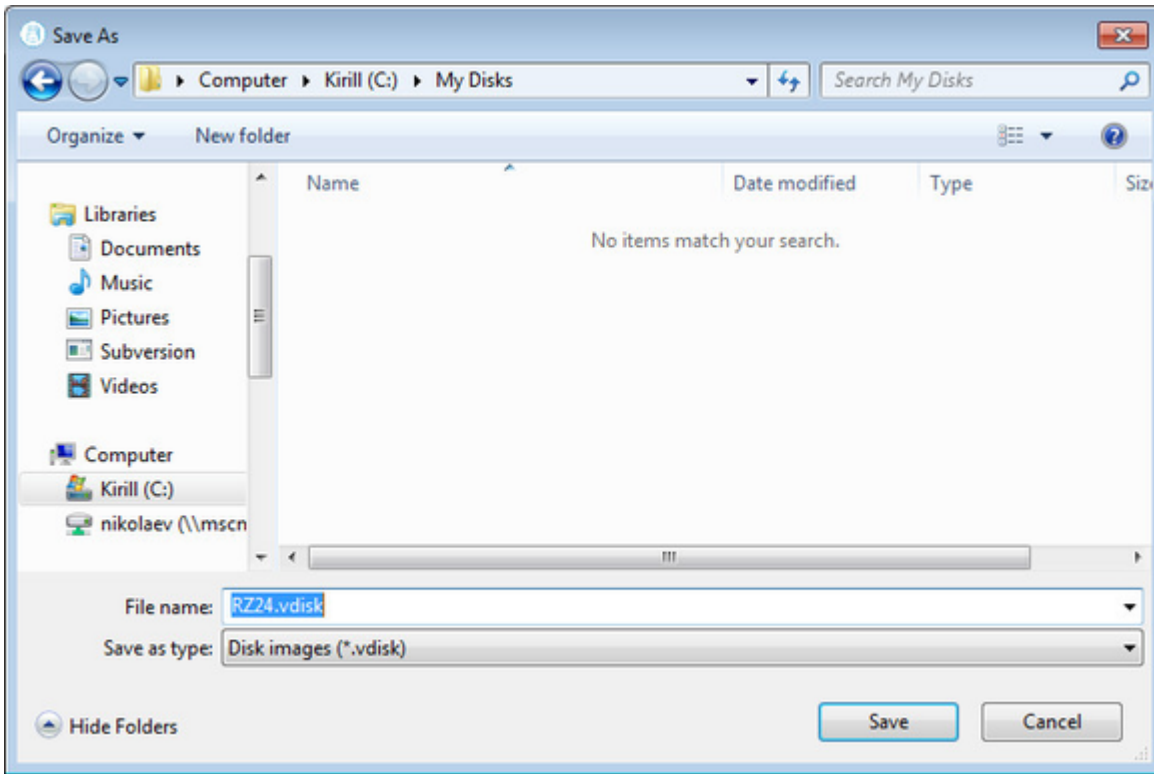
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Creating empty disk container

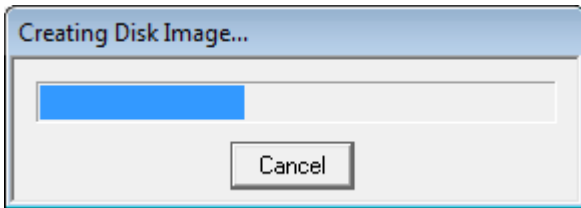
Select "Alpha AXP" in the "Select System" drop-down list, "SCSI" in the "All Controllers" drop-down one and choose the desired disk type in the "Select Disk Type" drop-down list to create an empty disk container:



Press the "Create Disk Image" button to proceed. A dialog asking to specify the name of the disk image will appear:



Browse to the target directory, specify the name of the disk image and press the "Save" button. The process of creating the disk container will start:



The target disk image is created - along with its metadata file (see below) once the process completes.

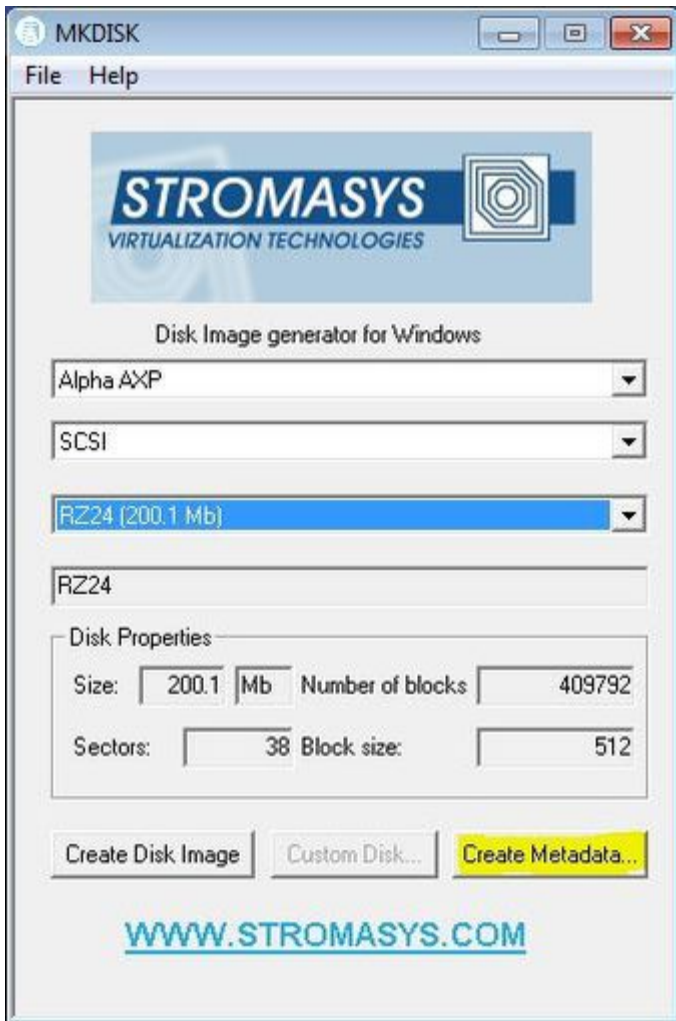
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Creating disk metadata

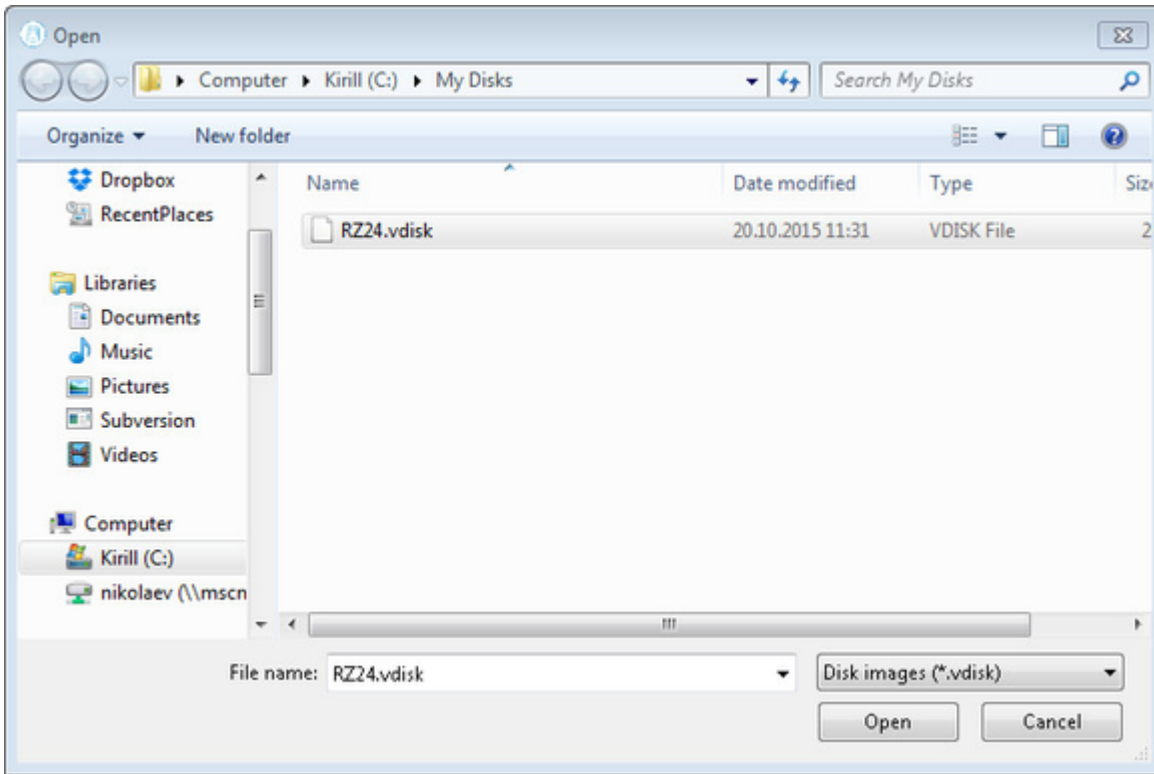
The disk image metadata file contains important information about the target disk image structure - it is used by CHARON, automatically created with the same name with a different extension.

This functionality is needed if you have a disk image of a certain type and you want to generate a metadata file for it.

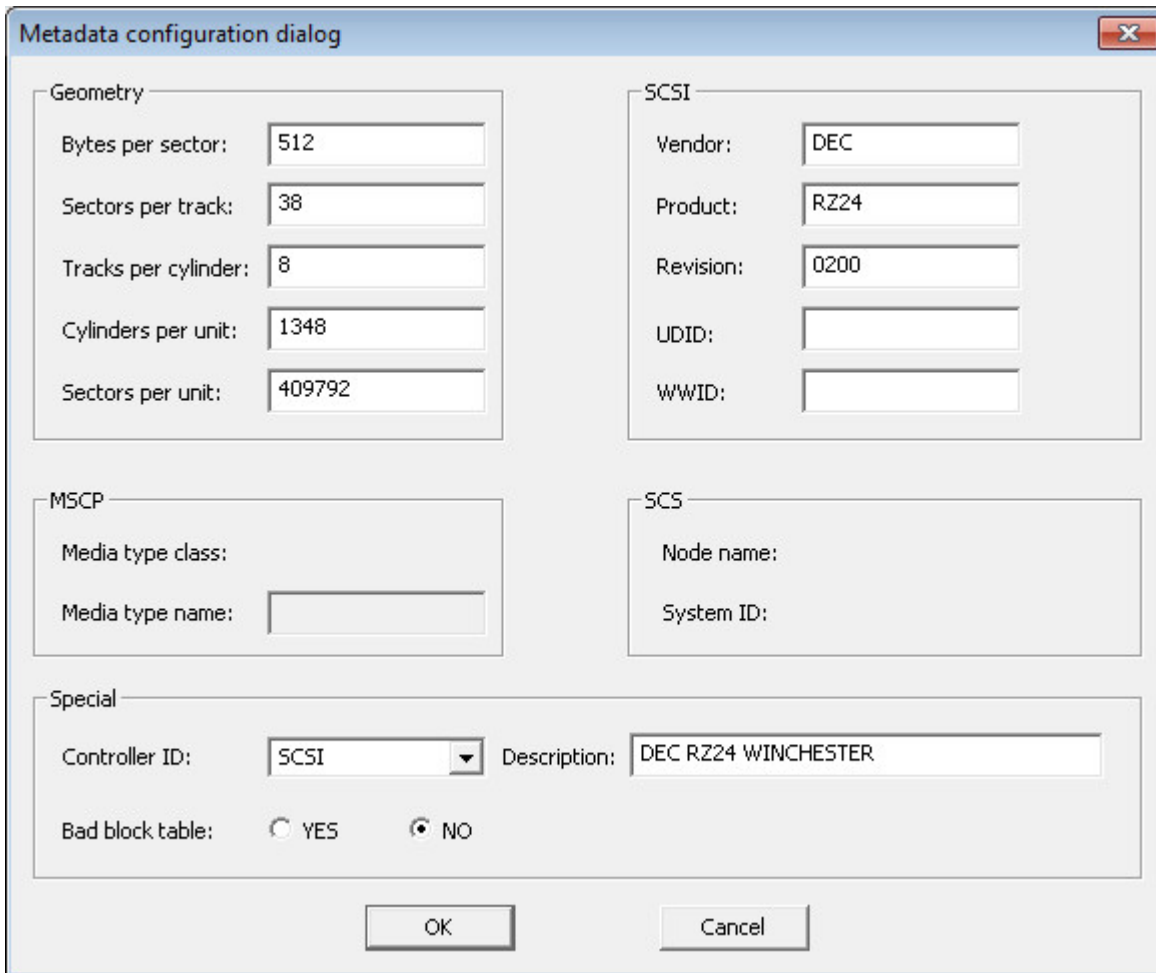
To create a metadata file press the "Create Metadata..." button:



The "MkDisk" utility will ask you to select a disk container for which to create the metadata file:



Select the target disk image and press the "Open" button. The utility will display a dialog for adjusting/correcting the disk image parameters:



The screenshot shows a "Metadata configuration dialog" window with the following sections and fields:

- Geometry:**
 - Bytes per sector: 512
 - Sectors per track: 38
 - Tracks per cylinder: 8
 - Cylinders per unit: 1348
 - Sectors per unit: 409792
- SCSI:**
 - Vendor: DEC
 - Product: RZ24
 - Revision: 0200
 - UDID: (empty)
 - WWID: (empty)
- MSCP:**
 - Media type class: (empty)
 - Media type name: (empty)
- SCS:**
 - Node name: (empty)
 - System ID: (empty)
- Special:**
 - Controller ID: SCSI (dropdown menu)
 - Description: DEC RZ24 WINCHESTER
 - Bad block table: YES NO

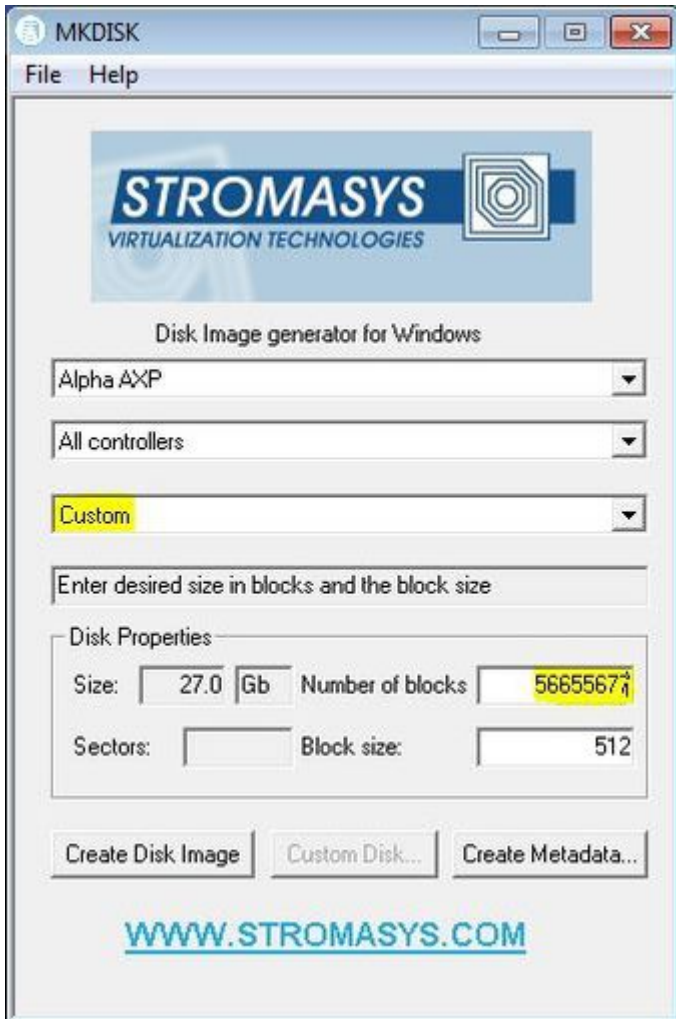
Buttons: OK, Cancel

Correct the desired parameters if needed and press the "Ok" button. The "MkDisk" utility will create a metadata file, having the same name as the target disk container, with extension ".avdisk"

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Creating custom disk image

Select "Custom" in the "Select System" drop-down list, enter the desired number of blocks in the "Number of blocks" input box, specify the block size (if it is different from the default value of 512) in the "Block size" input box and press the "Create Disk Image" button to proceed:

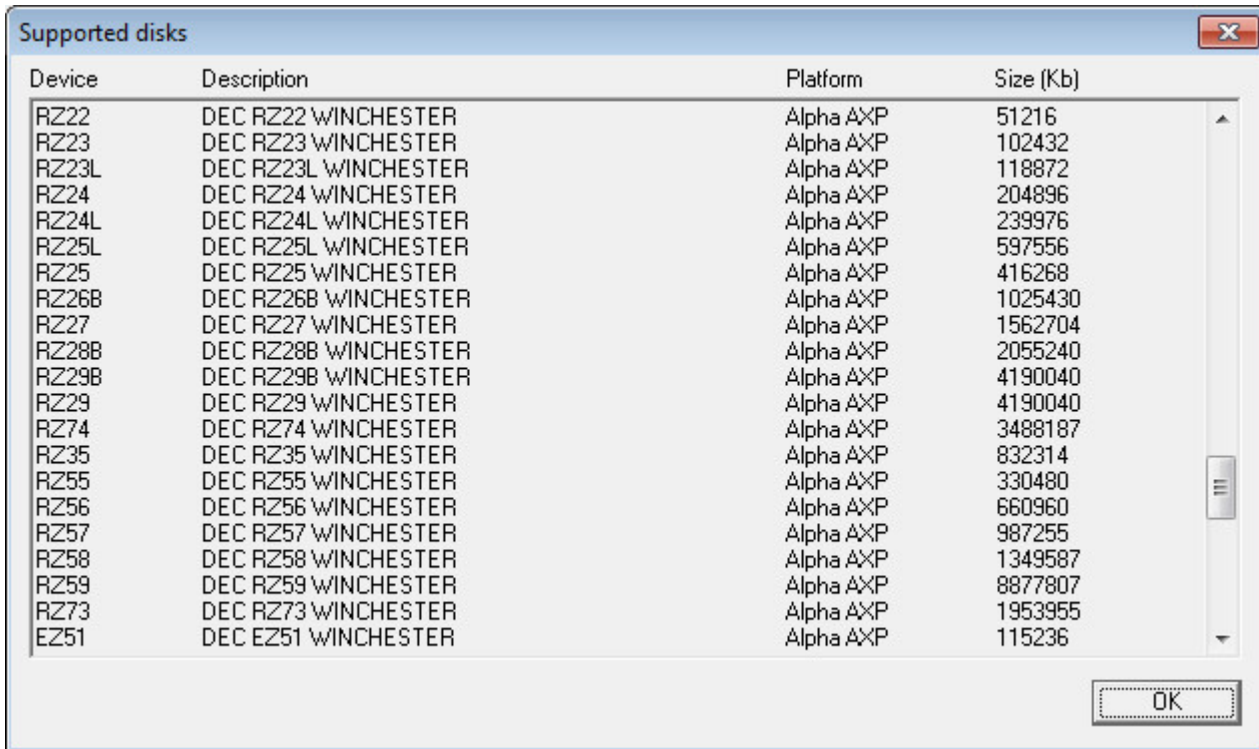


Specify the location and name of the target disk container and press the "Save" button. The utility will create the disk image.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Getting information about available disk types

Information about the available disk types the "MkDisk" utility is able to create can be obtained by selecting the "Help->Disk Table" menu item. The following information dialog will appear:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Supported disks" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog contains a table with four columns: "Device", "Description", "Platform", and "Size (Kb)". The table lists 20 different disk models, all of which are supported on the Alpha AXP platform. The sizes range from 51,216 Kb to 1,953,955 Kb. An "OK" button is located at the bottom right of the dialog.

Device	Description	Platform	Size (Kb)
RZ22	DEC RZ22 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	51216
RZ23	DEC RZ23 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	102432
RZ23L	DEC RZ23L WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	118872
RZ24	DEC RZ24 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	204896
RZ24L	DEC RZ24L WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	239976
RZ25L	DEC RZ25L WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	597556
RZ25	DEC RZ25 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	416268
RZ26B	DEC RZ26B WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	1025430
RZ27	DEC RZ27 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	1562704
RZ28B	DEC RZ28B WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	2055240
RZ29B	DEC RZ29B WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	4190040
RZ29	DEC RZ29 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	4190040
RZ74	DEC RZ74 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	3488187
RZ35	DEC RZ35 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	832314
RZ55	DEC RZ55 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	330480
RZ56	DEC RZ56 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	660960
RZ57	DEC RZ57 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	987255
RZ58	DEC RZ58 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	1349587
RZ59	DEC RZ59 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	8877807
RZ73	DEC RZ73 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	1953955
EZ51	DEC EZ51 WINCHESTER	Alpha AXP	115236

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

MkDskCmd

Table of Contents

- General Description
- Creating disk images
- Transferring disk images

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General Description

The "MkDskCmd" utility:

- Creates empty disk images of a given standard or custom disk type or a custom disk size
- Transfers existing disk images of one type to disk images of another type.

To start the utility open "cmd.exe" in the Start menu and switch to the CHARON installation folder then the "\Build_XXX\XXX" child folder where the utility is located.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Creating disk images

The first step is to obtain the disk type of the disk that needs to be created:

```
...> mkdskcmd -list
```

This command results in a list of all the supported disk types.

Choose the desired disk type (for example "RZ22") then use the "mkdskcmd" command to create the virtual disk image as shown below:

```
...> mkdskcmd -disk rz22 -output rz22.vdisk
```

A disk container "rz22.vdisk" will be created in the current directory.

A file "rz22.avdisk" will also be created. This file helps CHARON to accurately recognize a specific disk image type. It is recommended to put the ".avdisk" file in the same directory as the created disk image.

It is also possible to create custom disk images using the "-blcount" (blocks count) and "-blsize" (blocks size) switches.

For a list of all available parameters use the "-help" switch:

```

...> mkdskcmd -help
Usage:
  mkdskcmd [Options]

Options:
  -help           - to see help screen
  -h             - to see help screen

  -output <full name> - to specify output file name
  -o <full name>    - to specify output file name

  -disk <disk name> - to specify the disk name from Disk table
  -d <disk name>   - to specify the disk name from Disk table

  -blsize <number> - to specify the block size in bytes (custom disk image)
  -z <number>     - to specify the block size in bytes (custom disk image)

  -blcount <number> - to specify number of the blocks (custom disk image)
  -c <number>      - to specify number of the blocks (custom disk image)

  -avtable <full_name> - to specify AVDISK table file
  -a <full_name>      - to specify AVDISK table file

  -list <full_name>  - to display AVDISK table
  -l <full_name>    - to display AVDISK table

  -silent         - silent mode running
  -s             - silent mode running

-t - please see the '-transform' options description
-transform <source_disk_name> <source_disk_params> - to transform the the disk image (change actual size)

<source_disk_name> - the file name of the disk image to be transformed
<source_disk_params> - the name of the disk from the list of available at the Disk table

The source disk size will changed accordingly the reach the specified parameters.
To specify the transform parameters manually, follow the option below:

-transform <source_disk_name> -blsize <number> -blcount <number>

-shrink - parameter which needs to be EXPLICITLY provided, if the disk size is to be decreased
-k - parameter which needs to be EXPLICITLY provided, if the disk size is to be decreased

Return value:
  0           - for Success
  Non zero - in case of failure

Examples:
mkdskcmd -help
mkdskcmd -list
mkdskcmd -avtable \etc\mkdsk.vtable -output "\etc\rk07.vdisk" -disk rk07
mkdskcmd -output \etc\disks\custom.vdisk -blsize 512 -blcount 16384
mkdskcmd -t E:\disks\rz22.vdisk rz59 -a "C:\Program Files\CHARON\disks\mkdsk.vtable

```

The "-avtable" parameter is used to work with an alternative disk specification database or to point to the standard database ("mkdsk.vtable") if it is in a location other than the current directory.

The "-blcount" (blocks count) and "-blsize" (blocks size) switches are used to create custom disk images.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Transferring disk images

The "MkDiskCmd" utility is able to transfer (copy) disk images of one type to a disk image of another type.

This operation is needed, for example, to obtain more free space on a disk image that already contains data.

 It is not possible to add more free space dynamically. The CHARON virtual machine must be stopped before performing this operation.

If a source disk image is larger than the target disk image, the extra data is lost. If the source disk image is smaller, it will be extended and padded with null bytes ('\0').

An example of the syntax follows:

```
...> mkdiskcmd -transfer <source disk file name> <source disk parameters> [-shrink] [-k]
```

where:

- <source disk file name> - the file name of the disk image to be transferred
- <source disk parameters> - the disk type taken from the list of available disk types displayed by the "mkdiskcmd -list" command or the disk geometry specification (see below).
- -shrink or -k - used to force the shrink when the target disk size is smaller than the source disk size.

Example:

```
...> mkdiskcmd -transfer "C:\My Disks\rz22.vdisk" rz25
```

It is also possible to specify the disk parameters manually with "-blcount / -c" (blocks count) and "-blsize / -z" (blocks size) switches:

```
...> mkdiskcmd -transfer <source disk file name> -blsize <number> -blcount <number>
```

Example:

```
...> mkdiskcmd -t "C:\My Disks\custom.vdisk" -z 512 -c 262134
```

There is a certain delay between the moment when the utility reports that a disk image has been transferred and its actual availability to CHARON. This delay can reach up to several minutes in the case of very large disk transfers. This is because the host operating system needs time for the actual allocation of the enlarged file on HDD.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HASP View

Table of Contents

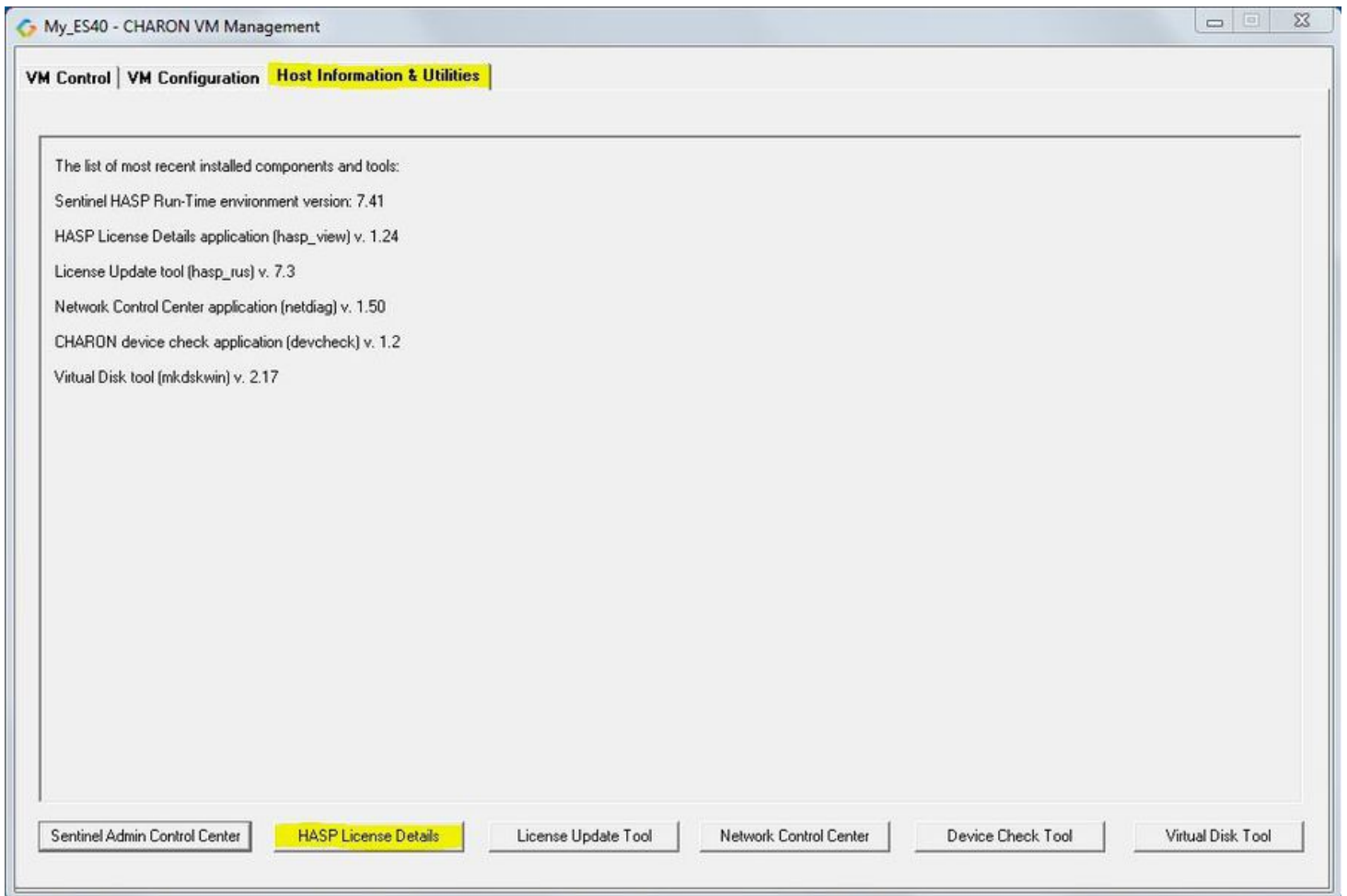
- General Description
- Getting CHARON licenses content

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General Description

The "HASP View" utility is used to display the CHARON license content.

Open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, switch to the "Host Information & Utilities" tab and press the "HASP License Details" button:

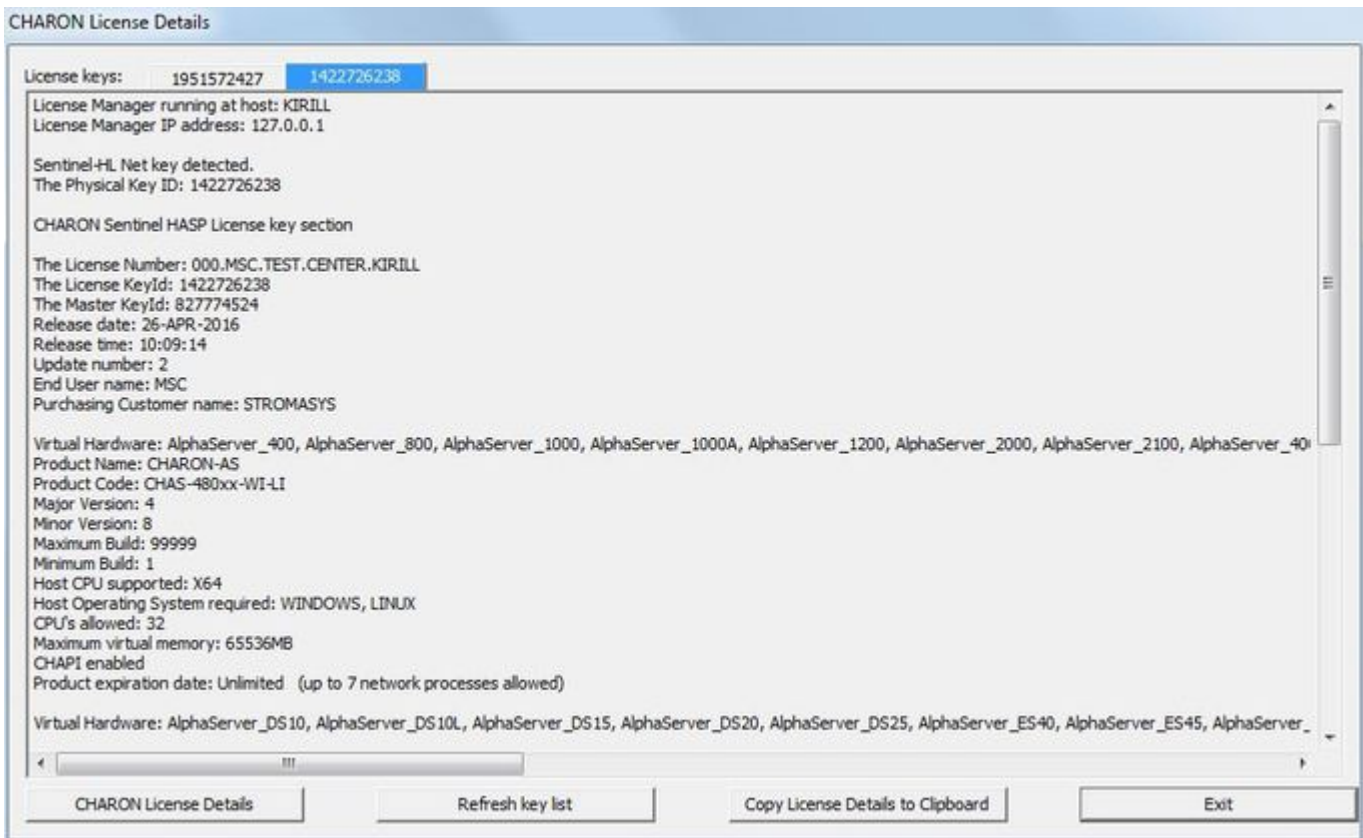


[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Getting CHARON licenses content

The "HASP View" utility displays the content of the licenses to be used by CHARON.

Example:



Use the "License keys" tabs to view the content of the CHARON licenses found.

Press the "Refresh key list" button to look for newly added and available licenses.

Note: collecting the license content may take some time. Use the buttons located at the bottom of the window to refresh the license content and to copy the license details to the clipboard if needed.

Press the "Exit" button to exit from the utility.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

License Update Service

Table of Contents

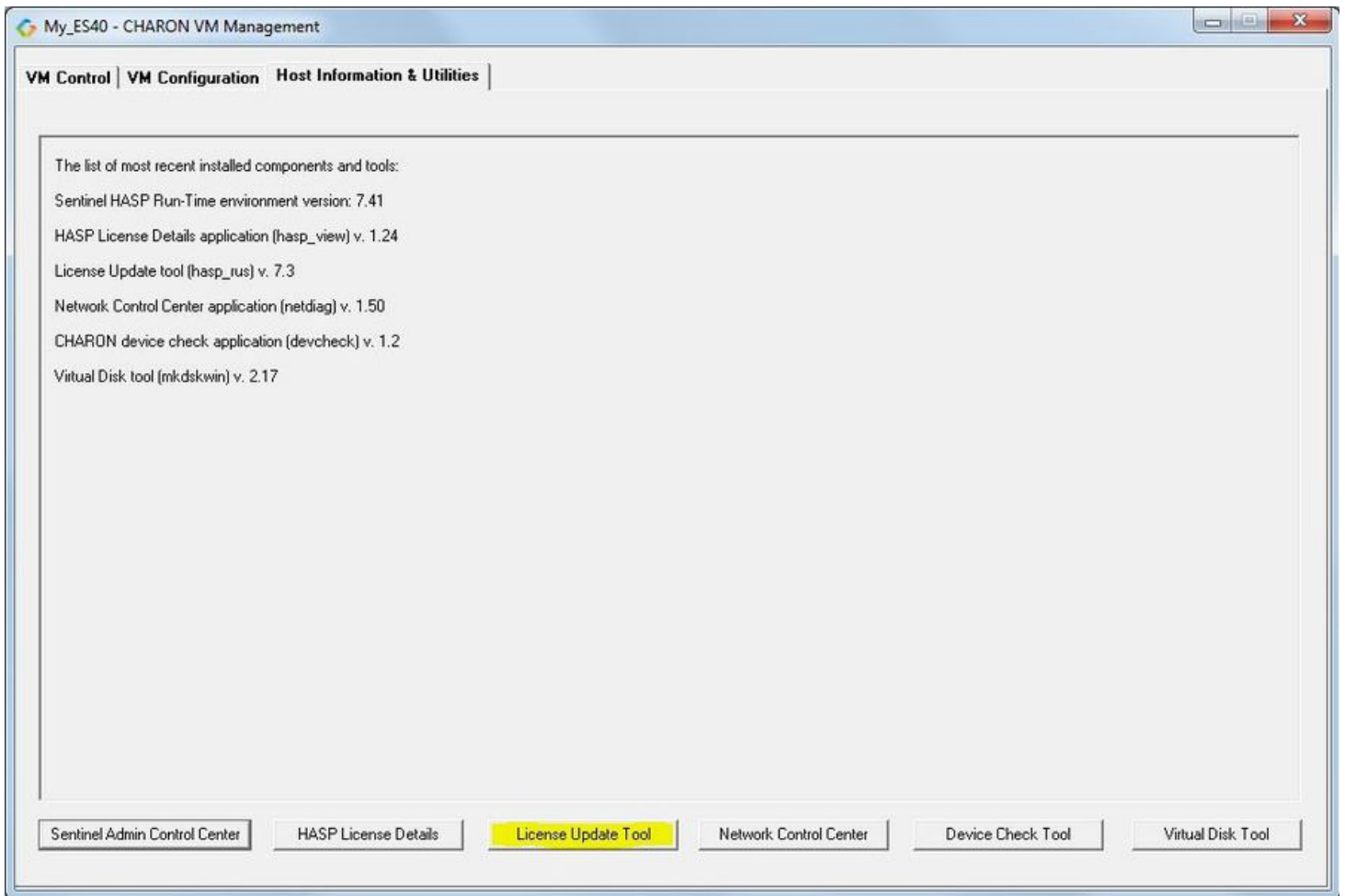
- General Description
- Collecting the host fingerprint and information on an existing license
- Installation and update of a CHARON license

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General Description

The "License Update Service" utility is used to manage CHARON licenses, collect the host system fingerprint.

Open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, switch to the "Host Information & Utilities" tab and press the "License Update Tool" button:

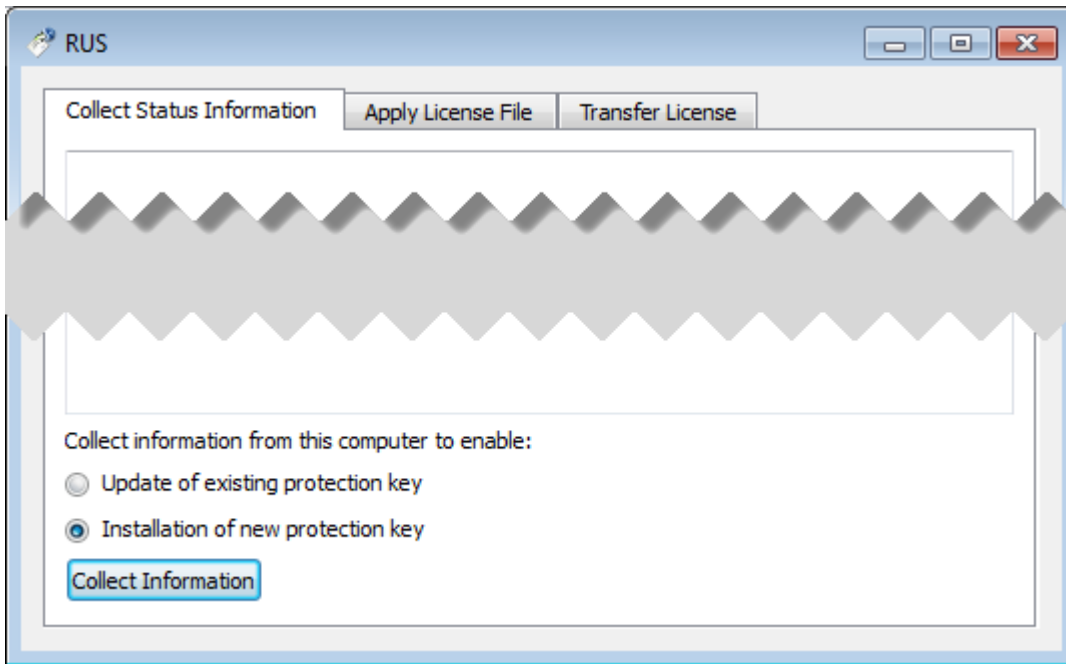


[Back to Table of Contents](#)

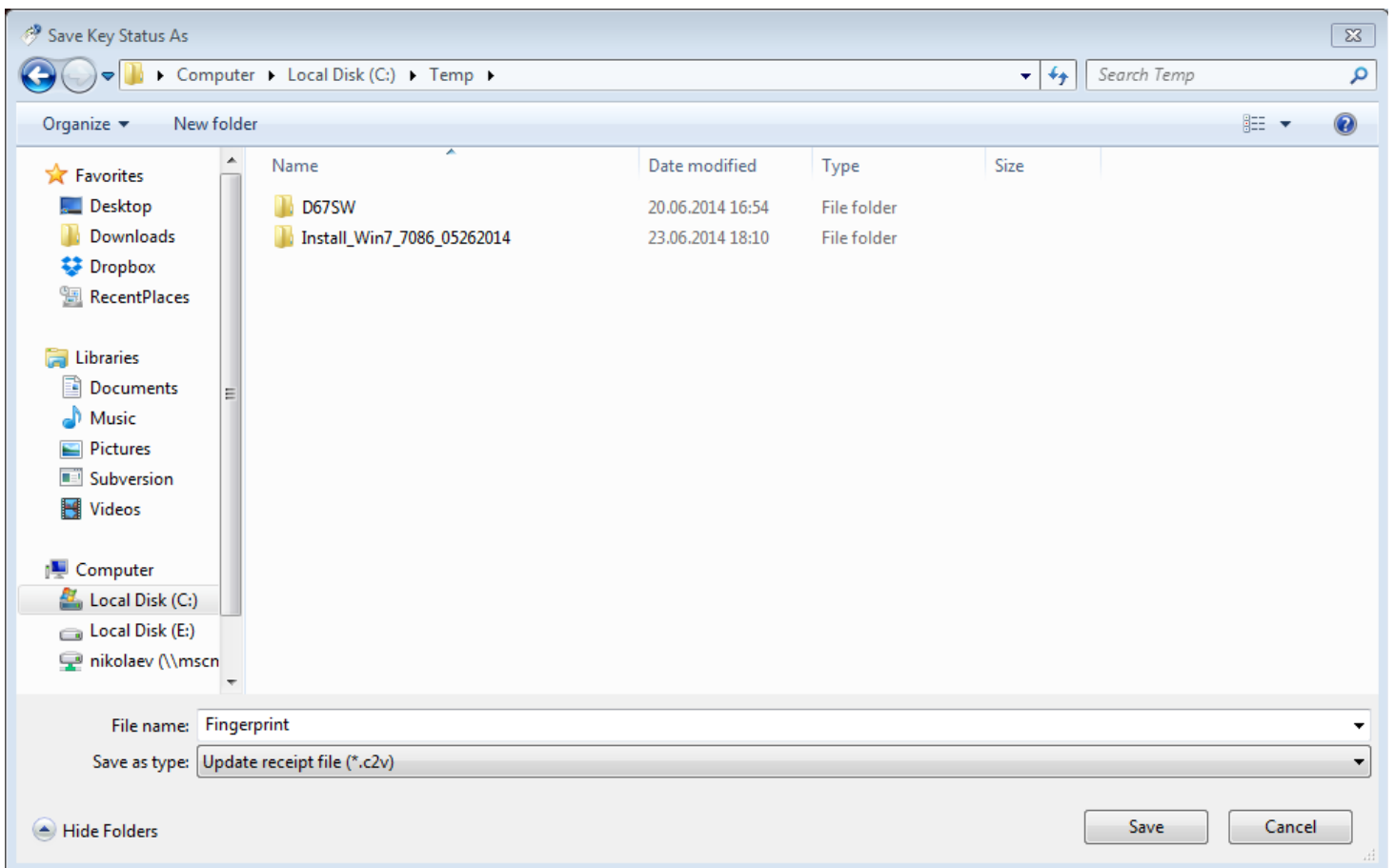
Collecting the host fingerprint and information on an existing license

Open the "Collect Status Information" tab.

Select either "Update of existing protection key" to acquire information on the current hardware of software license or "Installation of new protection key" to get information on the host system.



Press the "Collect Information" button and save the fingerprint or the information on the current license to a "*.c2v" file:

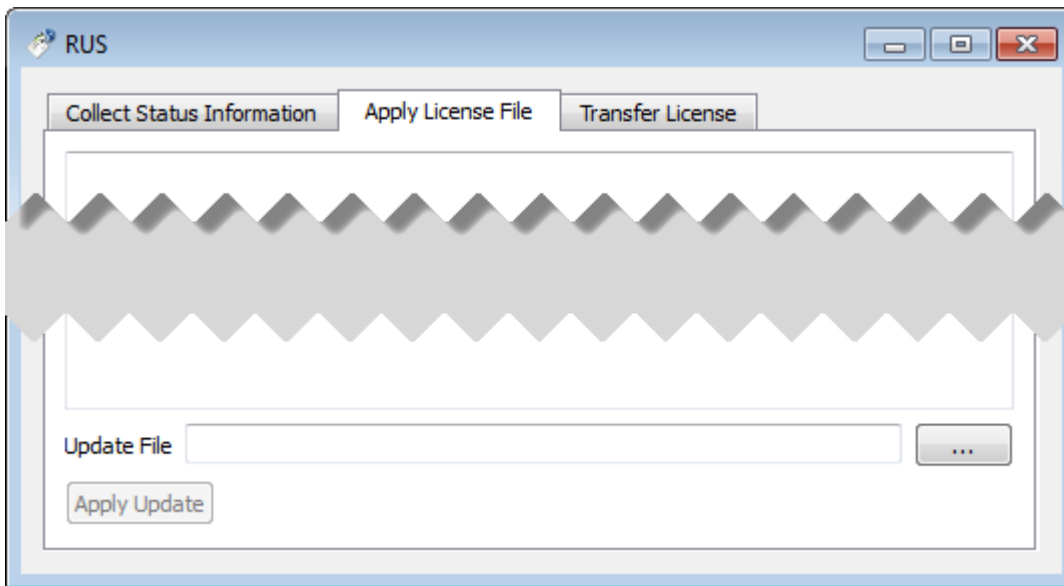


Press the "Save" button to create the "*.c2v" file and send this file to STROMASYS to receive an update of the current license or a new license.

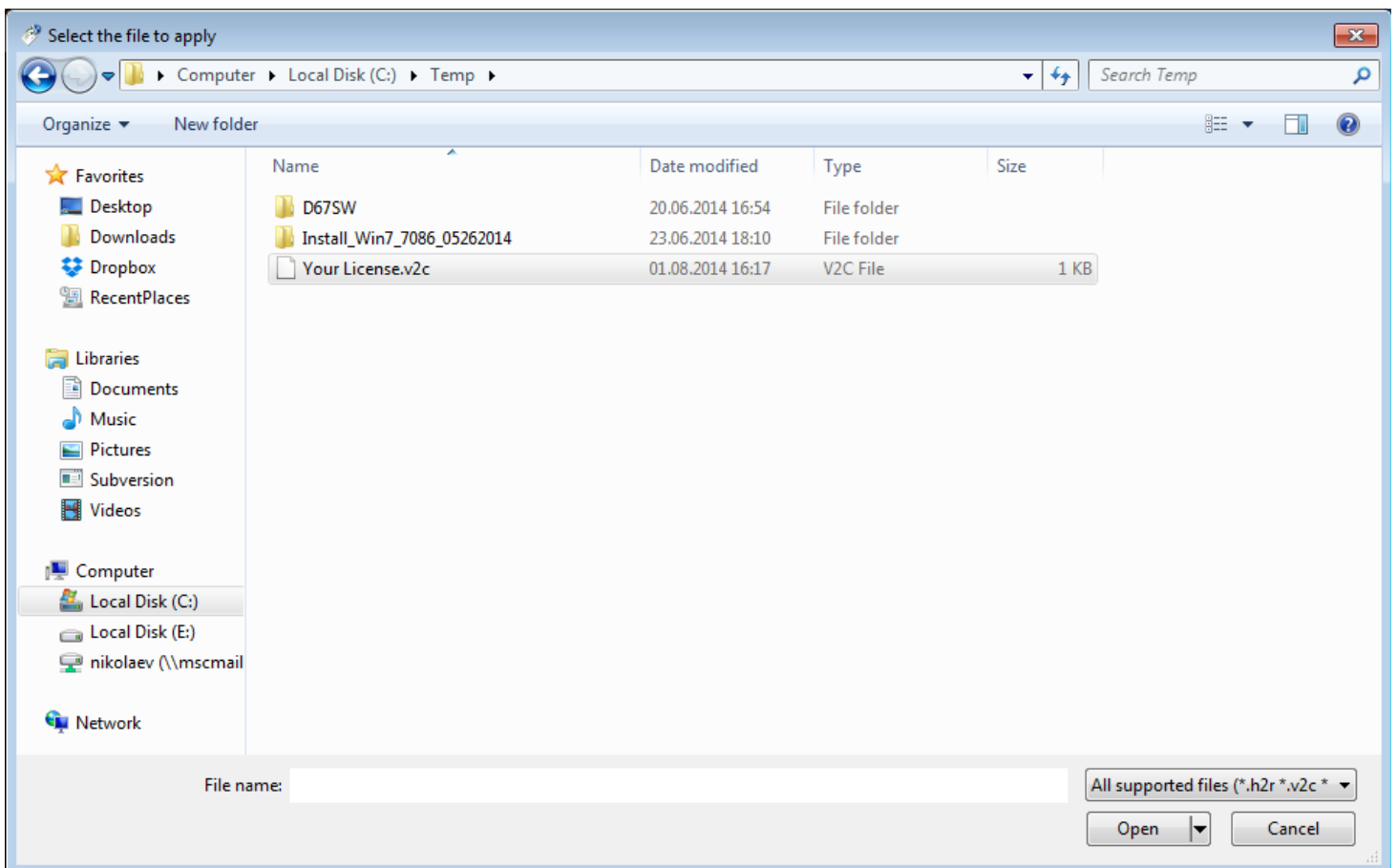
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Installation and update of a CHARON license

Open the "Apply License File" tab and press the "... " button:



Select the license "*.v2c" file received from STROMASYS:



Press the "Open" button and then the "Apply Update" button in the main dialog box to apply the new license or to update an existing one.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

License expiration check

Introduction

The license expiration check utility is provided with the CHARON-AXP V4.8 kit, this utility will execute once a day at 09:00 AM and will send Windows Application Events 15 days before expiration. No other action will be taken unless you customize the `expiredlicense.bat` script. The utility can be found in the Charon installation folder under the "Redistributables\Stromasys" child folder.

The installation process is described below. It is recommended not to update the example files given with the kit as they could be overwritten by a patch installation or product upgrade. It is preferable to copy them in a dedicated folder.

Related products	CHARON-AXP (V4.5) and CHARON-VAX (V4.5)
Operating systems	Windows 7, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012 (R2), Windows Server 2016

Table of contents

- Description
- Step-by-step guide
 - Installation
 - Interactive check
 - Scheduled task creation
 - Scheduled task creation using the Graphical User Interface
 - Scheduled task creation using the Character User Interface
 - Hints
- Sending alerts via email - example
 - Email account password encryption
 - Powershell script used to send emails
 - `expiredlicense.bat` file settings
 - Scheduled task settings update
- Related articles

Description

The goal of this Powershell script is to read the license content and send alerts 15 days (by default) before expiration. This document is related to the kit version 1.5.

Alerts consist in:

- Adding a Windows Event entry in the Application log
- Executing a customized script named "`expiredlicense.bat`" that can execute actions at your convenience: send an email, send an event to a monitoring software, etc...

Alert levels are defined as follows:

Days before expiration (date limited license)	Hours before expiration (time limited license)	Alert level
Between 7 and number of days defined (15 by default)	Between 73 and 96 hours	Informational
Between 3 and 7	Between 49 and 72 hours	Warning
Less than 3 and expired	Less than 49 and expired	Error

Step-by-step guide

Installation

- Create a folder dedicated to store the scripts, for example: "C:\Charon"
- Download the kit from our SFTP server (please ask us connection credentials if you have no access) and extract all files in this folder.
 - i** The kit contains some files, their usage is described further in this document.
- Optionally create the "expiredlicense.bat" file in the same folder and customize it at your own (to send emails for example).
 - ?** If the script does not exist, a warning event will be posted but it will not prevent the script from running. In this case only Windows Application events will be sent.

Below is a simple example to append entries in a log file. You will find further in this article an example on [how to send an email using powershell](#).

```
echo %date% %time% %1 %2 >> C:\Charon\expiredlicense.log
```

Notes:

- "%1" corresponds to the severity level and can be "informational", "warning" or "error"
- "%2" corresponds to the alert message containing the license number, the product name and the expiration status

Interactive check

- Open a command line window
- Move to the folder you created, example: C:\Charon
- Execute the powershell script. The following parameters can be passed to the script:
 - "-folder" is used to specify where the scripts (.ps1 and .bat) are stored. If not specified, default is "C:\Charon"
 - "-nbdays" is used to specify the number of days before expiration to start sending alerts, default is 15
 - "-usevanilla" is used in case the hasp_view.exe program is not able to provide the expiration date in the output file (bug found in builds 18304 and 18305 with hasp_view.exe version 1.26). In this case, the script will use the hasp_view.exe program located in the "xxxxx_ORIGINALS_xxx_PATCH_xxx" folder (example: B18302_ORIGINALS_AXP_PATCH_X64). The bug is solved with hasp_view.exe version 1.27 and later.

To run PowerShell scripts (files that end with .ps1), you must first set the execution policy to Unrestricted (This operation has to be done once).

To do so, open a command line window (cmd.exe) as an Administrator and use the following command:

```
c:\Charon>powershell -command "Set-ExecutionPolicy Unrestricted"
```

i The ExecutionPolicy can also be set to "RemoteSigned". In this case the .ps1 script files will have to be unblocked as described below.

If you are still prompted to allow for execution of the script, please run the following command to unblock the downloaded charon_expchk.ps1 file:

```
c:\Charon>powershell -command "Unblock-File -path c:\charon\charon_expchk.ps1"
```

Example:

```
c:\Charon>powershell -file charon_expchk.ps1 -folder c:\charon -nbdays 20
```

i If the license is not readable (dongle not connected for example), the script will end with an "Unable to generate the license view from hasp_view.exe!" error, an entry will be added to the Windows Event Application log and the expiredlicense.bat script will be executed.

If no script error is detected, it is now possible to create a new scheduled task.

Scheduled task creation

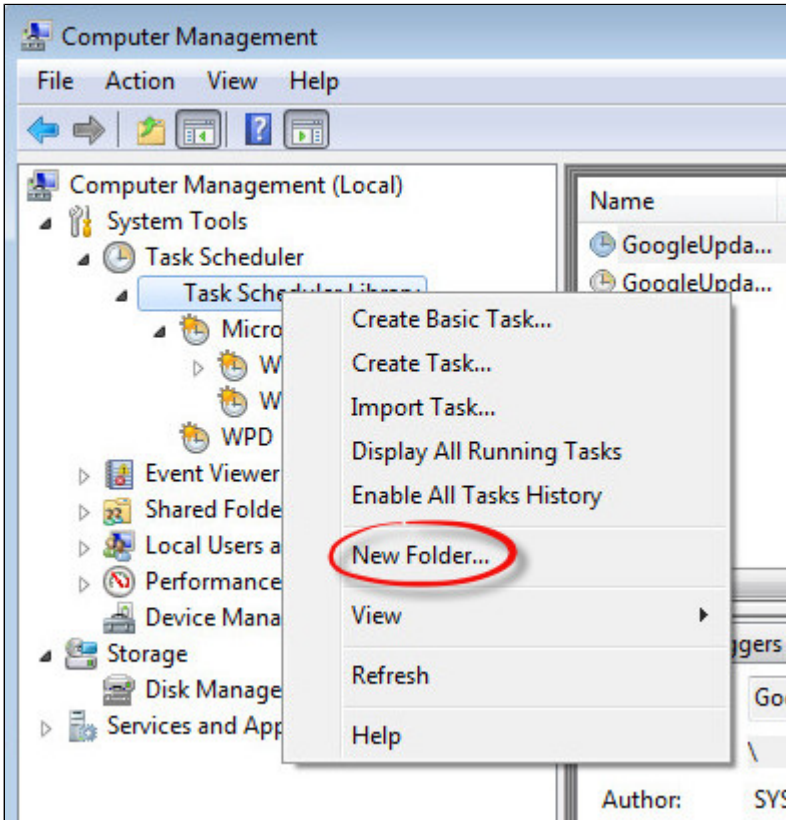
Scheduled task creation using the Graphical User Interface

To set this,

- either open the Administrative tools under Control Panel and select "**Task Scheduler**" or
- execute `taskschd.msc` from the Windows run command (press Windows key + R)

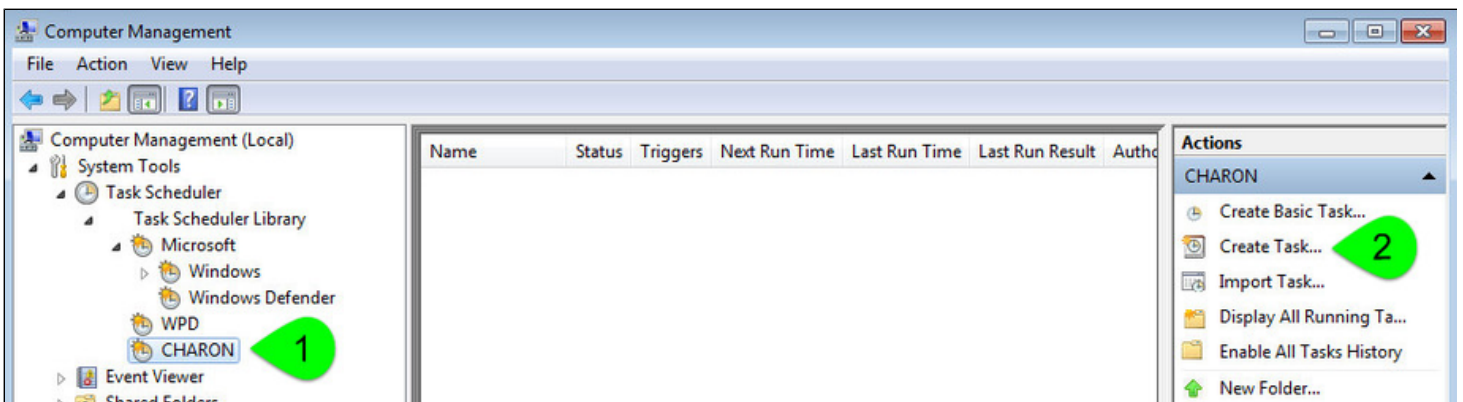
i Examples are given based on a Windows 2008 R2 server

Right click on **Task Scheduler Library**, select New folder then enter **CHARON**.

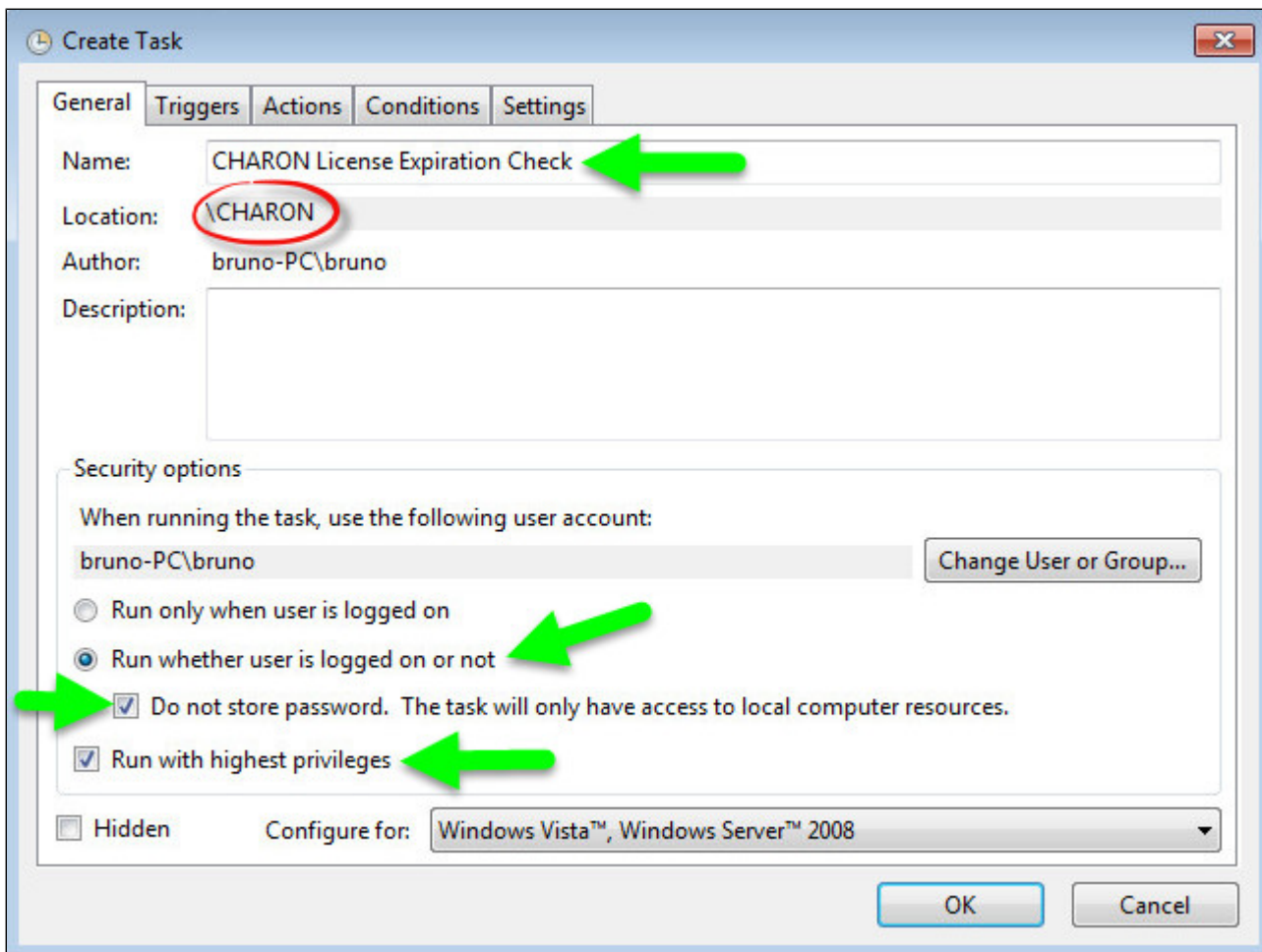


Select the newly created folder (1) and on the right pane, select "**Create Task...**" (2).

! Do not use "Create Basic Task..." some of the options required aren't available in that wizard.



Fill the **General** tab as below:



Select the **Triggers** tab and set the check interval, for example here: everyday at 09:00 AM

New Trigger

Begin the task: On a schedule

Settings

One time Start: 4/28/2016 9:00:00 AM Synchronize across time zones

Daily Recur every: 1 days

Weekly

Monthly

Advanced settings

Delay task for up to (random delay): 1 hour

Repeat task every: 1 hour for a duration of: 1 day

Stop all running tasks at end of repetition duration

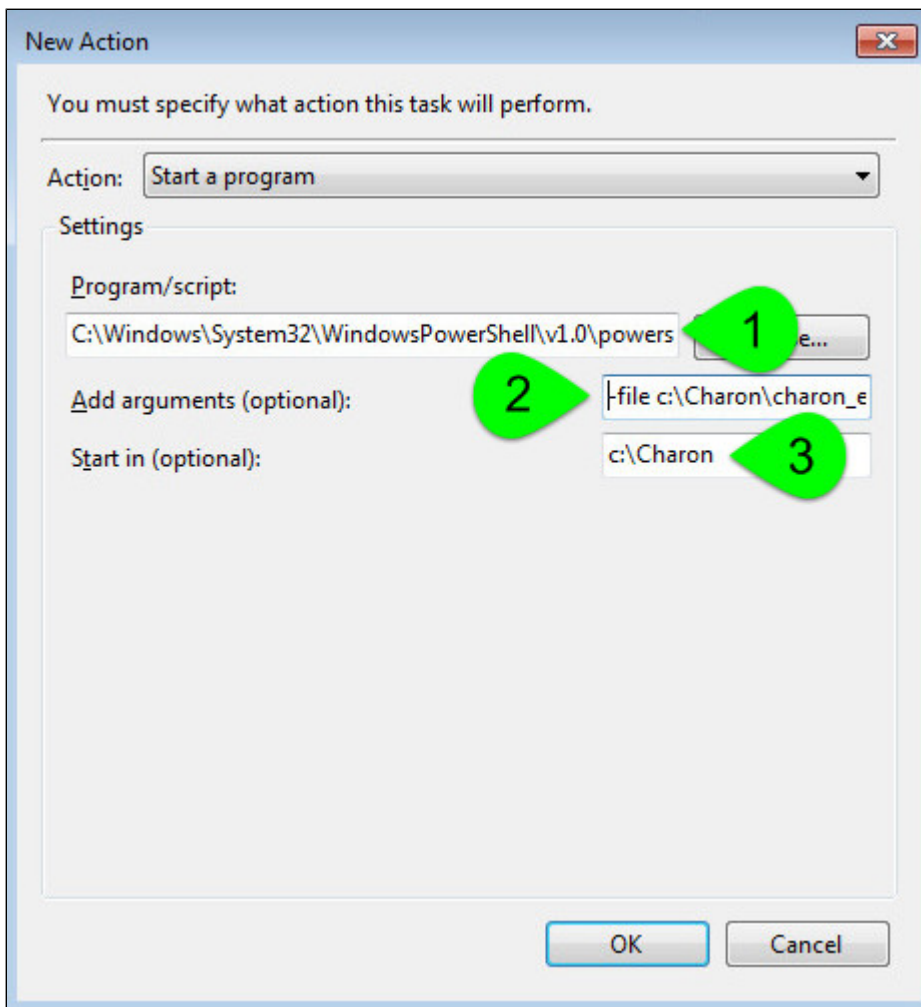
Stop task if it runs longer than: 3 days

Expire: 4/28/2017 3:21:41 PM Synchronize across time zones

Enabled

OK Cancel

Select the **Actions** tab and configure powershell to be executed with the following parameters:



(1) : Powershell location here is "C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\powershell.exe"

(2) : Define the powershell arguments to be added: `-file c:\Charon\charon_expchk.ps1 -folder c:\Charon` (the folder parameter is optional here as it is the same as the default folder)

(3) : Set the folder to be the one where the scripts reside

i Once the task is created, it is recommended to right click on the task then "Run". To verify the script ran correctly, please check the existence of the "charon_expchk.txt" file in the installation folder (it should contain the license view, if the license is present) and check for events in the Windows Event Application log if any.

Scheduled task creation using the Character User Interface

Open a command line window (cmd.exe) and execute the following command:

```
c:\Charon>schtasks /create /SC DAILY /ST 09:00 /NP /RL HIGHEST /TN "CHARON\CHARON License Expiration Check" ^
/TR "C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\powershell.exe -file c:\Charon\charon_expchk
.ps1 -folder c:\Charon"
```

💡 Update the schedule type (/SC) and time (/ST) to your desired settings

Start the task as shown below:

```
c:\Charon>schtasks /run /TN "CHARON\CHARON License Expiration Check"
```

To verify the script ran correctly, please check the existence of the "charon_expchk.txt" file in the installation folder (it should contain the license view,

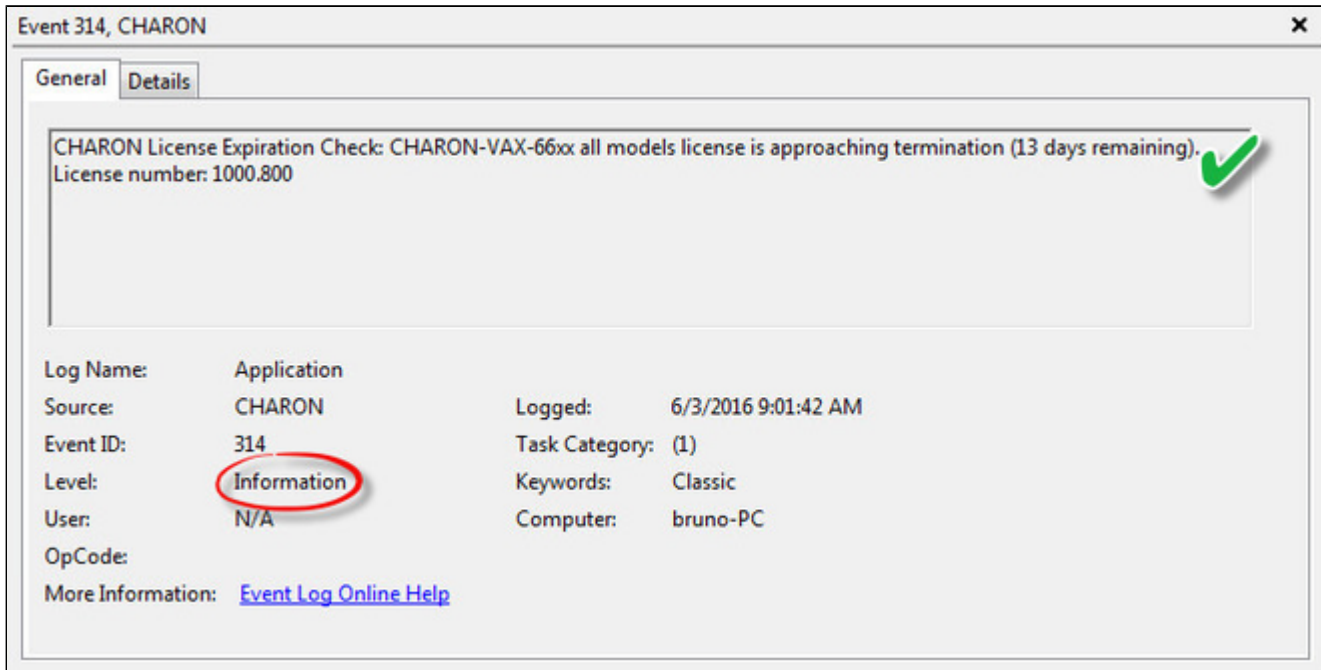
if the license is present) and check for events in the Windows Event Application log if any.

Hints

To verify the script is correctly working and to force the creation of a Windows event, and eventually the execution of the "expiredlicense.bat" file, you can:

- either play with the removal of the dongle (if there is, that is no Software License)
- or with the number of days (if the license is not unlimited)
- or you can specify a folder that does not exist.

Windows Event Application log example - Information alert:



Event 314, CHARON

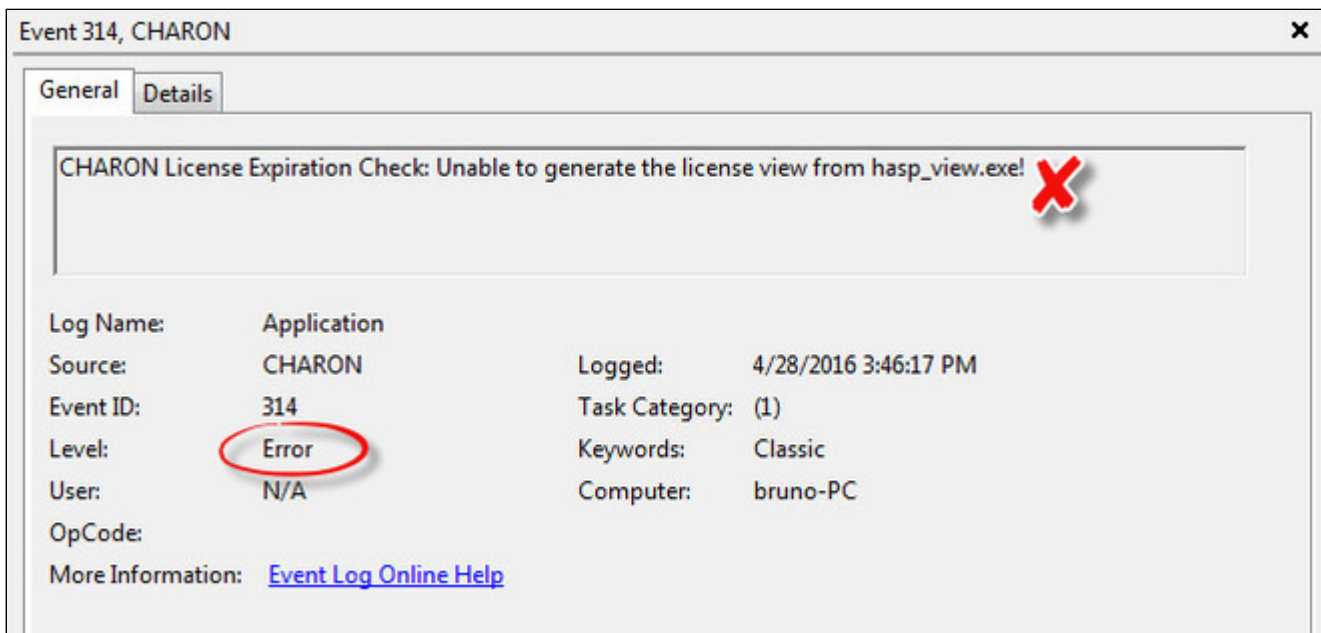
General Details

CHARON License Expiration Check: CHARON-VAX-66xx all models license is approaching termination (13 days remaining). License number: 1000.800

Log Name: Application
Source: CHARON
Event ID: 314
Level: Information
User: N/A
OpCode:
More Information: [Event Log Online Help](#)

Logged: 6/3/2016 9:01:42 AM
Task Category: (1)
Keywords: Classic
Computer: bruno-PC

Windows Event Application log example - License dongle not connected:



Event 314, CHARON

General Details

CHARON License Expiration Check: Unable to generate the license view from hasp_view.exe!


Log Name: Application
Source: CHARON
Event ID: 314
Level: Error
User: N/A
OpCode:
More Information: [Event Log Online Help](#)

Logged: 4/28/2016 3:46:17 PM
Task Category: (1)
Keywords: Classic
Computer: bruno-PC

Sending alerts via email - example


Using Powershell we can send alerts via email. You will find below an example with configuration steps.


Configuration details:


- Windows 2008 R2 server
- Powershell V4.0 installed.
 -  **This version is required** to have the "-port" option available from the "send-mailmessage" powershell command.
 - To determine which version of Powershell is installed and upgrade if necessary, see [Powershell version, upgrade, enabling scripts execution, tips and tricks](#)
- Email account hosted on Office365

Email account password encryption

Due to the email account settings, to be able to send an email we need to generate a CliXML file that will store the encrypted password as described below.

 This file will only be valid for the current user and machine. The following operations must be performed using the same user as the author of the scheduled task.


 The "<monitoring-account>@<somewhere>" value must be adapted to your configuration

 When you will execute the "get-credential" command, you will be prompted to store the password of the corresponding email account, that is the "sender".

```
C:\Charon>powershell
Windows PowerShell
Copyright (C) 2014 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.


PS C:\Charon> $From="<monitoring-account>@<somewhere>"
PS C:\Charon> $Creds=(get-credential -credential $From)
PS C:\Charon> $Creds | Export-CliXML C:\Charon\creds.clixml
PS C:\Charon> exit

C:\Charon>exit
```

 If the sender's email address or its password has to be changed, the .clixml file will have to be recreated.

Powershell script used to send emails

Create a Powershell script named "sendmail.ps1" in the "c:\Charon" folder for example.

 The sender (\$From) and recipient (\$To) values must be adapted to your configuration

```

Param(
    [string]$lvl = "Information",
    [string]$msg = "no message"
)

$Hostname = (Get-Item env:\COMPUTERNAME).value
$Creds = Import-clixml C:\Charon\creds.clixml

#--- Customize the values below: "From" and "To" -----
$From = "<monitoring-account>@<somewhere>"
$To = "<someone>@<somewhere>"
#-----

send-mailmessage -to $To -from $From -subject "CHARON License Expiration Check
for $Hostname ($lvl)" -body "$msg" -credential $Creds -smtpserver
smtp.office365.com -usessl -port 587 -delivery none

```



If you have to specify multiple recipients, an array has to be used as described below.

Example1:

```
$To = @( "James T. Kirk <kirk@uss-enterprise.fed>", "Spock <spock@uss-enterprise.fed>" )
```


Example2:

```
$To = @( "kirk@uss-enterprise.fed", "spock@uss-enterprise.fed", "uhura@uss-enterprise.fed" )
```



The example shown above and another one given with embedded html code and colored email body are part of the kit downloaded previously.

Office365 email account is given here as an example but you can use "gmail" also and create a free dedicated account to send alerts. In this case the last line of the script(s) above has to be updated: the "-smtpserver" parameter has its "smtp.office365.com" value to be replaced by "smtp.gmail.com" (no other value to update)


 Google may block sign-in attempts when using powershell and send-mailmessage. In this case the sender will receive a "Sign in attempt prevented" alert email. To allow emails to be sent:

1. Create a dedicated gmail account
2. Allow less secure apps to access your account. See this article: <https://support.google.com/accounts/answer/6010255?hl=en>

expiredlicense.bat file settings

Add the following line in the "expiredlicense.bat" file:

```
powershell -NonInteractive -file c:\charon\sendmail.ps1 -lvl %1 -msg %2
```

 This .bat file can be found in the kit downloaded previously.

Scheduled task settings update

This time, the **General** tab of the Scheduled task has to be updated in order to store the password and to be able to send the email:

CHARON License Expiration Check Properties (Local Computer)

General Triggers Actions Conditions Settings History (disabled)

Name: CHARON License Expiration Check

Location: \\CHARON

Author: bruno-PC\bruno

Description:

Security options

When running the task, use the following user account:
bruno-PC\bruno Change User or Group...

Run only when user is logged on

Run whether user is logged on or not

Do not store password. The task will only have access to local computer resources.

Run with highest privileges

Hidden Configure for: Windows Vista™, Windows Server™ 2008

OK Cancel

You will be prompted to store the password of the author.

This can also be done using the command line:

```
c:\Charon>schtasks /change /TN "CHARON\CHARON License Expiration Check" /rp <password>
```

Related articles

- CHARON on Windows - Automated License Expiration Check
- CHARON Log monitoring on Windows (logmond) - Best practices
- CHARON-AXP and CHARON-VAX on Windows fail to start with digital signature error
- CHARON on Windows - Monitoring the number of license dongles connected
- Powershell version, upgrade, enabling scripts execution, tips and tricks

mtd

General Description

"mtd" is a command line utility to:

- Create a CHARON tape image from a physical tape.
- Write a tape image to a physical tape.

To start the utility open "cmd.exe" in the Start menu and switch to the CHARON installation folder then the "\Build_XXX\XXX" child folder where the utility is located.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Usage

The following is an example of the usage syntax:

```
...> mtd [options] <tape device name> <tape container name>
```

Options:

Parameter	Description
-l <file name>	Creates a log file. The name is "file name".
-r <number>	Specifies a number of attempts to read a damaged data block
-i	Ignore bad blocks and continue processing w/o interruption. It implies "-r 0"
-n	Do not rewind tape
-p	Disable progress reporting
-v	Enable verbose tracing of data transfer (implies "-p")

Example:

```
...> mtd -l tape1.txt -r 10 \\.\Tape0 "C:\Charon\Tapes\tape1.vtape"
```

Use the following syntax to write the content of a tape container to a physical tape:

```
...> mtd <tape container name> <tape device name>
```

Example:

```
...> mtd "C:\Charon\Tapes\tape1.vtape" \\.\Tape0
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CHARON Log Monitor and Dispatcher

Table of Contents

- General Description
- Starting in background mode
- Installing as a service
- Starting the Log Monitor and Dispatcher service
- Stopping the Log Monitor and Dispatcher service
- Uninstalling the Log Monitor and Dispatcher service
- Log Monitor and Dispatcher best practice

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General Description

The Log Monitor & Dispatcher is a special program which monitors a guest LOG file produced by CHARON and executes a customizable script when it detects removal of a license.

It runs in the background (as a program or as a service) and periodically scans a specified LOG file. When it detects a message with the code 0000002A or 00000351 ("Detected removal of a license") it submits the NOLICENSE.BAT procedure (this BAT file must be created manually).

The Log Monitor & Dispatcher service is installed as EmulatorLogMonitor. By default it is installed in such a way that requires explicit actions to be started (either through a command line interface or using the standard ways of service management). For unattended execution, change the service's configuration so that Windows starts the service automatically.

i The tool requires a specific file "NOLICENSE.BAT" containing some specific instructions to be taken in situation of license absence. It is recommended you create this file in the folder (presumably) containing the LOG file.

When it is invoked by the "Log Monitor & Dispatcher", the current directory of the batch process is set to the same folder from which the "Log Monitor & Dispatcher" was previously installed as a service or from which it was started as a background process. This means that the user action file may, in principle, operate with relative paths and relocate (as part of the whole configuration, i.e. together with accompanying LOG file).

The user action file will not invoke interactive applications as it may run in an environment where interactive services do not work, for example: when "Log Monitor & Dispatcher" is installed as a service.

Starting in background mode

In order to **start** the Log Monitor & Dispatcher as a background application:

1. Open "cmd.exe" from the "Start" menu.
2. Change current directory to the folder (presumably) containing the CHARON configuration file.
3. Start the Log Monitor & Dispatcher using the following command line as an example:

For single log file:

```
...> "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Build_XXX\x64\logmond" C:\my_charon.log
```

For rotating log file:

```
...> "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Build_XXX\x64\logmond" -l <log-directory> -p <log-prefix>
```

where:

- <log-directory> is the directory where the rotating log files are stored
- <log-prefix> is the same as the "configuration_name" value in corresponding CHARON configuration file (or "hw_model", if "configuration_name" is not specified).

Example:

```
...> "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Build_XXX\x64\logmond" -l "C:\My CHARON logs" -p "MY_VAX"
```

To stop the Log Monitor & Dispatcher application, open the Task Manager, find the "logmond.exe" process and terminate it.

Installing as a service

In order to install the Log Monitor & Dispatcher as a background application:

1. Open "cmd.exe" from the "Start" menu in "Run as Administrator" mode.
2. Install Log Monitor & Dispatcher service using the following command line as an example:

```
...> "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Build_XXX\x64\logmond" -r  
...> "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Build_XXX\x64\logmond" -i
```

As result the "logmond" service has "Manual" service start type. Use Windows service management tools to change this mode to "Automatic" if it is required.

- There will have one `logmond` father process that will scan the virtual machines services and one `logmond` process per log monitored.
- The `EmulatorLogMonitor` service running the `logmond` processes will discover already installed CHARON virtual machines services. If a new virtual machine service is added, it's log file will be automatically discovered and monitored.
- The `nolicense.bat` file has to be placed in the virtual machine "Home directory". This directory corresponds to the configuration file folder when the service is installed, however it will not change if the configuration file is relocated and the service is updated. To find this "Home directory", open the "CHARON Service Manager" utility, right click on the corresponding service and select "View configuration"

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Starting the Log Monitor and Dispatcher service

In order to start the Log Monitor & Dispatcher as a background application:

1. Open "cmd.exe" from the "Start" menu in "Run as Administrator" mode.
2. Start the Log Monitor & Dispatcher service using the following command line as an example:

```
...> "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Build_XXX\x64\logmond" -u
```

It is also possible to use Windows service management tools to start up the service.

As soon as "logmond" service is installed this way, and started, it monitors all CHARON instances (provided that these are installed as services).

It does NOT monitor emulator instances started from Launcher or manually from command line prompt, these cases can still be monitored with "logmond" invoked from command line prompt with name of the log file as an argument (see above).

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Stopping the Log Monitor and Dispatcher service

In order to stop the Log Monitor & Dispatcher as a background application:

1. Open "cmd.exe" from the "Start" menu in "Run as Administrator" mode.
2. Stop the Log Monitor & Dispatcher service using the following command line as an example

```
...> "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Build_XXX\x64\logmond" -d
```

It is also possible to use Windows service management tools to stop the service.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Uninstalling the Log Monitor and Dispatcher service

In order to uninstall the Log Monitor & Dispatcher as a background application:

1. Open "cmd.exe" from the "Start" menu in "Run as Administrator" mode.
2. Uninstall the Log Monitor & Dispatcher service using the following command line as an example

```
...> "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Build_XXX\x64\logmond" -r
```

Log Monitor and Dispatcher best practice

Refer to [this article](#) in the Appendixes for proper configuration of the "nolicense.bat" file to establish needed actions on the dongle removal.

HOSTPrint

Table of Contents

- General Description
- Usage

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General Description

The HOSTPrint utility is used to print CHARON output to Windows printers. It receives data from COM2 port of emulated HP Alpha model via a TCP/IP socket and prints the data received on the default Windows printer (if no printer is specified at the utility command line) on the host computer.

Note that the second console line "TTA0" (COM2) is available only for 1 CPU models such as:

- HP AlphaServer 400
- HP AlphaServer 800
- HP AlphaServer 1000
- HP AlphaServer 1000A
- HP AlphaServer DS10
- HP AlphaServer DS10L
- HP AlphaServer DS15

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Usage

HOSTPrint calling is specified in the CHARON configuration file. The call implements one or more of the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
-host=<hostname>	Name of the host - source of the printing data.
-port=<connection port number>	Port on the host to get the information to print from.
-delay=<delay for automatically buffer flush in seconds>	Flushing delay, 0 - wait infinite, 5..10800 - timeout for flush
-printer=[PrinterDeviceName]	Host name for the printer used. Example 1: <pre>-printer=[\\.\Microsoft Office Document Image Writer]</pre> Example 2: <pre>-printer=[\\print_server\MSCLEPS]</pre>
-font=<default font face>	Default font name.
-fontsize=<default font size>	Default font size.

The two last parameters are only used for compatibility with older versions of the utility (HOSTprint allows changing font settings from a popup menu).


It is strongly recommended to use fixed-size fonts (by default the "Courier" font is used) to avoid any problems relevant to proper calculation of the printing line length.

Example of CHARON-AXP configuration file for the HOSTPrint usage:

```
load virtual_serial_line TTA0 port=10000 application="hostprint.exe -port=10000 -printer=[\\print_server\MSCPS2] -font=\Courier New\  
-fontsize=10"  
set COM2 line=TTA0
```

After initialization, HOSTprint creates an icon in the Windows tray. The icon can have two colors:

Color	Description
GREEN	IDLE (or Ready) state
YELLOW	BUSY (processing) mode

*:  To access the HOSTprint application popup menu, point the mouse cursor at its icon in the system tray menu and click the right button, preview the last page content then change the utility mode via the flush buffer delay or change the default font setting.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CHARON Guest Utilities for OpenVMS

Table of Contents

- General Description
- Installation
- Performance optimization
- Virtual tapes management
- Defining keys
- Displaying version

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General Description

The "CHARON Guest Utilities for OpenVMS" (CHARONCP) package contains several utilities for managing virtual tapes, changing the emulator speed and creating useful definitions for that operations.

This set of utilities is located in the "charoncp011.vdisk" disk file in the "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Virtual Disk Images\Tape utilities package" folder.

Supported OpenVMS versions: OpenVMS 6.1 and above.

 In case of OpenVMS upgrade, CHARONCP will have to be re-installed.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Installation

Make this virtual disk file recognized by the virtual machine in the CHARON configuration file, boot from the system disk and mount the disk with the following OpenVMS command:

```
$ MOUNT <device name> /OVERRIDE=IDENTIFICATION
```

Issue the following commands to install the package (example given for OpenVMS V8.4):

```
$ @SYS$UPDATE:VMSINSTAL
...
* Are you satisfied with the backup of your system disk [YES]? YES
* Where will the distribution volumes be mounted: <device name>:[CHARONCP011.KIT]

Enter the products to be processed from the first distribution volume set.
* Products: CHARONCP011

* Enter installation options you wish to use (none): <press enter>
...
Do you want to install this product [NO]? YES
...
* Where should the CHARONCP root directory be located ? [SYS$SYSDEVICE:[CHARONCP]]: <press enter>
...
* Do you want to purge files replaced by this installation [YES]? <press enter>
```


Select all the components included in the package:

```

                                Component Selection

Select the CHARONCP components you wish to install from the menu below.
An asterisk appears next to the packages that have already been
selected. You can remove a package from the list by selecting it
again. You may enter more than one selection by separating your
choices with commas.

1. [*] CHARONCP Guest Utility (REQUIRED)
2. [*] Compatability Utilities
3. [*] Install DCL Commands & Help

4. Exit

* Your choice [4]: 1,2,3

...

* Your choice [4]: 4

...

* Is this correct [YES]: <press enter>

...

* Products: <press enter>

                                VMSINSTAL procedure done at hh:mm

$

```

Proceed with installation using all the default options.

Once the installation is completed, add the following line to the "SYS\$STARTUP:SYSTARTUP_VMS.COM" ("SYS\$STARTUP:SYSTARTUP_V5.COM" for VMS 5.5) file for the package to be loaded automatically at system startup:

```
$ @SYS$STARTUP:CHARONCP_STARTUP
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Performance optimization

CHARON takes 100% of host CPU even in case of idle state of guest OpenVMS operating system. To get rid of such resources consumption there is a specific option provided by CHARON Guest Utilities: "idle" mode.

Command	Description
\$ CHARONCP SET IDLE /ENABLE	Loads the OpenVMS idle loop detection software. This allows CHARON to detect when the emulated CPU(s) are idle and use the host power saving instructions to reduce power usage.
\$ CHARONCP SET IDLE /DISABLE	Unloads the OpenVMS idle loop detection software.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Virtual tapes management

Specify mapping to tape container in the following way in the CHARON configuration file:

```
set <adapter name> container[<unit name>] = ".vtape" removable[<unit name>] = true
```

Example:

```
set PKA container[600] = ".vtape" removable[600] = true
```

Once it is done using the following commands it is possible to manage virtual tapes attached to CHARON:

Command	Description
\$ CHARONCP SET MAGTAPE <device> /LOAD="<file name>.vtape"	<p>Create the specified host-file (if it does not already exist) and attach it to the specified virtual tape device.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>\$ CHARONCP SET MAGTAPE MKA600: /LOAD="backup_01.vtape"</pre>
\$ CHARONCP SET MAGTAPE <device> /UNLOAD	<p>Detach any file currently attached to te specified virtual tape device.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>\$ CHARONCP SET MAGTAPE MKA600: /UNLOAD</pre>

Possible errors:

Error	Description
BADFILENAME	The filename specified as a value to the qualifier /LOAD was either too long or does not have a file extension of ".vtape".
DEVNOTDISM	<p>Attempting to execute a SET MAGTAPE/LOAD command when a file is already attached.</p> <p>Perform a SET MAGTAPE/UNLOAD first. If a SET MAGTAPE/LOAD command has not previously been executed then the CHARON configuration container specification for the tape device may contain a full path. Doing this will create and attach and initial tape container file. To avoid this, remove the file name from the specification (leaving only a file extension of ".vtape" and optional directory).</p>

i If some tape container has been already specified in the CHARON configuration file, use the command "CHARONCP SET MAGTAPE <device> /UNLOAD" to unload it first.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Defining keys

It is possible to define certain keys on the terminal keyboard for fast access to the CHARONCP functionality while you are in CHARONCP:

Command	Description
<pre>\$ CHARONCP CHARONCP> DEFINE /KEY <key-name> <equivalence-string></pre>	<p>Defines an equivalence string and a set of attributes with a key on the terminal keyboard.</p> <p>You can have a set of keys defined automatically for use with the CHARONCP utility by placing DEFINE/KEY commands in the SYS\$LOGIN:CHARONCP_KEYDEFS.INI file.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>\$ CHARONCP CHARONCP> DEFINE /KEY F1 "SET MAGTAPE MKA600: /UNLOAD"</pre>
<pre>\$ CHARONCP CHARONCP> SHOW KEY <key-name></pre>	<p>Displays key definitions created with the DEFINE/KEY command. Refer to the DCL help entry for SHOW KEY for further information.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>\$ CHARONCP CHARONCP> SHOW KEY F1 DEFAULT key state definitions: F1 = "set magtape mka600: /unload" CHARONCP></pre>

 For more information refer to the OpenVMS DCL Dictionary (DEFINE/KEY section).

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Displaying version

Command	Description
<pre>\$ CHARONCP SHOW VERSION</pre>	<p>Displays the CHARONCP package version number and architecture. This can be useful for customers reporting issues with the CHARONCP software.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>\$ CHARONCP SHOW VERSION CHARONCP version id is: V1.1</pre>

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CHARON-AXP for Windows configuration details

Introduction

This chapter describes, in detail, the configuration parameters of the devices emulated by CHARON-AXP for Windows, with corresponding examples and parameters.

The emulated devices are loaded with the "load" command (if a device has not been already loaded) and the parameters are made active with the "set" command. These parameters can be specified directly in the "load" command.

Example:

```
load KZPBA DKA
set DKA container[0]="C:\Charon\Disks\BootDisk.vdisk"
```

In this example, an instance of a KZPBA controller is loaded with the name "DKA". Its first unit, "container[0]", is mapped to the "C:\Charon\Disks\BootDisk.vdisk" disk image.

The Controller name is accompanied with a "/<module name>". The module name is a CHARON-AXP component that specifies the controller load module. Its name can be the same as the loaded controller, however this is not mandatory. Once a module name is specified, there is no need to specify it again for additional references of the same controller.

Details of CHARON-AXP configuration

- General Settings
- Core Devices
- Console
- Placement of peripheral devices on PCI bus
- Disks and tapes
 - KZPBA PCI SCSI adapter
 - KGPSA-CA PCI Fibre Channel adapter
 - Acer Labs 1543C IDE/ATAPI CD-ROM adapter
 - PCI I/O Bypass controller
- Networking
- DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter
- PBXDA-xx series PCI serial adapters
- Sample configuration files
 - HP AlphaServer 800 configuration file
 - HP AlphaServer 4000 configuration file
 - HP AlphaServer DS20 configuration file
 - HP AlphaServer ES40 configuration file
 - HP AlphaServer GS80 configuration file
 - "configuration_name.icfg" configuration file

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General Settings

Table of Contents

- Session
 - hw_model
 - configuration_name
 - log
 - log_method
 - log_show_messages
 - log_file_size
 - log_rotation_period
 - log_repeat_filter
 - license_key_id
 - affinity
 - n_of_cpus
 - n_of_io_cpus
 - license_key_lookup_retry
- File inclusion

Session


General settings that control the execution of CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) belong to an object called the "session". It is a preloaded object; therefore, only "set" commands are necessary.

Example:


```
set session <parameter>=<value>
```

The following table describes all available "session" parameters, their meaning and examples of their usage:




hw_model

Parameter	hw_model
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Virtual HP Alpha system hardware model to be emulated.</p> <p>Use a default configuration template for each particular model as a starting point for a custom configuration. This would ensure that the parameter is set correctly.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set session hw_model="AlphaServer_ES40"</pre> <p>Available models are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AlphaServer_AS400 • AlphaServer_AS800 • AlphaServer_AS1000 • AlphaServer_AS1000A • AlphaServer_AS1200 • AlphaServer_AS2000 • AlphaServer_AS2100 • AlphaServer_AS4000 • AlphaServer_AS4100 • AlphaServer_DS10 • AlphaServer_DS10L • AlphaServer_DS15 • AlphaServer_DS20 • AlphaServer_DS25 • AlphaServer_ES40 • AlphaServer_ES45 • AlphaServer_GS80 • AlphaServer_GS160 • AlphaServer_GS320 <p> Refer to this section to find how to set a particular HP Alpha model supported by CHARON-AXP.</p>

configuration_name

Parameter	configuration_name
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Name of the CHARON VM (it must be unique):</p> <pre>set session configuration_name="MSCDV1"</pre> <p>The value of this parameter is used as a prefix to the event log file name (see below).</p> <p>From the example above, the CHARON VM log file will have the following name:</p> <pre>MSCDV1-YYYY-MM-DD-hh-mm-ss-xxxxxxxxx.log</pre> <p>xxxxxxxxx is an increasing decimal number starting from 000000000 to separate log files with the same time of creation (in case the log is being written faster than one log file per second).</p> <p> It is strictly recommended to use the "configuration_name" parameter if more than one CHARON VM runs on the same server.</p>

log

Parameter	log
Type	Text string
Value	<p>The log file or directory name is where the log file for each CHARON-AXP execution session is stored.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; padding: 5px;"> <p style="text-align: center; background-color: #0070C0; color: white; margin: 0;">Log specified as a file name</p> <p>It is possible to overwrite the existing log file or to extend it using the "log_method" parameter.</p> <p> The "log_method" parameter is effective only when a single log file is specified, not a directory.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">set session log="C:\Charon\es40prod.log"</pre> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p style="text-align: center; background-color: #0070C0; color: white; margin: 0;">Log specified as a directory</p> <p>CHARON-AXP automatically creates individual log files for each CHARON-AXP execution session. If the log parameter is omitted, CHARON-AXP creates a log file for each CHARON-AXP execution session in the directory where the emulator was started. In these two cases, the log rotation mode is enabled, meaning a new log file is created each time the virtual machine is started and when the log file size exceeds the one specified (see log_file_size) and/or when the log file is older than a specified number of days (see log_rotation_period).</p> <p> A shortcut located in the same directory will be created, pointing to the active log file. Its name is based on the hw_model parameter or the configuration_name parameter if specified.</p> <p>If the "configuration_name" parameter of the session is specified, the log file name is composed as follows:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"><configuration_name>-YYYY-MM-DD-hh-mm-ss-xxxxxxxxx.log</pre> <p>If the "configuration_name" parameter is omitted, the log file name will have the following format:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"><hw_model>-YYYY-MM-DD-hh-mm-ss-xxxxxxxxx.log</pre> <p>where "xxxxxxxxx" is an increasing decimal integer, starting from 000000000 to separate log files with the same time of creation (in case the log is being created faster than one log file per second).</p> <p> Only existing directory can be specified. If the directory specified does not exist, this will be considered as a flat file. No trailing backslash character is allowed.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">set session configuration_name="es40prod" set session log="C:\Charon\Logs"</pre> <p>The execution of the virtual machine will create a log file, named C:\Charon\Logs\es40prod-2016-10-13-10-00-00-000000000.log (for example) and a shortcut named C:\Charon\Logs\es40prod.log pointing to this file. The shortcut will be updated when the log rotation will occur.</p> </div>


log_method

Parameter	log_method
Type	Text string
Value	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "append" (default) • "overwrite" <p>Determines if the previous log information is maintained or overwritten.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>This parameter must be specified only in addition to the "log" parameter on the same line.</p> </div> <p>This parameter is applicable only if the CHARON VM log is stored to a file that is specified explicitly with the "log" parameter.</p> <p>Example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>set session log="log.txt" log_method="append"</pre> </div>

log_show_messages

Parameter	log_show_messages
Type	Text string
Value	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "all" (default) • "info" • "warning" • "error" <p>Defines the message types to be shown. The parameter is a string of comma delimited words.</p> <p>Example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>set session log_show_messages="error, warning"</pre> </div>

log_file_size

Parameter	log_file_size
Type	Text string
Value	<p>If log rotation is enabled, the log_file_size parameter determines the log file size threshold at which the log is automatically rotated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "unlimited" or "0" (default) - the feature is disabled • "default" - default size is used (4Mb) • <size>[KMG] - size of the current log file in bytes with additional multipliers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • K - Kilobyte - multiply by 1024 • M - Megabyte - multiply by 1024*1024 • G - Gigabyte - multiply by 1024*1024*1024 <p>Examples:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>set session log_file_size="default"</pre> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>set session log_file_size=10M</pre> </div> <p> Minimum LOG File size is 64K, maximum is 1G. Setting a size less then 64K effectively makes the log file size unlimited.</p>

log_rotation_period

Parameter	log_rotation_period
Type	Text string
Value	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "default" - default value, 7 days. This value is used even if the "log_rotation_period" is not specified. • "daily" or "1" • "weekly" or "7" • "never" or "0" • <N> - in N days <p>If the rotation log mode is enabled, this parameter controls switching to the next log file based on a period of time. If enabled, the switching to the next log file occurs at midnight</p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre>set session log_rotation_period="weekly"</pre> <pre>set session log_rotation_period=14</pre>

log_repeat_filter

Parameter	log_repeat_filter
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Specifies if repeated messages should be filtered or not. Possible values are "on" (default) and "off".</p> <p>If the value is "on", immediately following messages with the same identifier and system error code are not listed in the log but they are counted. When a different log message is generated, the repeat count of the earlier log message is reported with the entry "The previous message has been repeated <i>N</i> times." and the counter is cleared.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set session log_repeat_filter="on"</pre>

license_key_id

Parameter	license_key_id[N] N=0 or 1
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>An integer (decimal Sentinel Key ID) that specifies the regular (N=0) and backup (N=1) license keys to be used by the CHARON VM.</p> <pre>set session license_key_id[0]=1877752571 set session license_key_id[1]=354850588</pre> <p>It is also possible to specify both regular and backup keys in one line:</p> <pre>set session license_key_id[0]=1877752571 license_key_id[1]=354850588</pre> <p>Based on the presence of the regular and/or backup license key IDs in the configuration file, CHARON VM behaves as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> No keys are specified CHARON-AXP performs an unqualified search for any suitable key. If no key is found, the CHARON VM stops. Both keys are specified CHARON-AXP performs a qualified search for a regular license key. If it is not found, CHARON VM performs a qualified search for backup license key. If it is not found, the CHARON VM stops. Only regular key is specified CHARON-AXP performs a qualified search for a regular license key. If it is not found, CHARON VM performs an unqualified search for any suitable key. If none are found, the CHARON VM stops. Only backup key is specified CHARON-AXP performs an unqualified search for any suitable key. If no key is found, the CHARON VM stops.

affinity

Parameter	affinity
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Overrides any initial process affinity mask provided by the host operating system. Once specified it binds the running instance of the emulator to particular host CPUs.</p> <p>Used for soft partitioning of the host CPU resources and/or for isolating host CPUs for other applications.</p> <p>By default the CHARON VM allocates as many host CPUs as possible. The "affinity" parameter overrides that and allows explicit specification on which host CPU the instance must run on.</p> <p>The "affinity" parameter defines the total number of host CPUs to be used both for emulated Alpha CPUs and for the CHARON VM itself (including the CPUs to be used for I/O - they are controlled by the "n_of_io_cpus" parameter described below).</p> <p>Host CPUs are enumerated as a comma separated list of host system assigned CPU numbers:</p> <pre>set session affinity="0, 2, 4, 6"</pre>

n_of_cpus

Parameter	n_of_cpus																																						
Type	Numeric																																						
Value	<p>Limits the number of emulated CPUs.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set session n_of_cpus=3</pre> <p>The maximum number of CPUs enabled by CHARON VM is specified by the license key. It cannot exceed the original hardware restrictions:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>HP Alpha Model</th> <th>Number of emulated CPUs</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>AlphaServer_AS400</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_AS800</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_AS1000</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_AS1000A</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_AS1200</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_AS2000</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_AS2100</td><td>4</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_AS4000</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_AS4100</td><td>4</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_DS10</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_DS15</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_DS20</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_DS25</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_ES40</td><td>4</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_ES45</td><td>4</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_GS80</td><td>8</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_GS160</td><td>16</td></tr> <tr><td>AlphaServer_GS320</td><td>32</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	HP Alpha Model	Number of emulated CPUs	AlphaServer_AS400	1	AlphaServer_AS800	1	AlphaServer_AS1000	1	AlphaServer_AS1000A	1	AlphaServer_AS1200	2	AlphaServer_AS2000	2	AlphaServer_AS2100	4	AlphaServer_AS4000	2	AlphaServer_AS4100	4	AlphaServer_DS10	1	AlphaServer_DS15	1	AlphaServer_DS20	2	AlphaServer_DS25	2	AlphaServer_ES40	4	AlphaServer_ES45	4	AlphaServer_GS80	8	AlphaServer_GS160	16	AlphaServer_GS320	32
HP Alpha Model	Number of emulated CPUs																																						
AlphaServer_AS400	1																																						
AlphaServer_AS800	1																																						
AlphaServer_AS1000	1																																						
AlphaServer_AS1000A	1																																						
AlphaServer_AS1200	2																																						
AlphaServer_AS2000	2																																						
AlphaServer_AS2100	4																																						
AlphaServer_AS4000	2																																						
AlphaServer_AS4100	4																																						
AlphaServer_DS10	1																																						
AlphaServer_DS15	1																																						
AlphaServer_DS20	2																																						
AlphaServer_DS25	2																																						
AlphaServer_ES40	4																																						
AlphaServer_ES45	4																																						
AlphaServer_GS80	8																																						
AlphaServer_GS160	16																																						
AlphaServer_GS320	32																																						

n_of_io_cpus

Parameter	n_of_io_cpus
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>This parameter specifies how many host CPUs CHARON VM must use for I/O handling. Use of the "affinity" parameter may limit the number of CPUs available.</p> <p>By default the CHARON VM reserves one third of all available host CPUs for I/O processing (round down, at least one). The "n_of_io_cpus" parameter overrides that by specifying the number of CHARON I/O CPUs explicitly.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">set session n_of_io_cpus=2</pre>

license_key_lookup_retry

Parameter	license_key_lookup_retry
Type	Text String
Value	<p>In case the CHARON-AXP license connection is not present when the guest starts up, this parameter specifies how many times the CHARON VM will try to establish the connection and, optionally, a period of time between retries.</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">set session license_key_lookup_retry = "N [, T]"</pre> <p>Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • N - Number of retries to look for license keys. • T - Time between retries in seconds. If not specified, 60 seconds are used <p>Example 1:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">set session license_key_lookup_retry = 1</pre> <p>If the license key is not found during initial scan, only one more attempt after 60 seconds is performed.</p> <p>Example 2:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">set session license_key_lookup_retry = "1,30"</pre> <p>Same as above but retry in 30 seconds.</p> <p>Example 3:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">set session license_key_lookup_retry = "3,10"</pre> <p>If the license key is not found during initial scan, do 3 more attempts waiting 10 seconds between them.</p> <p>Example 4:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">set session license_key_lookup_retry = "5"</pre> <p>If the license key is not found during the initial scan, do 5 more attempts waiting 60 seconds between them.</p>

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

File inclusion


It is possible to include a configuration file into an existing one using the "include" command. The file extension is usually .icfg.

Format:

```
include "file.icfg"
```

Example:

```
include "c:\charon\commonpart.icfg"
```

 The configuration template files are defined to use the "configuration_name.icfg" configuration file which is used by the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager. If you use an existing configuration file, including this file is not necessary.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Core Devices

Table of Contents

- CPU
 - enabled
 - cpu_architecture
 - cache_size
- RAM
 - size
- TOY
 - container
 - sync_to_host
 - Example
- ROM
 - container
 - system_name
 - system_serial_number
 - dsrdb
 - version
- Virtual HP Alpha interval timer
 - clock_period
 - Example for AlphaServer 400, DS, ES, GS
 - Example for AlphaServer 800, 1000, 1000A, 1200, 2000, 2100, 4000, 4100
- Setting of a particular HP Alpha model
 - HP AlphaStation 200 - 400
 - HP AlphaServer 600 - 800
 - HP AlphaServer 1000
 - HP AlphaServer 1000A
 - HP AlphaServer 1200 and AlphaStation 1200
 - HP AlphaServer 2000
 - HP AlphaServer 2100
 - HP AlphaServer 4000
 - HP AlphaServer 4100
 - HP AlphaServer/AlphaStation DS10 and HP AlphaServer DS10L
 - HP AlphaServer DS15 and HP AlphaStation DS15
 - HP AlphaServer DS20 and HP AlphaStation DS20
 - HP AlphaServer DS25 and HP AlphaStation DS25
 - HP AlphaServer ES40 and AlphaStation ES40
 - HP AlphaServer ES45
 - HP AlphaServer GS80
 - HP AlphaServer GS160
 - HP AlphaServer GS320
- Auto Boot
 - auto_action restart
- Setting System Marketing Model (SMM)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

CPU

The CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) CPU can be calibrated with "set ace" directive and the following parameters:

enabled

Parameter	enabled
Type	Boolean
Value	<p>A CHARON-AXP emulated CPU is configured with the "enabled" command enabling the high performance Advanced CPU Emulation mode ("ACE"). The ACE option optimizes the HP Alpha instruction interpretation and significantly improves performance. It also requires approximately twice the amount of host memory allocated by CHARON instance itself to store the optimized code (Note that 2Gb of host memory + the amount of HP Alpha memory emulated per each CHARON instance is required).</p> <p>ACE optimization is performed dynamically during execution. It does not need to write optimized code back to disk, ACE provides its full capability instantly. The optimization does not compromise the HP Alpha instruction decoding; CHARON-AXP remains fully HP Alpha hardware compatible and completely transparent to the HP Alpha operating systems and applications.</p> <p>This configuration setting enables the ACE mode if the CHARON-AXP license permits it. If this configuration setting is omitted from the CHARON VM configuration file and the license permits it, "true" is the default, otherwise "false" is the default.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set ace enabled = false</pre> <p>"set ace enabled=true" is ignored when the license does not permit ACE operation.</p> <p>The ACE mode is disabled when the host system does not meet the minimum physical requirements for this operation. If the emulator appears not to run at its normal performance, check the log file for a change in the ACE mode and verify that sufficient host resources, especially memory, are available.</p>

cpu_architecture

Parameter	cpu_architecture
Type	Text String
Value	<p>Specifies the architecture of the virtual Alpha CPU. Can be one of the following: EV4, EV45, EV5, EV56, EV6, EV67, EV68</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set ace cpu_architecture = EV6</pre> <p>Refer to this section to find an appropriate value of the HP Alpha architecture per each HP Alpha model supported by CHARON-AXP.</p>

cache_size

Parameter	cache_size
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>"cache_size" defines the amount of memory in megabytes allocated to the ACE cache.</p> <p>The default value of the cache_size set to 1GB (1024 MB).</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set ace cache_size=2048</pre>

RAM

The CHARON VM memory subsystem is permanently loaded and has the logical name "ram"

size

Parameter	size
Type	Numeric
Value	Size of the emulated memory in MB.

Example:

```
set ram size = 2048
```

The amount of memory is capped at a maximum, this is defined in the CHARON license key. If the host system cannot allocate enough memory to map the requested emulated memory, CHARON VM generates an error message in the log file and reduces its effective memory size.

The following table lists the values of emulated RAM for various hardware models of virtual HP Alpha systems:


Hardware Model	RAM size (in MB)			
	Min	Max	Default	Increment
AlphaServer 400	64	1024	512	64
AlphaServer 800	256	8192	512	256
AlphaServer 1000	256	1024	512	256
AlphaServer 1000A	256	1024	512	256
AlphaServer 1200	256	32768	512	256
AlphaServer 2000	64	2048	512	64
AlphaServer 2100	64	2048	512	64
AlphaServer 4000	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer 4100	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer DS10	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer DS15	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer DS20	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer DS25	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer ES40	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer ES45	64	32768	512	64
AlphaServer GS80	256	65536	512	256
AlphaServer GS160	512	131072	512	512
AlphaServer GS320	1024	262144	1024	1024

[Back to Table of Contents](#)


TOY

CHARON-AXP maintains its time and date using the "toy" (time-of-year) component. In order to preserve the time and date while a virtual system is not running, the TOY component uses a binary file on the host system to store the date and time relevant data. The name of the file is specified by the "container" option of the "toy" component.

container

Parameter	container
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Specifies a name for the file in which CHARON VM preserves the time and date during its "offline" period. This file also keeps some console parameters (such as the default boot device).</p> <p>By default it is left unspecified.</p> <p> it is recommended to specify the full path to the TOY file.</p>

sync_to_host

Parameter	sync_to_host														
Type	Text string														
Value	<p>Specifies whether and how the guest OS time is synchronized with the CHARON host time.</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <pre>set TOY sync_to_host = "{as_vms as_tru64 as_is}[, nowrite]"</pre> <p>where:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>as_vms</td> <td>If the guest OS is OpenVMS/AXP and its date and time must be set to the host's date and time each time it boots.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>as_tru64</td> <td>If the guest OS is Tru64 UNIX and its date and time must be set to the host's date and time each time it boots.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>as_is</td> <td>If the TOY date and time must be set to the host's UTC date and time</td> </tr> <tr> <td>nowrite</td> <td>Forbid updates to the TOY from the guest OS.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set TOY sync_to_host = "as_vms, nowrite"</pre> <p>To synchronize the guest OS with TOY, use the following commands (from "SYSTEM"/"root" account):</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>On OpenVMS/AXP</th> <th>On Tru64 UNIX</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><pre>\$ set time</pre></td> <td><pre># date -u `consvar -g date cut -f 3 -d ' '`</pre></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>The default value is "not specified" - it means that by default CHARON does not synchronize its guest OS time with the CHARON host time but collects date and time from the file specified with "container" parameter.</p> <p> If "sync_to_host" parameter is specified there is no need to specify "container" parameter in addition.</p>	Parameter	Description	as_vms	If the guest OS is OpenVMS/AXP and its date and time must be set to the host's date and time each time it boots.	as_tru64	If the guest OS is Tru64 UNIX and its date and time must be set to the host's date and time each time it boots.	as_is	If the TOY date and time must be set to the host's UTC date and time	nowrite	Forbid updates to the TOY from the guest OS.	On OpenVMS/AXP	On Tru64 UNIX	<pre>\$ set time</pre>	<pre># date -u `consvar -g date cut -f 3 -d ' '`</pre>
Parameter	Description														
as_vms	If the guest OS is OpenVMS/AXP and its date and time must be set to the host's date and time each time it boots.														
as_tru64	If the guest OS is Tru64 UNIX and its date and time must be set to the host's date and time each time it boots.														
as_is	If the TOY date and time must be set to the host's UTC date and time														
nowrite	Forbid updates to the TOY from the guest OS.														
On OpenVMS/AXP	On Tru64 UNIX														
<pre>\$ set time</pre>	<pre># date -u `consvar -g date cut -f 3 -d ' '`</pre>														

Example

```
set toy container="C:\Charon\my_virtual_system.dat"
```


The CHARON VM time zone may be different from that of the host system. Correct CHARON time relies on the correctness of the host system time to calculate the duration of any CHARON "offline" periods. (i.e. while the virtual system is not running). Every time CHARON comes on line it calculates a Delta time (the system time is used if there is no TOY file). Therefore, if the host system time is changed while CHARON VM is not running, the CHARON time may be incorrect when CHARON VM is restarted and the CHARON time must be set manually.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

ROM

The System Flash ROM file conserves specific parameters between reboots.

container

Parameter	container
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Specifies the name of a file in which CHARON VM stores an intermediate state of its Flash ROM. This state includes, for example, most of the console parameters.</p> <p>By default it is left unspecified.</p> <p> it is recommended to specify the full path to this file</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set rom container="C:\Charon\my_virtual_system.rom"</pre>

system_name

Parameter	system_name
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Allows changing the system name, for example:</p> <pre>set rom system_name="Alpha Server 1000 4/200"</pre> <p>Refer to this section to find an appropriate value of the HP Alpha system name per each HP Alpha model supported by CHARON-AXP</p>

system_serial_number

Parameter	system_serial_number
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Allows changing the system serial number, for example:</p> <pre>set rom system_serial_number = NY12345678</pre> <p>Any sequence of characters can be used as a serial number. Sequences longer than 16 symbols are truncated to 16 symbols.</p> <p>Serial Numbers should be according to DEC standard: 10 characters. First two characters are capital letters, remaining 8 characters are decimal digits.</p> <p>By default it is set to SN01234567</p>

dsrdb

Parameter	dsrdb[n]
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>DSRDB - Dynamic System Recognition Data Block. These parameters allow changing the emulated hardware model type.</p> <p>dsrdb[0] stands for SMM - System Marketing Model.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set rom dsrdb[0]=1090</pre> <p>This section describes connection between "dsrdb" parameter and the rest of the parameters defining an exact HP Alpha model - including SMM.</p>

version

Parameter	version								
Type	Text string								
Value	<p>Sets Console and PAL code versions in the following way:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Function</th> <th>Command</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Set SRM Console version to X.Y-Z</td> <td><pre>set rom version[0] = x.y-z</pre></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set OpenVMS PAL code version to X.Y-Z</td> <td><pre>set rom version[1] = x.y-z</pre></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set Tru64 UNIX PAL code version to X.Y-Z</td> <td><pre>set rom version[2] = x.y-z</pre></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set rom version[0] = 7.3-1 version[1] = 1.98-104 version[2] = 1.92-105</pre>	Function	Command	Set SRM Console version to X.Y-Z	<pre>set rom version[0] = x.y-z</pre>	Set OpenVMS PAL code version to X.Y-Z	<pre>set rom version[1] = x.y-z</pre>	Set Tru64 UNIX PAL code version to X.Y-Z	<pre>set rom version[2] = x.y-z</pre>
Function	Command								
Set SRM Console version to X.Y-Z	<pre>set rom version[0] = x.y-z</pre>								
Set OpenVMS PAL code version to X.Y-Z	<pre>set rom version[1] = x.y-z</pre>								
Set Tru64 UNIX PAL code version to X.Y-Z	<pre>set rom version[2] = x.y-z</pre>								

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Virtual HP Alpha interval timer

The CHARON-AXP provides interval timer interrupts to virtual Alpha CPU(s) at frequency 100Hz (100 interrupts a second).

This is default behavior which may be changed through "clock_period" configuration parameter of virtual ISA or EISA bus, depending on emulated hardware model of virtual HP Alpha system.

Value of the parameter is interval timer period in microseconds. By default it is set to 10000. By changing it to 1000 frequency of virtual interval timer interrupts may be increased to 1000Hz (1000 interrupts per second).

clock_period


Parameter	clock_period
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>Specifies period of interval timer, in microseconds. Only two values are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10000 (which corresponds to 100Hz interval timer) • 1000 (which corresponds to 1000Hz interval timer) <p>By default it is set to 10000.</p>

Example for AlphaServer 400, DS, ES, GS

```
set ISA clock_period=1000
```

Example for AlphaServer 800, 1000, 1000A, 1200, 2000, 2100, 4000, 4100

```
set EISA clock_period=1000
```

 Higher interval timer frequency creates higher load for virtual Alpha CPU which may cause degradation of overall virtual system performance.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Setting of a particular HP Alpha model

It is important to have the "system_name", "hw_model", "cpu_architecture" and "dsrdb[n]" (DSRDB - Dynamic System Recognition Data Block) parameters in sync. (see above for details) to configure CHARON VM for emulation of a particular HP Alpha model.

The following tables illustrate how to synchronize those values:

HP AlphaStation 200 - 400

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 200 4/100	EV4	1156
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 200 4/133	EV4	1088
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 205 4/133	EV4	1250
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 255 4/133	EV4	1257
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 200 4/166	EV4	1087
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 205 4/166	EV4	1251
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 255 4/166	EV4	1258
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 400 4/166	EV4	1086
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 205 4/200	EV4	1252
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 255 4/200	EV4	1259
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 200 4/233	EV45	1151
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 205 4/233	EV45	1253
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 255 4/233	EV45	1260
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 400 4/233	EV45	1152
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 205 4/266	EV45	1254
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 255 4/266	EV45	1261
AlphaServer_400	AlphaServer 300 4/266	EV45	1593
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 400 4/266	EV45	1153
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 400 4/266	EV45	1154
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 200 4/300	EV45	1157
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 205 4/300	EV45	1255
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 255 4/300	EV45	1262
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 400 4/300	EV45	1160
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 205 4/333	EV45	1256
AlphaServer_400	AlphaStation 255 4/333	EV45	1263

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer 600 - 800

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_800	AlphaServer 600 5/333	EV56	1310
AlphaServer_800	AlphaServer 800 5/333	EV56	1310
AlphaServer_800	AlphaServer 800 5/400	EV56	1584
AlphaServer_800	AlphaStation 600A 5/500	EV56	1590
AlphaServer_800	AlphaServer 800 5/500	EV56	1585

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer 1000

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_1000	AlphaServer 1000 4/200	EV4	1090
AlphaServer_1000	AlphaServer 1000 4/233	EV45	1091
AlphaServer_1000	AlphaServer 1000 4/266	EV45	1264

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer 1000A

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_1000A	AlphaServer 1000A 4/266	EV45	1265

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer 1200 and AlphaStation 1200

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/300	EV5	1722
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/300	EV5	1724
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/400	EV56	1726
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/400	EV56	1728
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/400	EV56	1758
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/400	EV56	1760
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/466	EV56	1730
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/466	EV56	1732
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/466	EV56	1762
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/466	EV56	1764
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/533	EV56	1734
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/533	EV56	1736
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/533	EV56	1746
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/533	EV56	1748
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/533	EV56	1766
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/533	EV56	1768
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/533	EV56	1778
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/533	EV56	1780
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/600	EV56	1738
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/600	EV56	1740
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/600	EV56	1750
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/600	EV56	1752
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/600	EV56	1770
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/600	EV56	1772
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/600	EV56	1782
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/600	EV56	1784
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/666	EV56	1742
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/666	EV56	1744
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/666	EV56	1754
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaServer 1200 5/666	EV56	1756
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/666	EV56	1774
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/666	EV56	1776
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/666	EV56	1786
AlphaServer_1200	AlphaStation 1200 5/666	EV56	1788

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer 2000

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_2000	AlphaServer 2000 4/200	EV4	1123
AlphaServer_2000	AlphaServer 2000 4/233	EV45	1171
AlphaServer_2000	AlphaServer 2000 4/275	EV45	1127

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer 2100

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_2100	AlphaServer 2100 4/200	EV4	1059
AlphaServer_2100	AlphaServer 2100 4/200	EV4	1135
AlphaServer_2100	AlphaServer 2100 4/233	EV45	1179
AlphaServer_2100	AlphaServer 2100 4/233	EV45	1187
AlphaServer_2100	AlphaServer 2100 4/275	EV45	1115
AlphaServer_2100	AlphaServer 2100 4/275	EV45	1139

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer 4000

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/266	EV5	1409
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/266	EV5	1411
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/266	EV5	1421
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/266	EV5	1423
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/266	EV5	1433
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/266	EV5	1435
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/266	EV5	1445
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/266	EV5	1447
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/300	EV5	1413
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/300	EV5	1415
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/300	EV5	1425
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/300	EV5	1427
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/300	EV5	1437
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/300	EV5	1439
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/300	EV5	1449
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/300	EV5	1451
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/400	EV56	1417
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/400	EV56	1419
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/400	EV56	1429
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/400	EV56	1431
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/400	EV56	1441
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/400	EV56	1443
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/400	EV56	1453
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/400	EV56	1455
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/466	EV56	1634
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/466	EV56	1636
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/466	EV56	1654
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/466	EV56	1656
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/533	EV56	1638
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/533	EV56	1640
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/533	EV56	1642
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/533	EV56	1644
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/533	EV56	1658
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/533	EV56	1660
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/533	EV56	1662
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/533	EV56	1664
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/600	EV56	1646

AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/600	EV56	1648
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/600	EV56	1666
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/600	EV56	1668
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/666	EV56	1650
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/666	EV56	1652
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/666	EV56	1670
AlphaServer_4000	AlphaServer 4000 5/666	EV56	1672

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer 4100

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/266	EV5	1313
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/266	EV5	1317
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/266	EV5	1337
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/266	EV5	1341
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/266	EV5	1361
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/266	EV5	1365
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/266	EV5	1385
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/266	EV5	1389
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/300	EV5	1321
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/300	EV5	1325
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/300	EV5	1345
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/300	EV5	1349
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/300	EV5	1369
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/300	EV5	1373
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/300	EV5	1393
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/300	EV5	1397
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/400	EV56	1329
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/400	EV56	1333
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4000 5/400	EV56	1353
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4000 5/400	EV56	1357
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4000 5/400	EV56	1377
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/400	EV56	1381
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/400	EV56	1401
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/400	EV56	1405
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/466	EV56	1594
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/466	EV56	1598
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/533	EV56	1602
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/533	EV56	1606
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/533	EV56	1610
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/533	EV56	1614
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/600	EV56	1618
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/600	EV56	1622
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/666	EV56	1626
AlphaServer_4100	AlphaServer 4100 5/666	EV56	1630

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer/AlphaStation DS10 and HP AlphaServer DS10L

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_DS10	AlphaServer DS10 6/466	EV6	1839
AlphaServer_DS10	AlphaStation DS10 6/466	EV6	1879
AlphaServer_DS10	AlphaStation XP900 6/466	EV6	1879
AlphaServer_DS10L	AlphaServer DS10L 6/466	EV6	1961
AlphaServer_DS10L	AlphaServer DS10L 67/616	EV67	1962
AlphaServer_DS10	AlphaStation DS10 67/616	EV67	1962
AlphaServer_DS10	AlphaServer DS10 67/616	EV67	1970

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer DS15 and HP AlphaStation DS15

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_DS15	AlphaServer DS15 68CB/1000	EV68	2047
AlphaServer_DS15	AlphaStation DS15 68CB/1000	EV68	2048
AlphaServer_DS15	AlphaServer TS15 68CB/1000	EV68	2049

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer DS20 and HP AlphaStation DS20

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_DS20	AlphaServer DS20 6/500	EV6	1838
AlphaServer_DS20	AlphaServer DS20E 6/500	EV6	1840
AlphaServer_DS20	AlphaServer DS20 6/500	EV6	1920
AlphaServer_DS20	AlphaServer DS20 6/500	EV6	1921
AlphaServer_DS20	AlphaServer DS20E 67/667	EV67	1939
AlphaServer_DS20	AlphaStation DS20E 6/500	EV6	1941
AlphaServer_DS20	AlphaStation DS20E 67/667	EV57	1943
AlphaServer_DS20	AlphaServer DS20E 68A/833	EV68	1964
AlphaServer_DS20	AlphaServer DS20E 68A/833	EV68	1982
AlphaServer_DS20	AlphaServer DS20L 68A/833	EV68	2006

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer DS25 and HP AlphaStation DS25

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_DS25	AlphaServer DS25 68CB/1000	EV68	1994
AlphaServer_DS25	AlphaStation DS25 68CB/1000	EV68	1995

HP AlphaServer ES40 and AlphaStation ES40

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaServer ES40 6/500	EV6	1813
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaServer ES40 6/500	EV6	1861
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaServer ES40 6/500	EV6	1869
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaServer ES40 6/500	EV6	1923
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaServer ES40 6/500	EV6	1931
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaServer ES40 6/667	EV6	1817
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaServer ES40 6/667	EV6	1865
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaServer ES40 6/667	EV6	1873
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaServer ES40 6/667	EV6	1927
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaServer ES40 6/667	EV6	1935
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaStation ES40 67/667	EV67	1949
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaStation ES40 67/667	EV67	1957
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaStation ES40 68/833	EV68	1984
AlphaServer_ES40	AlphaStation ES40 68/833	EV68	1988

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer ES45

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=
AlphaServer_ES45	AlphaServer ES45/3B 68CB/1000	EV68	1971
AlphaServer_ES45	AlphaServer ES45/2 68CB/1000	EV68	1975
AlphaServer_ES45	AlphaServer ES45/2B 68CB/1000	EV68	1975
AlphaServer_ES45	AlphaServer ES45/1B 68CB/1000	EV68	2002
AlphaServer_ES45	AlphaServer ES45/3B 68CB/1250	EV68	2013
AlphaServer_ES45	AlphaServer ES45/2 68CB/1250	EV68	2017
AlphaServer_ES45	AlphaServer ES45/2B 68CB/1250	EV68	2017
AlphaServer_ES45	AlphaServer ES45/1B 68CB/1250	EV68	2021

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer GS80

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=	set rom dsrdb[1]=	set rom dsrdb[4]=
AlphaServer_GS80	AlphaServer GS80 67/728	EV67	1967		
AlphaServer_GS80	AlphaServer GS1280	EV67	2038	50	3050

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer GS160

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=	set rom dsrdb[1]=	set rom dsrdb[4]=
AlphaServer_GS160	AlphaServer GS160 67/728	EV67	1968		
AlphaServer_GS160	AlphaServer GS1280	EV67	2039	50	3050

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

HP AlphaServer GS320

set session hw_model=	set rom system_name=	set ace cpu_architecture=	set rom dsrdb[0]=	set rom dsrdb[1]=	set rom dsrdb[4]=
AlphaServer_GS320	AlphaServer GS320 67/728	EV67	1969		
AlphaServer_GS320	AlphaServer GS1280	EV67	2040	50	3050

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Auto Boot

CHARON VMs can be configured to boot the operating system automatically at start up.

auto_action restart

Parameter	auto_action restart
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Determines whether CHARON VM boots automatically if the correct boot flags are set (and saved in the HP Alpha console files).</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>>>>set bootdef_dev dka0 >>>set auto_action restart</pre>

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Setting System Marketing Model (SMM)

CHARON-AXP allows to set an exact System Marketing Model (SMM) for a given model of HP Alpha, for example:

```
set rom dsrdb[0]=1090
```

Refer to [this section](#) to find allowed values of SMM per each HP Alpha model supported by CHARON-AXP.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Console

Table of Contents

- General Description
- Console Parameters
 - communication
 - line
 - Example
- Mapping Serial line controllers to system resources
 - physical_serial_line
 - line
 - baud
 - break_on
 - stop_on
 - log
 - log_file_size
 - Example of mapping a console line to a host physical serial line
 - virtual_serial_line
 - host
 - port
 - application
 - break_on
 - stop_on
 - log
 - log_file_size
 - Example 1
 - Notes on "virtual_serial_line" options
 - Example 2

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General Description

CHARON-AXP offers a one- (OPA0) or two-port serial console, depending on the specified HP Alpha model.

i The AlphaServer DS10, AlphaServer DS10L, AlphaServer DS15, AlphaServer 400, AlphaServer 800, AlphaServer 1000 and AlphaServer 1000A has an additional on-board serial line controller providing a serial line TTA0.

The regular console is already preloaded, so you need to specify just its mapping to the host resources, for example:

```
load physical_serial_line OPA0 line="COM1:"
```

In case of the TTA0 console the mapping looks like that:

```
load virtual_serial_line TTA0 port=10000
set COM2 line=TTA0
```

The first line specifies a mapping to a unique TCP/IP host port ("10000" in this example), while the second line connects this mapping (TTA0) to the on-board serial line controller having the name "COM2" in CHARON environment.

Refer to [this section](#) for details of mapping.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Console Parameters

CHARON-AXP console line TTA0 (COM2) has the following parameters:

i All the values in the following tables are case insensitive

communication

Parameter	communication
Type	Text string
Value	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "ascii" - for connection to terminals (default) "binary" - for binary (packet) protocols, which are used mainly for communicating with PLCs

line

Parameter	line
Type	Identifier
Value	<p>This parameter is used to connect a particular serial line mapping interface to the controller.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set COM2 line=TTA0</pre>

Example

```
set COM2 communication="binary"
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Mapping Serial line controllers to system resources

Types of serial line mapping:

Type	Function
physical_serial_line	This type of mapping associates a COM port on a host system with an emulated HP Alpha serial line controller virtual "line". The COM port can be a physical hardware port or a logical COM port.
virtual_serial_line	This type of mapping associates a network connection on the host system with an emulated HP Alpha serial line controller virtual "line"

Example:

```
load physical_serial_line TTA0
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

physical_serial_line


line

Parameter	line
Type	Text string
Value	<p>A defined COM port on a host system in the form of "\\.\COMn" (or "COM<n>:").</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set OPA0 line="\\.\COM1"</pre>


baud

Parameter	baud
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>Forces the baud rate of the corresponding COM port to be a specified value.</p> <p>The variety of supported values depends on the underlying physical communication resource (COM port). The most widely used values are: 300, 1200, 9600, 19200, 38400.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set OPA0 baud=38400</pre>

break_on

Parameter	break_on
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Specifies what byte sequences received over the physical serial line will trigger a HALT command.</p> <p>This parameter works only for the console line.</p> <p>Specify the following values: "Ctrl-P", "Break" or "none" ("none" disables triggering a HALT condition).</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #f0e68c; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>If your guest operating system is OpenVMS in addition to "none" setting you have to set a specific console parameter "controlp" to "off" in the following way:</p> <pre>>>> set controlp off >>> power off</pre> <p>The second line is to preserve the ROM settings.</p> </div> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set OPA0 break_on="Ctrl-P"</pre> <p>The default value is "Break".</p> <p> This parameter can be specified only for COM1 (OPA0) console</p>


stop_on

Parameter	stop_on
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Specifies what byte sequences received over the physical serial line will trigger a STOP condition. The STOP condition causes CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) to exit.</p> <p>Specify the one of the following values: "F6" or "none" ("none" disables triggering a STOP condition).</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set OPA0 stop_on="F6"</pre> <p>The default value is "none".</p> <p>Setting "F6" triggers the STOP condition upon receipt of the "<ESC>[17~" sequence. Terminals usually send these sequences by pressing the F6 button</p> <p> This parameter can be specified only for COM1 (OPA0) console</p>

log

Parameter	log
Type	Text string
Value	<p>A string specifying a file name to store the content of the console sessions or a directory where the log files for each individual session will be stored.</p> <p>If an existing directory is specified, CHARON VM automatically enables creation of individual log files, one for each session using the same scheme as used for the generation of the rotating log files. If the "log" parameter is omitted, CHARON VM does not create a console log.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre>set OPA0 log="log.txt"</pre> <pre>set OPA0 log="C:\Charon\Logs"</pre> <p style="border: 1px solid #f0e68c; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">Only existing directory can be used as a value of the "log" parameter.</p>

log_file_size

Parameter	log_file_size
Type	Text string
Value	<p>If log rotation is enabled, the log_file_size parameter determines the log file size threshold at which the log is automatically rotated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> "unlimited" or "0" (default) - the feature is disabled "default" - default size is used (4Mb) <size>[KMG] - size of the current log file in bytes with additional multipliers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> K - Kilobyte - multiply by 1024 M - Megabyte - multiply by 1024*1024 G - Gigabyte - multiply by 1024*1024*1024 <p>Examples:</p> <pre>set OPA0 log_file_size="default"</pre> <pre>set OPA0 log_file_size=10M</pre> <p> Minimum log file size is 64K, maximum is 1G. Setting size less than 64K effectively makes the log file unlimited.</p>

Example of mapping a console line to a host physical serial line

```
load physical_serial_line OPA0
set OPA0 line="\\.COM1"
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

virtual_serial_line

host

Parameter	host
Type	Text string
Value	<p>A remote host's IP address or hostname (and optionally a remote TCP/IP port number) for the virtual serial line connection. If omitted, the virtual serial line does not initiate a connection to the remote host and will listen for incoming connection requests.</p> <p>Specify the value in the following form:</p> <pre>set OPA0 host="<host-name>[:<port-no>]"</pre> <p>If the "<port-no>" is not specified, the virtual serial line uses the TCP/IP port number specified by the "port" parameter (see below).</p>


port

Parameter	port
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>The TCP/IP port number for the virtual serial line. A virtual serial line always listens on this port for incoming connection requests.</p> <p>If multiple virtualized machines are running on a server, ensure the port number is unique across the platform.</p>


application

Parameter	application
Type	Text string
Value	<p>An application (a terminal emulator is assumed in most cases) to be started on initialization of this serial line emulation. The specified application startup string may contain all required parameters.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set OPA application = "putty.exe -load OPA0"</pre> <p>In this example the terminal emulator application: "putty" is started with the parameters "-load OPA0" telling it to load a specific saved session named "OPA0", (created separately) from the host registry.</p> <p>The "application" parameter is often combined with a "port" parameter:</p> <pre>set TTA0 port = 10003 application = "putty.exe -load TTA1"</pre>

break_on

Parameter	break_on
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Specifies what byte sequences received over a virtual serial line triggers a HALT command.</p> <p>Specify one of the following values: "Ctrl-P", "Break" or "none" to disable triggering a HALT condition. The commands are case insensitive.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #fde725; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>If your guest operating system is OpenVMS in addition to "none" setting you have to set a specific console parameter "controlp" to "off" in the following way:</p> <pre>>>> set controlp off >>> power off</pre> <p>The second line is to preserve the ROM settings.</p> </div> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set OPA0 break_on="Ctrl-P"</pre> <p>The default value is "Break".</p> <p> This parameter can be specified only for COM1 (OPA0) console</p>


stop_on

Parameter	stop_on
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Specifies what byte sequences received over the virtual serial line will trigger a STOP condition. The STOP condition causes CHARON VM to exit.</p> <p>Specify one of the following values: "F6" or "none" ("none" disables triggering a STOP condition). <u>The commands are case insensitive.</u></p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set OPA0 stop_on="F6"</pre> <p>The default value is "none".</p> <p>Setting "F6" triggers the STOP condition upon receipt of the "<ESC>[17~" sequence.</p> <p> This parameter can be specified only for COM1 (OPA0) console</p>

log

Parameter	log
Type	Text string
Value	<p>A string specifying the filename to store the content of the console sessions or a directory where log files for each individual session will be stored.</p> <p>If an existing directory is specified, CHARON VM automatically enables the creation of individual log files, one for each session using the same scheme as used for the generation of the rotating log files. If the "log" parameter is omitted, CHARON VM does not create any console log.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre>set OPA0 log="log.txt"</pre> <pre>set OPA0 log="C:\Charon\Logs"</pre> <p style="text-align: center;">Only existing directory can be used as a value of the "log" parameter.</p>

log_file_size

Parameter	log_file_size
Type	Text string
Value	<p>If log rotation is enabled, the log_file_size parameter determines the log file size threshold at which the log is automatically rotated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "unlimited" or "0" (default) - the feature is disabled • "default" - default size is used (4Mb) • <size>[KMG] - size of the current log file in bytes with additional multipliers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • K - Kilobyte - multiply by 1024 • M - Megabyte - multiply by 1024*1024 • G - Gigabyte - multiply by 1024*1024*1024 <p>Examples:</p> <pre>set OPA0 log_file_size="default"</pre> <pre>set OPA0 log_file_size=10M</pre> <p> Minimum log file size is 64K, maximum is 1G. Setting size less than 64K effectively makes the log file unlimited.</p>

Example 1

Mapping a console line to a host TCP/IP port 10003 and starting a "Putty" terminal emulator with a configuration "OPA" directing it to connect to the port 10003:

```
load virtual_serial_line OPA0
set OPA port = 10003 application = "putty.exe -load OPA0"
```

Notes on "virtual_serial_line" options

1. Use the combination of "port" and "host" parameters as follows to connect a 3rd party terminal emulator or similar program.

```
load virtual_serial_line TTA0 host="192.168.1.1" port=10000
```

In this example CHARON VM connects to port 10000 of a host with TCP/IP address "192.168.1.1" and at the same time it accepts connections on local port 10000.

2. It is possible to specify a port on a remote host (note that CHARON always acts as a server). The syntax is:

```
load virtual_serial_line TTA0 host="192.168.1.1:20000" port=10000
```

In this example CHARON VM accepts connection on local port 10000 and connects to remote port 20000 of a host with TCP/IP address "192.168.1.1"

Note: the examples above are mainly used for inter-CHARON communications. They are used to connect CHARON VM to an application that communicates to CHARON VM as described below.

Example 2

Two CHARON VMs connected to each other:

On host "A":

```
load virtual_serial_line TTA0 port=5500 host="B"
```

On host "B":

```
load virtual_serial_line TTA0 port=5500 host="A"
```

On these two hosts, executing CHARON VM, the two TTA0 lines connect to each other, thus creating a "serial" cable between the two emulated HP Alphas. The sequential order in which the CHARON VMs are started makes no difference.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Placement of peripheral devices on PCI bus

Table of Contents

- General Description
 - bus
 - device
 - function
 - irq_bus
 - irq
- Available PCI slots per each HP Alpha model emulated by CHARON-AXP
 - AlphaServer 400 (3 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer 800 (4 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer 1000 (3 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer 1000A (7 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer 1200 (6 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer 2000 (3 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer 2100 (3 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer 4000 (16 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer 4100 (8 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer DS10 (4 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer DS10L (1 PCI slot)
 - AlphaServer DS15 (4 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer DS20 (6 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer DS25 (6 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer ES40 (10 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer ES45 (10 PCI slots)
 - AlphaServer GS80 (8 PCI busses)
 - AlphaServer GS160 (16 PCI busses)
 - AlphaServer GS320 (32 PCI busses)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General Description

Each peripheral device of CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) connects to CHARON-AXP emulated PCI bus with the following configuration parameters:

bus

Parameter	bus						
Type	Text string						
Value	<p>Value formats:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Models</th> <th>Format</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>AlphaServer 400-4100, DS, ES</td> <td>"pci_<X>"</td> </tr> <tr> <td>AlphaServer GS</td> <td>"qbb_<X>_pca_<Y>_pci_<Z>"</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When specified, the bus configuration parameter tells the CHARON-AXP software the virtual PCI bus to which virtual HP Alpha system shall connect a certain virtual PCI adapter.</p> <p>By default the bus configuration parameter is not specified.</p> <p>If the bus configuration parameter is not specified, CHARON VM software connects the virtual PCI adapter to the first available virtual PCI bus.</p> <p>Example (AlphaServer ES40):</p> <pre>load KZPBA PKA bus=pci_1</pre> <p>Example (AlphaServer GS80):</p> <pre>load KZPBA PKA bus=qbb_1_pca_1_pci_0</pre>	Models	Format	AlphaServer 400-4100, DS, ES	"pci_<X>"	AlphaServer GS	"qbb_<X>_pca_<Y>_pci_<Z>"
Models	Format						
AlphaServer 400-4100, DS, ES	"pci_<X>"						
AlphaServer GS	"qbb_<X>_pca_<Y>_pci_<Z>"						

device

Parameter	device
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>When specified, the device configuration parameter specifies position of a virtual PCI adapter on virtual PCI bus.</p> <p>By default the device configuration parameter is not specified.</p> <p>If the device configuration parameter is not specified, the CHARON VM software connects the virtual PCI adapter at the first available position of the virtual PCI bus.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>load KZPBA PKA device=2</pre>

function

Parameter	function
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>When specified, the function configuration parameter specifies position of a virtual PCI adapter on virtual PCI bus.</p> <p>By default the function configuration parameter is not specified.</p> <p>If the function configuration parameter is not specified, the CHARON VM software connects the virtual PCI a dapter at the first available position of the virtual PCI bus.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>load KZPBA PKA function=0</pre>

irq_bus

Parameter	irq_bus
Type	Text string
Value	<p>When specified, the "irq_bus" configuration parameter specifies virtual bus routing interrupt requests from virtual PCI adapter to CHARON-AXP virtual Alpha CPUs.</p> <p>By default the "irq_bus" configuration parameter is not specified.</p> <p>The "irq_bus" configuration parameter must be set to "isa" for AlphaServer 400. For HP Alpha systems other than AlphaServer 400 the "irq_bus" configuration parameter must be left as is (i.e. not specified).</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>load KZPBA PKA irq_bus=isa</pre>

irq

Parameter	irq
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>When specified, the "irq" configuration parameter assigns interrupt request to the virtual PCI adapter in HP Alpha system.</p> <p>By default the irq configuration parameter is not specified.</p> <p>If the irq configuration parameter is not specified, the CHARON VM software uses the correct values depending on the selected PCI position of a virtual PCI adapter.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>load KZPBA PKA irq=24</pre>

Note that typically all or some of those parameters are specified on loading of some PCI controller in the following way:

```
load KZPBA PKA bus=pci_1 device=1 function=0 irq_bus=isa irq=24
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Available PCI slots per each HP Alpha model emulated by CHARON-AXP

The tables below specifies a map of preloaded devices and available slots for each HP Alpha models emulated by CHARON-AXP.

AlphaServer 400 (3 PCI slots)

In addition to 3 PCI vacant slots there are 2 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 5 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	6	0	11	NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI Adapter	PKA
-	0	7	0	-	Intel i82378 PCI ISA Bridge (SATURN)	
0	0	11	0	10	<option>	
1	0	12	0	15	<option>	
2	0	13	0	9	<option>	

The IRQ stands for ISA IRQ Number because all interrupts are routed through the Intel i82378 PCI ISA Bridge (SATURN) resident cascade of Intel i8259 interrupt controllers.

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not support virtual NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI adapter. Instead, virtual QLOGIC ISP1040B PCI SCSI adapter is used.

i No support for Multi-Function PCI devices in AlphaServer 400.

Example: Loading DE435 into slot 0

```
load DE435/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_0 device=11 function=0 irq_bus=isa
```

i The "irq_bus=isa" setting is specific to AlphaServer 400 only.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

AlphaServer 800 (4 PCI slots)

In addition to 4 PCI vacant slots there are 3 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 7 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	5	0	0	QLOGIC ISP1020 PCI SCSI Adapter	PKA
-	0	6	0	0	S3 Trio32/64 Display Adapter	
-	0	7	0	-	Intel i82375 PCI EISA Bridge (MERCURY)	
0	0	11	0	1	<option>	
			1	2	<option>, function 1	
			2	17	<option>, function 2	
			3	18	<option>, function 3	
1	0	12	0	3	<option>	
			1	4	<option>, function 1	
			2	19	<option>, function 2	
			3	20	<option>, function 3	
2	0	13	0	5	<option>	
			1	6	<option>, function 1	
			2	21	<option>, function 2	
			3	22	<option>, function 3	
3	0	14	0	7	<option>	
			1	8	<option>, function 1	
			2	23	<option>, function 2	
			3	24	<option>, function 3	

The IRQ stands for input line of ASIC interrupt controllers. It has nothing to do with "EISA" style interrupts. So far, the CHARON-AXP VMs do not emulate S3 Trio32/64 Display Adapter. So position of the device 6, function 0 on the PCI 0 remains empty.

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 0

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_0 device=11 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 3, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_0 device=14 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_0 device=14 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_0 device=14 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_0 device=14 function=3
```

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 1, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKB bus=pci_0 device=12 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_0 device=12 function=1
```

 In the above example device name is PKB as there is a built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapter located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned name PKA.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

AlphaServer 1000 (3 PCI slots)

In addition to 3 PCI vacant slots there are 2 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 5 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	6	0	12	NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI Adapter	PKA
-	0	7	0	-	Intel i82375 PCI EISA Bridge (MERCURY)	
0	0	11	0	0	<option>	
			1	1	<option>, function 1	
			2	2	<option>, function 2	
			3	3	<option>, function 3	
1	0	12	0	4	<option>	
			1	5	<option>, function 1	
			2	6	<option>, function 2	
			3	7	<option>, function 3	
2	0	13	0	8	<option>	
			1	9	<option>, function 1	
			2	10	<option>, function 2	
			3	11	<option>, function 3	

The IRQ stands for input line of ASIC interrupt controllers. It has nothing to do with "EISA" style interrupts. So far, the CHARON-AXP VMs do not emulate NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI adapter. Instead, emulation of QLOGIC ISP1040B PCI SCSI adapter is used.

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 0

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_0 device=11 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 0, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_0 device=11 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_0 device=11 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_0 device=11 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_0 device=11 function=3
```

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 2, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKB bus=pci_0 device=13 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_0 device=13 function=1
```

i In the above example device name is PKB as there is a built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapter located "closer" to CPU and therefore assigned name PKA.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

AlphaServer 1000A (7 PCI slots)

In addition to 7 PCI vacant slots there are 3 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 10 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	6	0	-	Intel i82375 PCI EISA Bridge (MERCURY)	
-	0	7	0	-	DECchip 21050 PCI-to-PCI Bridge)	
0	0	11	0	1	<option>	
			1	2	<option>, function 1	
			2	17	<option>, function 2	
			3	18	<option>, function 3	
1	0	12	0	2	<option>	
			1	3	<option>, function 1	
			2	19	<option>, function 2	
			3	20	<option>, function 3	
2	0	13	0	3	<option>	
			1	4	<option>, function 1	
			2	21	<option>, function 2	
			3	22	<option>, function 3	
<i>PCI1 (bus=pci_1)</i>						
-	1	0	0	0	NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI Adapter	PKA
3	1	1	0	7	<option>	
			1	8	<option>, function 1	
			2	23	<option>, function 2	
			3	24	<option>, function 3	
4	1	2	0	9	<option>	
			1	10	<option>, function 1	
			2	25	<option>, function 2	
			3	26	<option>, function 3	
5	1	3	0	11	<option>	
			1	12	<option>, function 1	
			2	27	<option>, function 2	
			3	28	<option>, function 3	
6	1	4	0	13	<option>	
			1	14	<option>, function 1	
			2	29	<option>, function 2	
			3	30	<option>, function 3	

The IRQ stands for input line of ASIC interrupt controllers. It has nothing to do with "EISA" style interrupts. So far, the CHARON-AXP VMs do not emulate NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI adapter. Instead, emulation of QLOGIC ISP1040B PCI SCSI adapter is used.

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 0

```
load DE500BA EWA bus=pci_0 device=11 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 0, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA EWA bus=pci_0 device=11 function=0
load DE500BA EWB bus=pci_0 device=11 function=1
load DE500BA EWC bus=pci_0 device=11 function=2
load DE500BA EWD bus=pci_0 device=11 function=3
```

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 3, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKB bus=pci_1 device=1 function=0
load DE500BA EWA bus=pci_1 device=1 function=1
```

 In the above example device name is PKB as there is a built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapter located "closer" to CPU and therefore assigned name PKA.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

AlphaServer 1200 (6 PCI slots)

In addition to 6 PCI vacant slots there are 2 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 8 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI1 (bus=pci_1)</i>						
-	1	1	0	4	NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI Adapter	PKA
0	1	2	0	8	<option>	
			1	9	<option>, function 1	
			2	10	<option>, function 2	
			3	11	<option>, function 3	
1	1	3	0	12	<option>	
			1	13	<option>, function 1	
			2	14	<option>, function 2	
			3	16	<option>, function 3	
2	1	4	0	16	<option>	
			1	17	<option>, function 1	
			2	18	<option>, function 2	
			3	19	<option>, function 3	
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	1	0	-	Intel i82375 PCI EISA Bridge (MERCURY)	
4	0	2	0	8	<option>	
			1	9	<option>, function 1	
			2	10	<option>, function 2	
			3	11	<option>, function 3	
5	0	3	0	12	<option>	
			1	13	<option>, function 1	
			2	14	<option>, function 2	
			3	15	<option>, function 3	
6	0	4	0	16	<option>	
			1	17	<option>, function 1	
			2	18	<option>, function 2	
			3	19	<option>, function 3	

So far, the CHARON-AXP VMs do not emulate NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI adapter. Instead, emulation of QLOGIC ISP1040B PCI SCSI adapter is used.

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 4

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_0 device=2 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 4, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_0 device=2 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_0 device=2 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_0 device=2 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_0 device=2 function=3
```

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 1, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKB bus=pci_1 device=2 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=2 function=1
```

i In the above example device name is PKB as there is a built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapter located "closer" to CPU and therefore assigned name PKA.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

AlphaServer 2000 (3 PCI slots)

In addition to 3 PCI vacant slots there are 3 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 6 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	0	0	2	DEC TULIP PCI Ethernet adapter	EWA
-	0	1	0	1	NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI Adapter	PKA
-	0	2	0	-	Intel i82375 PCI EISA Bridge (MERCURY)	
0	0	6	0	0	<option>	
			1	24	<option>, function 1	
			2	26	<option>, function 2	
			3	29	<option>, function 3	
1	0	7	0	4	<option>	
			1	25	<option>, function 1	
			2	27	<option>, function 2	
			3	30	<option>, function 3	
2	0	8	0	5	<option>	
			1	20	<option>, function 1	
			2	28	<option>, function 2	
			3	31	<option>, function 3	

The IRQ stands for input line of T2 resident cascade of Intel i8259 interrupt controllers. It has nothing to do with “EISA” style interrupts.

So far the CHARON-AXP emulators do not support virtual NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI adapter. Instead, virtual QLOGIC ISP1040B PCI SCSI adapter is used.

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 0

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_0 device=6 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 0, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_0 device=6 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_0 device=6 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_0 device=6 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWE bus=pci_0 device=6 function=3
```

i In the above examples device name is EWB as there is a built-in EW-like PCI Ethernet Adapter located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned name EWA.

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 1, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKB bus=pci_0 device=7 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_0 device=7 function=1
```

i In the above example device name is PKB as there is a built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapter located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned name PKA, and device name is EWB as there is a built-in EW-like PCI Ethernet Adapter located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned name EWA.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

AlphaServer 2100 (3 PCI slots)

In addition to 3 PCI vacant slots there are 3 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 6 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	0	0	2	DEC TULIP PCI Ethernet adapter	EWA
-	0	1	0	1	NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI Adapter	PKA
-	0	2	0	-	Intel i82375 PCI EISA Bridge (MERCURY)	
0	0	6	0	0	<option>	
			1	24	<option>, function 1	
			2	26	<option>, function 2	
			3	29	<option>, function 3	
1	0	7	0	4	<option>	
			1	25	<option>, function 1	
			2	27	<option>, function 2	
			3	30	<option>, function 3	
2	0	8	0	5	<option>	
			1	20	<option>, function 1	
			2	28	<option>, function 2	
			3	31	<option>, function 3	

The IRQ stands for input line of T2 resident cascade of Intel i8259 interrupt controllers. It has nothing to do with “EISA” style interrupts.

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not support virtual NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI adapter. Instead, virtual QLOGIC ISP1040B PCI SCSI adapter is used.

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 0

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_0 device=6 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 0, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_0 device=6 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_0 device=6 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_0 device=6 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWE bus=pci_0 device=6 function=3
```

i In the above examples device name is EWB as there is a built-in EW-like PCI Ethernet Adapter located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned name EWA.

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 1, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKB bus=pci_0 device=7 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_0 device=7 function=1
```

i In the above example device name is PKB as there is a built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapter located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned name PKA, and device name is EWB as there is a built-in EW-like PCI Ethernet Adapter located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned name EWA.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

AlphaServer 4000 (16 PCI slots)

In addition to 16 PCI vacant slots there are 2 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 18 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI1 (bus=pci_1)</i>						
-	1	1	0	4	NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI Adapter	PKA
1	1	2	0	8	<option>	
			1	9	<option>, function 1	
			2	10	<option>, function 2	
			3	11	<option>, function 3	
2	1	3	0	12	<option>	
			1	13	<option>, function 1	
			2	14	<option>, function 2	
			3	15	<option>, function 3	
3	1	4	0	16	<option>	
			1	17	<option>, function 1	
			2	18	<option>, function 2	
			3	19	<option>, function 3	
4	1	5	0	20	<option>	
			1	21	<option>, function 1	
			2	22	<option>, function 2	
			3	23	<option>, function 3	
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	1	0	-	Intel i82375 PCI EISA Bridge (MERCURY)	
5	0	2	0	8	<option>	
			1	9	<option>, function 1	
			2	10	<option>, function 2	
			3	11	<option>, function 3	
6	0	3	0	12	<option>	
			1	13	<option>, function 1	
			2	14	<option>, function 2	
			3	15	<option>, function 3	
7	0	4	0	16	<option>	
			1	17	<option>, function 1	
			2	18	<option>, function 2	
			3	19	<option>, function 3	
8	0	5	0	20	<option>	
			1	21	<option>, function 1	
			2	22	<option>, function 2	

			3	23	<option>, function 3	
<i>PCI3 (bus=pci_3)</i>						
9	3	2	0	8	<option>	
			1	9	<option>, function 1	
			2	10	<option>, function 2	
			3	11	<option>, function 3	
10	3	3	0	12	<option>	
			1	13	<option>, function 1	
			2	14	<option>, function 2	
			3	15	<option>, function 3	
11	3	4	0	16	<option>	
			1	17	<option>, function 1	
			2	18	<option>, function 2	
			3	19	<option>, function 3	
12	3	5	0	20	<option>	
			1	21	<option>, function 1	
			2	22	<option>, function 2	
			3	23	<option>, function 3	
<i>PCI2 (bus=pci_2)</i>						
13	2	2	0	8	<option>	
			1	9	<option>, function 1	
			2	10	<option>, function 2	
			3	11	<option>, function 3	
14	2	3	0	12	<option>	
			1	13	<option>, function 1	
			2	14	<option>, function 2	
			3	15	<option>, function 3	
15	2	4	0	16	<option>	
			1	17	<option>, function 1	
			2	18	<option>, function 2	
			3	19	<option>, function 3	
16	2	5	0	20	<option>	
			1	21	<option>, function 1	
			2	22	<option>, function 2	
			3	23	<option>, function 3	

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not support virtual NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI adapter. Instead, virtual QLOGIC ISP1040B PCI SCSI adapter is used.

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 4

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=5 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 4, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=5 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_1 device=5 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_1 device=5 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_1 device=5 function=3
```

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 1, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKB bus=pci_1 device=2 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=2 function=1
```

 In the above example device name is PKB as there is a built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapter located "closer" to CPU and therefore assigned name PKA.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

AlphaServer 4100 (8 PCI slots)

In addition to 8 PCI vacant slots there are 2 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 10 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI1 (bus=pci_1)</i>						
-	1	1	0	4	NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI Adapter	PKA
1	1	2	0	8	<option>	
			1	9	<option>, function 1	
			2	10	<option>, function 2	
			3	11	<option>, function 3	
2	1	3	0	12	<option>	
			1	13	<option>, function 1	
			2	14	<option>, function 2	
			3	15	<option>, function 3	
3	1	4	0	16	<option>	
			1	17	<option>, function 1	
			2	18	<option>, function 2	
			3	19	<option>, function 3	
4	1	5	0	20	<option>	
			1	21	<option>, function 1	
			2	22	<option>, function 2	
			3	23	<option>, function 3	
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	1	0	-	Intel i82375 PCI EISA Bridge (MERCURY)	
5	0	2	0	8	<option>	
			1	9	<option>, function 1	
			2	10	<option>, function 2	
			3	11	<option>, function 3	
6	0	3	0	12	<option>	
			1	13	<option>, function 1	
			2	14	<option>, function 2	
			3	15	<option>, function 3	
7	0	4	0	16	<option>	
			1	17	<option>, function 1	
			2	18	<option>, function 2	
			3	19	<option>, function 3	
8	0	5	0	20	<option>	
			1	21	<option>, function 1	
			2	22	<option>, function 2	

	3	23	<option>, function 3	
--	---	----	----------------------	--

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not support virtual NCR 53C810 PCI SCSI adapter. Instead, virtual QLOGIC ISP1040B PCI SCSI adapter is used.

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 4

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=5 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 4, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=5 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_1 device=5 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_1 device=5 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_1 device=5 function=3
```

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 1, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKB bus=pci_1 device=2 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=2 function=1
```

 In the above example device name is PKB as there is a built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapter located "closer" to CPU and therefore assigned name PKA.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

AlphaServer DS10 (4 PCI slots)

In addition to 4 PCI vacant slots there are 5 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 9 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI1 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	7	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI ISA bridge	
-	0	9	0	29	DECchip 21143 PCI Ethernet Adapter	EWA
-	0	11	0	30	DECchip 21143 PCI Ethernet Adapter	EWB
-	0	13	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller	DQA, DQB
1	0	14	0	35	<option>	
			1	34	<option>, function 1	
			2	33	<option>, function 2	
			3	32	<option>, function 3	
2	0	15	0	39	<option>	
			1	38	<option>, function 1	
			2	37	<option>, function 2	
			3	36	<option>, function 3	
3	0	16	0	43	<option>	
			1	42	<option>, function 1	
			2	41	<option>, function 2	
			3	40	<option>, function 3	
4	0	17	0	47	<option>	
			1	46	<option>, function 1	
			2	45	<option>, function 2	
			3	44	<option>, function 3	
-	0	19	0	11	ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter	

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 1

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_0 device=14 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 1, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_0 device=14 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_0 device=14 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWE bus=pci_0 device=14 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWF bus=pci_0 device=14 function=3
```

i In the above examples device name is EWC as there are built-in EW-like PCI Ethernet Adapters located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned names EWA and EWB.

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 1, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKB bus=pci_0 device=14 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_0 device=14 function=1
```

i In the above example device name is PKB as there is a built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapter located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned name PKA, as there are two built-in EW-like PCI Ethernet Adapters located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned names EWA and EWB.

[Back to Table of Content](#)

AlphaServer DS10L (1 PCI slot)

In addition to 1 PCI vacant slots there are 5 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 6 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI1 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	7	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI ISA bridge	
-	0	9	0	29	DECchip 21143 PCI Ethernet Adapter	EWA
-	0	11	0	30	DECchip 21143 PCI Ethernet Adapter	EWB
-	0	13	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller	DQA, DQB
1	0	17	0	47	<option>	
			1	46	<option>, function 1	
			2	45	<option>, function 2	
			3	44	<option>, function 3	
-	0	19	0	11	ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter	

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 1

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_0 device=17 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 1, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_0 device=17 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_0 device=17 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWE bus=pci_0 device=17 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWF bus=pci_0 device=17 function=3
```

i In the above examples device name is EWC as there are built-in EW-like PCI Ethernet Adapters located "closer" to CPU and therefore assigned names EWA and EWB.

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 1, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKB bus=pci_0 device=17 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_0 device=17 function=1
```

i In the above example device name is PKB as there is a built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapter located "closer" to CPU and therefore assigned name PKA, as there are two built-in EW-like PCI Ethernet Adapters located "closer" to CPU and therefore assigned names EWA and EWB

[Back to Table of Content](#)

AlphaServer DS15 (4 PCI slots)

In addition to 4 PCI vacant slots there are 7 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 11 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	7	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI ISA bridge	
-	0	8	0	-	Adaptec AIC-7899 (channel 0)	PKA
			1	-	Adaptec AIC-7899 (channel 1)	PKB
-	0	9	0	-	Intel i82559 PCI Ethernet Adapter	EIA (EWA)
-	0	10	0	-	Intel i82559 PCI Ethernet Adapter	EIB (EWB)
-	0	13	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller	DQA, DQB
-	0	19	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter	
<i>PCI2 (bus=pci_2)</i>						
1	2	7	0	40	<option>	
			1	41	<option>, function 1	
			2	42	<option>, function 2	
			3	43	<option>, function 3	
2	2	8	0	36	<option>	
			1	37	<option>, function 1	
			2	38	<option>, function 2	
			3	39	<option>, function 3	
3	2	9	0	24	<option>	
			1	25	<option>, function 1	
			2	26	<option>, function 2	
			3	27	<option>, function 3	
4	2	10	0	20	<option>	
			1	21	<option>, function 1	
			2	22	<option>, function 2	
			3	23	<option>, function 3	

The IRQ stands for bit position in DRIR of TITAN chip. It has nothing to do with "ISA" style interrupts which are routed to IRQ 55 (including ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller).

So far the CHARON-AXP emulators do not emulate Adaptec AIC-7899. Instead, emulation of QLOGIC ISP1040B is used.

So far the CHARON-AXP emulators do not emulate Intel i82559. Instead, emulation of DECchip 21143 is used.

So far the CHARON-AXP emulators do not emulate ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter. So position of the device 19, function 0 on the PCI 0 remains empty.

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 1

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_2 device=7 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 2, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_2 device=8 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_2 device=8 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWE bus=pci_2 device=8 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWF bus=pci_2 device=8 function=3
```

i In the above examples device name is EWC as there are built-in EW-like PCI Ethernet Adapters located "closer" to CPU and therefore assigned names EWA and EWB.

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 3, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKC bus=pci_2 device=9 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_2 device=9 function=1
```

i In the above example device name is PKC as there are 2 built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapter located "closer" to CPU and therefore assigned name PKA and PKB, as there are two built-in EW-like PCI Ethernet Adapters located "closer" to CPU and therefore assigned names EWA and EWB

[Back to Table of Content](#)

AlphaServer DS20 (6 PCI slots)

In addition to 6 PCI vacant slots there are 5 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 11 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI1 (bus=pci_1)</i>						
4	1	7	0	47	<option>	
			1	46	<option>, function 1	
			2	45	<option>, function 2	
			3	44	<option>, function 3	
5	1	8	0	43	<option>	
			1	42	<option>, function 1	
			2	41	<option>, function 2	
			3	49	<option>, function 3	
6	1	9	0	39	<option>	
			1	38	<option>, function 1	
			2	37	<option>, function 2	
			3	36	<option>, function 3	
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	5	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI ISA bridge	
-	0	6	0	19	Adaptec AIC-7895 (channel 0)	PKA
			1	18	Adaptec AIC-7895 (channel 1)	PKB
-	0	15	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller	DQA, DQB
-	0	19	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter	
1	0	7	0	31	<option>	
			1	30	<option>, function 1	
			2	29	<option>, function 2	
			3	28	<option>, function 3	
2	0	8	0	27	<option>	
			1	26	<option>, function 1	
			2	25	<option>, function 2	
			3	24	<option>, function 3	
3	0	9	0	23	<option>	
			1	22	<option>, function 1	
			2	21	<option>, function 2	
			3	20	<option>, function 3	

The IRQ stands for bit position in DRIR of Tsunami/Typhoon Chip. It has nothing to do with "ISA" style interrupts which are routed to IRQ 55 (including ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller).

Unless SCSI option is plugged into PCI slot 4, 5, or 6, the onboard SCSI controllers appear as PKA (pka7.0.0.6.0) and PKB (pkb7.0.0.106.0) respectively.

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not support virtual Adaptec AIC-7895 PCI SCSI adapter. Instead, virtual QLOGIC ISP1040B PCI SCSI adapter is used.

So far the CHARON-AXP eVMs do not support virtual ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter. So position of the device 19, function 0 on the PCI 0 remains empty

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 4

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=7 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 4, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=7 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_1 device=7 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_1 device=7 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_1 device=7 function=3
```

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 1, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKC bus=pci_0 device=7 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_0 device=7 function=1
```

 In the above example device name is PKC as there are two built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapters located "closer" to CPU and therefore assigned names PKA and PKB.

[Back to Table of Content](#)

AlphaServer DS25 (6 PCI slots)

In addition to 6 PCI vacant slots there are 7 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 13 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	7	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI ISA bridge	
-	0	8	0	-	Intel i82559 PCI Ethernet Adapter	EIA (EWA)
1	0	9	0	24	<option>	
			1	25	<option>, function 1	
			2	26	<option>, function 2	
			3	27	<option>, function 3	
2	0	10	0	12	<option>	
			1	13	<option>, function 1	
			2	14	<option>, function 2	
			3	15	<option>, function 3	
-	0	16	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller	DQA, DQB
-	0	19	1	-	ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter	
<i>PCI1 (bus=pci_1)</i>						
3	1	1	0	28	<option>	
			1	29	<option>, function 1	
			2	30	<option>, function 2	
			3	31	<option>, function 3	
4	1	2	0	32	<option>	
			1	33	<option>, function 1	
			2	34	<option>, function 2	
			3	35	<option>, function 3	
<i>PCI2 (bus=pci_2)</i>						
-	2	1	0	-	Adaptec AIC-7899 (channel 0)	PKA
			1	-	Adaptec AIC-7899 (channel 1)	PKB
-	2	5	0	-	BroadCom BCM5703 PCI Ethernet Adapter	EIB (EWB)
<i>PCI3 (bus=pci_3)</i>						
5	3	1	0	36	<option>	
			1	37	<option>, function 1	
			2	38	<option>, function 2	
			3	39	<option>, function 3	
6	3	2	0	40	<option>	
			1	41	<option>, function 1	
			2	42	<option>, function 2	
			3	43	<option>, function 3	

The IRQ stands for bit position in DRIR of TITAN Chip. It has nothing to do with “ISA” style interrupts which are routed to IRQ 55 (including ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller).

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not emulate Intel i82559. Instead, emulation of DECchip 21143 is used.

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not emulate ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter. So position of the device 19, function 0 on the PCI 0 remains empty.

Unless SCSI option is plugged into PCI slot 1, 2, 3, or 4, the onboard SCSI controllers appear as PKA (pka7.0.0.1.2) and PKB (pkb7.0.0.101.2) respectively.

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not emulate Adaptec AIC-7899. Instead, emulation of QLOGIC ISP1040B is used.

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not emulate BroadCom BCM5703. Instead, emulation of DECchip 21143 is used.

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 5

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_3 device=1 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 5, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_3 device=1 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_3 device=1 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWE bus=pci_3 device=1 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWF bus=pci_3 device=1 function=3
```

i In the above examples device name is EWC as there are built-in EW-like PCI Ethernet Adapters located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned names EWA and EWB.

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 6, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKC bus=pci_3 device=2 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_3 device=2 function=1
```

i In the above example device name is PKB as there is a built-in PK-like PCI SCSI Adapter located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned name PKA, as there are two built-in EW-like PCI Ethernet Adapters located “closer” to CPU and therefore assigned names EWA and EWB

[Back to Table of Content](#)

AlphaServer ES40 (10 PCI slots)

In addition to 10 PCI vacant slots there are 3 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 13 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI1 (bus=pci_1)</i>						
5	1	1	0	24	<option>	
			1	25	<option>, function 1	
			2	26	<option>, function 2	
			3	27	<option>, function 3	
6	1	2	0	28	<option>	
			1	29	<option>, function 1	
			2	30	<option>, function 2	
			3	31	<option>, function 3	
7	1	3	0	32	<option>	
			1	33	<option>, function 1	
			2	34	<option>, function 2	
			3	35	<option>, function 3	
8	1	4	0	36	<option>	
			1	37	<option>, function 1	
			2	38	<option>, function 2	
			3	39	<option>, function 3	
9	1	5	0	40	<option>	
			1	41	<option>, function 1	
			2	42	<option>, function 2	
			3	43	<option>, function 3	
10	1	6	0	44	<option>	
			1	45	<option>, function 1	
			2	46	<option>, function 2	
			3	47	<option>, function 3	
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
1	0	1	0	8	<option>	
			1	9	<option>, function 1	
			2	10	<option>, function 2	
			3	11	<option>, function 3	
2	0	2	0	12	<option>	
			1	13	<option>, function 1	
			2	14	<option>, function 2	
			3	15	<option>, function 3	
3	0	3	1	16	<option>	

			1	17	<option>, function 1	
			2	18	<option>, function 2	
			3	19	<option>, function 3	
4	0	4	0	20	<option>	
			1	21	<option>, function 1	
			2	22	<option>, function 2	
			3	23	<option>, function 3	
-	0	5	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI ISA bridge	
-	0	15	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI ISA bridge	DQA, DQB
-	0	19	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter	

The IRQ stands for bit position in DRIR of Tsunami/Typhoon chip. It has nothing to do with "ISA" style interrupts which are routed to IRQ 55 (including ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller).

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not support virtual ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter. So position of the device 19, function 0 on the PCI 0 remains empty.

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 5

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=1 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 5, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=1 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_1 device=1 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_1 device=1 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_1 device=1 function=3
```

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 1, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKA bus=pci_0 device=1 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_0 device=1 function=1
```

[Back to Table of Content](#)

AlphaServer ES45 (10 PCI slots)

In addition to 10 PCI vacant slots there are 3 PCI positions occupied by on-board devices. All 13 PCI positions are listed in the following table in the order in which Alpha SRM console enumerates them.

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>PCI0 (bus=pci_0)</i>						
-	0	7	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI ISA bridge	
1	0	8	0	20	<option>	
			1	21	<option>, function 1	
			2	22	<option>, function 2	
			3	23	<option>, function 3	
2	0	9	0	24	<option>	
			1	25	<option>, function 1	
			2	26	<option>, function 2	
			3	27	<option>, function 3	
3	0	10	0	12	<option>	
			1	13	<option>, function 1	
			2	14	<option>, function 2	
			3	15	<option>, function 3	
4	0	11	0	16	<option>	
			1	17	<option>, function 1	
			2	18	<option>, function 2	
			3	19	<option>, function 3	
-	0	16	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller	DQA, DQB
-	0	19	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter	
<i>PCI1 (bus=pci_1)</i>						
5	1	1	0	28	<option>	
			1	29	<option>, function 1	
			2	30	<option>, function 2	
			3	31	<option>, function 3	
6	1	2	0	32	<option>	
			1	33	<option>, function 1	
			2	34	<option>, function 2	
			3	35	<option>, function 3	
<i>PCI2 (bus=pci_2)</i>						
7	2	1	0	0	<option>	
			1	1	<option>, function 1	
			2	2	<option>, function 2	
			3	3	<option>, function 3	
8	2	2	0	4	<option>	

			1	5	<option>, function 1	
			2	6	<option>, function 2	
			3	7	<option>, function 3	
<i>PCI3 (bus=pci_3)</i>						
9	3	1	0	36	<option>	
			1	37	<option>, function 1	
			2	38	<option>, function 2	
			3	39	<option>, function 3	
10	3	2	0	40	<option>	
			1	41	<option>, function 1	
			2	42	<option>, function 2	
			3	43	<option>, function 3	

The IRQ stands for bit position in DRIR of TITAN chip. It has nothing to do with "ISA" style interrupts which are routed to IRQ 55 (including ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller).

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not support virtual ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter. So position of the device 19, function 0 on the PCI 0 remains empty.

Example 1: Loading DE500BA into slot 5

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=1 function=0
```

Example 2: Loading multiple DE500BA's into slot 5, populating all 4 functions (gives 4 Ethernet ports)

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_1 device=1 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB bus=pci_1 device=1 function=1
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC bus=pci_1 device=1 function=2
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWD bus=pci_1 device=1 function=3
```

Example 3: Loading mixture of KZPBA and DE500BA into slot 1, populating 2 functions out of 4

```
load KZPBA PKA bus=pci_0 device=8 function=0
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=pci_0 device=8 function=1
```

[Back to Table of Content](#)

AlphaServer GS80 (8 PCI busses)

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>QBB0.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_0_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	0	1	0	36	QLOGIC ISP1040B PCI SCSI Adapter	PKA
2	0	2	0	40	<option>	
3	0	3	0	44	<option>	
-	0	7	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI ISA bridge	
-	0	15	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller	DQA
-	0	19	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter	
<i>QBB0.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_0_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	1	4	0	48	<option>	
5	1	5	0	52	<option>	
6	1	6	0	56	<option>	
7	1	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB0.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_0_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	2	0	0	32	<option>	
2	2	2	0	40	<option>	
3	2	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB0.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_0_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	3	4	0	48	<option>	
5	3	5	0	52	<option>	
6	3	6	0	56	<option>	
7	3	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB1.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_1_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	8	0	0	32	<option>	
2	8	2	0	40	<option>	
3	8	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB1.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_1_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	9	4	0	48	<option>	
5	9	5	0	52	<option>	
6	9	6	0	56	<option>	
7	9	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB1.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_1_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	10	0	0	32	<option>	
2	10	2	0	40	<option>	
3	10	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB1.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_1_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	11	4	0	48	<option>	
5	11	5	0	52	<option>	

6	11	6	0	56	<option>	
7	11	7	0	60	<option>	

PCI 2 and 3 on each QBB are not populated.

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not support virtual ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter. So position of the device 19, function 0 on the PCI 0 remains empty.

Total number of PCI devices configured through CFG file may not exceed 20.

Example: Loading DE500BA into slot 2 of QBB0.PCA0

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=qbb_0_pca_0_pci_0 device=2 function=0
```

[Back to Table of Content](#)

AlphaServer GS160 (16 PCI busses)

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>QBB0.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_0_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	0	1	0	36	QLOGIC ISP1040B PCI SCSI Adapter	PKA
2	0	2	0	40	<option>	
3	0	3	0	44	<option>	
-	0	7	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI ISA bridge	
-	0	15	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller	DQA
-	0	19	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter	
<i>QBB0.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_0_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	1	4	0	48	<option>	
5	1	5	0	52	<option>	
6	1	6	0	56	<option>	
7	1	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB0.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_0_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	2	0	0	32	<option>	
2	2	2	0	40	<option>	
3	2	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB0.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_0_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	3	4	0	48	<option>	
5	3	5	0	52	<option>	
6	3	6	0	56	<option>	
7	3	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB1.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_1_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	8	0	0	32	<option>	
2	8	2	0	40	<option>	
3	8	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB1.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_1_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	9	4	0	48	<option>	
5	9	5	0	52	<option>	
6	9	6	0	56	<option>	
7	9	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB1.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_1_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	10	0	0	32	<option>	
2	10	2	0	40	<option>	
3	10	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB1.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_1_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	11	4	0	48	<option>	
5	11	5	0	52	<option>	

6	11	6	0	56	<option>	
7	11	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB2.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_2_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	16	0	0	32	<option>	
2	16	2	0	40	<option>	
3	16	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB2.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_2_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	17	4	0	48	<option>	
5	17	5	0	52	<option>	
6	17	6	0	56	<option>	
7	17	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB2.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_2_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	18	0	0	32	<option>	
2	18	2	0	40	<option>	
3	18	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB2.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_2_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	19	4	0	48	<option>	
5	19	5	0	52	<option>	
6	19	6	0	56	<option>	
7	19	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB3.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_3_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	24	0	0	32	<option>	
2	24	2	0	40	<option>	
3	24	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB3.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_3_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	25	4	0	48	<option>	
5	25	5	0	52	<option>	
6	25	6	0	56	<option>	
7	25	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB3.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_3_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	26	0	0	32	<option>	
2	26	2	0	40	<option>	
3	26	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB0.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_0_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	27	4	0	48	<option>	
5	27	5	0	52	<option>	
6	27	6	0	56	<option>	
7	27	7	0	60	<option>	

PCA 2 and 3 on each QBB are not populated in emulator.

So far the CHARON-AXP VMs do not emulate ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter. So position of the device 19, function 0 on the PCI 0 on QBB 0 remains empty.

Total number of PCI devices configured through CFG file may not exceed 20.

Example: Loading DE500BA into slot 2 of QBB0.PCA0

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=qbb_0_pca_0_pci_0 device=2 function=0
```

[Back to Table of Content](#)

AlphaServer GS320 (32 PCI busses)

Slot	pci_<N>	device	function	irq	Description	Preloaded Name
<i>QBB0.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_0_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	0	1	0	36	QLOGIC ISP1040B PCI SCSI Adapter	PKA
2	0	2	0	40	<option>	
3	0	3	0	44	<option>	
-	0	7	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI ISA bridge	
-	0	15	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI IDE/ATAPI controller	DQA
-	0	19	0	-	ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter	
<i>QBB0.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_0_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	1	4	0	48	<option>	
5	1	5	0	52	<option>	
6	1	6	0	56	<option>	
7	1	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB0.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_0_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	2	0	0	32	<option>	
2	2	2	0	40	<option>	
3	2	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB0.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_0_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	3	4	0	48	<option>	
5	3	5	0	52	<option>	
6	3	6	0	56	<option>	
7	3	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB1.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_1_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	8	0	0	32	<option>	
2	8	2	0	40	<option>	
3	8	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB1.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_1_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	9	4	0	48	<option>	
5	9	5	0	52	<option>	
6	9	6	0	56	<option>	
7	9	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB1.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_1_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	10	0	0	32	<option>	
2	10	2	0	40	<option>	
3	10	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB1.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_1_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	11	4	0	48	<option>	
5	11	5	0	52	<option>	

6	11	6	0	56	<option>	
7	11	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB2.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_2_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	16	0	0	32	<option>	
2	16	2	0	40	<option>	
3	16	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB2.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_2_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	17	4	0	48	<option>	
5	17	5	0	52	<option>	
6	17	6	0	56	<option>	
7	17	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB2.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_2_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	18	0	0	32	<option>	
2	18	2	0	40	<option>	
3	18	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB2.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_2_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	19	4	0	48	<option>	
5	19	5	0	52	<option>	
6	19	6	0	56	<option>	
7	19	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB3.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_3_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	24	0	0	32	<option>	
2	24	2	0	40	<option>	
3	24	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB3.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_3_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	25	4	0	48	<option>	
5	25	5	0	52	<option>	
6	25	6	0	56	<option>	
7	25	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB3.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_3_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	26	0	0	32	<option>	
2	26	2	0	40	<option>	
3	26	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB3.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_3_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	27	4	0	48	<option>	
5	27	5	0	52	<option>	
6	27	6	0	56	<option>	
7	27	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB4.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_4_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	32	0	0	32	<option>	
2	32	2	0	40	<option>	

3	32	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB4.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_4_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	33	4	0	48	<option>	
5	33	5	0	52	<option>	
6	33	6	0	56	<option>	
7	33	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB4.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_4_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	34	0	0	32	<option>	
2	34	2	0	40	<option>	
3	34	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB4.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_4_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	35	4	0	48	<option>	
5	35	5	0	52	<option>	
6	35	6	0	56	<option>	
7	35	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB5.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_5_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	40	0	0	32	<option>	
2	40	2	0	40	<option>	
3	40	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB5.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_5_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	41	4	0	48	<option>	
5	41	5	0	52	<option>	
6	41	6	0	56	<option>	
7	41	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB5.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_5_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	42	0	0	32	<option>	
2	42	2	0	40	<option>	
3	42	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB5.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_5_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	43	4	0	48	<option>	
5	43	5	0	52	<option>	
6	43	6	0	56	<option>	
7	43	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB6.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_6_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	48	0	0	32	<option>	
2	48	2	0	40	<option>	
3	48	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB6.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_6_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	49	4	0	48	<option>	
5	49	5	0	52	<option>	
6	49	6	0	56	<option>	

7	49	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB6.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_6_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	50	0	0	32	<option>	
2	50	2	0	40	<option>	
3	50	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB6.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_6_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	51	4	0	48	<option>	
5	51	5	0	52	<option>	
6	51	6	0	56	<option>	
7	51	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB7.PCA0.PCI0 (bus=qbb_7_pca_0_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	56	0	0	32	<option>	
2	56	2	0	40	<option>	
3	56	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB7.PCA0.PCI1 (bus=qbb_7_pca_0_pci_1)</i>						
4	57	4	0	48	<option>	
5	57	5	0	52	<option>	
6	57	6	0	56	<option>	
7	57	7	0	60	<option>	
<i>QBB7.PCA1.PCI0 (bus=qbb_7_pca_1_pci_0)</i>						
0/1	58	0	0	32	<option>	
2	58	2	0	40	<option>	
3	58	3	0	44	<option>	
<i>QBB7.PCA1.PCI1 (bus=qbb_7_pca_1_pci_1)</i>						
4	59	4	0	48	<option>	
5	59	5	0	52	<option>	
6	59	6	0	56	<option>	
7	59	7	0	60	<option>	

PCA 2 and 3 on each QBB are not populated in emulator.

So far the MSC/AXP emulators do not emulate ALi M1543C PCI USB adapter. So position of the device 19, function 0 on the PCI 0 on QBB 0 remains empty.

Total number of PCI devices configured through CFG file may not exceed 20.

Example: Loading DE500BA into slot 2 of QBB0.PCA0

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA bus=qbb_0_pca_0_pci_0 device=2 function=0
```

[Back to Table of Content](#)

Disks and tapes

Contents

- KZPBA PCI SCSI adapter
- KGPSA-CA PCI Fibre Channel adapter
- Acer Labs 1543C IDE/ATAPI CD-ROM adapter
- PCI I/O Bypass controller

KZPBA PCI SCSI adapter

Table of Contents

- General description
- Loading KZPBA storage adapter
- Configuration parameters
 - scsi_id
 - host, port
 - container
 - media_type
 - removable
 - geometry
 - use_io_file_buffering

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General description

KZPBA is a PCI SCSI adapter based on the QLogic ISP1040 Fast Wide SCSI adapter chip for HP Alpha.

In CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) environment it supports up to 120 disks and tapes.

i For systems with more than 16 heavily used units it is recommended to configure several virtual KZPBA PCI SCSI adapters and distribute the heavily loaded units evenly between the adapters.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Loading KZPBA storage adapter

Syntax for loading KZPBA storage adapter:

```
load KZPBA <name>
```

Example:

```
load KZPBA PKA
```

In AlphaStation 400 configuration use the following syntax for KZPBA storage adapter loading:

```
load KZPBA PKB irq_bus = isa
```

The adapter instance name ("PKA" in the example above) is used then for parametrization, for example:

```
set PKA container[602]="C:\My disks\vms_distribution.vdisk"
```

The numbers in the square brackets represent SCSI ID and LUN of the devices on the virtual KZPBA SCSI bus.

They have the following format: **XXYY**, where:

Parameter	Range	Description
XX	0..15	SCSI ID
YY	00..07	LUN

By default KZPBA adapter uses first available PCI slot. If instead some particular slot is needed, refer to [this section](#) for details of specific placement of PCI peripherals on CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) PCI bus.

By default each loaded KZPBA SCSI PCI adapter has SCSI ID=7. This setting can be changed with "scsi_id" parameter, for example:

```
set PKA scsi_id=0
```

i CHARON-AXP HP Alpha models may have one or two KZPBA adapters preloaded.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Configuration parameters

The KZPBA PCI SCSI adapter emulation has the following configuration parameters:



scsi_id

Parameter	scsi_id
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>Specifies SCSI ID of KZPBA PCI SCSI Adapter in a range 0..7</p> <p>By default the "scsi_id" configuration parameter is set to 7.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set PKA scsi_id=0</pre>

host, port

Parameter	host, port
Type	Text string
Value	<p>These parameters are used in SCSI cluster configurations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specifies remote end-point (remote host name and, optionally, TCP/IP port on remote host) of SCSI connection between this KZPBA PCI SCSI adapter and remote KZPBA PCI SCSI adapter on some host. • Specifies local end-point (TCP/IP port on local host) of SCSI connection between this KZPBA PCI SCSI adapter and remote KZPBA PCI SCSI adapter on some host. <p>By default the "host" and "port" configuration options are not specified.</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <pre>port[connection-number]=<local port> host[connection-number]="<host-name{:tcpip-port-no}>"</pre> <p>where: connection_number = remote_scsi_id * 100 + lun_id</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set PKA port[600]=17060 host[600]="localhost:16070"</pre>

container

Parameter	container[N] N is "XXYY" number, where XX = SCSI ID (0..15) and YY = LUN (00..07)
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Possible values of the parameter are strings in one of the following forms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Physical disk <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "\\.\PhysicalDrive<X>", where X is 0, 1, ... <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Be careful not to destroy all the information from the disk dedicated to CHARON VM by mistake. These disks must not be formatted by the host OS. Example: <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">set PKA container[0]="\\.\PhysicalDrive1"</pre> • Physical disk by its WWID <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID=XXX-...-XXXX)" <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Be careful not to destroy all the information from the disk dedicated to CHARON VM by mistake. These disks must not be formatted by the host OS. DevID addresses the target physical disk by its WWID (hexadecimal 128-bit identifier assigned to the disk drive by its manufacturer/originator). Example: <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">set PKA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID=6008-05F3-0005-2950-BF8E-0B86-A0C7-0001)"</pre> • iSCSI disks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "\\.\PhysicalDrive(iScsiTarget = <iSCSI target>, LUN = <LUN number>)" <ul style="list-style-type: none"> iScsiTarget addresses the disk by its iSCSI target name. LUN specifies LUN on connected iSCSI disk. Example: <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">set PKA container[200]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(iScsiTarget=iqn.2008-04:iscsi.charon-target-test1, LUN= 1)"</pre> • Tape device <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "\\.\Tape<X>", where X is 0, 1, ... <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Example: <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">set PKA container[600]="\\.\Tape0"</pre>

- **SCSI device unknown to Windows for direct mapping, for example, a SCSI disk or tape reader**

- "\\.\Scsi<N>:<X>:<Y>:<Z>"

The values of N, X, Y and Z can be collected using special utility "Host Device Check" included in the CHARON distributive - or manually by investigation of the devices connected to CHARON host in the "Device Manager" applet.

Parameter	Description
N	A logical number assigned by host operating system (Microsoft Windows) to logical or host's physical storage resource such as physical SCSI HBA
X	An internal SCSI bus number (usually 0) on host's physical SCSI HBA
Y	A SCSI ID of physical SCSI target device attached to host's physical SCSI HBA
Z	A logical unit number inside physical SCSI target device attached to host's physical SCSI HBA

Example:

```
set PKA container[202]="\\.\Scsi1:0:1:0"
```

- **Floppy drive**

- "\\.\A:"
- "\\.\B:"

Example:

```
set PKA container[300]="\\.\A:"
```

- **CDROM device**

- "\\.\CdRom<X>", where X is 0, 1, ...

Example:

```
set PKA container[400]="\\.\CdRom0"
```

- **ISO file for reading distribution CD-ROM image**

- [<drive>:\<path-name>\<file-name>[.iso]]

Mapping may also include the full path (recommended), for example: "C:\My disks\vms_distribution.iso"

Example:

```
set PKA container[600]="C:\My disks\vms_distribution.iso"
```

- **File representing a physical disk of the HP Alpha system (disk image)**

- [<drive>:\<path-name>\<file-name>[.vdisk]]

These files can be created from scratch with "MkDisk" utility. Data and OS disks backups are transferred from the original system via tapes or network and restored into these container files.

Mapping may also include the full path (recommended), for example: "C:\My disks\my_boot_disk.vdisk"

Example:

```
set PKA container[401]="tru64-v51-system.vdisk"
```

Using compressed folders to store virtual disks and tapes is not supported

- **File representing the tape (tape image)**

- [`<drive>:\<path-name>\<file-name>.vtape`]

The container-file to which an emulated tape drive is mapped is created automatically when the emulator starts, and when the device is accessed from within the guest operating system.

We recommend specifying the full path to the container-file, for example: "C:\MyTapes\backup.vtape"

Example:

```
set PKA container[500]="E:\Tapes\backup.vtape"
```


Using compressed folders to store virtual disks and tapes is not supported

How the Emulator Maps Guest-OS Operations to the Virtual Tape Drive

Guest-OS Operation	Emulator Action
Open device for writing	Create a container file if necessary; open for writing and lock the container file
Open device for reading	Create a container file if none exists. open for reading and lock container file
Unload (eject) tape from drive	Close a container file if open and unlock it - this allows copy/move/delete operations on CHARON host

The container file associated with a virtual tape drive can be compared to the tape cartridge used in a physical tape drive. Both store the data written to the tape device by the guest OS.

The size of virtual tape container files is limited only by space available in the emulator host file system.

 Prerequisite to the examples below: a virtual tape device has been configured in the CHARON configuration file and it is not in use by the guest OS.

To perform backup:

1. The tape device may be issued the "unload" command and the container-file moved/deleted to insure proper status
2. Initialize the tape device using standard guest OS procedure.
3. Perform backup.
4. Issue "unload" command to the tape device in the guest OS.
5. On the emulator host, move the *.vtape container file containing backup data for storage or further backup.

To restore from a backup:

1. The tape device may be issued the "unload" command to insure proper status.
2. On the emulator host, move or copy a *.vtape container file containing backup data onto the filename specified in the CHARON configuration file.
3. Perform restore.
4. Issue the "unload" command to the tape device in the guest OS.
5. Delete or move the container file in preparation for the next vtape operation.

CHARON does not support multi-volume backup for tape images. If some multi-volume set (in form of tape images) has to be restored it is recommended to configure several tape drives in CHARON VM configuration file, assign each tape image to each tape drive and use them in the following way (OpenVMS example):


```
$ BACKUP MKA100:BACKUP.BCK,MKA200,MKA300,MKA4000/SAVE_SET DKA0:...
```

- **Other type of drive, for example magneto-optical drive**

- "\\.\<N>:"

Example:


```
set PKA container[300]="\\.\z:"
```

 This parameter is initially not set, thus creating NO storage elements on the controller.

media_type

Parameter	media_type[N] N is "XXYY" number, where XX = SCSI ID (0..15) and YY = LUN (00..07)
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Instructs CHARON VM to use the supplied value as the PRODUCT field in the SCSI INQUIRY data returned to a software running on virtual HP Alpha system in response to SCSI INQUIRY command.</p> <p>If not specified, CHARON VM attempts to guess the SCSI INQUIRY data based on virtual SCSI device type and underlying container (which is specified in the corresponding container configuration parameter).</p> <p>Initially is not specified.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set PKA media_type[0]="HSZ70"</pre>

removable

Parameter	removable[N] N is "XXYY" number, where XX = SCSI ID (0..15) and YY - LUN (00..07)
Type	Boolean
Value	<p>When set to "true", the removable configuration parameter instructs CHARON VM to report the corresponding virtual SCSI device as removable.</p> <p>Note to set this parameter to "true" if this disk storage element is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mapped to a host removable device • Mapped to a disk/tape image located on a host removable device • Mapped to a disk/tape image that has to be renamed/moved/deleted right after dismounting it in the guest OS <p>By default the removable configuration parameter is set to "false".</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set PKA removable[400]=true</pre> <p> Note that virtual SCSI tapes and CD-ROM devices are always reported as removable regardless of the "removable" configuration parameter.</p>

geometry

Parameter	<p>geometry [N]</p> <p>N is "XXYY" number, where XX = SCSI ID (0..15) and YY - LUN (00..07)</p>																
Type	Text String																
Value	<p>This formatted string value specifies the explicit geometry of the disk storage element. This parameter is not applicable to tape storage elements.</p> <p>The string format is <X>"/"<Y>["/"<Z>]["/"] or <X>"/"<Y>["/"<Z>]["/"] where:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>X</td> <td>The number of sectors per track</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Y</td> <td>The number of tracks per cylinder</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Z</td> <td> <p>The number of cylinders on the unit.</p> <p>If omitted, Z is calculated based on X, Y and the total number of sectors on the unit that reflects the size of the disk storage element.</p> <p>This is an optional parameter.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>B</td> <td> <p>The total size of the disk (in blocks) reported to the guest OS.</p> <p>If omitted it is calculated automatically.</p> <p>This is an optional parameter.</p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If this parameter is not set, CHARON VM will configure the geometry based on the most probable disk type.</p> <p>Initially not set.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>It is possible to specify each parameter independently of another one. The following syntax is used for that:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">set PKA geometry[300]="*,*,*,16777210"</pre> </div> <p>The syntax described above is applicable only to disk storage elements. If the container is a tape image, the following format is used instead:</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">"<image-size>[, <early-warning-zone-size>]"</pre> <p>where:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>image-size</td> <td>The tape size in MB</td> </tr> <tr> <td>early-warning-zone-size</td> <td> <p>The size (in KB) of the space left on the tape when a warning to the OS is issued.</p> <p>If omitted, 64K is assumed.</p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Example:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">set PKA geometry[603] = "255/255"</pre>	Parameter	Description	X	The number of sectors per track	Y	The number of tracks per cylinder	Z	<p>The number of cylinders on the unit.</p> <p>If omitted, Z is calculated based on X, Y and the total number of sectors on the unit that reflects the size of the disk storage element.</p> <p>This is an optional parameter.</p>	B	<p>The total size of the disk (in blocks) reported to the guest OS.</p> <p>If omitted it is calculated automatically.</p> <p>This is an optional parameter.</p>	Parameter	Description	image-size	The tape size in MB	early-warning-zone-size	<p>The size (in KB) of the space left on the tape when a warning to the OS is issued.</p> <p>If omitted, 64K is assumed.</p>
Parameter	Description																
X	The number of sectors per track																
Y	The number of tracks per cylinder																
Z	<p>The number of cylinders on the unit.</p> <p>If omitted, Z is calculated based on X, Y and the total number of sectors on the unit that reflects the size of the disk storage element.</p> <p>This is an optional parameter.</p>																
B	<p>The total size of the disk (in blocks) reported to the guest OS.</p> <p>If omitted it is calculated automatically.</p> <p>This is an optional parameter.</p>																
Parameter	Description																
image-size	The tape size in MB																
early-warning-zone-size	<p>The size (in KB) of the space left on the tape when a warning to the OS is issued.</p> <p>If omitted, 64K is assumed.</p>																

use_io_file_buffering

Parameter	use_io_file_buffering[N] N is "XXYY" number, where XX = SCSI ID (0..15) and YY = LUN (00..07)
Type	Text String
Value	<p>Instructs CHARON VM to enable host operating system I/O cache on reading/writing operations.</p> <p>The following values are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "true" or "write-back" - the "write back" caching mode is used • "write-through" - the "write through" caching mode is used • "false" - caching is switched off <p>i Note that this caching has a significant effect only in case of mapping to disk and tape containers, not physical drives.</p> <p>When enabled, host operating system I/O cache may significantly improve I/O performance of the virtual system. At the same time maintaining I/O cache requires additional host resources (CPU and memory) which may negatively affect overall performance of the virtual system.</p> <p>Initially is set to "false".</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set PKA use_io_file_buffering[603]=true</pre>

When a tape or disk image connected to an emulated KZPBA controller is dismounted by OpenVMS, it is disconnected from CHARON VM and can be manipulated. It can be replaced with a different disk image if it keeps the same name. This capability may be useful when designing back-up and restore procedures. When copying CHARON-AXP disk images while CHARON VM is running, please take care to minimize the risk of overloading a heavily loaded CHARON host system. For example, using a sequential series of simple ftp binary copies is less resource intensive and thus less disruptive than multiple, simultaneous copies.

Empty disk images are created with the "MkDisk" utility. Tape images (*.vtape) will be created automatically if they don't exist (no utility needed).

CHARON-AXP is able to boot from disk images of any OpenVMS/Alpha and Tru64 version.

The virtual KZPBA storage controller examines the file extension (`vdisk` or `vtape`) to distinguish between a disk image and a tape image.

Configured physical devices or tape/disk images that do not exist on the host system will, in general, cause OpenVMS/Alpha to report the unit offline. In some cases this will result in a VMS BUG CHECK. In this case, an error message will be written to the log file.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

KGPSA-CA PCI Fibre Channel adapter

Table of Contents

- General description
- Loading KGPSA storage adapter
- Configuration parameters
 - storage_controller_path_id
 - host_bus_location
 - wwid
 - container
 - media_type
 - removable
 - geometry
 - use_io_file_buffering
- Mapping to host resources
 - Fabric virtualization mode
 - Usage of "presentation mode"
 - Pass Through mode
 - Installation of EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter driver
 - Collecting the parameters for mapping
 - Configuration of KGPSA-CA in pass through mode
 - FCMGR utility description
 - Configuration steps using FCMGR utility

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General description

CHARON-AXP supports emulation of DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI Fibre Channel adapter.

Every instance of KGPSA-CA works in one of the three following modes:

- **Fabric virtualization mode** (mapping to disk images and host/SAN physical disks). This is default mode.
- **Usage of a "presentation mode"** of external storage controllers to automatically configure KGPSA-CA disks correspondent to the LUNs provided by the external storages
- **CHARON PCI Pass Through mode** (using a specific CHARON PCI Pass Through driver to work through the EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter plugged into host)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Loading KGPSA storage adapter

Syntax for loading KGPSA-CA storage adapter:

```
load KGPSA <name>
```

Example:

```
load KGPSA FGA
```

In AlphaStation 400 configuration use the following syntax for KGPSA-CA storage adapter loading:

```
load KGPSA FGA irq_bus = isa
```

The adapter instance name ("FGA" in the example above) is used then for parametrization, for example:

```
set FGA container[100]="C:\My disks\vms_distributive.vdisk"
```

Numbers in the square brackets represent KGPSA-CA units. They can be in the range 0..32766, but no more than 255 units can be configured on a single

controller.

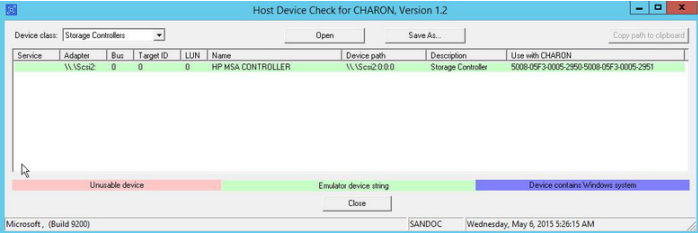
By default KGPSA-CA adapter uses first available PCI slot. If instead some particular slot is needed, refer to [this section](#) for details of specific placement of PCI peripherals on CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) PCI bus.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Configuration parameters

The KGPSA-CA PCI FC adapter emulation has the following configuration parameters:

storage_controller_path_id

Parameter	storage_controller_path_id
Type	Text String
Value	<p>Instructs the CHARON VM to create a set of virtual FC devices and connect to the virtual system through the virtual KGPSA FC Adapter.</p> <p>i In this mode WWID and UDID values are taken from the storage controller directly. Note that some storage controllers may not support acquiring UDID, in this case this way of mapping cannot be used in case of OpenVMS (Tru64 Unix is Ok!)</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <pre>load KGPSA <controller name> storage_controller_path_id = <Storage controller path ID></pre> <p>where the "Storage controller path ID" parameter is a storage (for example SAN) controller path ID. This ID can be obtained from the "Host Device Check" utility ("Storage Controllers" section):</p>  <pre>load KGPSA FGA storage_controller_path_id = 5008-05F3-0005-2950-5008-05F3-0005-2951</pre> <p>It is also possible to use wildcards for specifying the ID number:</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>load KGPSA FGA storage_controller_path_id = 5008-05F3-0005-2950-*--05F3-0005-*</pre> <p>In this case CHARON will collect the LUNs from all the matching paths.</p> <p>This syntax works disregarding whether Windows MPIO is active or not. If it is active, CHARON VM uses "active" path (because it works through Windows), if Windows MPIO is OFF, CHARON VM selects the first matching path (and warns you in the LOG file).</p> <p>i Note that LUNs obtained by usage of "storage_controller_path_id" parameter is not re-enumerated on reboot, so this mode is possible to use in case of shared disks clusters.</p>

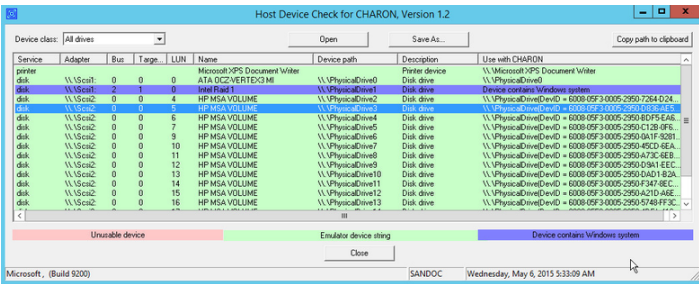
host_bus_location

Parameter	host_bus_location
Type	Text String
Value	<p>Establish connection between virtual DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC adapter and physical EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter (pass through mode)</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <pre>load KGPSA <controller name> host_bus_location="PCI bus X, device Y, function Z"</pre> <p>where X, Y, and Z describe location of physical EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter in the host computer (see this section for details).</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>load KGPSA FGA host_bus_location="PCI bus 3, device 1, function 0"</pre>

wwid

Parameter	<p>wwid[N]</p> <p>N is 0..32766 (no more than 255 units)</p>
Type	Text String
Value	<p>Sets WWID for emulated KGPSA adapter unit in case if the WWID can not be obtained directly from the device CHARON VM is mapped to.</p> <p>For example in case of disk images or local physical drives CHARON VM cannot get its WWID from the the host system, so it is automaticaly introduce some generated WWID. In case if this WWID is not acceptable it can be replaced with the custom one using the "wwid" parameter.</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <pre>set <controller name> wwid[unit-number]="XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX"</pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set FGA wwid[2]="6008-05F3-0005-2950-BF8E-0B86-A0C7-0001"</pre>

container

Parameter	container[N] N is 0..32766 (no more than 255 units)
Type	Text String
Value	<p>Possible values of the parameter are strings in one of the following forms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Physical disk <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ "\\.\PhysicalDrive<X>", where X is 0, 1, ... <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ⚠ Be careful not to destroy all the information from the disk dedicated to CHARON VM by mistake. These disks must not be formatted by the host OS. ℹ In this mode WWID is generated by CHARON and UDID is defined by the index of the "container" parameter. <p>Example:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">set FGA container[0]="\\.\PhysicalDrive1"</pre> <div style="border: 1px solid #f4a460; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>In case "\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>" points to some external iSCSI or FC disk note that the disks re-enumeration may appear on CHARON host reboot, for example an external disk originally referenced as "\\.\PhysicalDrive3" may become "\\.\PhysicalDrive1" etc. Especially it is important in shared disks cluster configurations!</p> <p>So it is strictly recommended to use "Mapping by WWID" / "Mapping iSCSI disks" ways of mapping in these situations (see below). The mapping by using "storage_controller_path_id" (see above) is acceptable as well, since it is not re-enumerating LUNs on each re-boot or CHARON VM restart.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Physical disk by its WWID <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ "\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID =XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX)" <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ⚠ Be careful not to destroy all the information from the disk dedicated to CHARON VM by mistake. These disks must not be formatted by the host OS. ℹ In this mode WWID is generated by CHARON VM and UDID is defined by the index of the "container" parameter. <p>Example:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">set FGA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID= 6008-05F3-0005-2950-BF8E-0B86-A0C7-0001)"</pre> <p>The WWID values can be obtained from "Host Device Check" utility ("All drives" section), for example:</p> 

- **iSCSI disks**

- "\\.\PhysicalDrive(iSCSITarget = <iSCSI target>, LUN = <LUN number>)"

iSCSITarget addresses the disk by its iSCSI target name. LUN specifies LUN on connected iSCSI disk.

i In this mode WWID is generated by CHARON VM and UDID is defined by the index of the "container" parameter.

Example:

```
set FGA container[200]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(iSCSITarget= iqn.2008-04:iSCSI.charon-target-test1, LUN= 1)"
```

- **File representing a physical disk of the HP Alpha system (disk image)**

- [<drive>:"\<path-name>\"<file-name>[".vdisk"]

These files can be created from scratch with "MkDisk" utility. Data and OS disks backups are transferred from the original system via tapes or network and restored into these container files.

Mapping may also include the full path (recommended), for example: "C:\My disks\my_boot_disk.vdisk"

Example:

```
set FGA container[401]="my_dka401.vdisk"
```

Using compressed folders to store virtual disks and tapes is not supported

i This parameter is initially not set, thus creating NO storage elements on the controller.

media_type

Parameter	media_type[N] N is 0..32766 (no more than 255 units)
Type	Text String
Value	Instructs CHARON VM to use the supplied value as the PRODUCT field in the FC INQUIRY data returned to a software running on virtual HP Alpha system in response to FC INQUIRY command. If not specified, CHARON VM attempts to guess the FC INQUIRY data based on virtual FC device type and underlying container (which is specified in the corresponding container configuration parameter). Initially is not specified. Example: <pre>set FGA media_type[0]="HSZ70"</pre>

removable

Parameter	removable[N] N is 0..32766 (no more than 255 units)
Type	Boolean
Value	<p>When set to "true", the removable configuration parameter instructs CHARON VM to report the corresponding virtual FC device as removable.</p> <p>By default the removable configuration parameter is set to "false".</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set FGA removable[400]=true</pre>

geometry

Parameter	geometry [N] N is 0..32766 (no more than 255 units)										
Type	Text String										
Value	<p>This formatted string value specifies the explicit geometry of the disk storage element.</p> <p>The string format is <X>"/<Y>["/<Z>["/] or <X>"/<Y>["/<Z>["/] where:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr style="background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <th style="text-align: left;">Parameter</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">X</td> <td>The number of sectors per track</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">Y</td> <td>The number of tracks per cylinder</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">Z</td> <td> The number of cylinders on the unit. If omitted, Z is calculated based on X, Y and the total number of sectors on the unit that reflects the size of the disk storage element. This is an optional parameter. </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">B</td> <td> The total size of the disk (in blocks) reported to the guest OS. If omitted it is calculated automatically. This is an optional parameter. </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If this parameter is not set, CHARON VM will configure the geometry based on the most probable disk type.</p> <p>Initially not set.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">set FGA geometry[201] = "255/255"</pre> <p style="margin-top: 20px;">It is possible to specify each parameter independently of another one. The following syntax is used for that:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">set FGA geometry[300]="*,*,*,16777210"</pre>	Parameter	Description	X	The number of sectors per track	Y	The number of tracks per cylinder	Z	The number of cylinders on the unit. If omitted, Z is calculated based on X, Y and the total number of sectors on the unit that reflects the size of the disk storage element. This is an optional parameter.	B	The total size of the disk (in blocks) reported to the guest OS. If omitted it is calculated automatically. This is an optional parameter.
Parameter	Description										
X	The number of sectors per track										
Y	The number of tracks per cylinder										
Z	The number of cylinders on the unit. If omitted, Z is calculated based on X, Y and the total number of sectors on the unit that reflects the size of the disk storage element. This is an optional parameter.										
B	The total size of the disk (in blocks) reported to the guest OS. If omitted it is calculated automatically. This is an optional parameter.										

use_io_file_buffering

Parameter	use_io_file_buffering[N] N is 0..32766 (no more than 255 units)
Type	Text String
Value	<p>Instructs CHARON VM to enable host operating system I/O cache on reading/writing operations.</p> <p>The following values are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "true" or "write-back" - the "write back" caching mode is used • "write-through" - the "write through" caching mode is used • "false" - caching is switched off <p>i Note this caching has a significant effect only in case of mapping to disk containers, not physical drives.</p> <p>When enabled, host operating system I/O cache may significantly improve I/O performance of the virtual system. At the same time maintaining I/O cache requires additional host resources (CPU and memory) which may negatively affect overall performance of the virtual system.</p> <p>Initially is set to "false".</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set FGA use_io_file_buffering[300]=true</pre>

When a disk image connected to an emulated KGPSA-CA controller is dismounted by OpenVMS, it is disconnected from CHARON VM and can be manipulated. It can be replaced with a different disk image if it keeps the same name. This capability may be useful when designing back-up and restore procedures. When copying CHARON disk images while CHARON VM is running, please take care to minimize the risk of overloading a heavily loaded CHARON host system. For example, using a sequential series of simple ftp binary copies is less resource intensive and thus less disruptive than multiple, simultaneous copies.

Empty disk images are created with the "MkDisk" utility.

CHARON-AXP is able to boot from disk images of any OpenVMS/Alpha and Tru64 version.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Mapping to host resources

There are 3 modes of KGPSA-CA mapping to system resources:

Mode	Description	Pros	Cons
Fabric virtualization mode	<p>Virtual KGPSA-CA PCI FC adapter is mapped to physical disks (both local, FC and iSCSI) and disk images</p> <p>i This is default mode, suitable for most cases</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High I/O performance using modern local SSD disks. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Requires CHARON VM reconfiguration and restart on any change to the mapped disk images and physical drives Disk images cannot be used in case of Tru64 cluster, but acceptable for OpenVMS cluster.
"Presentation" mode	<p>CHARON VM automatically creates/removes a set of virtual FC devices on a virtual KGPSA-CA FC adapter correspondent to available external SAN LUNs</p> <p>i This mode is recommended in case of working with SAN that may change LUN configuration - so CHARON VM will reflect it on-fly w/o reconfiguration and restarting.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No reconfiguration and restart of CHARON VM is needed on change to the virtual FC drives provided as LUNs by the connected SAN. Effectively any SAN FC system could be used, that means newer, faster, larger, FC HBA controllers and device drivers supported by newer, faster host server platforms and operating systems - it offers significant performance capabilities and performance improvements. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Target configurations are restricted to the SAN models capable to work with HW Alphas (for example acquiring UDID must be supported in case of OpenVMS). This restriction comes from the fact that different SAN controllers could have different level of SCSI-3 protocol support, and if apparently some individual SAN model does not properly support complete set of SCSI-3 commands used by OpenVMS & Tru64 KGPSA-CA drivers, then with high probability such SAN Controller will not be able to work with CHARON-AXP in "presentation" (as well as in Pass Through) Mode.
Pass Through mode	<p>This mode allows connection between virtual KGPSA-CA FC adapter and physical EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter plugged into host's PCI/PCI-X/PCIe slot</p> <p>i This mode is recommended for cluster setups that include HW Alphas</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High performance Support of shared disks and cluster configuration that includes HW Alphas 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cannot be used in VMware environment Obsolete PCI-X cards are not available anymore, HBA list is restricted to several EMULEX HBA models only. No way to use HBA from other vendors. Target configurations are restricted to SAN models capable to work with HW Alphas. As EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapters have been never used on Alphas, formally there is a probability that some compatibility problems may be detected.

All the described modes can be used in case of a cluster including HW Alphas and shared SAN, but pay attention that all the disks must look absolutely the same to the operating systems on all the cluster nodes, including CHARON: same WWID, same UDID (in case of OpenVMS), same size, same geometry etc.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Fabric virtualization mode

In this mode KGPSA-CA PCI FC adapter can be directly mapped to physical disks (both local and iSCSI) and disk images as shown in the following example:

```
set FGA container[0]="C:\My disks\my_dka401.vdisk"
set FGA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive1"
set FGA container[200]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID= 6008-05F3-0005-2950-BF8E-0B86-A0C7-0001) "
set FGA container[300]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(iSCSITarget= iqn.2008-04:iSCSI.charon-target-test1, LUN= 1) "
```

! Use only "Mapping by WWID" and "Mapping iSCSI disks" syntax in case of the mapped physical disk located on some external disk controller (SAN, etc) since the "\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>" re-enumeration may happen on CHARON host reboot.

i Note that WWID and UDID is generated by CHARON VM in its mode. It may be important in case of shared disks cluster configurations.

See the "Configuration parameters" section for details.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Usage of "presentation mode"

CHARON-AXP can utilize so called "presentation mode" of the storage controller it maps to.

In this mode CHARON VM creates a set of virtual FC devices and connects to the SAN system through the virtual KGPSA FC adapter.

The main benefit of this mode is a flexible way of CHARON-AXP virtual disks management depending on the mapped storage controller configuration. LUN parameters of any available to CHARON host storage controller specified in CHARON VM configuration file via "storage_controller_path_id" parameter are automatically scanned and then assigned as 'virtual' FC drives which guest OS can see, no need to manually change/redo/modify virtual LUN parameters in emulator.

For example if an extra disk has been added to the storage controller it will automatically appear as a new disk unit on the corresponding virtual KGPSA-CA virtual controller mapped to that storage controller.

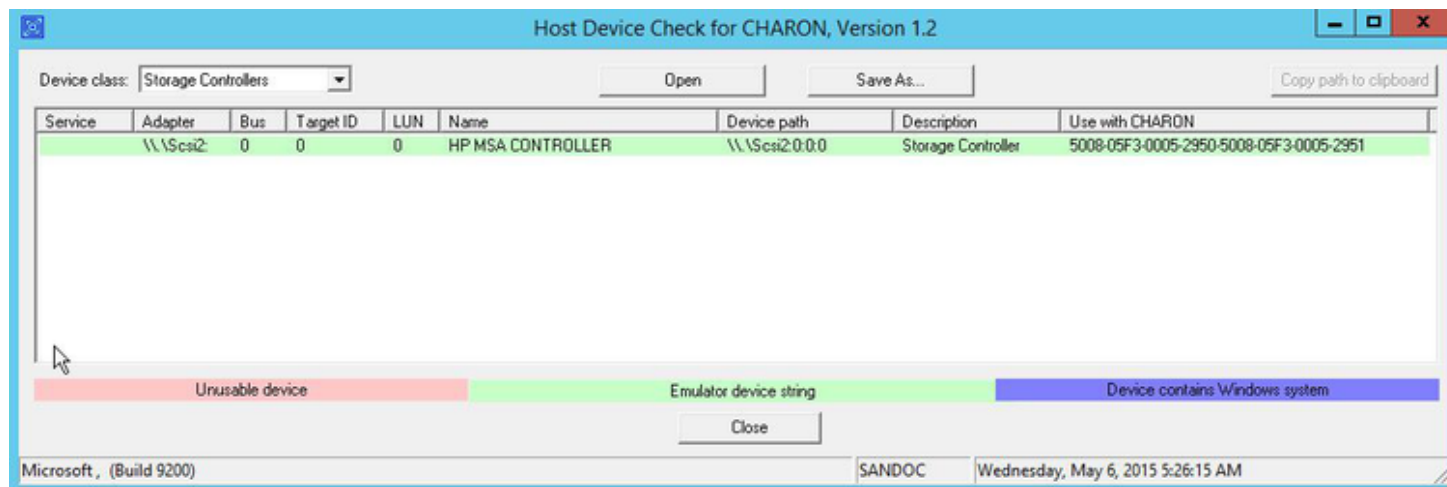
In "presentation mode" CHARON-AXP supports the following operations with FC disks (similar to ones supported in KGPSA FC Pass Through mode) w/o need of CHARON VM restart:

- Dynamically allocation (retranslation) of new created SAN LUN to virtual Alpha configuration
- Scan and translation of SAN LUN parameters to virtual Alpha's KGPSA DGxx: virtual drive parameters
- Propagation of SAN LUN size change to virtual Alpha's KGPSA virtual drive parameters
- Automatically deallocation from virtual Alpha deleted SAN LUN

Example of configuration:

```
load KGPSA FGA storage_controller_path_id = 5008-05F3-0005-2950-5008-05F3-0005-2951
```

The ID number specified in the example above is a storage (for example SAN) controller path ID. This ID can be obtained from the "Host Device Check" utility ("Storage Controllers" section):



Once specified, all the disks attached to the storage are automatically mapped as disk units to CHARON VM.

It is also possible to use wildcards for specifying the ID number:

```
load KGPSA FGA storage_controller_path_id = 5008-05F3-0005-2950-* -05F3-0005-*
```

In this case CHARON VM will collect the LUNs from all the matching paths.

This syntax works disregarding whether Windows MPIO is active or not. If it is active, CHARON VM uses "active" path (because it works through Windows), if Windows MPIO is OFF, CHARON VM selects the first matching path (and warns you in the LOG file).

Usage of LUNs in cluster configuration:

Note that PATHs (on OpenVMS level) do not affect OpenVMS cluster. What really makes sense is LUN size, geometry, WWI, etc. CHARON VM obtains these properties from the LUN (within the limits established by Windows), so LUNs should appear similar to all cluster members.

i Note that LUNs obtained by usage of "storage_controller_path_id" parameter is not re-enumerated on reboot, so this mode is possible to use in case of shared disks clusters.

i Note that the WWID and UDID are automatically obtained from disk server (SAN) in this mode - it is very convenient in case of shared disks cluster configurations. Also note that some storage controllers may not support acquiring UDID - in this case this way of mapping cannot be used in case of OpenVMS (Tru64 Unix is Ok)!

See the "Configuration parameters" section for details.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Pass Through mode

The CHARON PCI Pass Through mode allows connection between virtual DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC adapter and physical EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter plugged into host's PCI/PCI-X/PCIe slot.

Syntax:

```
load <controller name> host_bus_location="PCI bus X, device Y, function Z"
```

Example:

```
load KGPSA FGA host_bus_location="PCI bus 3, device 1, function 0"
```

The "host_bus_location" parameter addresses the host EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter in the following way:

Parameters	Description
"PCI bus X"	PCI bus number of the host EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter
"device Y"	PCI bus device number of the host EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter
"function Z"	The "function" parameter of the the host EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter

The following is a list of EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapters supported by CHARON PCI Pass Through driver and suitable for emulation of KGPSA-CA PCI FC adapter in CHARON PCI Pass Through mode:

Supported	Not Supported	Not tested
LP8000 LP9000 LP9002 LP9802 LP10000 LP10000DC LP10000-S LPX1000 LP11002 LPe11002 (FC2242SR, A8003A) LPe1105 LPe12002 (AJ762B)	LPe1150 (FC2142SR, A8002A)	LPe11000

Also see the "Configuration parameters" section for details

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Installation of EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter driver

1. Install the EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter (see below for a list of supported models) to some spare PCI/PCI-X/PCIe slot of the host system
2. Boot a Windows operating system
3. Install the EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter driver from the following directory "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Drivers\EMULEX_X.X.0.XXXXX" by choosing the "Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)" option and then selecting the "emulex_lp_ppt_amd64.inf" file.
4. Direct Windows to use this custom driver instead of the default one:
 - a. Type "gpedit.msc" in the "Search programs and files" field under "Start" menu, press "Enter"
 - b. In the appearing applet choose: Administrative Templates -> System -> Device Installation -> Device Installation Restrictions -> Prevent Installation of Devices not described by other policy settings
 - c. Change the default "Not configured" to "Disabled"; press "Ok" to apply,
5. Reboot the host

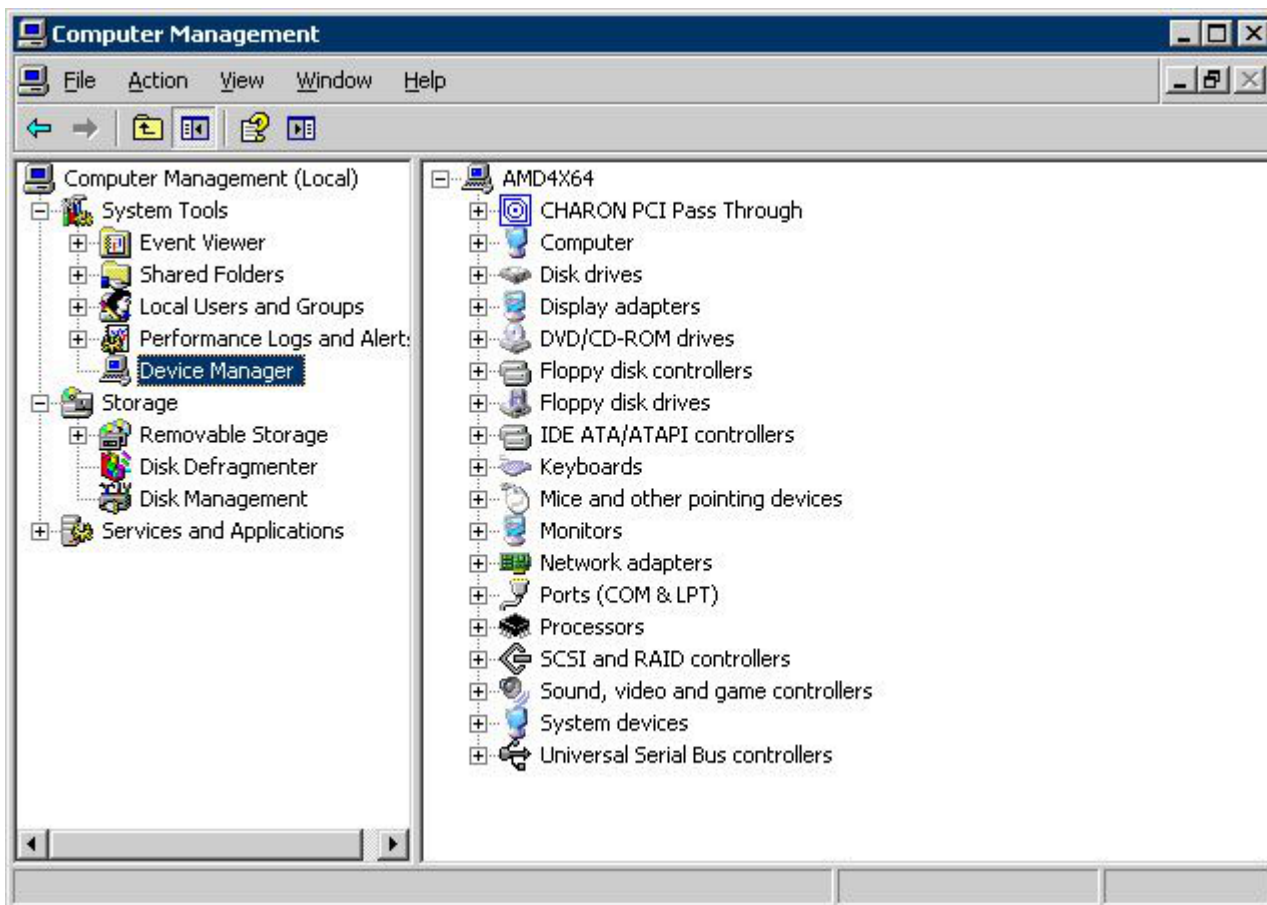
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Collecting the parameters for mapping

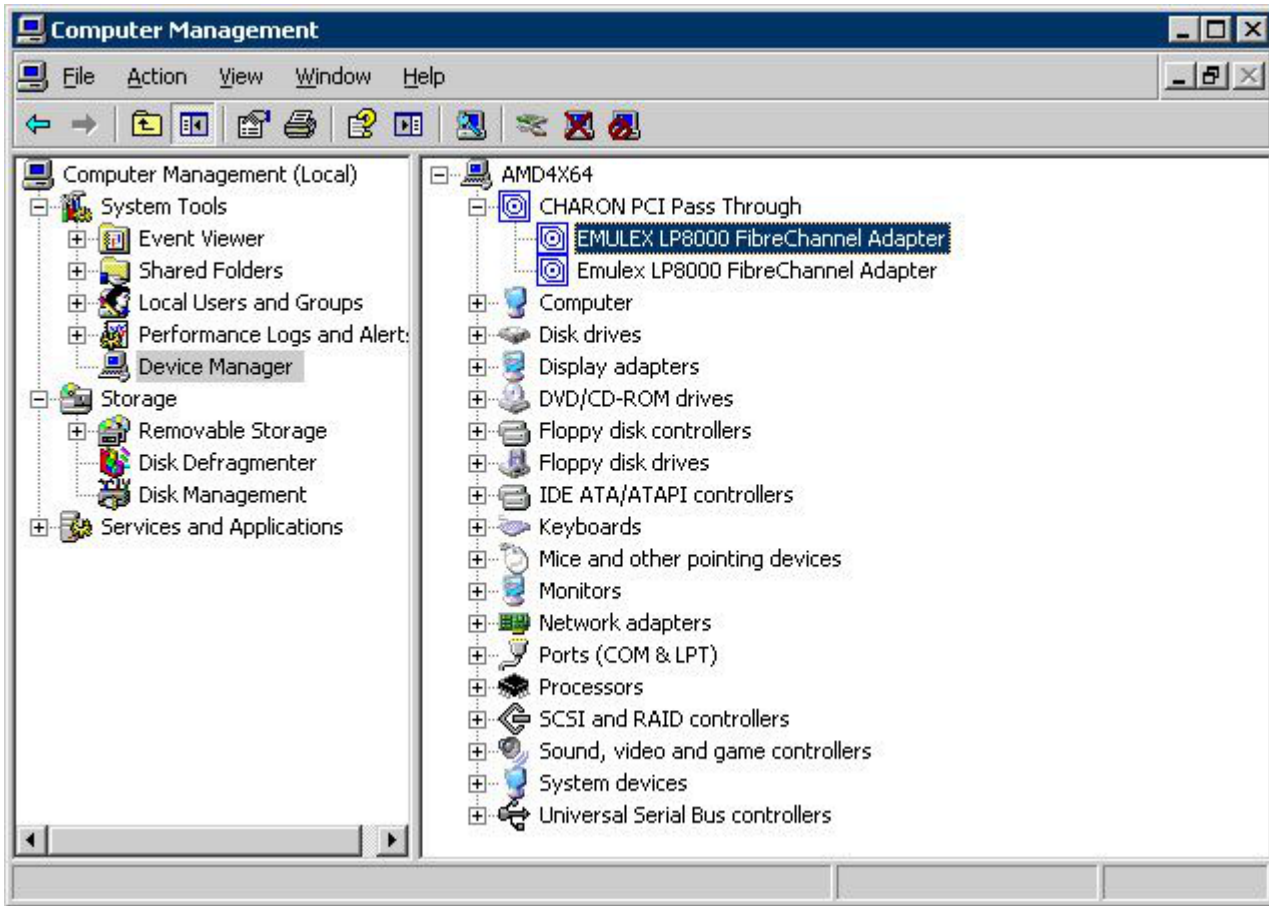
There are 2 ways of getting the required parameters for mapping virtual KGPSA-CA to EMULEX LightPulse PCI/PCI-X/PCIe FC adapter plugged into host's PCI/PCI-X/PCIe slot:

1. Usage of "HOST Device Check" utility. Follow the link for details.
2. Collecting the parameters directly using "Device Manager" applet

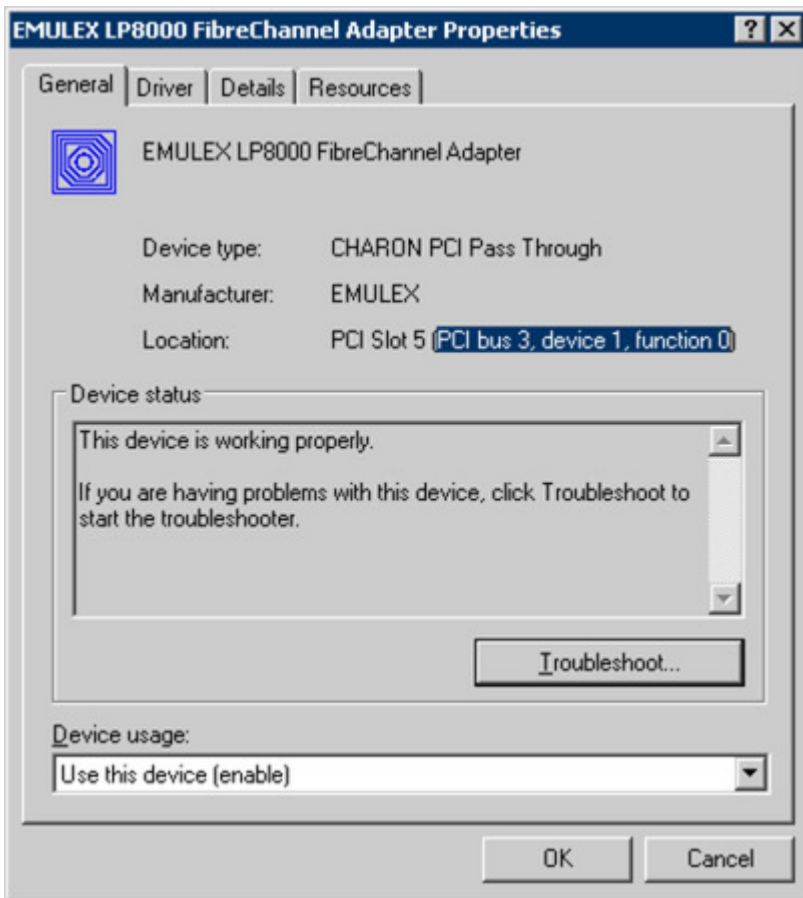
To collect the parameters directly using "Device Manager" applet, open "Computer Management" application and select "Device Manager":



In the right panel select desired physical EMULEX LP FibreChannel adapter under "CHARON PCI Pass Through":



Open its properties sheet by double-clicking on the selected adapter:



The "Location:" on the above picture gives X, Y, and Z for the "host_bus_location" parameter, for example:

```
load KGPSA FGA host_bus_location = "PCI bus 3, device 1, function 0"
```

⚠ Non-US-EN installations of Windows may present "Location:" string in local language, but "host_bus_location" parameter requires English notation, so the words "PCI", "bus", "device", and "function" must be specified in English.

Configuration of KGPSA-CA in pass through mode

FCMGR utility description

To configure KGPSA-CA adapter in pass through mode a special SRM console utility "FCMGR" is used (it has the same functionality as the "WWIDMGR" utility of the native HP Alpha hardware).

It provides the following functionality:

Command	Description
<code>fc rescan {/verbose}</code>	Scans connected SAN using FC adapters, discovers FC ports, storage controllers, logical units and then builds volatile FC database. The "/verbose" qualifier enables FC communication trace on console (for diagnostic and troubleshooting).
<code>fc show {adapter port device}</code>	Displays corresponding part of volatile FC database.
<code>fc set {boot dump} udid <X></code>	Fills the environment variables wwid0..wwid3 and n1..n4 to identify path(s) to logical unit with the specified UDID. These variables are later used by "INIT" to create device database entries and by OpenVMS/Tru64 to get access to boot and dump disks. This command does NOT make any change to other environment variables.
<code>fc clear</code>	Clears environment variables wwid0..wwid3 and n1..n4, which automatically disable (but do NOT delete) device database entries representing FC attached devices. This command does NOT affect volatile FC database.

Example of usage:

```
P00>>>fc show devices
  UDID:110 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0081 (ev:none)
    via adapter      via fc_port      con
[0]          pga0.0.0.5.1    5000-1fe1-000b-6bf1 yes (ev:none)
[1]          pga0.0.0.5.1    5000-1fe1-000b-6bf4 yes (ev:none)
  UDID:108 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0039 (ev:none)
    via adapter      via fc_port      con
[12]         pga0.0.0.5.1    5000-1fe1-000b-6bf1 yes (ev:none)
[13]         pga0.0.0.5.1    5000-1fe1-000b-6bf4 yes (ev:none)
```

Configuration steps using FCMGR utility

Once the configuration steps described above are done, start the CHARON VM and wait for the **P00>>>** prompt.

Please refer to the following example with two FC adapters PGA and PGB defined:

```

initializing ...

polling for units on kzpba0, slot 4, bus 0, hose 0 ...
  pka0.0.0.4.0          PKA0          Q-Logic/ISP PCI SCSI HBA

polling for units on kgpsa0, slot 5, bus 0, hose 0 ...
  pga0.0.0.5.0          PGA0          WWN 1000-0000-C92E-97C9
    fabric              WWN 2003-0060-6920-4682
      directory         WWN 20fc-0060-6920-4682
      port 021400      WWN 5000-1fe1-000b-6bf1
        lun 0000000000000100      DEC      HSG80      V88F
        UDID:100      WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0038
          lun 0000000000000200      DEC      HSG80      V88F
        UDID:200      WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0074
          lun 0000000000000300      DEC      HSG80      V88F
        UDID:300      WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-007b
          lun 0000000000000400      DEC      HSG80      V88F
        UDID:400      WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0080
          lun 00000000000006c00      DEC      HSG80      V88F
        UDID:108      WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0039
          lun 00000000000006d00      DEC      HSG80      V88F
        UDID:208      WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-003a
          lun 0000000000000000

      port 021500      WWN 5000-1fe1-000b-6bf4
        lun 0000000000000100      DEC      HSG80      V88F
        UDID:100      WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0038
          lun 0000000000000200      DEC      HSG80      V88F
        UDID:200      WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0074
          lun 0000000000000300      DEC      HSG80      V88F
        UDID:300      WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-007b
          lun 0000000000000400      DEC      HSG80      V88F
        UDID:400      WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0080
          lun 00000000000006c00      DEC      HSG80      V88F
        UDID:108      WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0039
          lun 00000000000006d00      DEC      HSG80      V88F
        UDID:208      WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-003a
          lun 0000000000000000

```

```
polling for units on kgpsal, slot 6, bus 0, hose 0 ...
pgb0.0.0.6.0      PGB0      WWN 1000-0000-C92D-8D00
fabric           WWN 2003-0060-6920-45ff
directory       WWN 20fc-0060-6920-45ff
port 011400     WWN 5000-1fe1-000b-6bf2
  lun 0000000000000100    DEC    HSG80    V88F
UDID:100 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0038
  lun 0000000000000200    DEC    HSG80    V88F
UDID:200 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0074
  lun 0000000000000300    DEC    HSG80    V88F
UDID:300 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-007b
  lun 0000000000000400    DEC    HSG80    V88F
UDID:400 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0080
  lun 00000000000006c00    DEC    HSG80    V88F
UDID:108 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0039
  lun 00000000000006d00    DEC    HSG80    V88F
UDID:208 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-003a
  lun 0000000000000000
port 011500     WWN 5000-1fe1-000b-6bf3
  lun 0000000000000100    DEC    HSG80    V88F
UDID:100 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0038
  lun 0000000000000200    DEC    HSG80    V88F
UDID:200 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0074
  lun 0000000000000300    DEC    HSG80    V88F
UDID:300 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-007b
  lun 0000000000000400    DEC    HSG80    V88F
UDID:400 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0080
  lun 00000000000006c00    DEC    HSG80    V88F
UDID:108 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0039
  lun 00000000000006d00    DEC    HSG80    V88F
UDID:208 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-003a
  lun 0000000000000000
port 011100     failed port login

... enter console

CHARON-AXP (AlphaServer ES40) emulator. Version 4.6
Copyright (C) 2015, STROMASYS (www.stromasys.com)

P00>>>
```

The next step is to configure paths for the FC storage:

```
P00>>>fc show devices

  UDID:100 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0038 (ev:none)
    via adapter      via fc_port      con
[0]      pga0.0.0.5.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf1 no (ev:none)
[1]      pga0.0.0.5.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf4 yes (ev:none)
[2]      pgb0.0.0.6.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf2 no (ev:none)
[3]      pgb0.0.0.6.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf3 yes (ev:none)
  UDID:200 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0074 (ev:none)
    via adapter      via fc_port      con
[4]      pga0.0.0.5.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf1 no (ev:none)
[5]      pga0.0.0.5.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf4 yes (ev:none)
[6]      pgb0.0.0.6.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf2 no (ev:none)
[7]      pgb0.0.0.6.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf3 yes (ev:none)
  UDID:300 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-007b (ev:none)
    via adapter      via fc_port      con
[8]      pga0.0.0.5.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf1 no (ev:none)
[9]      pga0.0.0.5.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf4 yes (ev:none)
[10]     pgb0.0.0.6.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf2 no (ev:none)
[11]     pgb0.0.0.6.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf3 yes (ev:none)
  UDID:400 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0080 (ev:none)
    via adapter      via fc_port      con
[12]     pga0.0.0.5.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf1 no (ev:none)
[13]     pga0.0.0.5.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf4 yes (ev:none)
[14]     pgb0.0.0.6.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf2 no (ev:none)
[15]     pgb0.0.0.6.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf3 yes (ev:none)
  UDID:108 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0039 (ev:none)
    via adapter      via fc_port      con
[16]     pga0.0.0.5.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf1 yes (ev:none)
[17]     pga0.0.0.5.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf4 no (ev:none)
[18]     pgb0.0.0.6.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf2 yes (ev:none)
[19]     pgb0.0.0.6.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf3 no (ev:none)
  UDID:208 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-003a (ev:none)
    via adapter      via fc_port      con
[20]     pga0.0.0.5.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf1 yes (ev:none)
[21]     pga0.0.0.5.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf4 no (ev:none)
[22]     pgb0.0.0.6.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf2 yes (ev:none)
[23]     pgb0.0.0.6.0      5000-1fe1-000b-6bf3 no (ev:none)

P00>>>fc set boot udid 400

P00>>>INIT

initializing ...

polling for units on kzpba0, slot 4, bus 0, hose 0 ...
  pka0.0.0.4.0      PKA0      Q-Logic/ISP PCI SCSI HBA
```

```

polling for units on kgpsa0, slot 5, bus 0, hose 0 ...
  pga0.0.0.5.0      PGA0      WWN 1000-0000-C92E-97C9
    fabric          WWN 2003-0060-6920-4682
      directory     WWN 20fc-0060-6920-4682
        port 021400 WWN 5000-1fe1-000b-6bf1
          lun 0000000000000100 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:100 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0038
          lun 0000000000000200 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:200 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0074
          lun 0000000000000300 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:300 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-007b
          lun 0000000000000400 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:400 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0080
          lun 00000000000006c00 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:108 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0039
          lun 00000000000006d00 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:208 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-003a
          lun 0000000000000000
        port 021500 WWN 5000-1fe1-000b-6bf4
          lun 0000000000000100 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:100 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0038
          lun 0000000000000200 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:200 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0074
          lun 0000000000000300 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:300 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-007b
          lun 0000000000000400 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:400 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0080
          lun 00000000000006c00 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:108 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0039
          lun 00000000000006d00 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:208 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-003a
          lun 0000000000000000

```

```

polling for units on kgpsa1, slot 6, bus 0, hose 0 ...
  pgb0.0.0.6.0      PGB0      WWN 1000-0000-C92D-8D00
    fabric          WWN 2003-0060-6920-45ff
      directory     WWN 20fc-0060-6920-45ff
        port 011400 WWN 5000-1fe1-000b-6bf2
          lun 0000000000000100 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:100 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0038
          lun 0000000000000200 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:200 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0074
          lun 0000000000000300 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:300 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-007b
          lun 0000000000000400 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:400 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0080
          lun 00000000000006c00 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:108 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0039
          lun 00000000000006d00 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:208 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-003a
          lun 0000000000000000
        port 011500 WWN 5000-1fe1-000b-6bf3
          lun 0000000000000100 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:100 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0038
          lun 0000000000000200 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:200 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0074
          lun 0000000000000300 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:300 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-007b
          lun 0000000000000400 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:400 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-9081-1283-0080
          lun 00000000000006c00 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:108 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-0039
          lun 00000000000006d00 DEC HSG80 V88F
UDID:208 WWID:01000010:6000-1fe1-000b-6bf0-0009-0440-4014-003a
          lun 0000000000000000
        port 011100 failed port login

```

```
... enter console
```

CHARON-AXP (AlphaServer ES40) emulator. Version 4.6
Copyright (C) 2015, STROMASYS (www.stromasys.com)

P00>>>SHOW DEV

sys0.0.0.0.0	SYS0	System ROOT Device		
ewa0.0.0.3.0	EWA0	00-51-71-F5-8E-D8		
pka0.0.0.4.0	PKA0	Q-Logic/ISP PCI SCSI HBA		
pga0.0.0.5.0	PGA0	WWN 1000-0000-C92E-97C9		
pgb0.0.0.6.0	PGB0	WWN 1000-0000-C92D-8D00		
pqa0.0.0.15.0	PQA0	ALi 1553C Integrated IDE Controller		
pqb0.0.1.15.0	PQB0	ALi 1553C Integrated IDE Controller		
dqa0.0.0.15.0	DQA0	Virtual ATAPI - TEAC DW-224E-V		
dka0.0.0.4.0	DKA0	Virtual SCSI Disk (C)SRI		
dga400.1001.0.5.0	\$1\$DGA400	DEC HSG80	V88F	
dga400.1002.0.5.0	\$1\$DGA400	DEC HSG80	V88F	
dgb400.1003.0.6.0	\$1\$DGA400	DEC HSG80	V88F	
dgb400.1004.0.6.0	\$1\$DGA400	DEC HSG80	V88F	

P00>>>BOOT \$1\$DGA400

dga400.1001.0.5.0: failed to open device
(boot dga400.1002.0.5.0)
jumping to bootstrap code

OpenVMS (TM) Alpha Operating System, Version V7.3-2

© Copyright 1976-2003 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

%SMP-I-CPUTRN, CPU #02 has joined the active set.

%SMP-I-CPUTRN, CPU #03 has joined the active set.

%SMP-I-CPUTRN, CPU #01 has joined the active set.

Please enter date and time (DD-MMM-YYYY HH:MM)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Acer Labs 1543C IDE/ATAPI CD-ROM adapter

Table of Contents

- General description
- Loading Acer Labs 1543C IDE/ATAPI adapter
- Configuration parameters
 - container
 - Example

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General description

CHARON-AXP supports emulation of an integrated virtual Acer Labs 1543C IDE/ATAPI controller.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Loading Acer Labs 1543C IDE/ATAPI adapter

By default the integrated virtual Acer Labs 1543C IDE/ATAPI controller is preloaded with a name "ide".

Example:

```
set ide container="\\.\CdRom0"
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Configuration parameters

The Acer Labs 1543C IDE/ATAPI adapter emulation has only one configuration parameter:

container

Parameter	container
Type	Text String
Value	<p>Specifies the name of ATAPI or SATA CD/DVD-ROM drive attached to the host system.</p> <p>The supported values are of the form "\\.\CdRomN", where N is 0, 1, 2...</p> <p>In most cases 0 is the only meaningful value for N, because usually the host system has only one CD/DVD-ROM drive.</p> <p>By default it is left unspecified.</p>

Example

```
set ide container="\\.\CdRom0"
```

When running HP OpenVMS/Alpha Operating System on CHARON VM the specified CD/DVD-ROM drive is available as DQA0: device.

CHARON-AXP is able to boot any OpenVMS/Alpha and Tru64 version from Acer Labs 1543C IDE/ATAPI CD-ROM.

Virtual Acer Labs 1543C IDE/ATAPI can be mapped only to physical CD-ROM drives. If a CD-ROM container or an ISO file should be used, it is required to utilize [KZPBA-CA](#) controller as it offers full support of both physical and virtual mappings to system resources.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

PCI I/O Bypass controller

Table of Contents

- General description
- Prerequisites
- Installation
- Loading PCI I/O bypass controller
- Configuration parameters
 - container
 - removable
 - geometry
 - use_io_file_buffering
- Deinstallation

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General description

CHARON-AXP supports PCI I/O bypass controller for accessing to disk images and host physical disks. PCI I/O bypass controller requires a specific driver to be installed.

PCI I/O bypass controller support is available only for OpenVMS guest operating system.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Prerequisites

This release supports VMS version V6.2-1H3 and higher. Bypass disks can not be used as a boot device in V6.2-1H3, higher versions do not have this restriction.

Make sure that the latest Bypass controller kit has been installed, especially for VMS versions before V7.3-2.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Installation

1. Open your VM configuration and attach the virtual disk "ovms_tool.vdisk" located by default in the "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Virtual Disk Images\OpenVMS tools package" directory:

```
set PKA container[400] = "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Virtual Disk Images\OpenVMS tools
package\ovms_tools.vdisk"
```

2. Run VM, boot guest OpenVMS operating system.
3. Use the POLYCENTER Software Installation (PCSI) utility to install the Bypass Driver. The following example demonstrates the "PCSI PRODUCT INSTALL" command to execute and the expected output (the example assumes the utilities virtual disk image is attached as DKA400:):

```
$ PRODUCT INSTALL CHARON_DISK/SOURCE=DKA400:[BYPASS]
%PCSI-I-CANNOTVAL, cannot validate DKA400:[BYPASS]SRI-AXPVMS-CHARON_DISK-V0104--1.PCSI;1
-PCSI-I-NOTSIGNED, product kit is not signed and therefore has no manifest file

The following product has been selected:
    SRI AXPVMS CHARON_DISK V1.4 Layered Product

Do you want to continue? [YES] YES

Configuration phase starting ...

You will be asked to choose options, if any, for each selected product and for any products that may be
installed to satisfy software dependency requirements.

SRI AXPVMS CHARON_DISK V1.4: Charon disk driver V1.4 for OpenVMS Alpha.

    Copyright (C) 1976, 2009 Software Resources International

    CHARON_DISK was produced by Software Resources International

* This product does not have any configuration options.

Execution phase starting ...

The following product will be installed to destination:
    SRI AXPVMS CHARON_DISK V1.4 DISK$TARDISSYSTEM:[VMS$COMMON.]

Portion done: 0%...10%...20%...80%...100%

The following product has been installed:
    SRI AXPVMS CHARON_DISK V1.4 Layered Product
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Loading PCI I/O bypass controller

Syntax for loading PCI I/O bypass storage adapter:

```
load pci_io_bypass <name>
```

The <name> can be DI<x>, DR<x> or DU<x>

where x is selected according to VMS naming scheme, i.e. A stands for the first controller of given type, B - for the second, etc.

Example:

```
load pci_io_bypass DIA
```

In AlphaStation 400 configuration use the following syntax for PCI I/O bypass storage loading:

```
load pci_io_bypass DIA irq_bus = isa
```

The adapter instance name ("DIA" in the example above) is used then for parametrization, for example:

```
set DIA container[0]="C:\My disks\vms_distribution.vdisk"
```

The numbers in the square brackets represent a number of device on PCI I/O Bypass controller.

The maximum number of I/O Bypass controller devices is 64.

By default I/O Bypass controller uses PCI slot corresponded to the <x> parameter (see above). If instead some particular slot is needed, refer to [this section](#) for details of specific placement of PCI peripherals on CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) PCI bus (note that "irq_bus" and "irq" parameters are ignored for I/O Bypass controller). In this case the <x> will be changed automatically according to custom position of I/O Bypass controller on PCI bus.



 I/O Bypass controller is implemented for OpenVMS only.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Configuration parameters

The I/O Bypass controller has the following configuration parameters:

container

Parameter	container[N] N is 0..32766 (no more than 64 units)
Type	Text string
Value	<p>Possible values of the parameter are strings in one of the following forms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Physical disk <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "\\.\PhysicalDrive<X>", where X is 0, 1, ... <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Be careful not to destroy all the information from the disk dedicated to CHARON VM by mistake. These disks must not be formatted by the host OS. Example: <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">set DIA container[0]="\\.\PhysicalDrive1"</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Physical disk by its WWID <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID=XXX-...-XXXX)" <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Be careful not to destroy all the information from the disk dedicated to CHARON VM by mistake. These disks must not be formatted by the host OS. DevID addresses the target physical disk by its WWID (hexadecimal 128-bit identifier assigned to the disk drive by its manufacturer/originator). Example: <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">set DIA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(DevID=6008-05F3-0005-2950-BF8E-0B86-A0C7-0001)"</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • iSCSI disks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "\\.\PhysicalDrive(iScsiTarget = <iSCSI target>, LUN = <LUN number>)" <ul style="list-style-type: none"> iScsiTarget addresses the disk by its iSCSI target name. LUN specifies LUN on connected iSCSI disk. Example: <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">set DIA container[200]="\\.\PhysicalDrive(iScsiTarget=iqn.2008-04:iscsi.charon-target-test1, LUN= 1)"</pre>

- **SCSI disk unknown to Windows for direct mapping**

- "\\.\Scsi<N>:<X>:<Y>:<Z>"

The values of N, X, Y and Z can be collected using special utility "Host Device Check" included in the CHARON distributive - or manually by investigation of the devices connected to CHARON host in the "Device Manager" applet.

Parameter	Description
N	A logical number assigned by host operating system (Microsoft Windows) to logical or host's physical storage resource such as physical SCSI HBA
X	An internal SCSI bus number (usually 0) on host's physical SCSI HBA
Y	A SCSI ID of physical SCSI target device attached to host's physical SCSI HBA
Z	A logical unit number inside physical SCSI target device attached to host's physical SCSI HBA

Example:

```
set DIA container[202]="\\.\Scsi1:0:1:0"
```

- **ISO file for reading distribution CD-ROM image**

- [<drive>:\<path-name>\<file-name>".iso"]

Mapping may also include the full path (recommended), for example: "C:\My disks\vms_distribution.iso"

Example:

```
set DIA container[600]="C:\My disks\vms_distribution.iso"
```

- **File representing a physical disk of the HP Alpha system (disk image)**

- [<drive>:\<path-name>\<file-name>".vdisk"]

These files can be created from scratch with "MkDisk" utility. Data and OS disks backups are transferred from the original system via tapes or network and restored into these container files.

Mapping may also include the full path (recommended), for example: "C:\My disks\my_boot_disk.vdisk"

Example:

```
set DIA container[401]="tru64-v51-system.vdisk"
```

Using compressed folders to store virtual disks and tapes is not supported


- **Other type of drive, for example magneto-optical drive**

- "\\.\<N>:"

Example:

```
set DIA container[300]="\\.\Z:"
```

Using compressed folders to store virtual disks and tapes is not supported

 This parameter is initially not set, thus creating NO storage elements on the controller.

removable

Parameter	removable[N] N is 0..32766 (no more than 64 units)
Type	Boolean
Value	<p>When set to "true", the removable configuration parameter instructs CHARON VM to report the corresponding virtual disk as removable.</p> <p>Note to set this parameter to "true" if this disk storage element is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mapped to a host removable device • Mapped to a disk image located on a host removable device • Mapped to a disk image that has to be renamed/moved/deleted right after dismounting it in the guest OS <p>By default the removable configuration parameter is set to "false".</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set DIA removable[400]=true</pre>

geometry

Parameter	geometry [N] N is 0..32766 (no more than 64 units)
Type	Text String
Value	<p>This formatted string value specifies the explicit geometry of the disk storage element. This parameter is not applicable to tape storage elements.</p> <p>The string format is "**/**/*/" or "**,*;*" where B is the total size of the disk (in blocks) reported to the guest OS. If omitted it is calculated automatically.</p> <p>If this parameter is not set, CHARON VM will configure the geometry based on the most probable disk type.</p> <p>Initially not set.</p>

use_io_file_buffering

Parameter	use_io_file_buffering[N] N is 0..32766 (no more than 64 units)
Type	Text String
Value	<p>Instructs CHARON VM to enable host operating system I/O cache on reading/writing operations.</p> <p>The following values are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "true" or "write-back" - the "write back" caching mode is used • "write-through" - the "write through" caching mode is used • "false" - caching is switched off <p>i Note that this caching has a significant effect only in case of mapping to disk and tape containers, not physical drives.</p> <p>When enabled, host operating system I/O cache may significantly improve I/O performance of the virtual system. At the same time maintaining I/O cache requires additional host resources (CPU and memory) which may negatively affect overall performance of the virtual system.</p> <p>Initially is set to "false".</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set DIA use_io_file_buffering[603]=true</pre>

When a disk image connected to an I/O Bypass controller is dismounted by OpenVMS, it is disconnected from CHARON VM and can be manipulated. It can be replaced with a different disk image if it keeps the same name. This capability may be useful when designing back-up and restore procedures. When copying CHARON-AXP disk images while CHARON VM is running, please take care to minimize the risk of overloading a heavily loaded CHARON host system. For example, using a sequential series of simple ftp binary copies is less resource intensive and thus less disruptive than multiple, simultaneous copies.

Empty disk images are created with the "MkDisk" utility.

CHARON-AXP is able to boot from disk images of any OpenVMS/Alpha version.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Deinstallation

1. Do a conversational boot. Please refer to your OpenVMS system administration guide for instructions.
2. Set the NOAUTOCONFIG system parameter to 1
3. Boot OpenVMS
4. Remove the product with the "\$ PRODUCT REMOVE CHARON_DISK" command.
5. Set the NOAUTOCONFIG system parameter to 0 and reboot.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Networking

Table of Contents

- General description
- Configuration steps
- Configuration parameters
 - interface
 - station_address
 - rx_fifo_size
 - adapter_mode
 - Example
 - DE602 and DE602AA network adapters link speed and duplex settings
- Packet Port
 - interface
 - port_enable_mac_addr_change
 - port_retry_on_tx
 - port_pending_rx_number
 - port_pending_tx_number
 - suspend_msg_on_mac_change
 - log
 - legacy_mode
 - Example

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General description


CHARON-AXP supports emulation of the following network adapters:


- DE435
- DE450
- DE500AA
- DE500BA
- DE602
- DE602AA

Each of them is a PCI Ethernet adapter based on the DEC21040 (DE435, DE450, DE500AA and DE500BA) and the Intel i8255x (DE602 and DE602AA) PCI Ethernet adapter chips for the HP Alpha.

CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) maps the virtual adapter to a dedicated Ethernet adapter in the Windows host system.

All the emulated controllers are loaded and configured in the same way.

 The Ethernet adapter in the Windows host system must support dynamic changes of its MAC address (i.e. no reboot of the host system is required to change the MAC address), which is the case with nearly all modern Ethernet adapters.

 By default the PCI Ethernet adapters use first available PCI slot. If instead some particular slot is needed, refer to [this section](#) for details of specific placement of PCI peripherals on CHARON VM PCI bus.

Configuration steps

To configure CHARON VM networking, follow these 3 steps:

1. Load network adapter (if required)

Use the "load" command as shown below.

Example:

For DEC21040 adapters	For Intel i8255x adapters
<code>load DE500BA/dec21x4x NIC</code>	<code>load DE602/i8255x NIC</code>

i By default each loaded virtual network adapter uses first available PCI slot. If instead some particular slot is needed, refer to [this section](#) for details of specific placement of PCI peripherals on CHARON VM PCI bus.

In AlphaStation 400 configuration use the following syntax for network adapter loading:

```
load DE500AA/dec21x4x NIC irq_bus = isa
```

2. Load "packet_port"

Load "packet_port" to connect network adapter to the host hardware network card (or to a virtual network interface).

Example:

```
load packet_port/chnetwrk NDIS interface = "connection:Charon"
```

3. Connect the loaded "packet_port" to the loaded virtual network adapter

Connect the network adapter to the "packet_port" by setting the interface name.

Example:

```
set NIC interface = NDIS
```

The interface name can be either "(disabled)" for a disabled interface or "connection:<Windows network interface name>"

Examples:

```
load packet_port/chnetwrk NIC1 interface="(disabled)"
load packet_port/chnetwrk NIC2 interface="connection:CHARON_NIC"
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Configuration parameters

Each virtual network controller has the following parameters that are specified with the "set" command:

interface

Parameter	interface
Type	Text string.
Value	Name of the corresponding instance of the "packet_port" component

station_address

Parameter	station_address
Type	Text String
Value	<p>The "station_address" provides the ability to configure the adapter's permanent address. By default the adapter's permanent address is read from the host system's NIC.</p> <p>Format:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px 0;">XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX</div> <p>or</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px 0;">XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX</div> <p>Example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px 0;">set EWA station_address="AF:01:AC:78:1B:CC"</div>

rx_fifo_size

Parameter	rx_fifo_size
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>"rx_fifo_size" sets the receive FIFO size.</p> <p>The value is specified in Kb and, by default, is pre-calculated from the connected port's size of the receive queue.</p> <p>Typically, you do not need to change the "rx_fifo_size" parameter. It is available for extended tuning and debugging purposes.</p>

adapter_mode

Parameter	adapter_mode												
Type	Text String												
Value	<p>Assigns the link speed and the duplex settings of the virtual network adapter (except for DE602/DE602AA - see below).</p> <p>The values are:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>"Auto"</td> <td>Auto-negotiate (default)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"10BaseT-HD"</td> <td>10Mbps half duplex</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"10BaseT-FD"</td> <td>10Mbps full duplex</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"100BaseT-HD"</td> <td>100Mbps half duplex</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"100BaseT-FD"</td> <td>100Mbps full duplex</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set EWA adapter_mode="100BaseT-HD"</pre> <div style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Please note that this parameter controls only the setting which the emulated network adapter reports to the guest operating system running on CHARON VM. It does not change any settings of the host adapter mapped to the virtual adapter! In case if the settings of the host adapter have to be changed please refer to the host Operating System User's Guide for details on how to do it.</p> <p>In case if "Auto" value is set CHARON VM collects the settings from the mapped host network adapter directly, assuming that all speeds above 100Mbps are represented as 100Mbps (maximum value). The resulting duplex setting corresponds to the duplex setting of the mapped host network adapter.</p> </div>	Parameter	Description	"Auto"	Auto-negotiate (default)	"10BaseT-HD"	10Mbps half duplex	"10BaseT-FD"	10Mbps full duplex	"100BaseT-HD"	100Mbps half duplex	"100BaseT-FD"	100Mbps full duplex
Parameter	Description												
"Auto"	Auto-negotiate (default)												
"10BaseT-HD"	10Mbps half duplex												
"10BaseT-FD"	10Mbps full duplex												
"100BaseT-HD"	100Mbps half duplex												
"100BaseT-FD"	100Mbps full duplex												

Example

```
load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface = "connection:Charon"
set EWA interface = EWA0
set EWA station_address="0C:FE:35:AA:67:3B"
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

DE602 and DE602AA network adapters link speed and duplex settings

Regardless of the "adapter_mode" setting in CHARON VM configuration file (see above), DE602 and DE602AA network adapters remains in "Auto-negotiation" mode, since the EIDRIVER of OpenVMS checks for EIX0_MODE environment variable when configuring the network card.

So mode propagation is implemented in CHARON-AXP via SRM console EIX0_MODE environment variable ("x" is A, B, C... depending on CHARON VM configuration), for example:

```
>>>help set
usage: set <variable-name> <value>
set <variable-name> ""
set eia0_mode { Twisted | Full | Fast | FastFD | Auto* }
>>>
```

! The Eix0_MODE variable name is case insensitive, while its values are case sensitive! This is feature of OpenVMS EIDRIVER.

The values are:

Parameter	Description
"Auto"	Auto-negotiate (default)
"Twisted"	10Mbps half duplex
"Full"	10Mbps full duplex
"Fast"	100Mbps half duplex
"FastFD"	100Mbps full duplex

Example:

```
>>>set eia0_mode FastFD
```

Please note that Eix0_MODE environment variable controls only the setting which the emulated network adapter reports to the guest operating system running on CHARON VM. It does not change any settings of the host adapter mapped to the virtual adapter! In case if the settings of the host adapter have to be changed please refer to the host Operating System User's Guide for details on how to do it.

In case if "Auto" value is set CHARON VM collects the settings from the mapped host network adapter directly, assuming that all speeds above 100Mbps are represented as 100Mbps (maximum value). The resulting duplex setting corresponds to the duplex setting of the mapped host network adapter.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Packet Port

The CHARON-specific "packet_port" interface establishes a connection between an Ethernet adapter in the Windows host system and a network adapter in the virtual HP Alpha system.

For every virtual adapter instance loaded, one dedicated host Ethernet physical adapter is required.

To create instances of the "packet_port", use the "load" command in the configuration file as follows:

```
load packet_port/chnetwrk <instance-name>
```

Example:

```
load packet_port/chnetwrk NDIS
```

"packet_port" uses several configuration parameters to control its behavior.

interface

Parameter	interface
Type	Text string
Value	<p>This parameter identifies an Ethernet adapter of the host system dedicated to CHARON VM. The leading keyword "connection:" is mandatory except if the interface is to be disabled.</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <pre>set <name> interface="connection:<adapter>"</pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set NDIS interface="connection:Charon"</pre>

port_enable_mac_addr_change

Parameter	port_enable_mac_addr_change
Type	Boolean
Value	<p>If "true" is specified (default value), CHARON VM sets the appropriate Ethernet address automatically.</p> <p>If "false" is specified, set the Ethernet address manually.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set NDIS port_enable_mac_addr_change=false</pre>

port_retry_on_tx

Parameter	port_retry_on_tx
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>The "port_retry_on_tx" parameter controls the number of times a port will attempt to transmit a packet before giving up.</p> <p>By default, the value is 3.</p> <p>Increasing this value may introduce problems in carrier loss logic, because not all NIC drivers support a carrier status query. Typically, you do not need to increase the value.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set NDIS port_retry_on_tx=8</pre>

port_pending_rx_number

Parameter	port_pending_rx_number
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>The "port_pending_rx_number" parameter sets the number of pending receive buffers.</p> <p>The default value is 63. The maximum value allowed is 195.</p> <p>You may want to increase the "port_pending_rx_number" when you have very busy networking and experience problems like losing connections not related to the carrier loss.</p> <p>Typically, you do not need to change this parameter.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set NDIS port_pending_rx_number=128</pre>

port_pending_tx_number

Parameter	port_pending_tx_number
Type	Numeric
Value	<p>The "port_pending_tx_number" parameter sets the number of buffers the port uses to transmit.</p> <p>The default value is 62.</p> <p>You may want to increase the "port_pending_tx_number" value if the log file indicates dropped TX packets due to TX queue overflow.</p> <p>Typically, you do not need to change this parameter.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set NDIS port_pending_tx_number=128</pre>

suspend_msg_on_mac_change

Parameter	suspend_msg_on_mac_change
Type	Boolean
Value	<p>To avoid confusion arising from non critical errors during a MAC address change, logging is by default suppressed (default value is "true").</p> <p>To enable tracing during a MAC address change set this parameter to "false"</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set NDIS suspend_msg_on_mac_change=false</pre>

log

Parameter	log
Type	Text string
Value	<p>If this parameter is set to some valid file name or a directory where the log files for each individual session will be stored CHARON VM logs Recv and Xmit packets at the emulated port layer.</p> <p>If an existing directory is specified, CHARON VM automatically enables creation of individual log files, one for each session using the same scheme as used for the generation of the rotating log files. If the "log" parameter is omitted, CHARON VM does not create log.</p> <p>In certain situations enabling this parameter may help to detect loss of packets.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set NDIS log="ndis.log"</pre> <pre>set NDIS log="C:\Charon\Logs"</pre> <p>Only existing directory can be used as a value of the "log" parameter.</p>

legacy_mode

Parameter	legacy_mode
Type	Boolean
Value	<p>If this parameter is set to "true" CHARON VM tries to use very first implementation of "packet_port" having certain restrictions such as inability to automatically change MAC address on given interface etc.</p> <p>This setting may be needed if CHARON VM runs in VMware environment for example and you do not want to allow promiscuous mode.</p> <p>In other situations please do not change its default value ("false").</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set NDIS legacy_mode=true</pre> <p>This parameter is required only if you do not want to allow promiscuous traffic for the VMware adapter/port. In this mode, CHARON VM uses legacy MAC address change logic, so use of this option is not desirable.</p> <p>Thus for ESXi networking configuration:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Create the port with e1000 adapter; 2. Enable the promiscuous traffic; 3. Do not use legacy_mode option in Charon's configuration file <p>TruCluster alias vMAC option may not operate correctly in combination with "legacy_mode=true" when host is VMware virtual machine. This is because vMAC option sets adapter to promiscuous mode which does not seem operating correctly on VMware adapters.</p>

Example

```
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA
load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="connection:Charon"
set EWA interface=EWA0
```

CHARON-AXP supports VLAN adapters. If for some reasons you are going to use them, proceed with their installation and configuration according to the network adapter's vendor's User's Guide and then use the resulting VLAN interface the same way as the regular network interface.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter

Table of Contents

- General description
- Loading DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter
- Configuration parameters
 - host_bus_location
- Installation of DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter
- Mapping to host DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General description

CHARON-AXP supports emulation of DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter via CHARON PCI Pass Through mode (using a specific CHARON PCI Pass Through driver).

CHARON PCI Pass Through mode enables connection between the virtual DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter and the physical DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter plugged into a hosting server PCI bus.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Loading DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter

Syntax for loading DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter:

```
load defpa <name>
```

Example:

```
load defpa FDDI
```

By default DEFPA adapter uses first available PCI slot. If instead some particular slot is needed, refer to [this section](#) for details of specific placement of PCI peripherals on CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) PCI bus.

In AlphaStation 400 configuration use the following syntax for DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter loading:

```
load defpa FDDI irq_bus = isa
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Configuration parameters

The DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter emulation has only one configuration parameter:

host_bus_location

Parameter	host_bus_location								
Type	Text String								
Value	<p>Establish connection between virtual DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter and physical DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter installed on CHARON host (pass through mode)</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <pre>load defpa <controller name> host_bus_location="PCI bus X, device Y, function Z"</pre> <p>where:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>"PCI bus X"</td> <td>PCI bus number of the host DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"device Y"</td> <td>PCI bus device number of the host DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"function Z"</td> <td>The "function" parameter of the the host DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Example:</p> <pre>load defpa FDDI host_bus_location="PCI bus 3, device 1, function 0"</pre>	Parameter	Description	"PCI bus X"	PCI bus number of the host DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter	"device Y"	PCI bus device number of the host DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter	"function Z"	The "function" parameter of the the host DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter
Parameter	Description								
"PCI bus X"	PCI bus number of the host DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter								
"device Y"	PCI bus device number of the host DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter								
"function Z"	The "function" parameter of the the host DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter								

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Installation of DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter

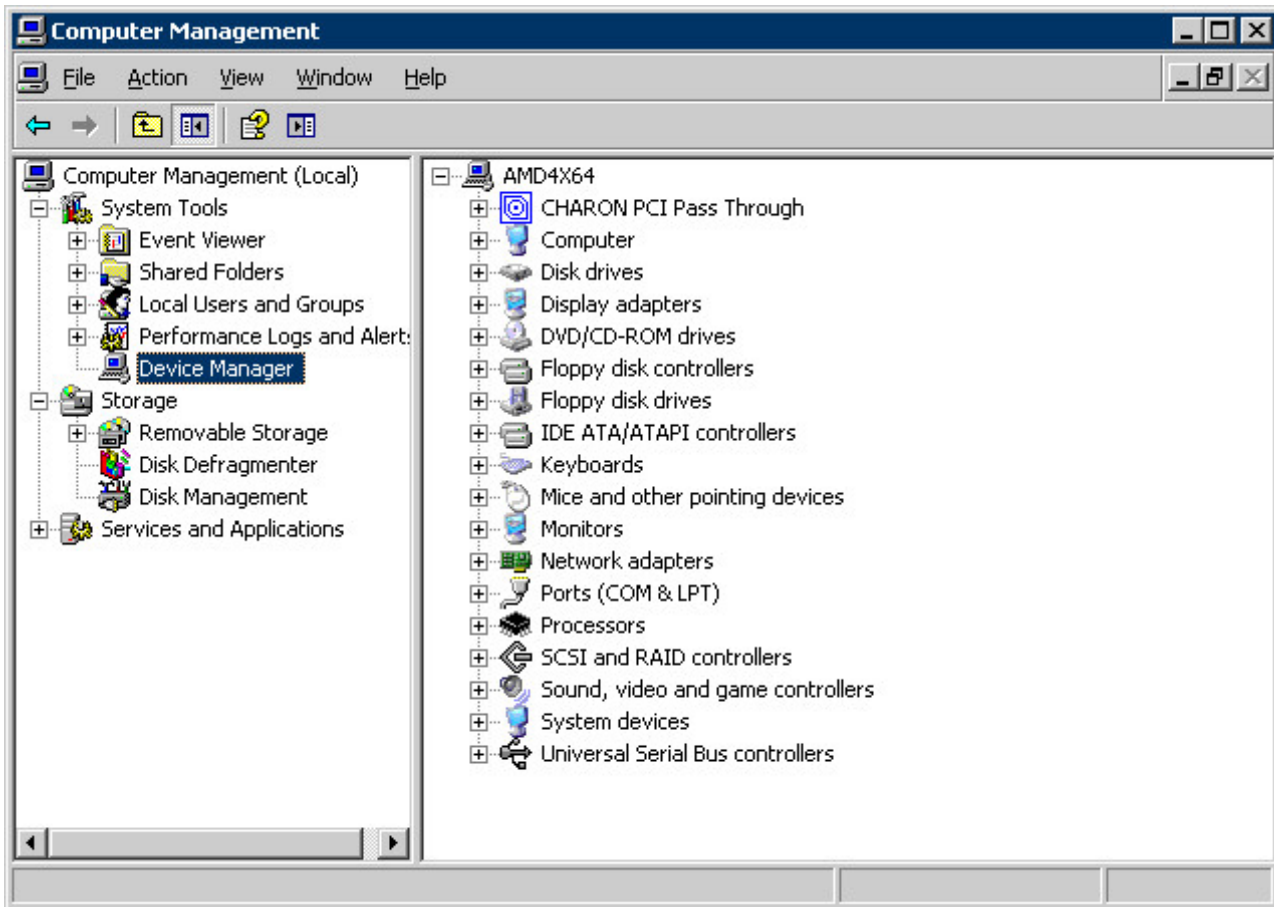
1. Install the DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter to some spare PCI slot of the host system
2. Boot a Windows operating system
3. Open "Computer Management"
4. Select "Device Manager"
5. In the right window select the desired physical FDDI adapter connected to the system, right-click the mouse button, and the corresponding menu will appear.
6. From the menu select "Update driver...". Windows will show "Hardware Upgrade Wizard"
7. Select "No, not this time", click "Next"
8. Select "Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)", click "Next"
9. Select "Don't search. I will choose the driver to install", click "Next"
10. Click "Have Disk...". Windows shows dialog "Install From Disk"
11. Instead of "A:\", click "Browse" and select path to the folder in which driver's INF file is located (typically "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Drivers\DEFPA_X.X.0.XXXXX"), select "defpa_ppt_amd64.inf", and click "Open"
12. The "Hardware Upgrade Wizard" should have "CHARON DEFPA FDDI adapter". Select it, and click "Next"
13. There will be one or two more dialogs, but they are usual for device driver installation.
14. Reboot the host

Upon completion, a new device will appear in the device manager with the CHARON logo on it.

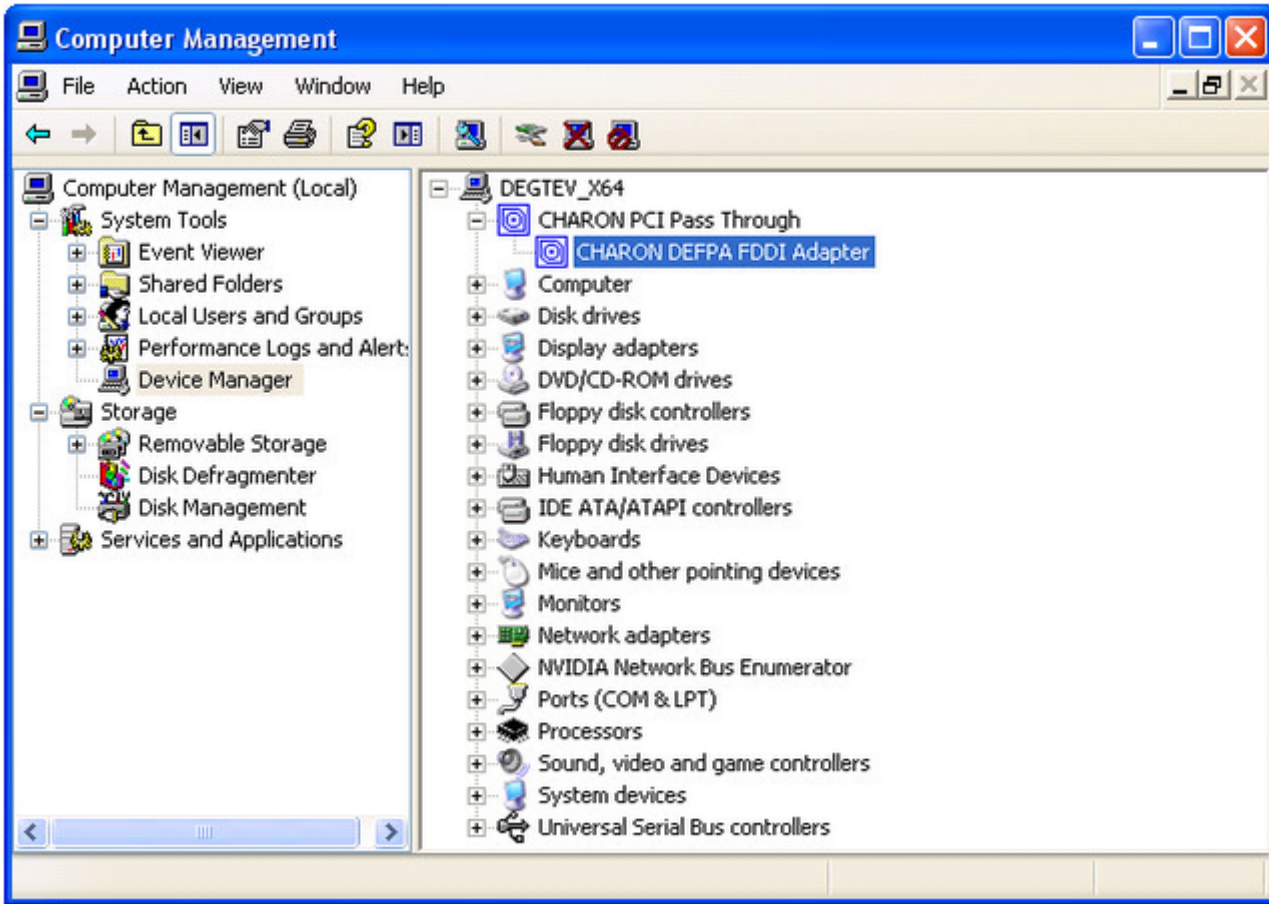
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Mapping to host DEFPa PCI FDDI adapter

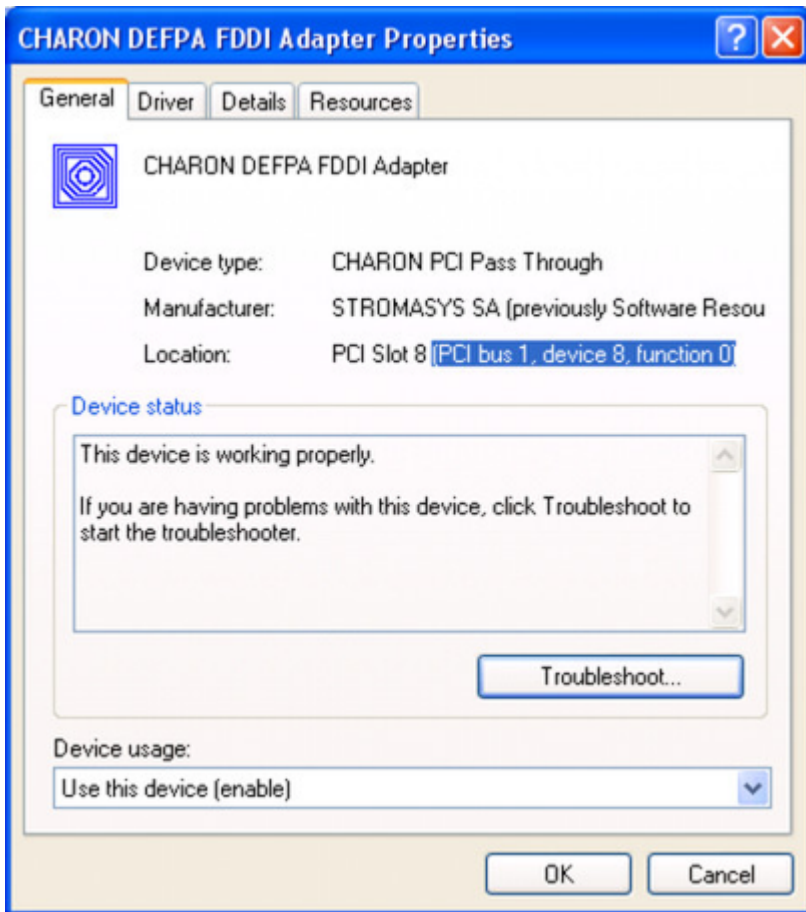
Open "Computer Management" application and select "Device Manager":



In the right panel select the installed DEFPA PCI FDDI adapter:



Open its properties sheet by double-clicking on the selected adapter:



The "Location:" on the above picture gives X, Y, and Z for the "host_bus_location" parameter, for example:

```
set FDDI host_bus_location = "PCI bus 1, device 8, function 0"
```

! Non-US-EN installations of Windows may present "Location:" string in local language, but "host_bus_location" parameter requires English notation, so the words "PCI", "bus", "device", and "function" must be specified in English.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

PBXDA-xx series PCI serial adapters

Table of Contents

- General description
- Loading PBXDA-xx PCI serial adapter
- Configuration parameters
 - host_bus_location
- Installation of DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter
- Mapping to host DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

General description

CHARON-AXP supports emulation of PBXDA-xx family PCI serial adapter based on DIGI AccelePort serial adapters via CHARON PCI Pass Through mode (using a specific CHARON PCI Pass Through driver).

CHARON PCI Pass Through mode enables connection between the virtual PBXDA-xx PCI serial adapter and the physical DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter plugged into a hosting server PCI bus.

i Note the model of DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter for emulation of a particular model of PBXDA-xx family PCI serial adapter:

DEC PBXDA-xx adapter	Name of the device to map to	Controller	Vendor ID	Device ID
PBXDA-BA	DIGI AccelePort 4r 920	ASIC PCI	114Fh	0026h
PBXDA-BB	DIGI AccelePort 8r 920	ASIC PCI	114Fh	0027h
PBXDA-AC	DIGI AccelePort Xem	ASIC PCI	114Fh	0004h
PBXDA-AC	DIGI AccelePort Xem	ASIC PCI	114Fh	0008h

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Loading PBXDA-xx PCI serial adapter

Syntax for loading PBXDA-xx PCI serial adapter:

```
load digi <name>
```

Example:

```
load digi SERIAL_A
```

By default PBXDA-xx adapter uses first available PCI slot. If instead some particular slot is needed, refer to [this section](#) for details of specific placement of PCI peripherals on CHARON Virtual Machine (VM) PCI bus.

In AlphaStation 400 configuration use the following syntax for PBXDA-xx PCI serial adapter loading:

```
load digi SERIAL_A irq_bus = isa
```

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Configuration parameters

The PBXDA-xx PCI serial adapter emulation has only one configuration parameter:

host_bus_location

Parameter	host_bus_location								
Type	Text String								
Value	<p>Establish connection between virtual PBXDA-xx PCI serial adapter and physical DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter installed on CHARON host (pass through mode)</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <pre>load digi <controller name> host_bus_location="PCI bus X, device Y, function Z"</pre> <p>where:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Parameter</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>"PCI bus X"</td> <td>PCI bus number of the host DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"device Y"</td> <td>PCI bus device number of the host DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"function Z"</td> <td>The "function" parameter of the the host DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Example:</p> <pre>load digi SERIAL_A host_bus_location="PCI bus 3, device 1, function 0"</pre>	Parameter	Description	"PCI bus X"	PCI bus number of the host DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter	"device Y"	PCI bus device number of the host DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter	"function Z"	The "function" parameter of the the host DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter
Parameter	Description								
"PCI bus X"	PCI bus number of the host DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter								
"device Y"	PCI bus device number of the host DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter								
"function Z"	The "function" parameter of the the host DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter								

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Installation of DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter

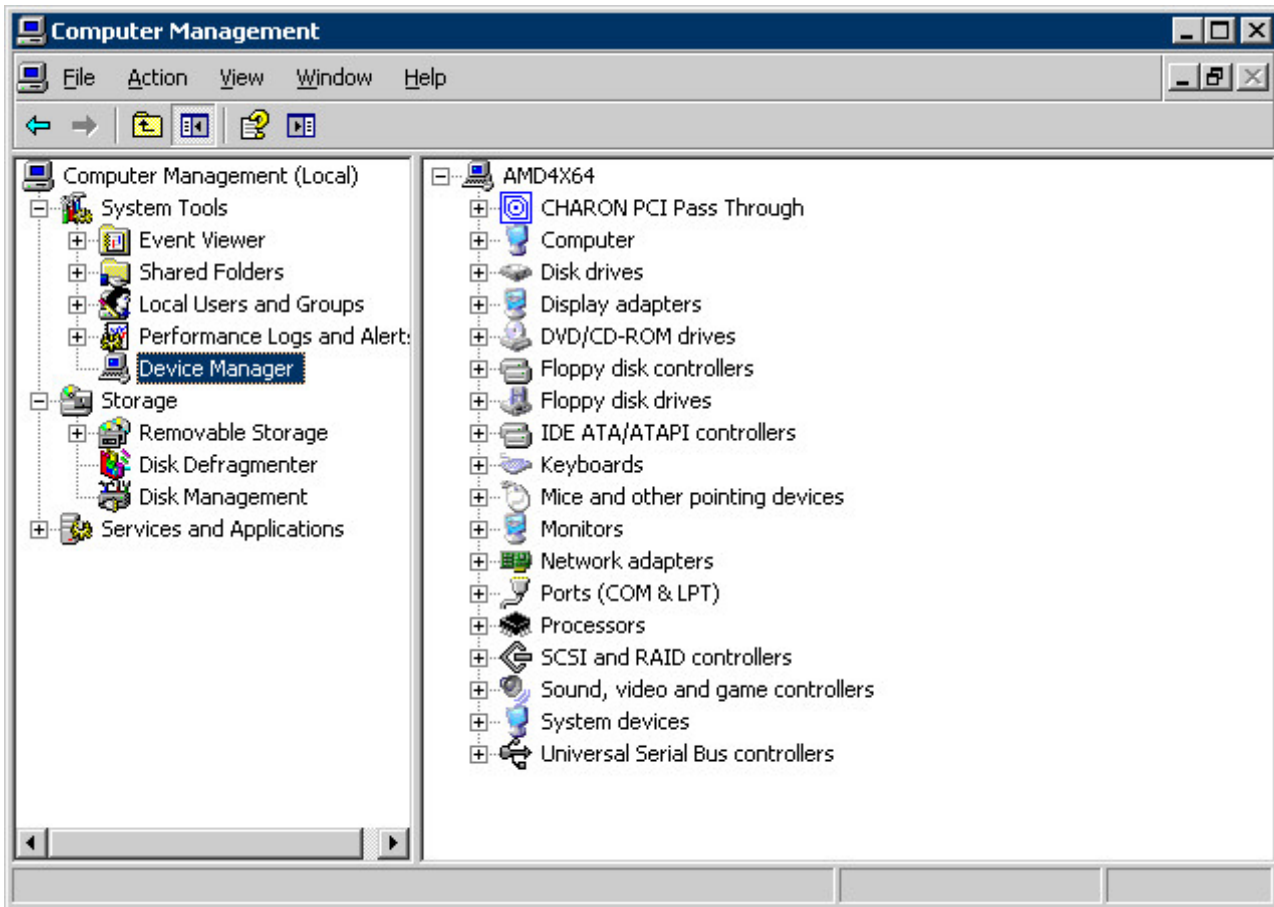
1. Install the DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter to some spare PCI slot of the host system
2. Boot a Windows operating system
3. Open "Computer Management"
4. Select "Device Manager"
5. In the right window select the desired physical serial adapter connected to the system, right-click the mouse button, and the corresponding menu will appear.
6. From the menu select "Update driver...". Windows will show "Hardware Upgrade Wizard"
7. Select "No, not this time", click "Next"
8. Select "Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)", click "Next"
9. Select "Don't search. I will choose the driver to install", click "Next"
10. Click "Have Disk...". Windows shows dialog "Install From Disk"
11. Instead of "A:\", click "Browse" and select path to the folder in which driver's INF file is located (typically "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Drivers\DIGI_X.X.0.XXXXX"), select "digi_ppt_amd64.inf", and click "Open"
12. The "Hardware Upgrade Wizard" should have "CHARON DIGI adapter". Select it, and click "Next"
13. There will be one or two more dialogs, but they are usual for device driver installation.
14. Reboot the host

Upon completion, a new device will appear in the device manager with the CHARON logo on it.

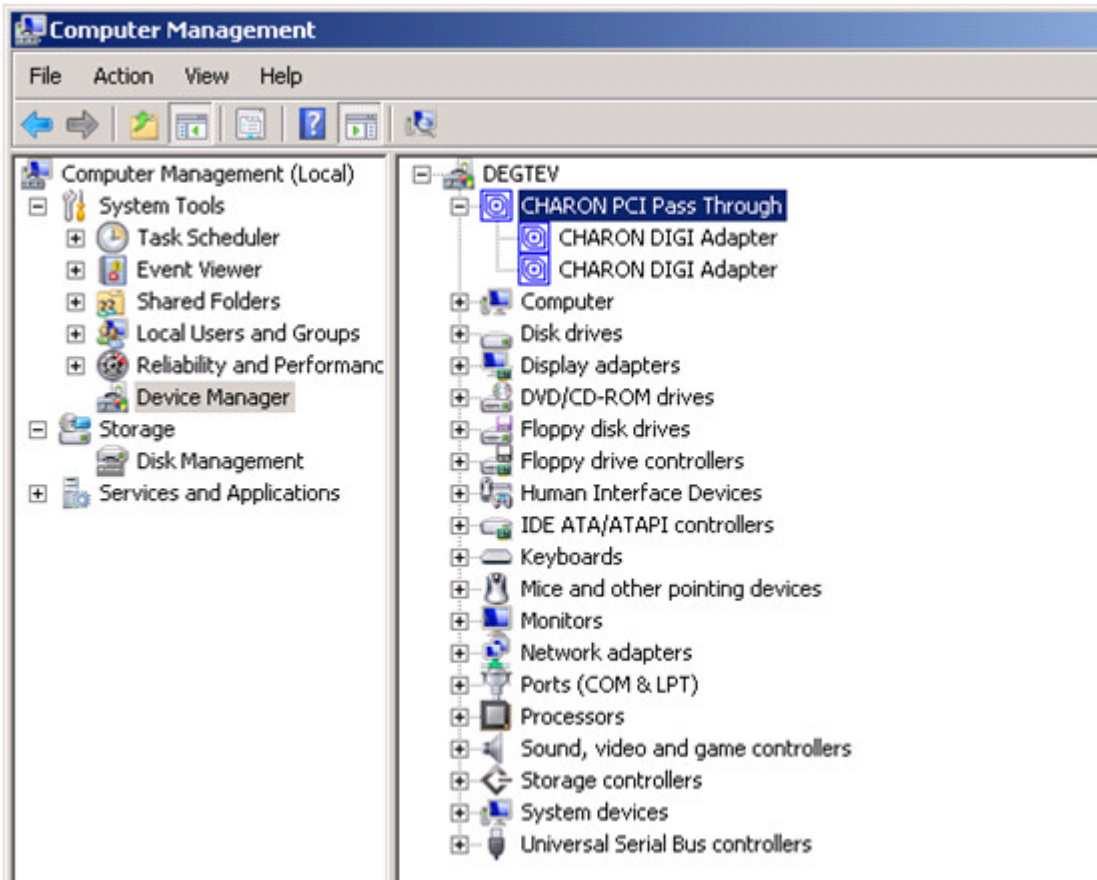
[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Mapping to host DIGI AccelePort PCI serial adapter

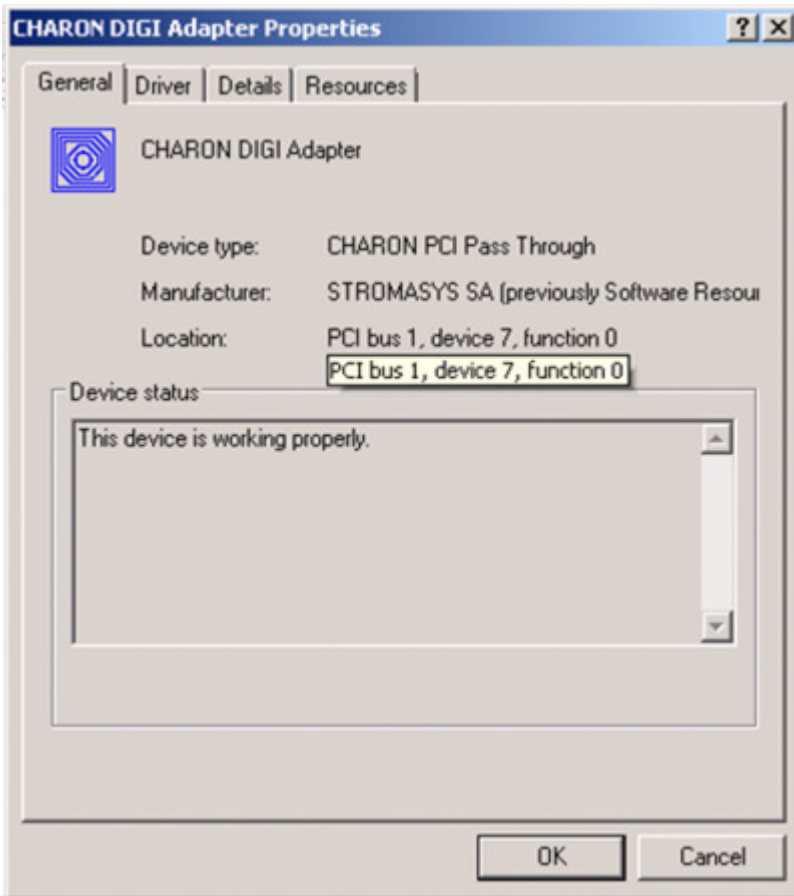
Open "Computer Management" application and select "Device Manager":



In the right panel select proper physical DIGI adapter:



Open its properties sheet by double-clicking on the selected adapter:



The "Location:" on the above picture gives X, Y, and Z for the "host_bus_location" parameter, for example:

```
set PBXDA host_bus_location = "PCI bus 1, device 7, function 0"
```

! Non-US-EN installations of Windows may present "Location:" string in local language, but "host_bus_location" parameter requires English notation, so the words "PCI", "bus", "device", and "function" must be specified in English.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

Sample configuration files

Contents

- HP AlphaServer 800 configuration file
- HP AlphaServer 4000 configuration file
- HP AlphaServer DS20 configuration file
- HP AlphaServer ES40 configuration file
- HP AlphaServer GS80 configuration file
- "configuration_name.icfg" configuration file

HP AlphaServer 800 configuration file

```

#
# Copyright (C) 1999-2016 STROMASYS
# All rights reserved.
#
# The software contained on this media is proprietary to and embodies
# the confidential technology of STROMASYS. Possession, use, duplication,
# or dissemination of the software and media is authorized only pursuant
# to a valid written license from STROMASYS.
#
#=====
#
# Sample configuration file for AlphaServer 800 machines.
#
#-----

set session hw_model = AlphaServer_800

#=====
#
# Choose a name for the instance, if needed, to differentiate it among other
# instances running on the same host.
#
#-----

include configuration_name.icfg

#=====
#
# Use the following commands to disable the rotating LOG files and enable
# a single LOG file. Select either append or overwrite (for each time the
# instance starts) and specify desired log path and file name.
#
#-----

set session log_method = append
#set session log_method = overwrite
#set session log = AlphaServer_800.log

#=====
#
# Overrides system assigned process's CPU affinity. The session changes
# the process's CPU affinity to the one specified.
#
#-----

#set session affinity="0, 1, 2, 3"

#=====
#
# The 'n_of_io_cpus' option overrides number of host CPU cores reserved for
# I/O processing. If omitted the session reserves 33% of available host CPU
# cores for I/O processing. Note that total amount of available host CPU
# cores is determined based on process's CPU affinity.
#
#-----

#set session n_of_io_cpus=1
#set session n_of_io_cpus=2
#set session n_of_io_cpus=...

#=====
#
# AlphaServer 800 5/333
#
#-----

set ace cpu_architecture = EV56
set rom dsrdb[0] = 1310 system_name = "AlphaServer 800 5/333"

```

```

=====
#
# AlphaServer 800 5/400
#
#-----

#set ace cpu_architecture = EV56
#set rom dsrdb[0] = 1584 system_name = "AlphaServer 800 5/400"

=====
#
# AlphaServer 800 5/500
#
#-----

#set ace cpu_architecture = EV56
#set rom dsrdb[0] = 1585 system_name = "AlphaServer 800 5/500"

=====
#
# Override default System Serial Number.
#
#-----

#set rom system_serial_number = SN01234567

=====
#
# Specify size of RAM from 256MB up to 8192MB (8GB) in 256MB extents.
#
#-----

#set ram size=256
#set ram size=512
#set ram size=1024
#set ram size=4096
#set ram size=8192

=====
#
# Uncomment to allow the virtual SRM console environment be preserved across
# emulator restarts.
#
#-----

#set rom container="AlphaServer_800.bin"

=====
#
# Uncomment to allow saving CMOS NVRAM content, so that to preserve
# Time & Date information.
#
#-----

#set toy container="AlphaServer_800.dat"

=====
#
# Select the connection method for the console serial line OPA0.
#
#-----

#load physical_serial_line OPA0 line="COM1:"
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="opa0.ht"
load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="putty -load OPA0"
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="c:\kea\user\opa0.ktc"

=====
#
# Select connection for the serial line TTA0.
#
#-----

```

```

#load physical_serial_line TTA0 line="COM2:"
#load virtual_serial_line TTA0 port=10000
#load virtual_serial_line TTA0 port=10000 application="tta0.ht"
#load virtual_serial_line TTA0 port=10000 application="putty -load TTA0"
#load virtual_serial_line TTA0 port=10000 application="c:\kea\user\tta0.ktc"

#=====
#
# If TTA0 is loaded, attach it to secondary serial line controller COM2.
#
#-----

#set COM2 line=TTA0

#=====
#
# Improve granularity of emulated AXP timer.
#
#-----

#set eisa clock_period=1000

#=====
#
# Load optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWA).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA interface=EWA0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

#=====
#
# The AlphaServer 800 contains built-in PCI SCSI adapter called PKA within
# the configuration file.
#
#-----
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA0 to the disk image.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

#=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA100 to a host disk drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive0"
#set PKA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

#=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's GKA200 to an unknown SCSI device.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[200]="\\.\ScsiN:X:Y:Z"

#=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA300 to the host's CD/DVD-ROM drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[300]="\\.\CdRom0"
#set PKA container[300]="\\.\CdRom<N>"

#=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA400 to an .ISO file (CD/DVD image).
#
#-----

#set PKA container[400] = "<file-name>.iso"

```

```

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKA500 to the host's SCSI tape drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[500]="\\.\Tape0"
#set PKA container[500]="\\.\Tape<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKA600 to a .VTAPE file (tape image).
#
#-----

#set PKA container[600] = "<file-name>.vtape"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA600 to host's 3.5" FDD. Uncomment
# the next line for the FDD to appear as DEC RX23 (otherwise it appears as
# DEC RX26).
#
# Either "A:" or "B:" may be used in container specification.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[600]="\\.\A:"
#set PKA media_type[600]="RX23"

=====
#
# Uncomment to enable emulation of secondary DEC-KZPBA SCSI controller (PKB).
#
#-----

#load KZPBA PKB scsi_id = 7

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKB0 to the disk image.
#
#-----

#set PKB container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKB100 to a host disk drive.
#
#-----

#set PKB container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive0"
#set PKB container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's GKB200 to an unknown SCSI device.
#
#-----

#set PKB container[200]="\\.\ScsiN:X:Y:Z"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKB300 to the host's CD/DVD-ROM drive.
#
#-----

#set PKB container[300]="\\.\CdRom0"
#set PKB container[300]="\\.\CdRom<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKB400 to an .ISO file (CD/DVD image).
#
#-----

```

```

#set PKB container[400] = "<file-name>.iso"

#=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKB500 to the host's SCSI tape drive.
#
#-----

#set PKB container[500]="\\.\Tape0"
#set PKB container[500]="\\.\Tape<N>"

#=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKB600 to a .VTAPE file (tape image).
#
#-----

#set PKB container[600] = "<file-name>.vtape"

#=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKB600 to host's 3.5" FDD. Uncomment
# the next line for the FDD to appear as DEC RX23 (otherwise it appears as
# DEC RX26).
#
# Either "A:" or "B:" may be used in container specification.
#
#-----

#set PKB container[600]="\\.\A:"
#set PKB media_type[600]="RX23"

#=====
#
# Uncomment to enable emulation of DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC Adapter.
#
#-----

#load KGPSA FGA

#=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's $1$DGA0 to the disk image.
#
#-----

#set FGA container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

#=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's $1$DGA100 to a host disk drive.
#
#-----

#set FGA container[100] = "\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

#=====
#
# Uncomment to enable emulation of secondary DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC Adapter.
#
#-----

#load KGPSA FGB

#=====
#
# Uncomment to enable PCI Pass Through access to physical EMULEX LP FC HBA,
# use two adapters to provide multipath with failover.
#
#-----

#set FGA host_bus_location = "PCI bus X, device Y, function Z"
#set FGB host_bus_location = "PCI bus A, device B, function C"

# this is the end of the configuration file #####

```


HP AlphaServer 4000 configuration file

```

#
# Copyright (C) 1999-2016 STROMASYS
# All rights reserved.
#
# The software contained on this media is proprietary to and embodies
# the confidential technology of STROMASYS. Possession, use, duplication,
# or dissemination of the software and media is authorized only pursuant
# to a valid written license from STROMASYS.
#
#=====
#
# Sample configuration file for AlphaServer 4000 machines.
#
#-----

set session hw_model = AlphaServer_4000

#=====
#
# Choose a name for the instance, if needed, to differentiate it among other
# instances running on the same host.
#
#-----

include configuration_name.icfg

#=====
#
# Use the following commands to disable the rotating LOG files and enable
# a single LOG file. Select either append or overwrite (for each time the
# instance starts) and specify desired log path and file name.
#
#-----

set session log_method = append
#set session log_method = overwrite
#set session log = AlphaServer_4000.log

#=====
#
# Overrides system assigned process's CPU affinity. The session changes
# the process's CPU affinity to the one specified.
#
#-----

#set session affinity="0, 1, 2, 3"

#=====
#
# The 'n_of_io_cpus' option overrides number of host CPU cores reserved for
# I/O processing. If omitted the session reserves 33% of available host CPU
# cores for I/O processing. Note that total amount of available host CPU
# cores is determined based on process's CPU affinity.
#
#-----

#set session n_of_io_cpus=1
#set session n_of_io_cpus=2
#set session n_of_io_cpus=...

#=====
#
# AlphaServer 4000 5/300
#
#-----

#set ace cpu_architecture = EV5
#set rom dsrdb[0] = 1450 system_name = "AlphaServer 4000 5/300"

```

```

=====
#
# AlphaServer 4000 5/400
#
#-----

set ace cpu_architecture = EV56
set rom dsrdb[0] = 1454 system_name = "AlphaServer 4000 5/400"

=====
#
# The 'n_of_cpus' option reduces number of emulated Alpha CPUs in the
# configuration.
#
#-----

#set session n_of_cpus=1

=====
#
# Override default System Serial Number.
#
#-----

#set rom system_serial_number = SN01234567

=====
#
# Specify size of RAM from 256MB up to 32768MB (32GB) in 256MB extents.
#
#-----

#set ram size=256
#set ram size=512
#set ram size=1024
#set ram size=4096
#set ram size=32768

=====
#
# Uncomment to allow the SRM console environment be preserved across
# emulator restarts.
#
#-----

#set rom container="AlphaServer_4000.bin"

=====
#
# Uncomment to allow saving CMOS NVRAM content, so that to preserve
# Time & Date information.
#
#-----

#set toy container="AlphaServer_4000.dat"

=====
#
# Select the connection method for the console serial line OPA0.
#
#-----

#load physical_serial_line OPA0 line="COM1:"
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="opa0.ht"
load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="putty -load OPA0"
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="c:\kea\user\opa0.ktc"

=====
#
# Improve granularity of emulated AXP timer.
#
#-----

#set eisa clock_period=1000

```

```

=====
#
# Load optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWA).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA interface=EWA0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

=====
#
# Load another optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWB).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB interface=EWB0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWB0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWB0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

=====
#
# Load another optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWC).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC interface=EWC0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWC0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWC0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

=====
#
# The AlphaServer 4000 contains built-in PCI SCSI adapter, called PKA within
# the configuration file.
#
#-----
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA0 to the disk image.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA100 to a host disk drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive0"
#set PKA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's GKA200 to an unknown SCSI device.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[200]="\\.\ScsiN:X:Y:Z"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA300 to the host's CD/DVD-ROM drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[300]="\\.\CdRom0"
#set PKA container[300]="\\.\CdRom<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA400 to an .ISO file (CD/DVD image).
#
#-----

#set PKA container[400] = "<file-name>.iso"

```

```

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKA500 to the host's SCSI tape drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[500]="\\.\Tape0"
#set PKA container[500]="\\.\Tape<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKA600 to a .VTAPE file (tape image).
#
#-----

#set PKA container[600] = "<file-name>.vtape"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA600 to host's 3.5" FDD. Uncomment
# the next line for the FDD to appear as DEC RX23 (otherwise it appears as
# DEC RX26).
#
# Either "A:" or "B:" may be used in container specification.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[600]="\\.\A:"
#set PKA media_type[600]="RX23"

=====
#
# Uncomment to enable emulation of DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC Adapter.
#
#-----

#load KGPSA FGA

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's $1$DGA0 to the disk image.
#
#-----

#set FGA container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's $1$DGA100 to a host disk drive.
#
#-----

#set FGA container[100] = "\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to enable emulation of secondary DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC Adapter.
#
#-----

#load KGPSA FGB

=====
#
# Uncomment to enable PCI Pass Through access to physical EMULEX LP FC HBA,
# use two adapters to provide multipath with failover.
#
#-----

#set FGA host_bus_location = "PCI bus X, device Y, function Z"
#set FGB host_bus_location = "PCI bus A, device B, function C"

# this is the end of the configuration file #####

```

[Back to Top](#)

HP AlphaServer DS20 configuration file

```

#
# Copyright (C) 1999-2016 STROMASYS
# All rights reserved.
#
# The software contained on this media is proprietary to and embodies
# the confidential technology of STROMASYS. Possession, use, duplication,
# or dissemination of the software and media is authorized only pursuant
# to a valid written license from STROMASYS.
#
#=====
#
# Sample configuration file for AlphaServer DS20 machines.
#
#-----

set session hw_model = AlphaServer_DS20

#=====
#
# Choose a name for the instance, if needed, to differentiate it among other
# instances running on the same host.
#
#-----

include configuration_name.icfg

#=====
#
# Use the following commands to disable the rotating LOG files and enable
# a single LOG file. Select either append or overwrite (for each time the
# instance starts) and specify desired log path and file name.
#
#-----

set session log_method = append
#set session log_method = overwrite
#set session log = AlphaServer_DS20.log

#=====
#
# Overrides system assigned process's CPU affinity. The session changes
# the process's CPU affinity to the one specified.
#
#-----

#set session affinity="0, 1, 2, 3"

#=====
#
# The 'n_of_io_cpus' option overrides number of host CPU cores reserved for
# I/O processing. If omitted the session reserves 33% of available host CPU
# cores for I/O processing. Note that total amount of available host CPU
# cores is determined based on process's CPU affinity.
#
#-----

#set session n_of_io_cpus=1
#set session n_of_io_cpus=2
#set session n_of_io_cpus=...

#=====
#
# AlphaServer DS20 6/500
#
#-----

#set ace cpu_architecture = EV6
#set rom dsrdb[0] = 1920 system_name = "AlphaServer DS20 6/500"

```

```

=====
#
# AlphaServer DS20E 67/667
#
#-----

set ace cpu_architecture = EV67
set rom dsrdb[0] = 1940 system_name = "AlphaServer DS20E 67/667"

=====
#
# The 'n_of_cpus' option reduces number of emulated Alpha CPUs in the
# configuration.
#
#-----

#set session n_of_cpus=1

=====
#
# Override default System Serial Number.
#
#-----

#set rom system_serial_number = SN01234567

=====
#
# Specify size of RAM from 256MB up to 32768MB (32GB) in 256MB extents.
#
#-----

#set ram size=256
#set ram size=512
#set ram size=1024
#set ram size=4096
#set ram size=32768

=====
#
# Uncomment to allow the virtual SRM console environment be preserved across
# emulator restarts.
#
#-----

#set rom container="AlphaServer_DS20.bin"

=====
#
# Uncomment to allow saving CMOS NVRAM content, so that to preserve
# Time & Date information.
#
#-----

#set toy container="AlphaServer_DS20.dat"

=====
#
# Select the connection method for the console serial line OPA0.
#
#-----

#load physical_serial_line OPA0 line="COM1:"
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="opa0.ht"
load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="putty -load OPA0"
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="c:\kea\user\opa0.ktc"

=====
#
# Improve granularity of emulated AXP timer.
#
#-----

#set isa clock_period=1000

```

```

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DQA0 to host's ATAPI CD/DVD-ROM drive.
#
#-----

#set ide container="\.\CdRom0"

=====
#
# Load optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWA).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA interface=EWA0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

=====
#
# Load another optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWB).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB interface=EWB0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWB0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWB0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

=====
#
# Load another optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWC).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC interface=EWC0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWC0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWC0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

=====
#
# The AlphaServer DS20 contains two built-in PCI SCSI adapters called PKA and
# PKB within the configuration file.
#
#-----
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA0 to the disk image.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA100 to a host disk drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[100] = "\.\PhysicalDrive0"
#set PKA container[100] = "\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's GKA200 to an unknown SCSI device.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[200] = "\.\ScsiN:X:Y:Z"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA300 to the host's CD/DVD-ROM drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[300] = "\.\CdRom0"
#set PKA container[300] = "\.\CdRom<N>"

```

```

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA400 to an .ISO file (CD/DVD image).
#
#-----

#set PKA container[400] = "<file-name>.iso"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKA500 to the host's SCSI tape drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[500] = "\\.\Tape0"
#set PKA container[500] = "\\.\Tape<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKA600 to a .VTAPE file (tape image).
#
#-----

#set PKA container[600] = "<file-name>.vtape"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA600 to host's 3.5" FDD. Uncomment
# the next line for the FDD to appear as DEC RX23 (otherwise it appears as
# DEC RX26).
#
# Either "A:" or "B:" may be used in container specification.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[600] = "\\.\A:"
#set PKA media_type[600] = "RX23"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKB0 to the disk image.
#
#-----

#set PKB container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKB100 to a host disk drive.
#
#-----

#set PKB container[100] = "\\.\PhysicalDrive0"
#set PKB container[100] = "\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's GKB200 to an unknown SCSI device.
#
#-----

#set PKB container[200] = "\\.\ScsiN:X:Y:Z"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKB300 to the host's CD/DVD-ROM drive.
#
#-----

#set PKB container[300] = "\\.\CdRom0"
#set PKB container[300] = "\\.\CdRom<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKB400 to an .ISO file (CD/DVD image).
#
#-----

```



```

#set PKB container[400] = "<file-name>.iso"

#####
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKB500 to the host's SCSI tape drive.
#
#-----

#set PKB container[500] = "\\.\Tape0"
#set PKB container[500] = "\\.\Tape<N>"

#####
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKB600 to a .VTAPE file (tape image).
#
#-----

#set PKB container[600] = "<file-name>.vtape"

#####
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKB600 to host's 3.5" FDD. Uncomment
# the next line for the FDD to appear as DEC RX23 (otherwise it appears as
# DEC RX26).
#
# Either "A:" or "B:" may be used in container specification.
#
#-----

#set PKB container[600] = "\\.\A:"
#set PKB media_type[600] = "RX23"

#####
#
# Uncomment to enable emulation of DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC Adapter.
#
#-----

#load KGPSA FGA

#####
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's $1$DGA0 to the disk image.
#
#-----

#set FGA container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

#####
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's $1$DGA100 to a host disk drive.
#
#-----

#set FGA container[100] = "\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

#####
#
# Uncomment to enable emulation of secondary DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC Adapter.
#
#-----

#load KGPSA FGB

#####
#
# Uncomment to enable PCI Pass Through access to physical EMULEX LP FC HBA,
# use two adapters to provide multipath with failover.
#
#-----

#set FGA host_bus_location = "PCI bus X, device Y, function Z"
#set FGB host_bus_location = "PCI bus A, device B, function C"

# this is the end of the configuration file #####

```

HP AlphaServer ES40 configuration file

```

#
# Copyright (C) 1999-2016 STROMASYS
# All rights reserved.
#
# The software contained on this media is proprietary to and embodies
# the confidential technology of STROMASYS. Possession, use, duplication,
# or dissemination of the software and media is authorized only pursuant
# to a valid written license from STROMASYS.
#
#=====
#
# Sample configuration file for AlphaServer ES40 machines.
#
#-----

set session hw_model = AlphaServer_ES40

#=====
#
# Choose a name for the instance, if needed, to differentiate it among other
# instances running on the same host.
#
#-----

include configuration_name.icfg

#=====
#
# Use the following commands to disable the rotating LOG files and enable
# a single LOG file. Select either append or overwrite (for each time the
# instance starts) and specify desired log path and file name.
#
#-----

set session log_method = append
#set session log_method = overwrite
#set session log = AlphaServer_ES40.log

#=====
#
# Overrides system assigned process's CPU affinity. The session changes
# the process's CPU affinity to the one specified.
#
#-----

#set session affinity="0, 1, 2, 3"

#=====
#
# The 'n_of_io_cpus' option overrides number of host CPU cores reserved for
# I/O processing. If omitted the session reserves 33% of available host CPU
# cores for I/O processing. Note that total amount of available host CPU
# cores is determined based on process's CPU affinity.
#
#-----

#set session n_of_io_cpus=1
#set session n_of_io_cpus=2
#set session n_of_io_cpus=...

#=====
#
# AlphaServer ES40 6/500
#
#-----

#set ace cpu_architecture = EV6
#set rom dsrdb[0] = 1816 system_name = "AlphaServer ES40 6/500"
#set rom version[1] = 1.98-4 version[2] = 1.92-5

```

```

=====
#
# AlphaServer ES40 6/667
#
#-----

set ace cpu_architecture = EV67
set rom dsrdb[0] = 1820 system_name = "AlphaServer ES40 6/667"

=====
#
# The 'n_of_cpus' option reduces number of emulated Alpha CPUs in the
# configuration.
#
#-----

#set session n_of_cpus=1
#set session n_of_cpus=2
#set session n_of_cpus=3

=====
#
# Override default System Serial Number.
#
#-----

#set rom system_serial_number = SN01234567

=====
#
# Specify size of RAM from 256MB up to 32768MB (32GB) in 256MB extents.
#
#-----

#set ram size=256
#set ram size=512
#set ram size=1024
#set ram size=4096
#set ram size=32768

=====
#
# Uncomment to allow the SRM console environment be preserved across
# emulator restarts.
#
#-----

#set rom container="clipper.bin"

=====
#
# Uncomment to allow saving CMOS NVRAM content, so that to preserve
# Time & Date information.
#
#-----

#set toy container="clipper.dat"

=====
#
# Select the connection method for the console serial line OPA0.
#
#-----

#load physical_serial_line OPA0 line="COM1:"
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="opa0.ht"
load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="putty -load OPA0"
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="c:\kea\user\opa0.ktc"

=====
#
# Improve granularity of emulated AXP timer.
#
#-----

#set isa clock_period=1000

```

```

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DQA0 to host's ATAPI CD/DVD-ROM drive.
#
#-----

#set ide container="\\.\CdRom0"

=====
#
# Load optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWA).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA interface=EWA0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

=====
#
# Load another optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWB).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB interface=EWB0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWB0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWB0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

=====
#
# Load another optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWC).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC interface=EWC0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWC0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWC0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to enable emulation of DEC-KZPBA SCSI controller.
#
#-----

#load KZPBA PKA scsi_id = 7

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA0 to the disk image.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA100 to a host disk drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive0"
#set PKA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's GKA200 to an unknown SCSI device.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[200]="\\.\ScsiN:X:Y:Z"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA300 to the host's CD/DVD-ROM drive.
#
#-----

```

```

#set PKA container[300]="\\.\CdRom0"
#set PKA container[300]="\\.\CdRom<N>"

#-----
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA400 to an .ISO file (CD/DVD image).
#
#-----

#set PKA container[400] = "<file-name>.iso"

#-----
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKA500 to the host's SCSI tape drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[500]="\\.\Tape0"
#set PKA container[500]="\\.\Tape<N>"

#-----
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKA600 to a .VTAPE file (tape image).
#
#-----

#set PKA container[600] = "<file-name>.vtape"

#-----
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA600 to host's 3.5" FDD. Uncomment
# the next line for the FDD to appear as DEC RX23 (otherwise it appears as
# DEC RX26).
#
# Either "A:" or "B:" may be used in container specification.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[600]="\\.\A:"
#set PKA media_type[600]="RX23"

#-----
#
# Uncomment to enable emulation of DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC Adapter.
#
#-----

#load KGPSA FGA

#-----
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's $1$DGA0 to the disk image.
#
#-----

#set FGA container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

#-----
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's $1$DGA100 to a host disk drive.
#
#-----

#set FGA container[100] = "\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

#-----
#
# Uncomment to enable emulation of secondary DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC Adapter.
#
#-----

#load KGPSA FGB

```

```
#=====
#
# Uncomment to enable PCI Pass Through access to physical EMULEX LP FC HBA,
# use two adapters to provide multipath with failover.
#
#-----
#set FGA host_bus_location = "PCI bus X, device Y, function Z"
#set FGB host_bus_location = "PCI bus A, device B, function C"
# this is the end of the configuration file #####
```

[Back to Top](#)

HP AlphaServer GS80 configuration file

```

#
# Copyright (C) 1999-2016 STROMASYS
# All rights reserved.
#
# The software contained on this media is proprietary to and embodies
# the confidential technology of STROMASYS. Possession, use, duplication,
# or dissemination of the software and media is authorized only pursuant
# to a valid written license from STROMASYS.
#
#=====
#
# Sample configuration file for AlphaServer GS80 machines.
#
#-----

set session hw_model = AlphaServer_GS80

#=====
#
# Choose a name for the instance, if needed, to differentiate it among other
# instances running on the same host.
#
#-----

include configuration_name.icfg

#=====
#
# Use the following commands to disable the rotating LOG files and enable
# a single LOG file. Select either append or overwrite (for each time the
# instance starts) and specify desired log path and file name.
#
#-----

set session log_method = append
#set session log_method = overwrite
#set session log = AlphaServer_GS80.log

#=====
#
# Overrides system assigned process's CPU affinity. The session changes
# the process's CPU affinity to the one specified.
#
#-----

#set session affinity="0, 1, 2, 3"

#=====
#
# The 'n_of_io_cpus' option overrides number of host CPU cores reserved for
# I/O processing. If omitted the session reserves 33% of available host CPU
# cores for I/O processing. Note that total amount of available host CPU
# cores is determined based on process's CPU affinity.
#
#-----

#set session n_of_io_cpus=1
#set session n_of_io_cpus=2
#set session n_of_io_cpus=...

#=====
#
# AlphaServer GS80 67/728
#
#-----

set ace cpu_architecture = EV67
set rom dsrdb[0] = 1967 system_name = "AlphaServer GS80 67/728"

```

```

#####
#
# "Turn" it into 8 CPU capable AlphaServer GS1280. Make sure to has even
# number of CPUs (2, 4, 6, ... 8). This is to reflect that fact that on real
# MARVELL platform CPUs are plugged in pairs (dual-cpu boards).
#
#-----

#set ace cpu_architecture = EV67
#set rom system_name = "AlphaServer GS1280"
#set rom dsrdb[0] = 2038 dsrdb[4] = 3050 dsrdb[11] = 1300 dsrdb[12] = 1300

#####
#
# The 'n_of_cpus' option reduces number of emulated Alpha CPUs in the
# configuration.
#
#-----

#set session n_of_cpus=1
#set session n_of_cpus=2
#set session n_of_cpus=...
#set session n_of_cpus=7

#####
#
# Override default System Serial Number.
#
#-----

#set rom system_serial_number = SN01234567

#####
#
# Specify size of RAM from 256MB up to 65536MB (64GB) in 256MB extents.
#
#-----

#set ram size=256
#set ram size=512
#set ram size=1024
#set ram size=4096
#set ram size=65536

#####
#
# Uncomment to allow the SRM console environment be preserved across
# emulator restarts.
#
#-----

#set rom container="AlphaServer_GS80.bin"

#####
#
# Uncomment to allow saving CMOS NVRAM content, so that to preserve
# Time & Date information.
#
#-----

#set toy container="AlphaServer_GS80.dat"

#####
#
# Select the connection method for the console serial line OPA0.
#
#-----

#load physical_serial_line OPA0 line="COM1:"
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="opa0.ht"
load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="putty -load OPA0"
#load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="c:\kea\user\opa0.ktc"

```



```

=====
#
# Improve granularity of emulated AXP timer.
#
#-----

#set isa clock_period=1000

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DQA0 to host's ATAPI CD/DVD-ROM drive.
#
#-----

#set ide container="\\.\CdRom0"

=====
#
# Load optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWA).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA interface=EWA0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

=====
#
# Load another optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWB).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWB interface=EWB0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWB0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWB0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

=====
#
# Load another optional DE500BA PCI Ethernet Adapter (EWC).
#
#-----

#load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWC interface=EWC0
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWC0 interface="(disabled)"
#load packet_port/chnetwrk EWC0 interface="connection:<connection-name>"

=====
#
# The AlphaServer GS80 contains built-in PCI SCSI adapter, called PKA within
# the configuration file.
#
#-----
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA0 to the disk image.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA100 to a host disk drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive0"
#set PKA container[100]="\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's GKA200 to an unknown SCSI device.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[200]="\\.\ScsiN:X:Y:Z"

```

```

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA300 to the host's CD/DVD-ROM drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[300]="\\.\CdRom0"
#set PKA container[300]="\\.\CdRom<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA400 to an .ISO file (CD/DVD image).
#
#-----

#set PKA container[400] = "<file-name>.iso"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKA500 to the host's SCSI tape drive.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[500]="\\.\Tape0"
#set PKA container[500]="\\.\Tape<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's MKA600 to a .VTAPE file (tape image).
#
#-----

#set PKA container[600] = "<file-name>.vtape"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's DKA600 to host's 3.5" FDD. Uncomment
# the next line for the FDD to appear as DEC RX23 (otherwise it appears as
# DEC RX26).
#
# Either "A:" or "B:" may be used in container specification.
#
#-----

#set PKA container[600]="\\.\A:"
#set PKA media_type[600]="RX23"

=====
#
# Uncomment to enable emulation of DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC Adapter.
#
#-----

#load KGPSA FGA

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's $1$DGA0 to the disk image.
#
#-----

#set FGA container[0] = "<file-name>.vdisk"

=====
#
# Uncomment to connect the emulator's $1$DGA100 to a host disk drive.
#
#-----

#set FGA container[100] = "\\.\PhysicalDrive<N>"

=====
#
# Uncomment to enable emulation of secondary DEC-KGPSA-CA PCI FC Adapter.
#
#-----

#load KGPSA FGB

```

```
#=====
#
# Uncomment to enable PCI Pass Through access to physical EMULEX LP FC HBA,
# use two adapters to provide multipath with failover.
#
#-----
#set FGA host_bus_location = "PCI bus X, device Y, function Z"
#set FGB host_bus_location = "PCI bus A, device B, function C"
# this is the end of the configuration file #####
```

[Back to Top](#)

"configuration_name.icfg" configuration file

```
#  
# Copyright (C) 1999-2016 STROMASYS  
# All rights reserved.  
#  
# The software contained on this media is proprietary to and embodies  
# the confidential technology of STROMASYS. Possession, use, duplication,  
# or dissemination of the software and media is authorized only pursuant  
# to a valid written license from STROMASYS.  
#  
#=====
```

#set session configuration_name = My_Virtual_Machine

```
# this is the end of the configuration file #####
```

[Back to Top](#)

CHARON-AXP for Windows deinstallation

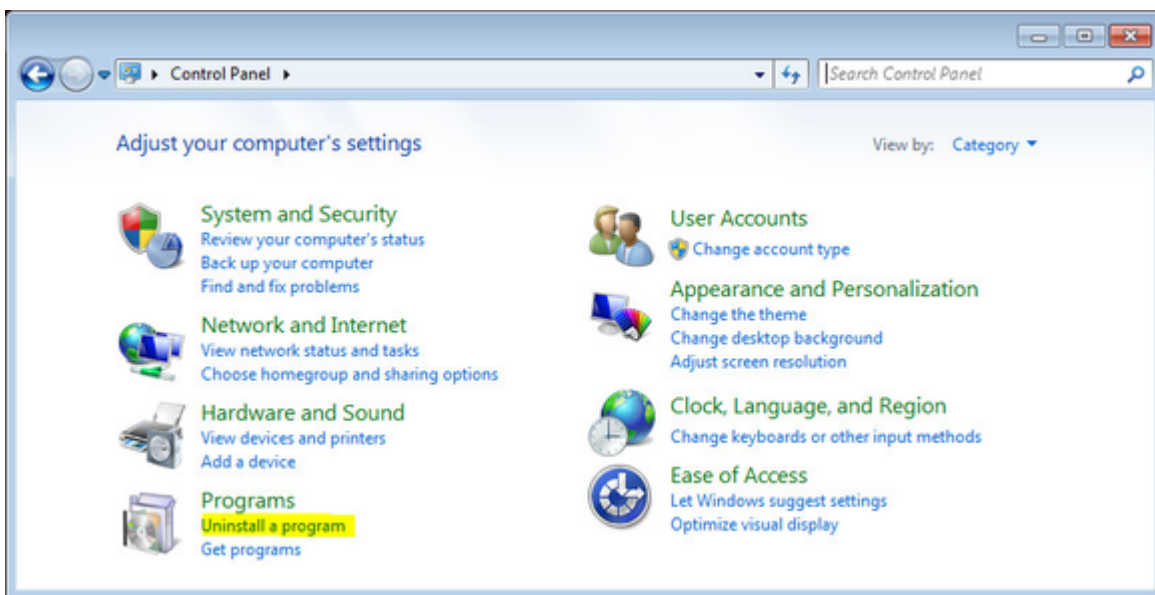
Deinstallation procedure

Perform a clean shutdown of the running guests, open the CHARON Virtual Machines Manager, stop all running CHARON-AXP Virtual Machines (VM) and remove them.

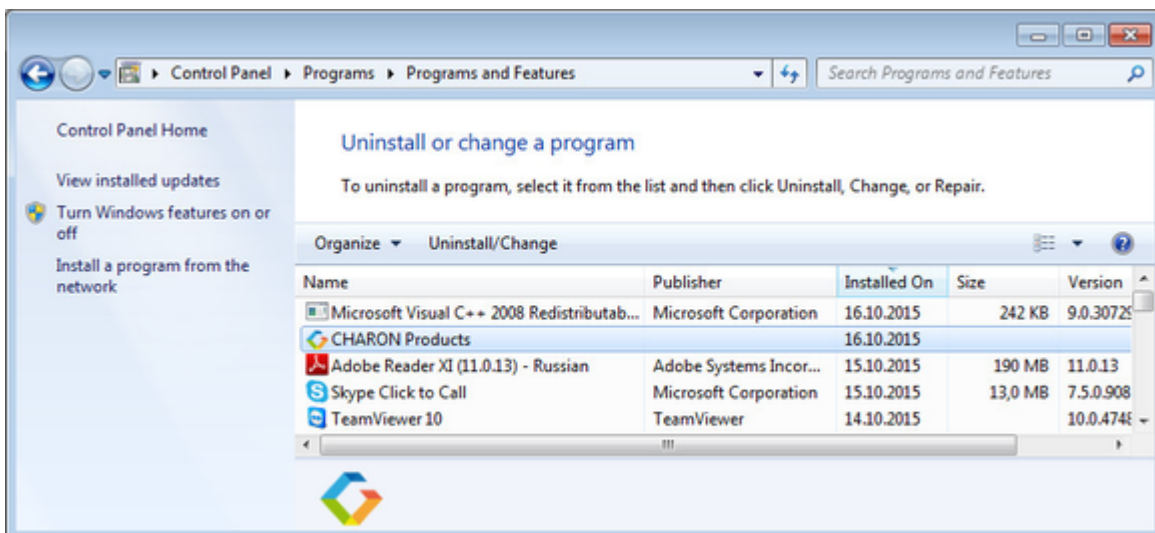
In case of a complete deinstallation:

- Remove all the CHARON Virtual Machines.
- Using the "Network Control Center" utility that can be opened from the "CHARON Virtual Machines Manager", release all the network interfaces back to the CHARON host.
- Remove any specific CHARON drivers installed manually (if any).

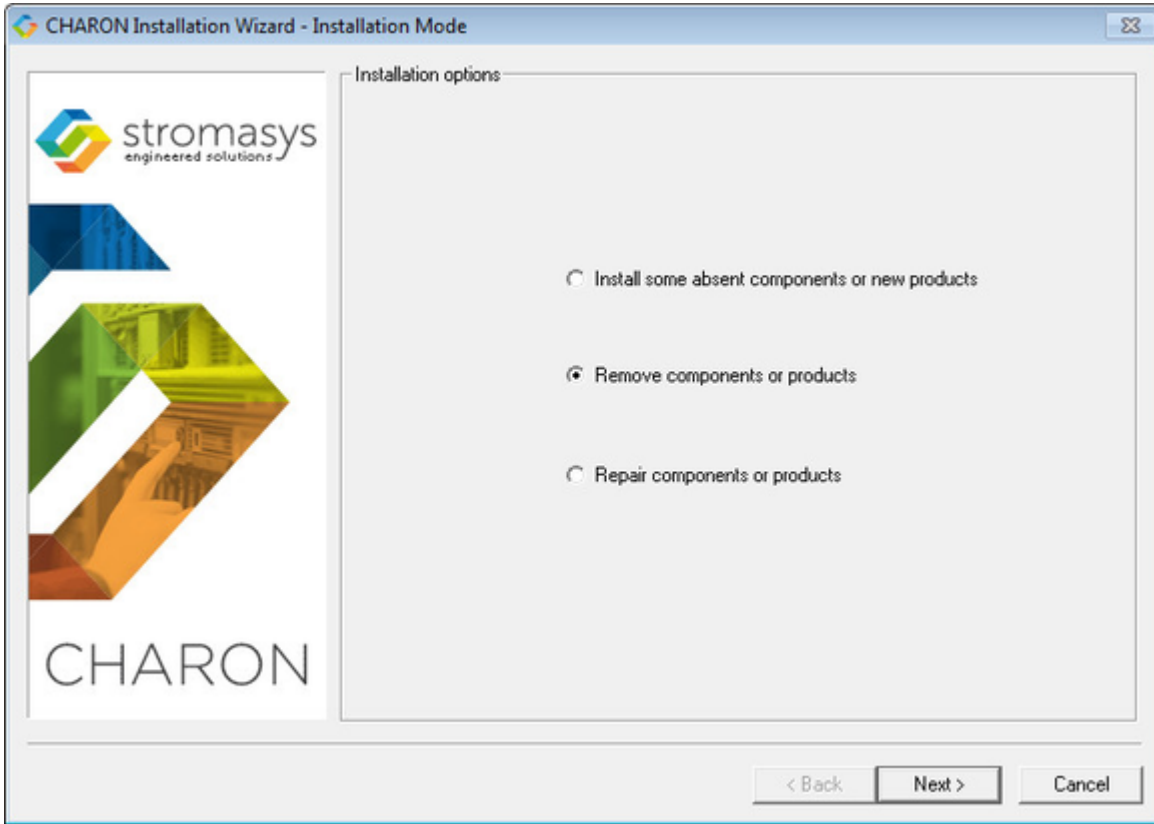
Open up the "Control Panel" and select "Uninstall a program":



In the list of applications, double click on "CHARON Products":

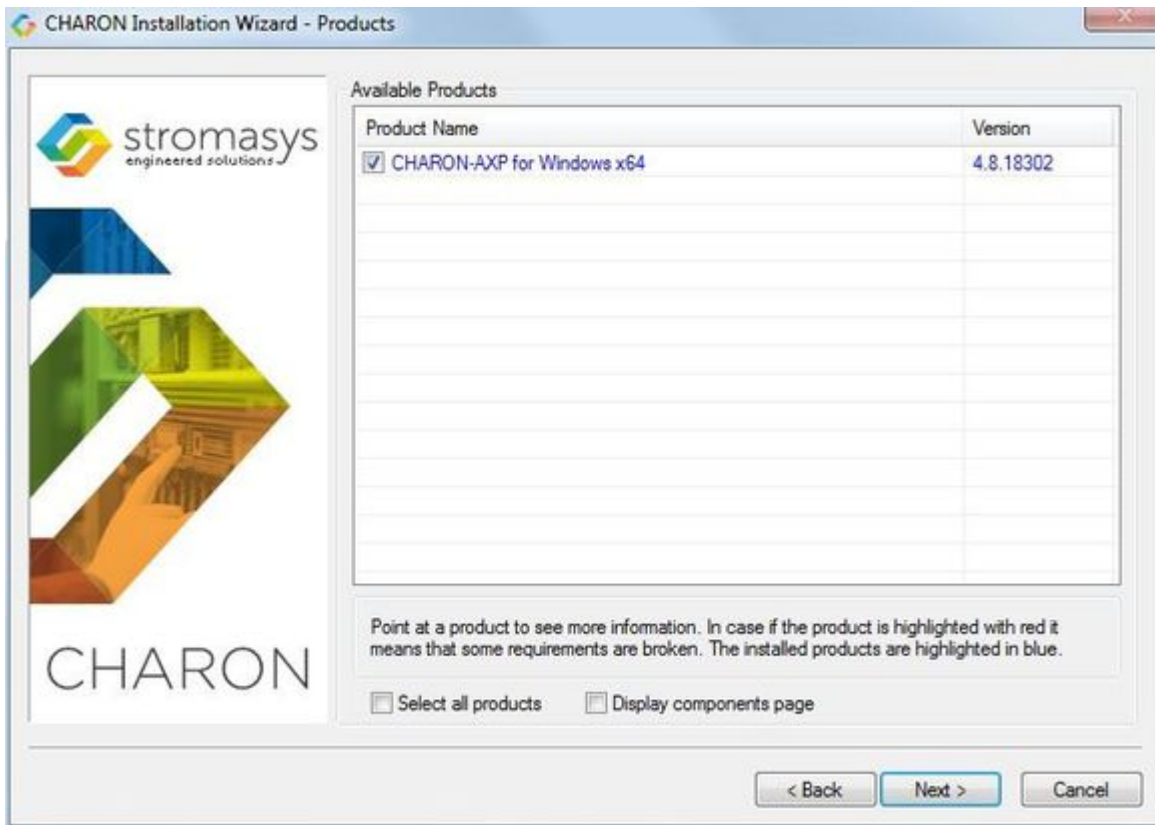


In the appearing CHARON installation dialog, select "Remove components or products" and press the "Next" button:

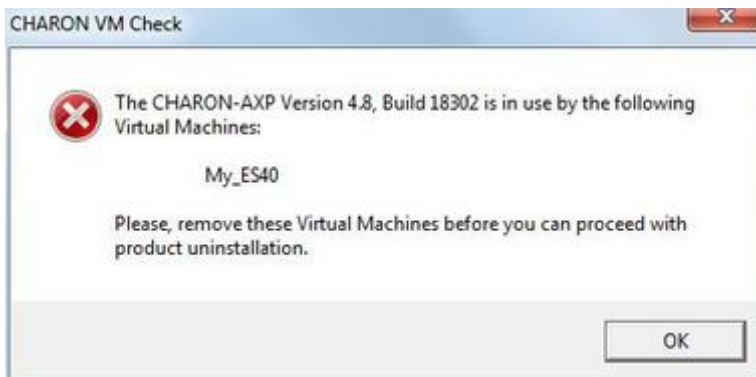


In the following dialog, select the CHARON product to be removed (or changed). Check "Select all the products" for deinstallation (or changing) of all installed CHARON products. Do not select "Display components page" unless you need to remove just some components of the CHARON product.

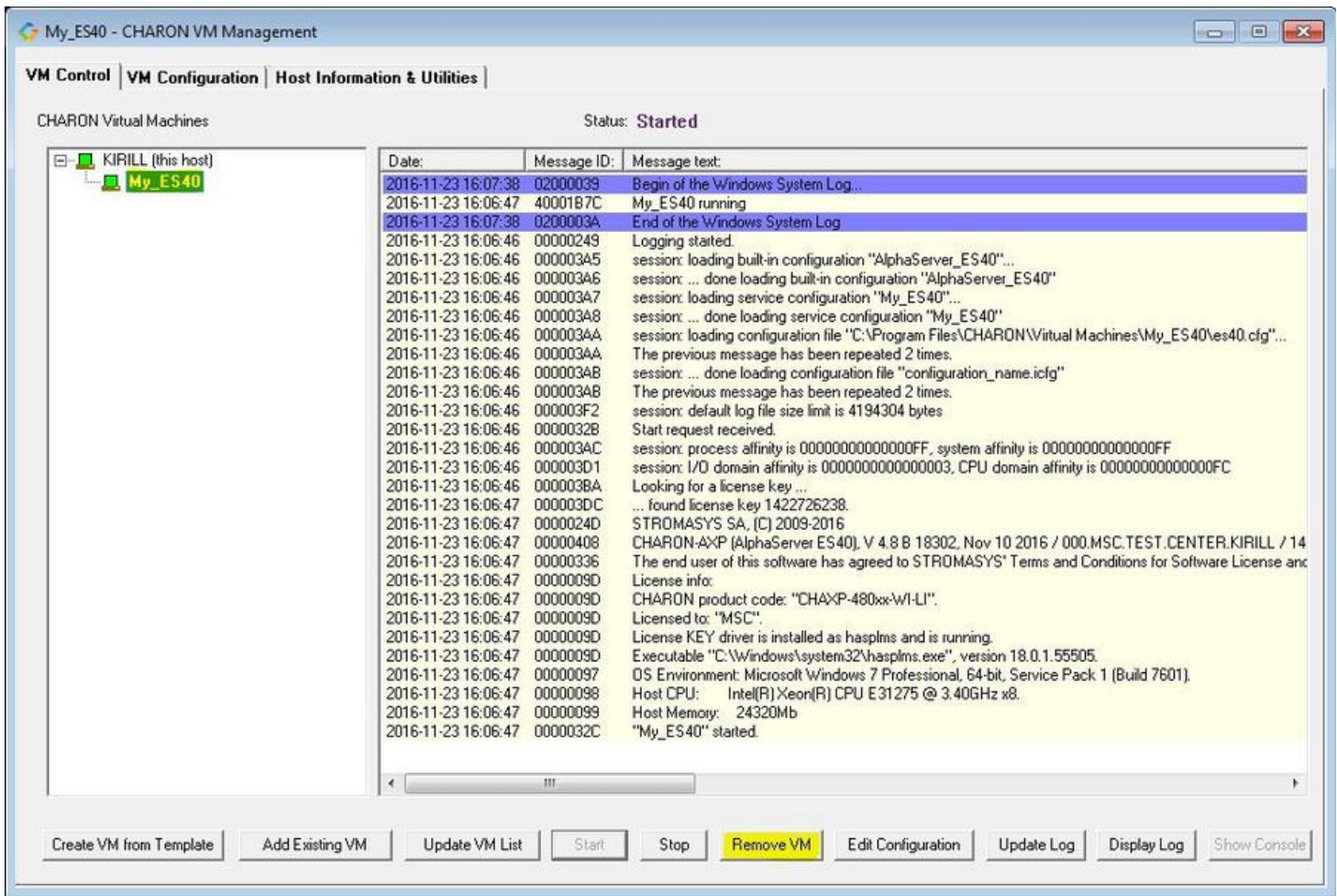
Press the "Next" button:



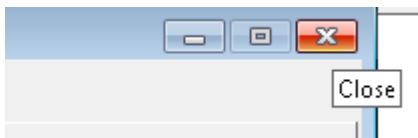
If there are some CHARON Virtual Machines that use this particular version of CHARON the following error message will be displayed:



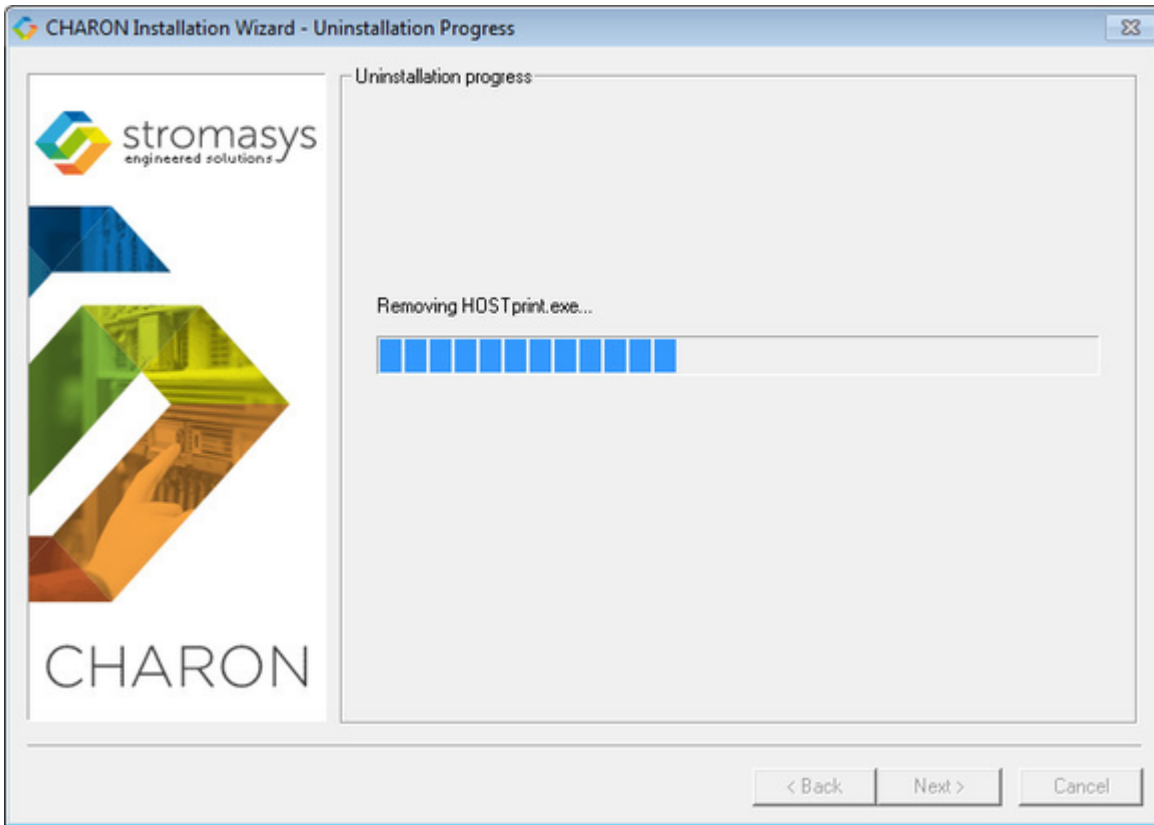
In this case, open the "CHARON Virtual Machines Manager", select the CHARON Machine(s) listed above and press the "Remove VM" button:



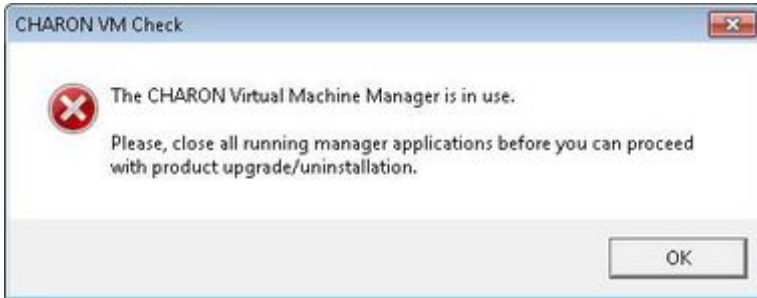
Close the "CHARON Virtual Machine Manager" with a click on the "x" button and confirm you want to exit:



Press the "Next" button, the uninstallation process will begin:

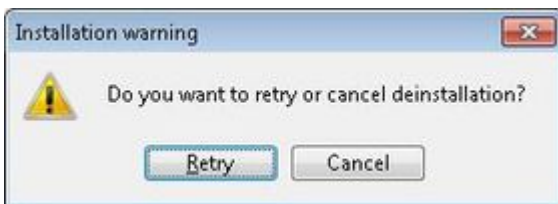


If the "CHARON Virtual Machines Manager" is still running the following dialog will be displayed:

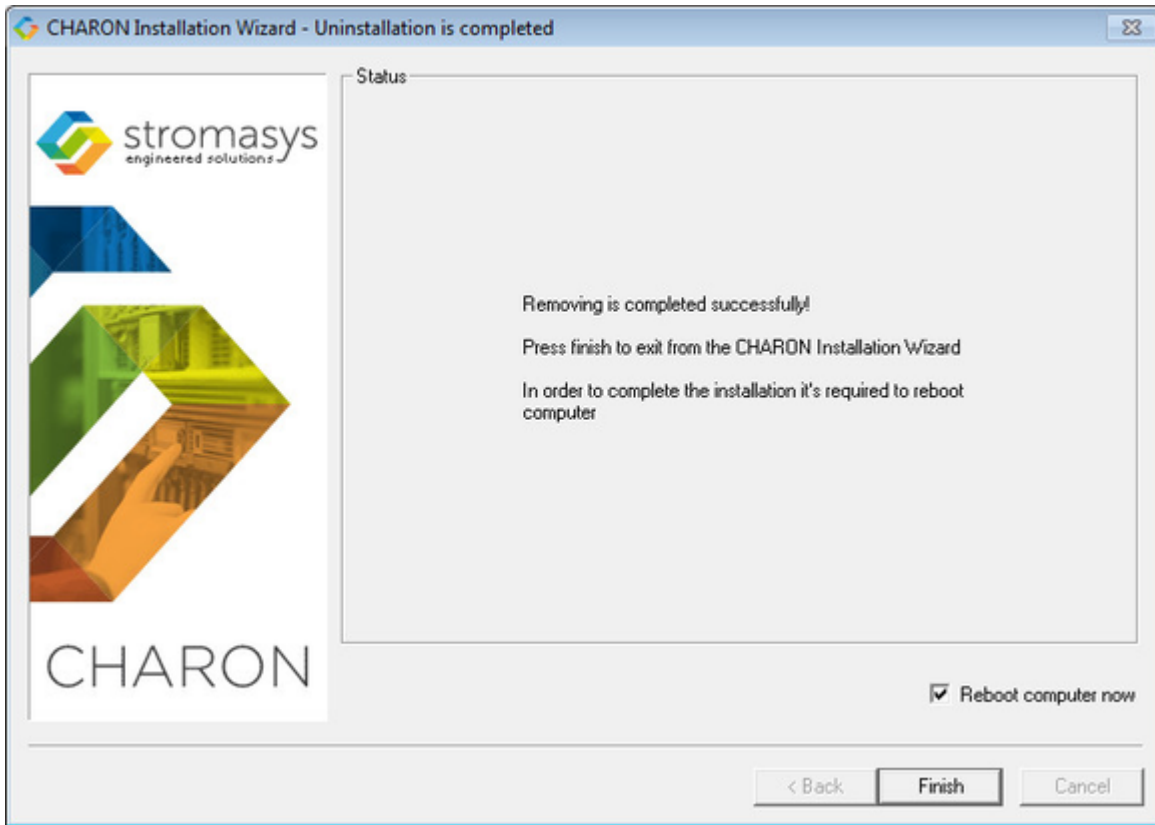


Do not close the uninstallation dialog but exit from "CHARON Virtual Machines Manager" the way described above.

Press the "OK" button then the "Retry" one in the appearing dialog:



Once uninstallation (or changing) is done, the following dialog will be displayed:



Keep the "Reboot computer now" selected and press the "Finish" button to reboot the CHARON host.

[Back to Top](#)

Appendixes

Contents

- Log monitoring - logmond best practice
- How to implement time synchronisation between CHARON-AXP Host OS and Guest OS

Log monitoring - logmond best practice

Table of contents

- Description
- Recommendations
- Notes
- Service setup example
 - Setup and start your virtual machine
 - Install and start the log monitor service
- Alerts customization examples
 - Creating a Windows Event
 - Sending an email via powershell
 - Example using an office365 account
 - Example using a gmail account
- Running the log monitor from the command line
 - Starting in background mode
 - Debugging
- NOLICENSE.BAT considerations
- Related articles

Description

The Log Monitor & Dispatcher is a special program which monitors a guest LOG file produced by CHARON and executes a customized script when it detects removal of a license. This utility is available for CHARON-AXP and CHARON-VAX V4.6 and above.

It runs in the background (as a program or as a service) and periodically scans a specified LOG file. When it detects a message with the code 000002A or 00000351 ("Detected removal of a license") it submits the `NOLICENSE.BAT` procedure (this BAT file must be created manually).

The Log Monitor & Dispatcher service is installed as `EmulatorLogMonitor`. By default it is installed in such a way that requires explicit actions to be started (either through a command line interface or using the standard ways of service management). For unattended execution, change the service's configuration so that Windows starts the service automatically.

i The tool requires a specific file "`NOLICENSE.BAT`" containing some specific instructions to be taken in situation of license absence. It is recommended you create this file in the folder (presumably) containing the LOG file.

When it is invoked by the "Log Monitor & Dispatcher", the current directory of the batch process is set to the same folder from which the "Log Monitor & Dispatcher" was previously installed as a service or from which it was started as a background process. This means that the user action file may, in principle, operate with relative paths and relocate (as part of the whole configuration, i.e. together with accompanying LOG file).

The user action file will not invoke interactive applications as it may run in an environment where interactive services do not work, for example: when "Log Monitor & Dispatcher" is installed as a service.


The Log Monitor utility will report an alert only when no more license is available. It cannot send an alert when 2 dongles were connected (the main one and a backup one for example) and one is disconnected

Recommendations

- Create a specific folder to hold the CHARON configuration and log files, the `nolicense.bat` file and any specific action script you would add
- Use the rotating log files mechanism or use a single log file with "append" mode
- Install your virtual machines as services (this is the default mode starting with CHARON-AXP and CHARON-VAX version 4.8), they will then be able to start when the CHARON Windows server will boot. This will also allow you to install and start the CHARON log monitor service, named "`EmulatorLogMonitor`": doing so you will not have to start `logmond` manually in interactive mode and newly added virtual machines services will be automatically taken into account


If you're using rotating log files and you use the minus character ("-") in the configuration_name, the logmond process will not execute the nolicense.bat script file and will report a "wrong prefix" error (this can only be seen using the debugging mode)

Applies to: All CHARON kits up to version 4.7 build 17101 (included)

 A patch to replace logmond.exe file is available [here](#).

 Patch 17103, released on April 27th 2016, for CHARON-AXP and CHARON-VAX solves this problem.

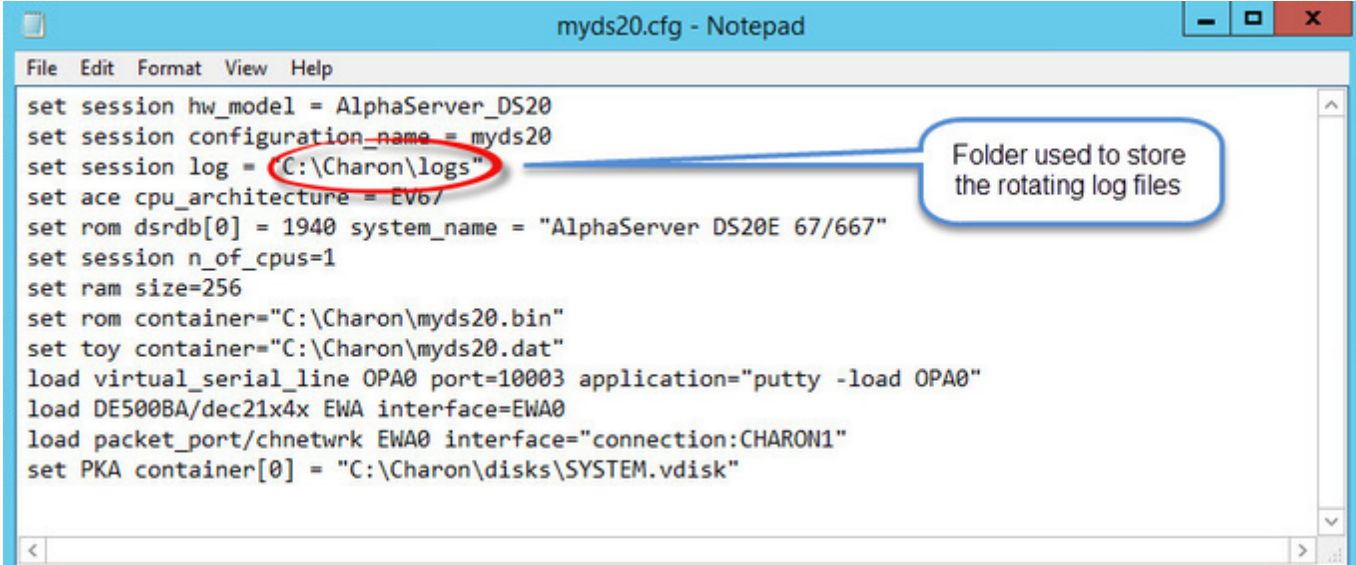
Notes

- The log monitor utility will detect the absence of the dongle only at a specified interval, called the license check interval and defined by the license. Its default is set to 1 hour.  In case you need to perform tests, you can send us a fresh C2V file and ask for an update to reduce this interval.
- Once started the logmond utility will lock the virtual machine log file, you will not be able to move it, copy it or delete it. In order to view the log file you will however be able to open it using the notepad utility or other log editors like baretail for example which will allow you to have a continuous view of the log with highlights (see: [CHARON Log files - Using baretail on Windows for syntax highlighting](#)) or vim (see: [CHARON Log files - Using vim for syntax highlighting on Linux and Windows](#))
- If you encounter a "Can't open CHARON log file" from the "CHARON Service Manager" utility (CHARON-AXP and CHARON-VAX V4.7 and below), please open the "Service Management" menu then select "Refresh Service List". This error occurs when the Service Manager has not detected a change in the configuration.

Service setup example

Example below is based on a CHARON-AXP V4.7 B17101 running on a Windows 2012 R2 server and emulating an AlphaServer DS20. All files (configuration, bin, rom and nolicense.bat) are located in C:\Charon, rotating log files are located in C:\Charon\logs

The configuration file is defined as follows:



```


myds20.cfg - Notepad
File Edit Format View Help
set session hw_model = AlphaServer_DS20
set session configuration_name = myds20
set session log = C:\Charon\logs
set ace cpu_architecture = EV6/
set rom dsrdb[0] = 1940 system_name = "AlphaServer DS20E 67/667"
set session n_of_cpus=1
set ram size=256
set rom container="C:\Charon\myds20.bin"
set toy container="C:\Charon\myds20.dat"
load virtual_serial_line OPA0 port=10003 application="putty -load OPA0"
load DE500BA/dec21x4x EWA interface=EWA0
load packet_port/chnetwrk EWA0 interface="connection:CHARON1"
set PKA container[0] = "C:\Charon\disks\SYSTEM.vdisk"

```

Setup and start your virtual machine


■ CHARON-AXP and CHARON-VAX V4.8 and above:

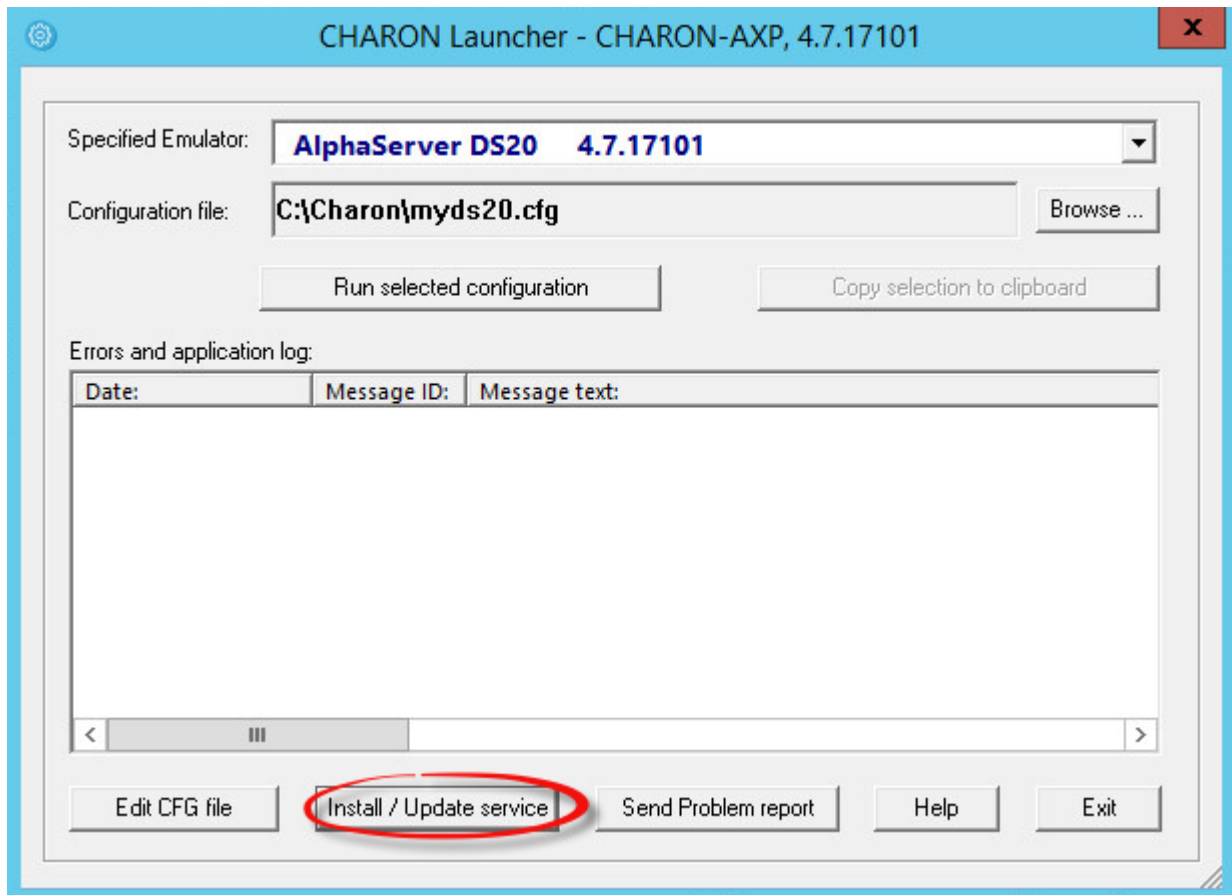
- Start the "CHARON Virtual Machines Manager"
- Create your virtual machine and start it

 See Running and managing CHARON-AXP for Windows or Running and managing CHARON-VAX and CHARON-PDP for Windows for details

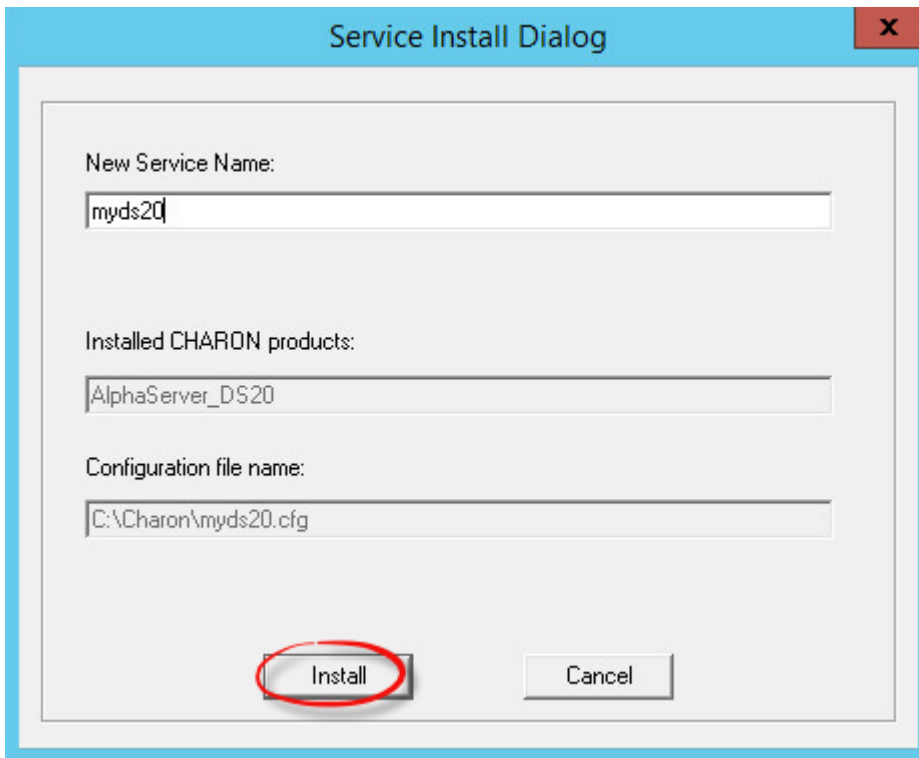
■ CHARON-AXP and CHARON-VAX V4.7 and below:

- Run the Launcher, load the configuration file and click on the "Install / Update service" box:

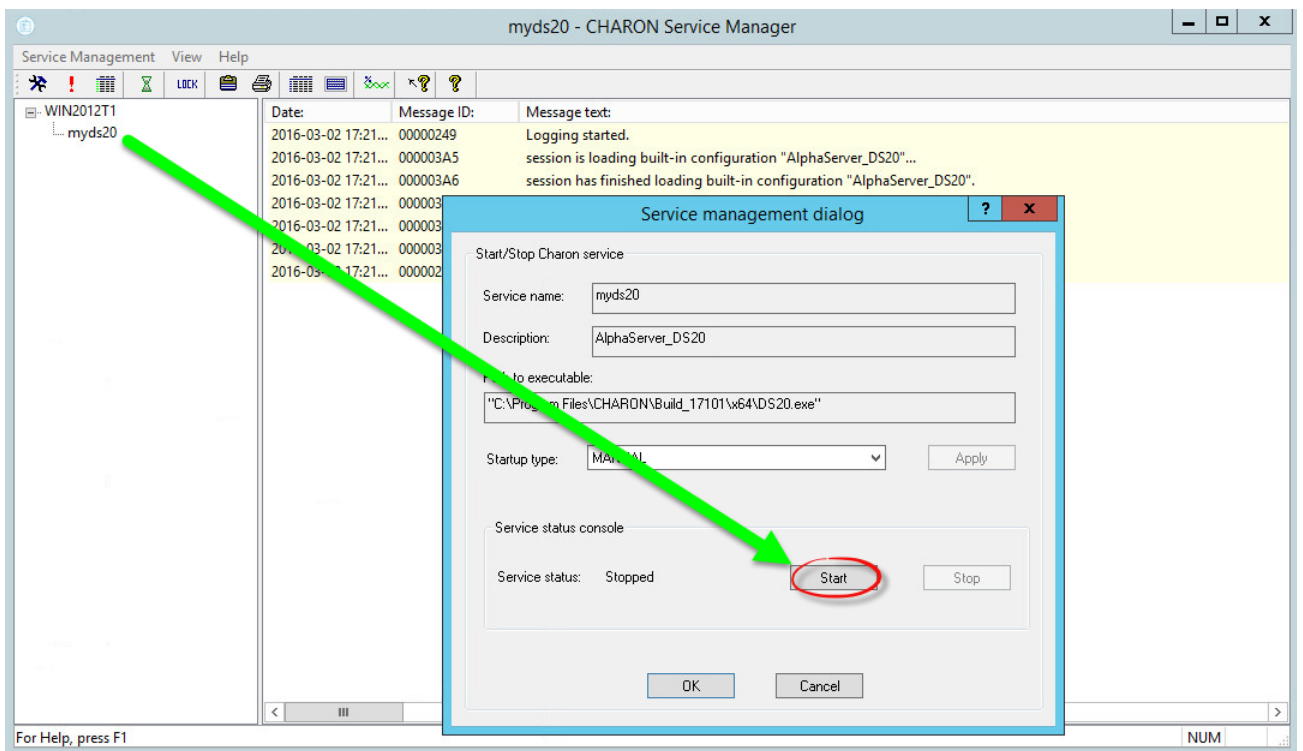
 It is recommended to run the selected configuration from the Launcher at least once before installing the service to facilitate debugging



- Define the service name and click on the "Install" button:



- Start the Charon Service Manager, right click on the virtual machine, select "Manage CHARON service" and start it:

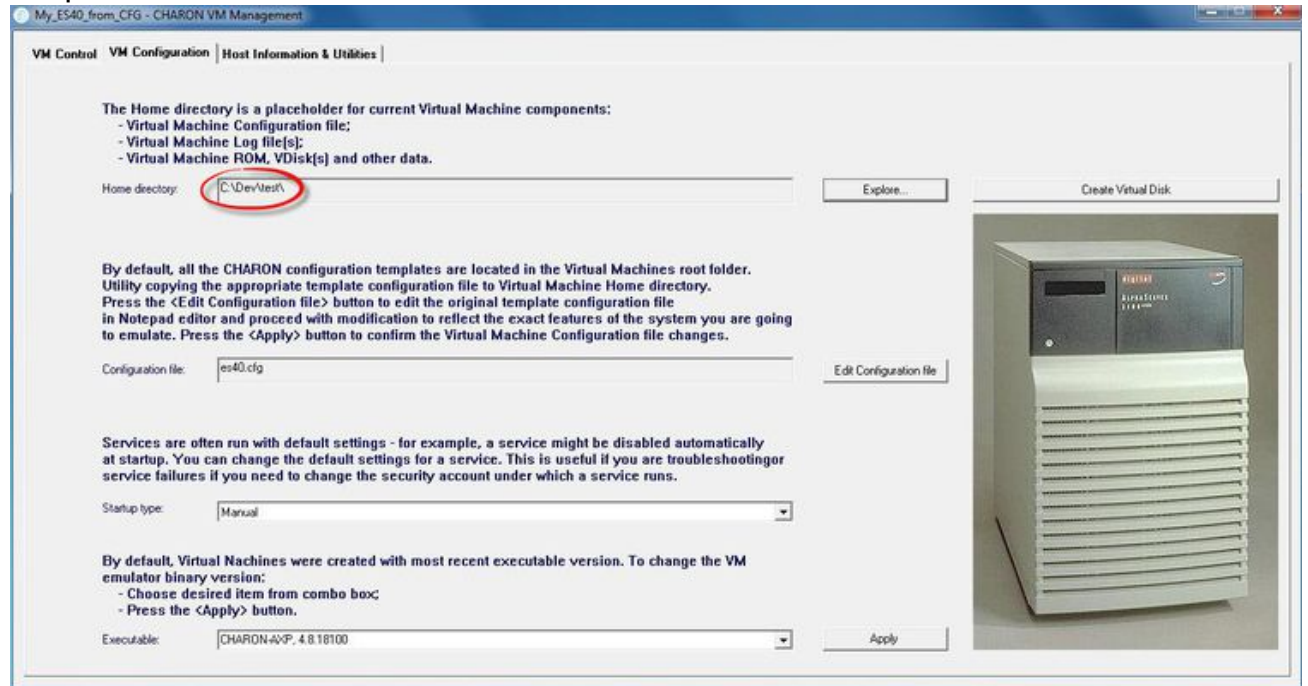


Install and start the log monitor service

- First, prepare a `nolicense.bat` file. See [NOLICENSE.BAT considerations](#) chapter further for more information if needed.
- CHARON-AXP and CHARON-VAX V4.8 and above:**

The `nolicense.bat` file has to be placed in the virtual machine "Home directory". To locate this "Home directory" open the "CHARON Virtual Machines manager" utility, select the virtual machine and switch to the "VM Configuration" tab

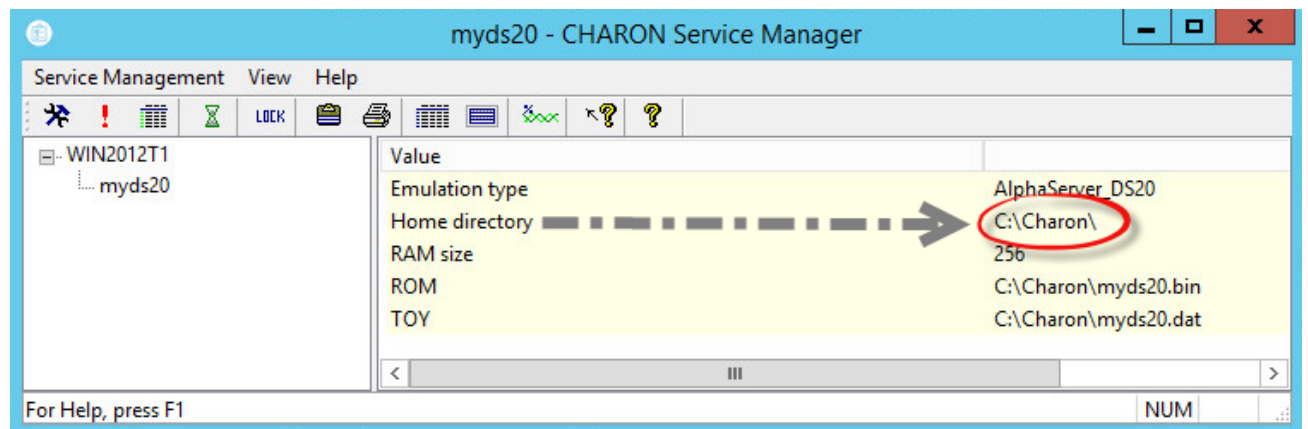
Example:



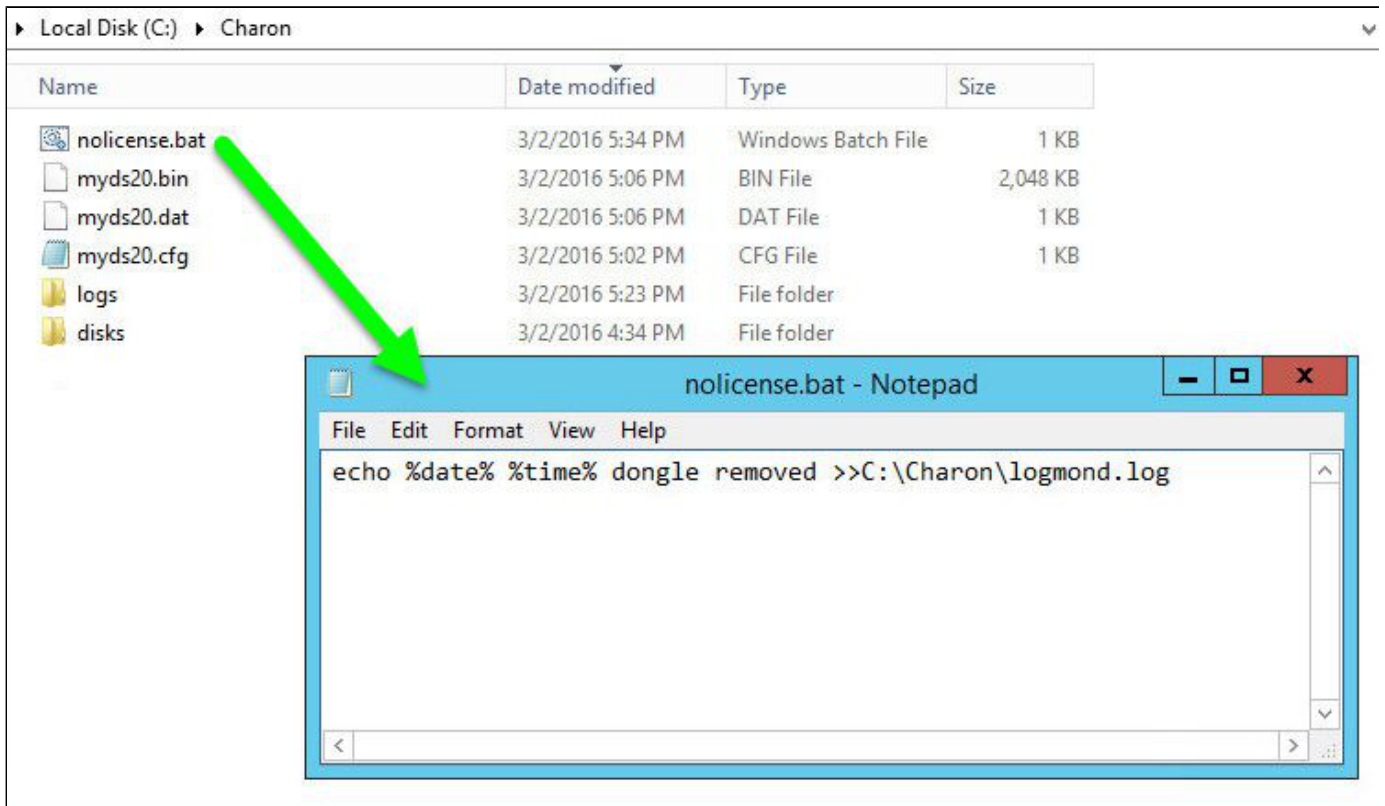
- CHARON-AXP and CHARON-VAX V4.7 and below:**

The `nolicense.bat` file must be placed in the virtual machine "Home directory". This directory corresponds to the configuration file folder when the service is installed, however it will not change if the configuration file is relocated and the service is updated. To locate this "Home directory" open the "CHARON Service Manager" utility, right click on the corresponding service and select "View configuration"

Example:

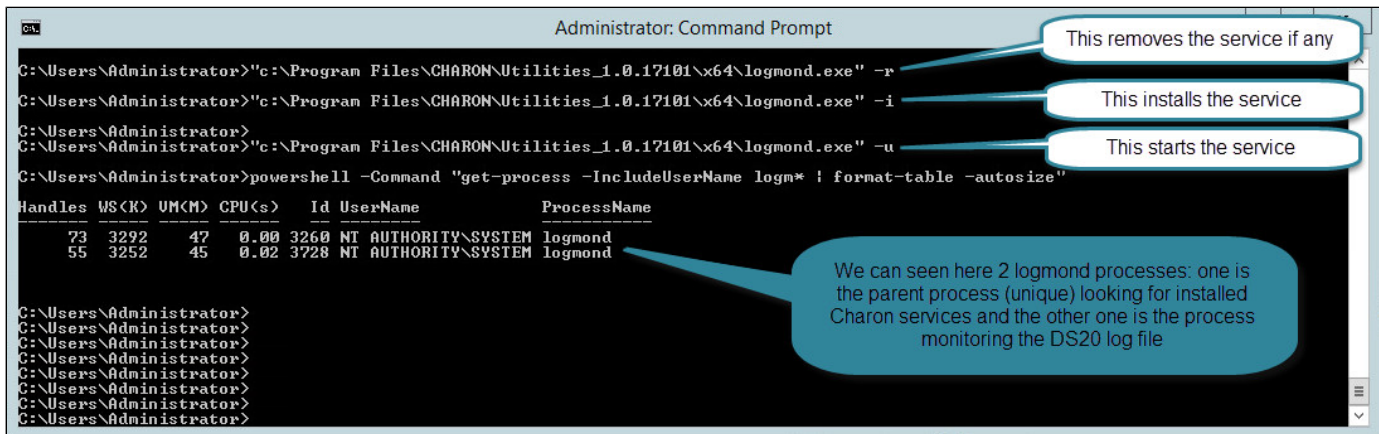


The example below will append a line in a text file:



- Install the log monitoring service and start it:

⚠️ These command lines must be executed as an administrator in order to manage the services



- Notes:**
 - The EmulatorLogMonitor service running the logmond processes will discover already installed CHARON virtual machines services. If a new virtual machine service is added, its log file will be automatically discovered and monitored.
 - If you are running Charon-AXP/VAX/PDP version V4.8, the logmond.exe file is located by default in the "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Build_18302\x64" folder
- Remove the dongle to check if the C:\Charon\logmond.log file is created:
 - i** During the tests the license check interval was set to 5 minutes therefore, when the dongle is disconnected, a message is sent telling there

are only 4 minutes remaining before the DS20 stops

myds20-2016-03-03-14-45-09-00000000.log (3.8 KB) - BareTail

Charon

File Edit View Preferences Help

20160303:144509:INFO :0:00000249:ethane.c
 20160303:144509:INFO :0:000003A5:ethane.c
 20160303:144509:INFO :0:000003A6:ethane.c
 20160303:144509:INFO :0:000003A7:ethane.c
 20160303:144509:INFO :0:000003A8:ethane.c
 20160303:144509:INFO :0:000003A9:ethane.c
 20160303:144509:INFO :0:000003F2:seamgr.c
 20160303:144509:INFO :0:0000032B:ethane.c
 20160303:144510:INFO :0:000003AC:ethane.c
 20160303:144510:INFO :0:000003D1:ethane.c
 20160303:144510:INFO :0:000003BA:ll_senti
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:000003DC:ll_senti
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:0000024D:ethane.c
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:00000350:ethane.c
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:00000336:ethane.c
 20160303:144513:WARN :!:0000009C:ethane.c
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:0000009D:ethane.c
 CHARON product code: "CHAMP-802xx-xI".
 Licensed to: "Bruno".
 Date limited license, limited to: 04/Aug/
 Warning: setting the host system date bac
 License KEY driver is installed as hasplm
 Executable "C:\Windows\system32\hasplms.e
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:00000097:ethane.c
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:00000098:ethane.cxx (2815): Host CPU: Intel(R) Core(TM) i7-4771 CPU @ 3.50GHz x8.
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:00000099:ethane.cxx (2820): Host Memory: 8192MB
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:0000032C:ethane.cxx (2556): "myds20" started.
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:0000034B:scsi_disk. (566): PKA_0 is being set ONLI
 container = "C:\Charon\disks\SYSTEM.vdisk"
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:00000348:scsi_disk. (554): PKA_0 is being s
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:0000034B:scsi_disk. (566): PKA_0 is being s
 container = "C:\Charon\disks\SYSTEM.vdisk"
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:00000348:scsi_disk. (554): PKA_0 is being set OFFL
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:0000034B:scsi_disk. (566): PKA_0 is being set ONLI
 container = "C:\Charon\disks\SYSTEM.vdisk"
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:00000348:scsi_disk. (554): PKA_0 is being set OFFL
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:0000034B:scsi_disk. (566): PKA_0 is being set ONLI
 container = "C:\Charon\disks\SYSTEM.vdisk"
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:00000348:scsi_disk. (554): PKA_0 is being set OFFL
 20160303:144513:INFO :0:0000034B:scsi_disk. (566): PKA_0 is being set ONLI
 container = "C:\Charon\disks\SYSTEM.vdisk"
 20160303:145003:INFO :0:000003E6:ll_sentine(1
 Performing regular license check ...
 20160303:145006:ERROR:2:000003E8:ll_sentine(379): Sentinel HASP RunTime Error 7.
 20160303:145006:INFO :0:00000351:ethane.cxx (3056): session: Detected removal of the license. Normal operation is supported for 4 minutes from now

logmond.log - Notepad

Thu 03/03/2016 14:50:11.70 dongle removed

Alerts customization examples

You will find below some examples of alerts that can be sent from the nolicense.bat file

Reminder: Interactive applications are not allowed

Creating a Windows Event

```
powershell -command "New-Eventlog -Logname application -Source CHARON
-Erroraction silentlycontinue;Write-Eventlog -Logname application -Source
CHARON -Entrytype Error -Eventid 314 -Message 'CHARON license dongle
disconnected' "
```

i It is recommended to use the powershell command to write events instead of the "eventcreate" command line as some other events are created with powershell scripts. Using the eventcreate command in this case will fail as the source, CHARON, will not be accepted.

Example:

Level	Date and Time	Source	Event ID	Task Cate...
Error	10/20/2016 11:30:07 AM	CHARON	314	(1)
Error	10/20/2016 11:30:00 AM	CHARON	300	(1)
Error	10/20/2016 11:26:26 AM	CHARON	314	(1)
Error	10/20/2016 11:25:10 AM	CHARON	314	(1)
Error	10/20/2016 11:15:49 AM	CHARON...	314	None
Information	10/20/2016 11:15:00 AM	CHARON	300	(1)
Error	10/20/2016 11:10:00 AM	CHARON	300	(1)

Event 314, CHARON

General Details

CHARON license dongle disconnected

Log Name: Application

Source: CHARON	Logged: 10/20/2016 11:30:07 AM
Event ID: 314	Task Category: (1)
Level: Error	Keywords: Classic
User: N/A	Computer: bruno-PC
OpCode:	
More Information: Event Log Online Help	

i The "Event Id" can be set at your convenience. A valid ID is any number from 1 to 65535.

Sending an email via powershell

An alert email can be sent using the "Send-MailMessage" powershell command however it is important to know no interactive command can be executed (for asking the sender's credentials for example).

You can either ask the `nolicense.bat` file to invoke a powershell script or pass the commands from the command line

! Examples below are given with Powershell V4.0 installed on a Windows 2012 R2 server, some commands may not be appropriate to your Windows distribution.

💡 To determine which version of Powershell is installed and upgrade if necessary, see [Powershell version, upgrade, enabling scripts execution, tips and tricks](#)

To run PowerShell scripts (files that end with `.ps1`), you must first set the execution policy to Unrestricted (This operation has to be done once).

To do so, open a command line window (`cmd.exe`) as an Administrator and use the following command:

```
c:\Charon>powershell -command "Set-ExecutionPolicy Unrestricted"
```

i The ExecutionPolicy can also be set to "RemoteSigned". In this case the `.ps1` script files will have to be unblocked as described below.

If you are still prompted to allow for execution of the script, please run the following command to unblock the `.ps1` file you want to execute:

```
c:\Charon>powershell -command "Unblock-File -path c:\charon\sendmail.ps1"
```

Example using an office365 account

Create a powershell script file, named `sendmail.ps1` for example and located in "C:\Charon" folder:

```
# Update the email addresses below:
$From = "<monitoring-account>@<somewhere>"
$To = "<someone>@<somewhere>"

# Send the email
send-mailmessage -to $To -from $From -subject "CHARON detected removal of the
license" -body "Please check" -smtpserver smtp.office365.com -usessl -port 587
-delivery none
```



If you must specify multiple recipients, you can specify them using an array with comma separated fields.

Example1:

```
$To = @( "Kirk <Kirk@uss-enterprise.fed>", "Spock <spock@uss-enterprise.fed>" )
```

Example2:

```
$To = @( "Kirk@uss-enterprise.fed", "Spock@uss-enterprise.fed", "McCoy@uss-enterprise.fed" )
```


Update the `nolicense.bat` file as follows:

```
powershell -NonInteractive -File C:\Charon\sendmail.ps1
```

The problem here is the email account mentioned in the `$Myemail` variable must be able to send anonymous emails otherwise the following error can occur:

```
"Client was not authenticated to send anonymous mail during MAIL FROM"
```

If the account cannot send anonymous emails, you can perform an interactive test by asking for the credentials:

 The "<monitoring-account>@<somewhere>" and "<recipient>@<somewhere>" values must be adapted to your configuration

```
# Update the email addresses below:
$From = "<monitoring-account>@<somewhere>"
$To = "<someone>@<somewhere>"

# The command below will open a window for you to store the password
$Creds=(get-credential -credential "$From")

# Send the email (credentials are then required each time)
send-mailmessage -to $To -from $From -subject "CHARON detected removal of the
license" -body "Please check" -smtpserver smtp.office365.com -usessl -port 587
-delivery none -credential $Creds
```

This method cannot be used when executed within a service due to the popup window that will be opened to ask for the email account password.

To be able to send an email, we can then store the credentials in an encrypted and protected file. This is done using the `Export-CliXML` powershell command. As this file will be bound to the server where the command is issued and to the user account who created the file, we need to perform the operations as "system" user account because this user is the one running the `logmond` processes that will invoke the `nolicense.bat` file.

It is necessary then to use `psexec` from the Windows Sysinternals kit. It can be downloaded here: <https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/sysinternals/psexec.c.aspx>

Once extracted from the zip file, to the "C:\Charon" folder for example, run the following command from the command line running as Administrator:


```
C:\...> C:\Charon\psexec -i -s cmd.exe
```


and generate the CliXML file as described below:

```
C:\Windows\system32>powershell
Windows PowerShell
Copyright (C) 2014 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.
```


```
PS C:\Windows\system32> $From="<monitoring-account>@<somewhere>"
PS C:\Windows\system32> $Creds=(get-credential -credential $From)
PS C:\Windows\system32> $Creds | Export-CliXML C:\Charon\creds.clixml
PS C:\Windows\system32> exit
```

```
C:\Windows\system32>exit
```

 If it is no more needed, remove the "psexec.exe" file.

 If the sender's email address or its password has to be changed, the .clixml file will have to be recreated.


Now update the powershell script as follows:

 The "<monitoring-account>@<somewhere>" and "<recipient>@<somewhere>" values must be adapted to your configuration

```
# Update the email addresses below:
$From = "<monitoring-account>@<somewhere>"
$To = "<someone>@<somewhere>"


$Creds = Import-CliXml C:\Charon\creds.clixml

send-mailmessage -to $To -from $From -subject "CHARON detected removal of the
license" -body "Please check" -credential $Creds -smtpserver smtp.office365.com
-usessl -port 587 -delivery none
```

 Once updated, the script will only work when executed by the "system" account and on the server where the `Export-CliXML` powershell command was issued.

Example using a gmail account


To send an email using a gmail account, perform the same operations as described in the [Example using an office365 account](#) chapter above and replace the `smtpserver` value by `smtp.gmail.com` as shown below:


 The "`<monitoring-account>@gmail.com`" and "`<recipient>@<somewhere>`" values must be adapted to your configuration

```
# Update the email addresses below:
$From = "<monitoring-account>@gmail.com"
$To = "<someone>@<somewhere>"

$Creds = Import-CliXml C:\Charon\creds.clixml


send-mailmessage -to $To -from $From -subject "CHARON detected removal of the
license" -body "Please check" -credential $Creds -smtpserver smtp.gmail.com
-usessl -port 587 -delivery none
```

 Only the `smtpserver` value must be changed

 Google may block sign-in attempts when using powershell and `send-mailmessage`. In this case the sender will receive a "Sign in attempt prevented" alert email. To allow emails to be sent:

1. Create a dedicated gmail account
2. Allow less secure apps to access your account. See this article: <https://support.google.com/accounts/answer/6010255?hl=en>

Running the log monitor from the command line

 The "logmond" utility has several parameters available. Use the "`logmond -h`" command to have a complete list.

Starting in background mode

In order to **start** the Log Monitor & Dispatcher as a background application:

1. Open "cmd.exe" from the "Start" menu.
2. Change current directory to the folder (presumably) containing the CHARON configuration file.
3. Start the Log Monitor & Dispatcher using the following command line as an example:

For single log file:

```
...> "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Utilities_X.X.XXXXX\x64\logmond" C:\my_charon.log
```

For rotating log file:

```
...> "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Utilities_X.X.XXXXX\x64\logmond" -l <log-directory> -p <log-prefix>
```

where:

- <log-directory> is the directory where the rotating log files are stored
- <log-prefix> is the same as the "configuration_name" value in corresponding CHARON configuration file (or "hw_model", if "configuration_name" is not specified).

Example:


```
...> "C:\Program Files\CHARON\Utilities_1.0.17101\x64\logmond" -l "C:\My CHARON logs" -p "MY_VAX"
```

To stop the Log Monitor & Dispatcher application, open the Task Manager, find the "logmond.exe" process and terminate it.

Debugging

To diagnose LOGMOND using trace feature:

1. Stop LOGMOND service using "--stop" (or "-d" or "--down"). This is not absolutely necessary though, as multiple running LOGMOND utilities do not affect each other.
2. Start "almost-as-a-service" LOGMOND with diagnostic trace using two command line switches: "-e" and "-t". This starts master task of LOGMOND which enumerates all CHARON services and for each of them invokes slave task of LOGMOND. The master task of LOGMOND looks for installing or removal CHARON services.
 - a. When CHARON service is installed, master creates new slave.
 - b. When CHARON service is removed, slave is terminated to. The slave task monitors LOG of particular CHARON service.

 The "-t" switch enables trace windows, so you can see the process of monitoring.
3. To terminate "almost-as-a-service" LOGMOND master and all its slaves, bring focus to master's trace window, and press "Ctrl-C" ([X] button closes master task, but slaves continue to run unmastered).

The LOGMOND still supports backward compatibility mode, when it does NOT monitor ALL charon services, but only monitors a particular folder or even a particular file. So, if you want to diagnose how it monitors a file, you can use the same "-t" option:

```
C:\...>logmond.exe -t -l <path to charon log file>
```

If you want to diagnose monitoring rotating log:

```
C:\...>logmond.exe -t -l <path to charon log directory> -p <log prefix>
```

If you want to diagnose monitoring particular service:

```
C:\...>logmond.exe -t -s <service name>
```

When you install LOGMOND to run as a service it implicitly runs with "-e" option but without "-t". Alternatively you may install LOGMOND as a service with explicitly specified name of log file (for backward compatibility)

You better use "-e" together with "-t" to diagnose monitoring CHARON services. Unless you run instances with Launcher, in which case you will have to invoke LOGMOND with "-l" with "-t" options.

NOLICENSE.BAT considerations

LOGMOND always looks for NOLICENSE.BAT in the current working directory. What is current working directory for LOGMOND depends on how it is invoked.

If you run LOGMOND with just path to log file, the LOGMOND inherits current working directory from command prompt it is invoked from. So, before you run LOGMOND this way, change prompt's working directory to where you keep your NOLICENSE.BAT file.

If you install LOGMOND as a service with just path to log file, the service remembers the current working directory of the prompt from which it is installed, and uses it as its own current working directory. So, before you run LOGMOND this way, change prompt's working directory to where you keep your NOLICENSE.BAT file.

If you run LOGMOND with name of CHARON service, the LOGMOND changes its current working directory to the CHARON service's Home directory. So, keep the NOLICENSE.BAT file in the service's home directory.

If you run LOGMOND with "-e" option, each slave receives a particular name of CHARON service, and therefore changes to the service's Home directory. So, keep the NOLICENSE.BAT file in the service's home directory.

Related articles

- [CHARON on Windows - Automated License Expiration Check](#)
- [CHARON Log monitoring on Windows \(logmond\) - Best practices](#)
- [DRAFT - Charon LOG and CFG files syntax highlighting for Notepad++](#)
- [Powershell version, upgrade, enabling scripts execution, tips and tricks](#)
- [CHARON Log files - Using vim for syntax highlighting on Linux and Windows](#)

How to implement time synchronisation between CHARON-AXP Host OS and Guest OS





Table of contents

- Description
- Step-by-step guide
 - Configuration file settings
 - Virtual machine operating system settings
 - On OpenVMS/AXP
 - Using a batch queue
 - Using a detached process
 - Considerations using DECnet-Plus software
 - On Tru64 UNIX
- Related articles

Description

This document will explain how to implement the time synchronization feature using the "sync_to_host" parameter in the configuration file. This parameter allows to keep TOY time always synchronized with the host's time and disable undesirable updates to the TOY from guest OS.

Restrictions: Minimum product versions/builds required:

Windows	 CHARON-AXP V4.4 Build 148-02 with patch 148-09 installed
	 CHARON-AXP V4.5 Build 153-03 and 153-05 (patched)
	 CHARON-AXP V4.6 Build 166-03 and later
Linux	 CHARON-AXP V4.6 Build 168-03 and later

Step-by-step guide


Configuration file settings

Update the configuration file with the following settings:

Syntax:

```
set TOY sync_to_host = "{as_vms | as_tru64 | as_is}[, nowrite]"
```

where:

Parameter	Description
as_vms	If the guest OS is OpenVMS/AXP and its date and time must be set to the host's date and time each time it boots.
as_tru64	If the guest OS is Tru64 UNIX and its date and time must be set to the host's date and time each time it boots.
as_is	If the TOY date and time must be set to the host's UTC date and time
nowrite	Forbid updates to the TOY from the guest OS  If you want guest to synchronize itself using DTSS or NTP for example, remove "nowrite"


Example:


```
set TOY sync_to_host = "as_vms, nowrite"
```

To synchronize the guest OS with TOY, use the following commands (from "SYSTEM"/"root" account):

On OpenVMS/AXP	On Tru64 UNIX
<pre>\$ set time</pre>	<pre># date -u `consvar -g date cut -f 3 -d ' '`</pre>

The default value is "not specified" - it means that by default CHARON does not synchronize its guest OS time with the CHARON host time but collects date and time from the file specified with "container" parameter.


 If "sync_to_host" parameter is specified there is no need to specify "container" parameter in addition.

 The CHARON virtual machine must be restarted in order to take the new parameter into account

Virtual machine operating system settings

The commands mentioned above used to synchronize the guest OS with TOY are effective only when they are executed. To avoid time difference, these commands must be executed at specified intervals.

You will find below examples on how to implement scripts to perform time synchronization for OpenVMS and Tru64 UNIX.

 If you have NTP running on your OpenVMS or Tru64 UNIX system, you can keep it running even if `sync_to_host` is enabled

On OpenVMS/AXP

You need first to perform a manual synchronization between the CHARON server and the CHARON virtual machine using the `SET TIME=` command:

```
$ SET TIME=12:30:00
```

You can use either a batch queue or a detached process to synchronize time. The two methods are described below.

Using a batch queue

- Create a simple script containing the following lines. The example below will sync time every hour:

i In our example, we will create the script in the `SYS$MANAGER` folder and name it `CHARON_SYNCTIME.COM`. The OS version used is OpenVMS 7.3-2

```
$ EDIT SYS$MANAGER:CHARON_SYNCTIME.COM

$ SET NOON
$ SET VERIFY
$ LOOP:
$ SHOW TIME
$ SET TIME
$ SHOW TIME
$ WAIT 01:00:00
$ GOTO LOOP
```

i The "`$ SET VERIFY`" line is optional, just used for verifying commands are correctly executed

- A batch queue will be required to create the job:
 - Find an available batch queue or create a new one
 - Execute the following command to view available batch queues (refer to OpenVMS documentation)

```
$ SHOW QUEUE /ALL /BATCH
```

If the command returns the following error message: "%JBC-E-JOBQUEDIS, system job queue manager is not running", you will need to initialize the queue manager:

```
$ START /QUEUE /MANAGER /NEW
%%%%%%%%%%%% OPCOM 29-MAY-2015 12:30:07.36 %%%%%%%%%%%%%
Message from user SYSTEM on VMS732
%JBC-I-CREATED, SYS$COMMON:[SYSEXE]QMAN$MASTER.DAT; created
```

- Create a dedicated batch queue for the synchronization job (recommended):

```
$ INIT /QUEUE /BATCH /START SYS$SYNCTIME /JOB_LIMIT=1
$ SHOW QUEUE SYS$SYNCTIME /FULL
Batch queue SYS$SYNCTIME, idle, on VMS732::
  /BASE_PRIORITY=4 /JOB_LIMIT=1 /OWNER=[SYSTEM] /PROTECTION=(S:M,O:D,G:R,W:S)
```

- Submit the job:

```
$ SUBMIT /QUEUE=SYS$SYNCTIME SYS$MANAGER:CHARON_SYNCTIME
Job CHARON_SYNCTIME (queue SYS$SYNCTIME, entry 1) started on SYS$SYNCTIME
```

- Update the systartup script to start the SYS\$SYNCTIME queue and the job at system boot. The two following lines will have to be added at the very end of the script (for example):

```
$ EDIT SYS$STARTUP:SYSTARTUP_VMS.COM

...


$ START /QUEUE SYS$SYNCTIME
$ SUBMIT /QUEUE=SYS$SYNCTIME SYS$MANAGER:CHARON_SYNCTIME
$
$ EXIT
```

i Prior to OpenVMS version 6, the systartup script will be named: SYS\$STARTUP:SYSTARTUP_V<N>.COM where N represents the version number

- Example for OpenVMS Version 5 : SYS\$STARTUP:SYSTARTUP_V5.COM

Using a detached process

- Create a simple script containing the following lines. The example below will sync time every hour


 In our example, we will create the script in the `SYS$MANAGER` folder and name it `CHARON_SYNCNCTIME.COM`. The OS version used is OpenVMS 7.3-2

```

$ EDIT SYS$MANAGER:CHARON_SYNCNCTIME.COM

$ PROC = F$ENVIRONMENT ("PROCEDURE")
$ IF F$MODE() .EQS. "INTERACTIVE"
$ THEN
$   RUN SYS$SYSTEM:LOGINOUT /AUTHORIZE -
      /DETACH /UIC=[SYSTEM] -
      /PROCESS_NAME="TIME SYNC" -
      /OUTPUT=NL: /ERROR=NL: -
      /INPUT= 'PROC '
$ ELSE
$   SET NOON
$   SET VERIFY
$LOOP:
$   SHOW TIME
$   SET TIME
$   SHOW TIME
$   WAIT 01:00:00
$   GOTO LOOP
$ ENDIF

```

 The "`$ SET VERIFY`" line is optional, just used for verifying commands are correctly executed. If you let it active, please replace the "NL:" device above by a log file name


- Update the systartup script to start the detached process at system boot. The following line will have to be added at the very end of the script (for example):

```


$ EDIT SYS$STARTUP:SYSTARTUP_VMS.COM

...
$ @SYS$MANAGER:CHARON_SYNCNCTIME
$
$ EXIT

```

 To start the job manually without a reboot, just execute the line above from an interactive session.


Considerations using DECnet-Plus software

 If you have DECnet-Plus software installed, you will have to disable DTSS before setting time in order to avoid errors like:

```
%SET-E-NOTSET, error modifying time
-SYSTEM-E-TIMENOTSET, time service enabled; enter a time service command to update the time
```

 To disable DTSS, you will have to update the CHARON_SYNCTIME.COM script (new lines are green colored):

```
$ SET NOON
$! SET VERIFY
$ LOOP:
$ SHOW TIME
$ RUN SYS$SYSTEM:NCL
DISABLE DTSS
DELETE DTSS
EXIT
$ SET TIME
$ SHOW TIME
$ @SYS$STARTUP:DTSS$STARTUP
$ WAIT 01:00:00
$ GOTO LOOP
```

 It is recommended here not to use "SET VERIFY"

 More information here: [OpenVMS Frequently Asked Questions](#) (credits: Hewlett-Packard)

On Tru64 UNIX


Restrictions: The synchronization requires the "consvar" command to be available on the Tru64 operating system thus Tru64 UNIX version 4.0F minimum is required


- You need first to perform a manual synchronization between the CHARON server and the CHARON virtual machine using the `date` command.
Example:

```
# date -u 05291724
```


- Create an entry in the root's `crontab` file as shown below (new lines are green colored):

```
# crontab -e
...
# CHARON time sync_to_host
00 * * * * /sbin/date -u ` /sbin/consvar -g date | cut -f 3 -d ' '`
```

 Full path to `date` and `consvar` commands must be specified

 The above command will be executed at minute 0 of every hour. If you want to execute this every 15 minutes for example, use the following line instead:

```
00/15 * * * * /sbin/date -u ` /sbin/consvar -g date | cut -f 3 -d ' '`
```

 [More information at Wikipedia.org - Cron](#)

Related articles

- [How to implement time synchronisation between CHARON-AXP Host OS and Guest OS \(sync_to_host\)](#)